



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Acts**

**Version 27**

# Copyrights & Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 27

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 10

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 10

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 14

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2020-02-20

**Version:** 0.12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2020-02-20

**Version:** 2.1.11

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](http://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](http://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>17</b>
Acts	17
Introduction to Acts	18
Acts 1	20
Acts 2	48
Acts 3	97
Acts 4	126
Acts 5	167
Acts 6	211
Acts 7	228
Acts 8	293
Acts 9	335
Acts 10	381
Acts 11	432
Acts 12	464
Acts 13	494
Acts 14	555
Acts 15	586
Acts 16	632
Acts 17	676
Acts 18	714
Acts 19	745
Acts 20	788
Acts 21	830
Acts 22	876
Acts 23	909
Acts 24	947
Acts 25	976
Acts 26	1005
Acts 27	1039
Acts 28	1085
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>1119</b>
Abstract Nouns	1120
Active or Passive	1122
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1125
Background Information	1128
Biblical Money	1131
Copy or Borrow Words	1133
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1135
Double Negatives	1137
Doublet	1139
Ellipsis	1141
End of Story	1143



Euphemism	1145
Exclamations	1147
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	1149
First, Second or Third Person	1151
Forms of You	1153
Go and Come	1154
How to Translate Names	1156
Hyperbole	1160
Hypothetical Situations	1164
Idiom	1167
Inclusive and Exclusive "We"	1169
Introduction of a New Event	1171
Introduction of New and Old Participants	1174
Litotes	1177
Merism	1179
Metaphor	1181
Metonymy	1187
Nominal Adjectives	1189
Numbers	1191
Ordinal Numbers	1194
Parallelism	1196
Personification	1199
Quotations and Quote Margins	1201
Quotes within Quotes	1203
Reflexive Pronouns	1206
Rhetorical Question	1209
Simile	1212
Symbolic Action	1215
Symbolic Language	1217
Synecdoche	1219
Textual Variants	1221
Translate Unknowns	1223
Translating Son and Father	1226
Verse Bridges	1228
When Masculine Words Include Women	1230
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words</b>	<b>1232</b>
Aaron	1233
Abraham, Abram	1234
accuse, accused, accuser, accusation	1235
admonish, warned, aware	1236
adversary, enemy	1237
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	1238
age, aged	1239
alien, foreign, foreigner	1240
alms	1241
altar	1242

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ...	1243
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1244
Andrew	1245
angel, archangel	1246
Annas	1248
anoint, anointed, anointing	1249
Antioch	1250
Apollos	1251
apostle, apostleship	1252
appoint, appointed	1253
Aquila	1254
Arabia, Arabian	1255
ash, ashes	1256
Asia	1257
asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless	1258
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting	1259
authority	1260
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	1261
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	1262
baptize, baptized, baptism	1263
Barnabas	1264
Bartholomew	1265
basket, basketfuls	1266
bear, bearer, carry	1267
beast	1268
beg, beggar, needy	1269
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	1270
beloved	1272
Benjamin, Benjamite	1273
Berea	1274
betray, betrayer	1275
bind, bond, bound	1276
blameless	1277
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous	1278
bless, blessed, blessing	1279
blood	1281
body	1282
bold, boldness, emboldened	1283
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee	1284
bread	1285
breath, breathe	1286
brother	1287
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1288
bury, buried, burial	1289
Caesar	1290
Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi	1291

Caiaphas	1292
call, call out	1293
Canaan, Canaanite	1295
cast out, driving out, throw out	1296
caught up	1297
centurion	1298
Chaldea, Chaldean	1299
chariot, charioteers	1300
chief	1301
children, child, offspring	1302
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	1304
Christ, Messiah	1305
Christian	1307
church, Church	1308
Cilicia	1310
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision	1311
citizen, citizenship	1313
clean, wash	1314
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments	1316
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted	1317
command, commandment	1318
commander	1319
commit, committed, commitment	1320
condemn, condemned, condemnation	1321
confess, confession	1322
conscience	1323
Corinth, Corinthians	1324
Cornelius	1325
cornerstone	1326
corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness	1327
council	1328
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ...	1329
covenant	1331
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1333
Crete, Cretan	1334
crime, criminal	1335
crucify, crucified	1336
cry, cry out, outcry	1337
cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy	1338
Cyprus	1340
Cyrene	1341
Damascus	1342
darkness	1343
David	1344
day	1345
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh	1346

deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions	1347
declare, proclaim, announce	1348
defile, defiled	1349
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...	1350
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit	1351
descend, descendant	1352
desert, wilderness	1353
desolate, desolation, alone, deserted	1354
die, dead, deadly, death,	1355
discern, discernment, distinguish	1357
disciple	1358
discipline, self-discipline	1360
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious	1361
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer	1362
divine	1363
dream	1364
drunk, drunkard	1365
earth, earthen, earthly	1366
Egypt, Egyptian	1367
Elam, Elamites	1368
elder, older, old	1369
endure, endurance	1370
enslave, slave, bondservant, bound	1371
envy, covet	1372
Ephesus, Ephesian	1373
epistle, letter	1374
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	1375
Ethiopia, Ethiopian	1377
eunuch	1378
evangelist	1379
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1380
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1382
exalt, exalted, exaltation	1383
exhort, exhortation	1384
exult, exultant	1385
face, facial	1386
faith	1387
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	1388
faithless, faithlessness	1390
false prophet	1391
family, household	1392
famine	1393
fast, fasting	1394
favor, favorable, favoritism	1395
fear, afraid, dread	1396
fellowship	1397

filled with the Holy Spirit	1398
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1399
flesh	1400
flock, herd	1401
footstool	1402
foreknew, foreknowledge	1403
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	1404
found, founder, foundation	1406
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty	1407
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	1408
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	1410
Galatia, Galatians	1411
Galilee, Galilean	1412
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1413
Gaza	1414
generation	1415
Gentile	1416
gift	1417
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ...	1418
glory, glorious, glorify	1419
God	1421
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	1423
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	1425
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	1427
gold, golden	1428
good news, gospel	1429
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	1431
govern, government, governor, proconsul	1433
grace, gracious	1434
grain, grainfields	1435
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	1436
Greece, Grecian	1437
Greek, Grecian	1438
groan, groans, groanings	1439
guilt, guilty	1440
Hades, Sheol	1441
hand	1442
Haran	1444
hard, harden, hardness	1445
head	1446
heart	1447
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1448
Hebrew	1450
Herod, Herod Antipas	1451
high priest, chief priests	1452
Holy One	1454

holy place	1455
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	1456
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1458
honor	1460
hope, hoped	1461
horseman	1462
hour	1463
hour, moment, immediately, for a while	1464
house	1465
household	1466
humble, humbled, humility	1467
Iconium	1468
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him	1469
inherit, inheritance, heir	1470
iniquity	1471
innocent	1472
instruct, instruction, instructors	1473
interpret, interpretation, interpreter	1474
Isaac	1475
Isaiah	1476
Israel, Israelite, Jacob	1477
Israel, Israelites	1478
it is written	1479
James (brother of Jesus)	1480
James (son of Alphaeus)	1481
James (son of Zebedee)	1482
jealous, jealousy	1483
Jerusalem	1484
Jesse	1486
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	1487
Jew, Jewish	1489
John (the apostle)	1490
John (the Baptist)	1491
John Mark	1492
Joppa	1493
Joseph (OT)	1494
Joshua	1495
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	1496
Judas Iscariot	1498
Judas son of James	1499
Judea	1500
judge	1501
judge, judgment	1502
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	1504
kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman	1506
kind [NOT kindness]	1507

king, kingdom, kingship	1508
kingdom	1509
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven	1511
kiss	1513
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1514
labor, laborer, work, hard work	1516
lamb, Lamb of God	1517
lament, lamentation	1519
lamp	1520
last day, latter days	1521
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law	1522
law, principle	1524
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness	1525
Levi, Levite, Levitical	1527
life, live, living, alive	1528
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten	1530
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if	1531
loins, waist	1532
lord, Lord, master, sir	1533
lots, casting lots	1535
lust, lustful, passions, desires	1536
Lystra	1537
Macedonia	1538
magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits	1539
magistrate	1540
majesty	1541
Mary, the mother of Jesus	1542
Matthew, Levi	1543
Mede, Medes, Media	1544
memorial, memorial offering	1545
Mesopotamia, Aram Naharaim	1546
Midian, Midianite	1547
might, mighty, mighty works	1548
miracle, wonder, sign	1549
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock	1551
Molech, Moloch	1552
month, monthly	1553
Moses	1554
Most High	1555
Mount of Olives	1556
multiply, multiplied, multiplication	1557
name	1558
nation	1559
Nazareth, Nazarene	1560
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring	1561
noble, nobleman, royal official	1562

oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1563
obey, obedient	1564
olive	1565
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor	1566
ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared	1567
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1568
oversee, overseer	1569
palace	1570
partial, partiality	1571
Passover	1572
patriarch	1573
Paul, Saul	1574
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1576
Pentecost, Festival of Weeks	1577
people of God	1578
people, people group,	1579
perfect, perfected, perfection, complete	1581
perish	1582
persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue	1583
perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, ...	1584
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas	1585
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	1586
Pharisee	1587
Philip, the apostle	1588
Philip, the evangelist	1589
Philippi, Philippians	1590
Phoenicia, Syrophoenician	1591
pierce, pierced	1592
Pilate	1593
Pontus	1594
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess	1595
power, powerful, powerfully	1596
praise, praised, praiseworthy	1598
pray, prayer	1599
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1600
precious, valuable, expensive, fine	1602
predestine, predestined	1603
priest, priesthood	1604
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...	1606
Priscilla	1607
prison, prisoner, imprison	1608
profane, profaned	1609
profit, profitable, unprofitable	1610
promise, promised	1611
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1612
prostrate, worship	1614



province, provincial	1615
provoke, provoked, provocation	1616
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished	1617
pure, purify, purification	1618
purple	1619
queen	1620
rage	1621
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up	1622
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance	1624
redeem, redeemer, redemption	1626
reed	1627
reject, rejected, rejection	1628
remnant	1629
repent, repentance	1630
report, reported, reputation	1631
rest, rested, restless	1632
restore, restoration	1633
resurrection	1634
return	1635
reveal, revealed, revelation	1636
reward, prize, deserve,	1637
right hand	1638
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...	1639
Rome, Roman	1641
royal, royalty, king's, queen's	1642
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules	1643
run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows	1644
Sabbath	1645
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1646
Sadducee	1648
saint	1649
Samaria, Samaritan	1650
Samuel	1651
sanctify, sanctification	1652
sandal	1653
Satan, devil, evil one	1654
Saul (OT)	1656
save, saved, safe, salvation	1657
Savior, savior	1659
scribe	1660
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea	1661
seed, semen	1662
seek, search, look for	1663
seize, seizure	1664
self-control, self-controlled	1665
send, sent, send out	1666

serpent, snake, viper	1667
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	1668
set apart	1670
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication	1671
shadow, overshadow, shade	1672
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1673
Shechem	1675
shepherd, chief shepherd	1676
Sidon, Sidonians	1678
sign, proof, reminder	1679
Silas, Silvanus	1680
silver	1681
Simon the Zealot	1682
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1683
Sinai, Mount Sinai	1685
sister	1686
slander, slanders, slanderers, slanderous	1687
slaughter, slaughtered	1688
slay, slain, slaughter, kill, killed, murder, murdered	1689
soldier, warrior	1690
Solomon	1691
son	1692
Son of God, the Son	1694
Son of Man, son of man	1696
sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician	1697
soul, self	1698
spirit, spiritual	1699
Stephen	1701
stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornness	1702
stone, stoning	1703
strength, strengthen, strong	1704
stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel	1706
suffer, suffering	1707
sword, swordsmen	1709
synagogue	1710
Syria, Ashur	1711
tabernacle	1712
Tarsus	1713
teach, teaching, untaught	1714
teacher, Teacher	1715
temple	1716
tent, tentmakers	1718
terror, terrorize, terrify, frightened, panic	1719
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire	1720
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	1721
tetrarch	1723

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea	1724
the twelve, the eleven	1725
Thessalonica, Thessalonian	1726
Thomas	1727
throne, enthroned	1728
time, untimely, date	1729
Timothy	1730
to minister, ministry	1731
tongue, language	1732
tremble, stagger	1733
trial, proving	1734
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1735
tribulation, distresses, trouble	1736
Troas	1737
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...	1738
true, truth	1739
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1741
tunic	1742
turn, turn away, turn back, return	1743
twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes	1745
Tychicus	1746
Tyre, Tyrians	1747
understand, understanding, thinking	1748
unleavened bread	1749
vain, vanity	1750
virgin, virginity	1751
vision, envision	1752
voice	1753
vow	1754
walk, walked	1755
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	1756
water	1757
wheat	1758
will of God	1759
wise, wisdom	1760
wolf, wild dogs	1761
womb	1762
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ...	1763
work, works, deeds	1765
world, worldly	1766
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	1767
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful	1768
year	1769
yoke, yoked, tied	1770
zeal, zealous	1771
<b>Contributors</b>	<b>1772</b>

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors ..... 1772

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors ..... 1778

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors ..... 1779

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors ..... 1779

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors ..... 1780



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **Acts**

## Introduction to Acts

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of the Book of Acts

1. The beginning of the church and its mission (1:1–2:41)
2. The early church in Jerusalem (2:42–6:7)
3. Increasing opposition and the martyrdom of Steven (6:8–7:60)
4. The persecution of the church and Philip's ministry (8:1–40)
5. Paul becomes an apostle (9:1–31)
6. The ministry of Peter and the first Gentile converts (9:32–12:24)
7. Paul, the apostle to Gentiles, the Jewish law, and council of church leaders at Jerusalem (12:25–16:5)
8. The expansion of the church into the middle Mediterranean area and Asia Minor (16:6–19:20)
9. Paul travels to Jerusalem and becomes a prisoner in Rome (19:21–28:31)

#### What is the Book of Acts about?

The Book of Acts tells the story of the early church as more and more people became believers. It shows the power of the Holy Spirit helping the early Christians. The events in this book began when Jesus went back to heaven and ended about thirty years later.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "The Acts of the Apostles." Or translators may choose a title that may be clearer, for example, "The Acts of the Holy Spirit through the Apostles."

#### Who wrote the Book of Acts?

This book does not give the name of the author. However, it is addressed to Theophilus, the same person to whom the Gospel of Luke is addressed. Also, in parts of the book, the author uses the word "we." This indicates that the author traveled with Paul. Most scholars think that Luke was this person traveling with Paul. Therefore, since early Christian times, most Christians have thought Luke is the author of the Book of Acts as well as the Gospel of Luke.

Luke was a medical doctor. His way of writing shows that he was an educated man. He was probably a Gentile. He saw many of the events described in the Book of Acts.

### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

#### What is the Church?

The Church is the group of people who believe in Christ. The Church includes both Jew and Gentile believers. The events in this book show God helping the Church. He empowered believers to live righteous lives through his Holy Spirit.

### Part 3: Important Translation Issues

#### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Acts?

These are the most significant textual issues in Acts:

The following verses are found in older versions of the Bible, but they are not in the best ancient copies of the Bible. Some modern versions put the verses in square brackets ([ ]). The ULT and UST put them in a footnote.

- “Philip said, ‘If you believe with all your heart, you may be baptized.’ The Ethiopian answered, ‘I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God’” (Acts 8:37).
- “But it seemed good to Silas to remain there.” (Acts 15:34)
- “And we wanted to judge him according to our law. But Lysias, the officer, came and forcibly took him out of our hands, sending him to you.” (Acts 24:6b-8a)
- “When he had said these things, the Jews departed, having a great dispute among themselves.” (Acts 28:29)

In the following verses, it is uncertain what the original text said. Translators will need to choose which reading to translate. The ULT has the first readings but include the second readings in footnotes. \* “They returned from Jerusalem” (Acts 12:25). Some versions read, “They returned to Jerusalem (or to there).” \* “he put up with them” (Acts 13:18). Some versions read, “he cared for them.” \* “This is what the Lord says, who has done these things that have been known from ancient times.” (Acts 15:17-18). Some older versions read, “This is what the Lord says, to whom are known all his deeds from ancient times.”

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

## Acts 1

### Acts 1 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter records an event, commonly known as the “Ascension,” when Jesus returned to heaven after he became alive again. He will not come back until he returns at his “second coming.” (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#) and [resurrection](#))

The UST has set the words “Dear Theophilus” apart from the other words. This is because English speakers often start letters this way. You might want to start this book the way people start letters in your culture.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the two quotes from Psalms in 1:20.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Baptize

The word “baptize” has two meanings in this chapter. It refers to the water baptism of John and to the baptism of the Holy Spirit (Acts 1:5). (See: [baptize](#), [baptized](#), [baptism](#))

##### “He spoke about the kingdom of God”

Some scholars believe that when Jesus “spoke about the kingdom of God,” he explained to the disciples why the kingdom of God did not come before he died. Others believe that the kingdom of God did begin while Jesus was alive and that here Jesus was explaining that it was beginning in a new form.

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.



## **Akeldama**

This is a phrase in Hebrew or Aramaic. Luke used Greek letters so his readers would know how it sounded, and then he told what it means. You should probably spell it the way it sounds in your language and then explain the meaning. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

**Acts 1:1****The former book I wrote (ULT)****In my first book that I wrote for you, I wrote (UST)**

The former book is the Gospel of Luke.

**Theophilus (ULT)****Dear Theophilus (UST)**

Luke wrote this book to a man named Theophilus. Some translations follow their own culture's way of addressing a letter and write "Dear Theophilus" at the beginning of the sentence. Theophilus means "friend of God" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jesus](#)
- [to teach](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus](#)
- [taught](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> The former book I wrote, Theophilus, concerning all that [Jesus](#) began both to do and [to teach](#),

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> Dear Theophilus, In my first book that I wrote for you, I wrote about many of the things that [Jesus](#) did and [taught](#)

## Acts 1:2

**until the day...that he was taken up (ULT)**  
**until the day...on which God took him up to heaven (UST)**

This refers to Jesus' ascension into heaven. Alternate translation: "until the day on which God took him up to heaven" or "until the day that he ascended into heaven" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**after he had given commands...through the Holy Spirit (ULT)**  
**Before he went to heaven...the...he told...by...power of the Holy Spirit...the (UST)**

The Holy Spirit led Jesus to instruct his apostles on certain things.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [after he had given commands](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [he had chosen](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Before he went to heaven...the...he told](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [power of the Holy Spirit...the](#)
- [on which God took him up to heaven](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [day](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> until the [day](#) that he was taken up, [after he had given commands](#) through [the Holy Spirit](#) to the [apostles](#) whom [he had chosen](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> until the [day on which God took him up to heaven](#). [Before he went to heaven](#), by the [power of the Holy Spirit](#) [he told the apostles](#) the things that he wanted them to know.

## Acts 1:3

### After his suffering (ULT)

### After he had suffered...him many times (UST)

This refers to Jesus' suffering and death on the cross.

### to them...he...presented himself alive (ULT) that he was alive again...cross, he became alive again (UST)

Jesus appeared to his apostles and to many other disciples.

### Translation Words - ULT

- alive
- of God
- kingdom of God
- kingdom
- suffering
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- cross, he became alive again
- God
- God...of people in his kingdom
- people in his kingdom
- had suffered
- days

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> After his [suffering](#), he also presented himself [alive](#) to them with many convincing proofs. For forty [days](#) he appeared to them, and he spoke things concerning the [kingdom of God](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> After he [had suffered](#) and died on the [cross, he became alive again](#). As he appeared often during the next forty [days](#), the apostles saw him many times. He proved to them in many ways that he was alive again. He talked with them about how [God](#) would rule the lives [of people in his kingdom](#).

## Acts 1:4

### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Jesus. Except where otherwise noted, the word "you" in the book of Acts is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This event happened during the 40 days that Jesus appeared to his followers after he had risen from the dead.

### When he was meeting together with them (ULT)

### One time while he was with them (UST)

"When Jesus was meeting together with his apostles"

### the promise of the Father (ULT)

### my Father sends his Spirit to you as he promised to do...about (UST)

This is a reference to the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit, whom the Father promised to send" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### about which, he said (ULT)

### that (UST)

If you translated the previous phrase to include the words "Holy Spirit," you can change the word "which" to "whom." Alternate translation: "about whom Jesus said"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he commanded](#)
- [Father](#)
- [promise](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [he was meeting together with them](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he told](#)
- [my Father](#)
- [you as he promised to do](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [he was with them](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> When [he was meeting together with them](#), [he commanded](#) them not to leave [Jerusalem](#), but to wait for the [promise](#) of the [Father](#), about which, he said, "You heard from me"

### UST

<sup>4</sup> One time while [he was with them](#), [he told](#) them, "Do not leave [Jerusalem](#). Instead, wait here until [my Father](#) sends his Spirit to [you as he promised to do](#). You have heard me speak to you about that."

## Acts 1:5

**John indeed baptized with water...shall be baptized in the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**John...baptized people in water...God will baptize...in the Holy Spirit (UST)**

Jesus contrasts how John baptized people in water with how God would baptize believers in the Holy Spirit.

**John indeed baptized with water (ULT)**

**John...baptized people in water (UST)**

"John indeed baptized people with water"

**you...shall be baptized (ULT)**

**you...God will baptize (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will baptize you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- baptized
- shall be baptized
- Holy
- the...Spirit
- John
- with water
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- baptized people
- God will baptize
- Holy
- the...Spirit
- John
- in water
- days

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> that [John](#) indeed [baptized with water](#), but you [shall be baptized](#) in the [Holy Spirit](#) after not many [days](#)."

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [John baptized people in water](#), but after a few [days God will baptize](#) you in the [Holy Spirit](#)."

## Acts 1:6

### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the apostles.

**is this the time you will restore the kingdom to Israel**

"will you now make Israel a great kingdom again"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Israel
- kingdom
- time
- were assembled together

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord, will you
- us Israelite
- King...like King David
- now
- apostles met together

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When therefore they [were assembled together](#), they asked him, saying, "[Lord](#), is this the [time](#) you will restore the [kingdom](#) to [Israel](#)?"

### UST

<sup>6</sup> One day when the [apostles met together](#) with Jesus, they asked him, "[Lord, will you now](#) become the [King](#) over [us Israelite](#) people [like King David](#), who ruled long ago?"

## Acts 1:7

### the times or the seasons (ULT)

### the time periods and the days (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the words “times” and “seasons” refer to different kinds of time. Alternate translation: “the general period of time or the specific date” or 2) the two words are basically synonymous. Alternate translation: “the exact time” (See: [Doublet](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [has determined](#)
- [Father](#)
- [the times](#)
- [the seasons](#)
- [to know](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [alone has decided when he will make me king](#)
- [alone has decided when he will make me king](#)
- [My Father](#)
- [the time periods](#)
- [the days](#)
- [need to know](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But he said to them, “It is not for you [to know the times](#) or [the seasons](#) which the [Father has determined](#) by his own [authority](#).”

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> He replied to them, “You do not [need to know the time periods](#) and [the days](#) when that will happen. [My Father alone has decided when he will make me king](#).”



## Acts 1:8

**you will receive power...and you will be my witnesses (ULT)**

**will make you strong...Then you will tell people about me (UST)**

The apostles will receive power that will enable them to be witnesses for Jesus. Alternate translation: "God will empower you...to be my witnesses"

**to the end of the earth (ULT)**  
**over the world (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "all over the world" or 2) "to the places on earth that are farthest away" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [my witnesses](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [power](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [you will receive](#)
- [earth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [you will tell people about me](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [will make you strong](#)
- [regions of Judea](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [will make you strong](#)
- [world](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But [you will receive power](#), when the [Holy Spirit](#) comes upon you, and you will be [my witnesses](#) both in [Jerusalem](#) and in all [Judea](#) and [Samaria](#), and to the end of the [earth](#)."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> But the [Holy Spirit will make you strong](#) when he comes to you. Then [you will tell people about me](#) in [Jerusalem](#) and in the [regions of Judea](#), [Samaria](#), and all over the [world](#)."

## Acts 1:9

**as they were looking up (ULT)**  
**he rose up into heaven, and (UST)**

“as they watched.” The apostles “were looking up” at Jesus because Jesus rose into the sky. Alternate translation: “as they were looking up at the sky” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he was raised up (ULT)**  
**he rose up into heaven, and (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he rose up into the sky” or “God took him up into the sky” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they...a cloud hid him from...eyes (ULT)**  
**he rose up into heaven, and...a cloud kept...from seeing him any longer (UST)**

“a cloud blocked their view so that they could no longer see him”

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> When he had said these things, as they were looking up, he was raised up, and a cloud hid him from their eyes.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> After he said that, he rose up into heaven, and a cloud kept them from seeing him any longer.

## Acts 1:10

**looking intensely...to heaven (ULT)**  
**still staring...toward the sky (UST)**

“staring at the sky” or “gazing at the sky”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> While they were looking intensely to [heaven](#) as he was going up, and suddenly, two men stood by them in white clothing.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> While the apostles were still staring toward the [sky](#) as he was going up, suddenly two men wearing white clothes stood beside them. They were angels.

## Acts 1:11

### Men of Galilee (ULT)

### You men from Galilee (UST)

The angels address the apostles as men who are from Galilee.

### will...return in the same manner (ULT)

### He will return...in the same manner as (UST)

Jesus will return in the sky, just as clouds covered him when he arose into heaven.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [heaven](#) (2)
- [Jesus](#)
- [of Galilee](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)
- [heaven, will come back to earth](#)
- [heaven](#) (2)
- [Some day...Jesus](#)
- [from Galilee](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> They said, “Men [of Galilee](#), why do you stand looking into [heaven](#)? This [Jesus](#) who has been taken up from you into [heaven](#), will likewise return in the same manner as you saw him going into [heaven](#).”

### UST

<sup>11</sup> One of them said, “You men [from Galilee](#), you do not need to stand here any longer looking up at the [sky](#)! [Some day](#) this same [Jesus](#), whom God took from you up to [heaven, will come back to earth](#). He will return in the same manner as you just now saw him go when he went up to [heaven](#).”

## Acts 1:12

### Then they returned (ULT)

### Then after the two angels left, the apostles returned (UST)

"The apostles returned"

### a Sabbath day's journey (ULT)

### a short distance from Jerusalem (UST)

This refers to the distance which, according to Rabbinical tradition, a person was allowed to walk on a Sabbath day. Alternate translation: "about one kilometer away" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a Sabbath day's journey](#)
- [the mountain called Olives](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem \(2\)](#)
- [Olives](#)
- [they returned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a short distance from Jerusalem](#)
- [the Mount of Olives](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [a short distance from Jerusalem \(2\)](#)
- [the Mount of Olives](#)
- [after the two angels left, the apostles returned](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then [they returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#) from [the mountain called Olives](#), which is near [Jerusalem, a Sabbath day's journey](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then [after the two angels left, the apostles returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#) from [the Mount of Olives](#), which was [a short distance from Jerusalem](#).

## Acts 1:13

### When they arrived (ULT)

### After they entered the city, they went (UST)

"When they reached their destination." Verse 12 says they were returning to Jerusalem.

### the upper chamber (ULT)

### the upstairs room in (UST)

"the room on the upper level of the house"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Zealot
- Simon the Zealot
- Andrew
- Bartholomew
- Philip
- Judas son of James
- both Peter
- James son of Alphaeus
- John
- Thomas
- Matthew
- James

### Translation Words - UST

- Zealot
- Simon...the Zealot
- Andrew
- Bartholomew
- Philip
- Judas the son of another man named James
- Peter
- another James the son of Alphaeus
- John
- Thomas
- Matthew
- James

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> When they arrived, they went up into the upper chamber, where they were staying, [both Peter](#) and [John](#), and [James](#) and [Andrew](#), [Philip](#) and [Thomas](#), [Bartholomew](#) and [Matthew](#), [James son of Alphaeus](#) and [Simon the Zealot](#), and [Judas son of James](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> After they entered the city, they went into the upstairs room in the house where they were staying. Those who were there included [Peter](#), [John](#), [James](#), [Andrew](#), [Philip](#), [Thomas](#), [Bartholomew](#), [Matthew](#), [another James the son of Alphaeus](#), [Simon the Zealot](#), and [Judas the son of another man named James](#).

## Acts 1:14

### They were all united as one

This means that the apostles and believers there all shared a common commitment and purpose, and there was no strife among them.

**diligently continuing...in prayer (ULT)**  
**apostles began to pray together all...the time. Others who prayed (UST)**

This means that the disciples prayed together regularly and frequently.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- brothers
- in prayer
- Mary

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- younger brothers
- time. Others who prayed
- Mary

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> They were all diligently continuing [in prayer](#) with one accord, with the women, and [Mary](#) the mother [of Jesus](#), and with his [brothers](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> All these apostles began to pray together all the [time](#). [Others who prayed](#) with them included the women who had been with [Jesus](#), [Mary](#) who was Jesus' mother, and his [younger brothers](#).

## Acts 1:15

### Connecting Statement:

This event happened during the time that Peter and the other believers were staying together in the upper room.

### In...days (ULT)

These words mark the beginning of a new part of the story. They refer to the period of time after Jesus ascended while the disciples were meeting in the upper chamber. Alternate translation: “During that time” (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### 120 (ULT)

“one hundred and twenty people” (See: [Numbers](#))

### In...the midst of the brothers (ULT)

Here the word “brothers” refers to fellow believers and includes both men and women.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [of the names of the people](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [stood up](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [name](#)
- [Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas](#)
- [raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up](#)
- [day](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> In those [days Peter stood up](#) in the midst of the [brothers](#)—the number [of the names of the people](#) who were together then was about 120—and said,

### UST

<sup>15</sup> During those days Peter stood up among his fellow believers. There was a group of about 120 followers of Jesus at that place. He said,



## Acts 1:16

**it was necessary that the scripture should be fulfilled (ULT)**

**that...that needed to happen as he said...would...words (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the things that we read about in scripture had to take place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by the mouth of David (ULT)**

**there are words...King (UST)**

The word “mouth” refers to the words that David wrote. Alternate translation: “through the words of David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- brothers
- Holy
- scripture
- Holy Spirit
- that...should be fulfilled
- of David
- Judas

### Translation Words - UST

- to write
- My
- The Holy
- that...words
- The Holy...Spirit
- that needed...happen as he said...would
- King
- who knew that Judas would be the one who would fulfill

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> “Men, [brothers](#), it was necessary that the [scripture should be fulfilled](#), that the [Holy Spirit](#) spoke before by the mouth [of David](#) concerning [Judas](#), who guided the ones who arrested [Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> “[My](#) fellow believers, there are words that [King](#) David wrote in the Scriptures long ago [that needed](#) to [happen as he said](#) they [would](#). [The Holy Spirit, who knew that Judas would be the one who would fulfill](#) those [words](#), told David what [to write](#).

## Acts 1:17

### General Information:

In verses 18-19 the author tells the reader background information about how Judas died and what people called the field where he died. This is not part of Peter's speech. (See: [Background Information](#))

### General Information:

Although Peter is addressing the entire group of people, here the word "us" refers only to the apostles. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

In verse 17 Peter continues his speech to the believers that he began in [Acts 1:16](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...ministry](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to serve as an apostle](#)

### ULT

**17** For he was numbered with us and received his share of this [ministry](#)."

### UST

**17** Although Jesus had chosen Judas, along with the rest of us, [to serve as an apostle](#), Judas was the person who guided the people who seized Jesus."

## Acts 1:18

### this man...Now (ULT)

### The Jewish leaders gave Judas money...So (UST)

The words "this man" refers to Judas Iscariot.

### the earnings from his wickedness (ULT)

### when he promised to treacherously betray Jesus. Later Judas returned that money to them (UST)

"the money that he earned from the evil thing that he did." The words "his wickedness" refer to Judas Iscariot's betraying Jesus to the people who killed him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### there he fell headfirst, and his belly burst open, and all his inward parts poured out (ULT)

### When Judas hanged himself, his body fell down to the ground...His abdomen burst open, and all his intestines spilled out (UST)

This suggests that Judas fell from a high place, rather than just falling down. The fall was severe enough to cause his body to burst open. Other passages of scripture mention that he hanged himself. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [wickedness](#)
- [the earnings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [when he promised to treacherously betray Jesus](#)
- [Later Judas returned that money to them](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> (Now indeed this man bought a field with [the earnings](#) from his [wickedness](#), and there he fell headfirst, and his belly burst open, and all his inward parts poured out.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> The Jewish leaders gave Judas money [when he promised to treacherously betray Jesus](#). [Later Judas returned that money to them](#). When Judas hanged himself, his body fell down to the ground. His abdomen burst open, and all his intestines spilled out. So the Jewish leaders bought a field using that money.

**Acts 1:19****Field of Blood (ULT)****Field of Blood (UST)**

When the people living in Jerusalem heard of the way in which Judas died, they renamed the field.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- they called
- of Blood
- in Jerusalem

**Translation Words - UST**

- they called
- of Blood
- in Jerusalem heard about that

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> This became known to all those living [in Jerusalem](#), so [they called](#) that field in their own language "Akeldama," that is, "Field [of Blood](#)."

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> All the people who reside [in Jerusalem](#) [heard about that](#), so [they called](#) that field according to their own Aramaic language, Akeldama, which means "Field [of Blood](#)," because it was where someone died.

## Acts 1:20

### General Information:

Based on the situation with Judas that Peter just recounted, he recalls two Psalms of David that relate to the incident. The quote ends at the end of this verse.

### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech to the believers that he began in [Acts 1:16](#).

**For it is written in the Book of Psalms (ULT)  
Peter also said, "I see that what happened to Judas is like what the Psalms (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For David wrote in the Book of Psalms" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Let his field be made desolate, and do not let even one person live there (ULT)**

**May his family line die out; may there be no one left in it at all.' And it seems that these other words that David wrote also refer to Judas: 'Let someone else take over his work as a leader (UST)**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second emphasizes the meaning of the first by repeating the same idea with different words. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Let his field be made desolate (ULT)**

**May his family line die out; may there be no one left in it at all (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) that the word "field" refers to the field where Judas died or 2) that the word "field" refers to Judas's dwelling place and is a metaphor for his family line. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Let...be made...desolate (ULT)**

**May his family line die out; may there be no one left in it at all...May his family line die out; may there be no one left in it at all (UST)**

"become empty"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [desolate](#)
- [it is written](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [May his family line die out; may there be no one left in it at all](#)
- [Peter also said, "I see that what happened](#)

#### ULT

20 "For [it is written](#) in the Book of Psalms, 'Let his field be made [desolate](#), and do not let even one person live there,' and 'Let someone else take his position of leadership.'

#### UST

20 [Peter also said, "I see that what happened](#) to Judas is like what the Psalms say: '[May his family line die out; may there be no one left in it at all.](#)' And it seems that these other words that David wrote also refer to Judas: 'Let someone else take over his work as a leader.'"

## Acts 1:21

### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the apostles and does not include the audience to whom Peter is speaking. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to the believers that he began in [Acts 1:16](#).

### It is necessary, therefore (ULT)

### So it is necessary...to choose (UST)

Based on the scriptures that he quoted and on what Judas had done, Peter tells the group what they must do.

### the Lord Jesus came in and went out among us (ULT)

### when...the Lord Jesus was...with us (UST)

Going in and out among a group of people is a metaphor for openly being part of that group. Alternate translation: "the Lord Jesus lived among us" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the time](#)
- [all the time](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus was](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the time](#)
- [all the time](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> It is necessary, therefore, that from the men who accompanied us during [all the time](#) that the [Lord](#) Jesus came in and went out among us,

### UST

<sup>21</sup> "So it is necessary for us apostles to choose a man to replace Judas. He must be one who was with us [all the time](#) when the [Lord](#) Jesus was with us.

## Acts 1:22

### beginning from the baptism of John...become a witness with us of his resurrection

The qualification for the new apostle that began with the words “It is necessary...that one of the men who accompanied us” in verse 21 ends here. The subject of the verb “must be” is thus “one of the men.” Here is a reduced form of the sentence: “It is necessary...that one of the men who accompanied us...beginning from the baptism of John... must be a witness with us.”

### beginning from the baptism of John (ULT) That is, from the time when John the Baptizer baptized Jesus (UST)

The noun “baptism” can be translated as a verb. Possible meanings: 1) “beginning from when John baptized Jesus” or 2) “beginning from when John baptized people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### to the day that he was taken up from us (ULT) until the day when Jesus left us and rose up to heaven (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “until the day when Jesus left us and rose up to heaven” or “until the day that God took him up from us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the...must become a witness with us...of...his...resurrection (ULT) the...The man to replace Judas must join us in telling people about Jesus...and how...he... came to life again after he died (UST)

“must begin to testify with us about his resurrection”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...resurrection](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [a witness](#)
- [of John](#)
- [day](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [and how...came to life again after he died](#)
- [the Baptizer baptized Jesus](#)
- [in telling people about Jesus](#)
- [John](#)
- [day](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> beginning from the [baptism of John](#) to the [day](#) that he was taken up from us —one of these must become [a witness](#) with us of his [resurrection](#).”

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> That is, from the time when [John the Baptizer baptized Jesus](#) until the [day](#) when Jesus left us and rose up to heaven. The man to replace Judas must join us [in telling people about Jesus and how](#) he [came to life again after he died](#).”

## Acts 1:23

**They put forward...two men (ULT)**  
**the apostles and other believers suggested...two men (UST)**

Here the word "They" refers to all of the believers who were present. Alternate translation: "They proposed two men who fulfilled the requirements that Peter listed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Joseph called Barsabbas, who was also named Justus (ULT)**  
**the names of...One man was Joseph Barsabbas, who... had the name Justus (UST)**

This can be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: "Joseph, whom people also called Barsabbas and Justus" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [called](#)
- [was also named](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [names of](#)
- [had the name Justus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> They put forward two men, Joseph [called](#) Barsabbas, who [was also named](#) Justus, and Matthias.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> So the apostles and other believers suggested the [names of](#) two men. One man was Joseph Barsabbas, who also [had the name Justus](#). The other man was Matthias.



## Acts 1:24

### having prayed, they said (ULT)

Here the word "They" refers to all of the believers, but it was probably one of the apostles who spoke these words. Alternate translation: "The believers prayed together and one of the apostles said" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### You, Lord, know the hearts of everyone (ULT)

Here the word "hearts" refers to the thoughts and motives. Alternate translation: "You, Lord, know the thoughts and motives of everyone" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- you have chosen
- having prayed

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- pray, prayer

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> So [having prayed](#), they said, "You, [Lord](#), know the hearts of everyone, so reveal which one of these two [you have chosen](#)

### UST

<sup>24-25</sup> Then they prayed: "Lord Jesus, Judas stopped being an apostle. He sinned and went to the place where he deserves to be. You know what every man thinks in his own heart, so please show us which of these two men you have chosen to take the place of Judas."

## Acts 1:25

### to take the place in this ministry and apostleship (ULT)

Here the word “apostleship” defines what kind of “ministry” this is. Alternate translation: “to take Judas’ place in this apostolic ministry” or “to take Judas’ place in serving as an apostle” (See: [Doublet](#))

### from which Judas turned away (ULT)

Here the expression “turned away” means that Judas stopped performing this ministry. Alternate translation: “which Judas stopped fulfilling”

### to go to his own place (ULT)

This phrase refers to Judas’ death and likely to his judgment after death. Alternate translation: “to go where he belongs” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in...ministry](#)
- [apostleship](#)
- [Judas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to minister, ministry](#)
- [apostle, apostleship](#)
- [Judas Iscariot](#)

#### ULT

**25** to take the place in this [ministry](#) and [apostleship](#) from which [Judas](#) turned away to go to his own place.”

#### UST

**24-25** Then they prayed: “Lord Jesus, Judas stopped being an apostle. He sinned and went to the place where he deserves to be. You know what every man thinks in his own heart, so please show us which of these two men you have chosen to take the place of Judas.”

## Acts 1:26

**They cast...lots for them (ULT)**

**they cast lots to choose between the two of them (UST)**

The apostles cast lots to decide between Joseph and Matthias.

**the lot fell to Matthias (ULT)**

**the lot fell for Matthias (UST)**

The lot indicated that Matthias was the one to replace Judas.

**he was numbered with the eleven apostles (ULT)**

**he became an apostle along with the other eleven apostles (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the believers considered him to be an apostle with the other eleven" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the eleven apostles](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [lots](#)
- [lot](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the other eleven apostles](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [lots to choose between the two of](#)
- [lot](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> They cast [lots](#) for them, and the [lot](#) fell to Matthias, and he was numbered with [the eleven apostles](#).

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Then they cast [lots to choose between the two of](#) them, and the [lot](#) fell for Matthias, and he became an apostle along with [the other eleven apostles](#).

## Acts 2

### Acts 2 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 2:17-21, 25-28, and 34-35.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted material in 2:31.

The events described in this chapter are commonly called “Pentecost.” Many people believe that the church began to exist when the Holy Spirit came to live inside believers in this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Tongues

The word “tongues” has two meanings in this chapter. Luke describes what came down from heaven (Acts 2:3) as tongues that looked like fire. This is different from “a tongue of flame,” which is a fire that looks like a tongue. Luke also uses the word “tongues” to describe the languages that the people spoke after the Holy Spirit filled them ([Acts 2:4](#)).

##### Last days

No one knows for sure when the “last days” (Acts 2:17) began. Your translation should not say more than the ULT does about this. (See: [last day](#), [latter days](#))

##### Baptize

The word “baptize” in this chapter refers to Christian baptism ([Acts 2:38-41](#)). Though the event described in [Acts 2:1-11](#) is the baptism of the Holy Spirit that Jesus promised in Acts 1:5, the word “baptize” here does not refer to that event. (See: [baptize](#), [baptized](#), [baptism](#))

##### The prophecy of Joel

Many of the things that Joel said would happen did happen on the day of Pentecost ([Acts 2:17-18](#)), but some things Joel spoke of did not happen ([Acts 2:19-20](#)). (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

##### Wonders and signs

These words refer to things that only God could do that showed that Jesus is who the disciples said he is.

## Acts 2:1

### General Information:

This is a new event; it is now the Day of Pentecost, 50 days after Passover.

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to the apostles and the other 120 believers that Luke mentions in [Acts 1:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Pentecost](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Pentecost festival](#)
- [day](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When the [day of Pentecost](#) came, they were all together in the same place.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> On the [day](#) when the Jews were celebrating the [Pentecost festival](#), the believers were all together in one place in Jerusalem.

## Acts 2:2

### suddenly (ULT)

### Suddenly, they heard (UST)

This word refers to an event that happens unexpectedly.

### there came...from heaven a sound (ULT)

### Suddenly, they heard...a noise coming from the sky (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "heaven" refers to the place where God lives. Alternate translation: "a sound came from heaven" or 2) "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sound came from the sky"

### a sound like the rush of a violent wind (ULT)

### a noise coming...that sounded like a strong wind (UST)

"a noise that sounded like a very strong wind blowing"

### the whole house (ULT)

### the entire house (UST)

This may have been a house or a larger building.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [of a...wind](#)
- [like](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)
- [a...wind](#)
- [that sounded like](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then suddenly there came from [heaven](#) a sound [like](#) the rush [of a](#) violent [wind](#), and it filled the whole [house](#) where they were sitting.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Suddenly, they heard a noise coming from the [sky that sounded like](#) a strong [wind](#). Everyone in the entire [house](#) where they were sitting heard the noise.

## Acts 2:3

**There appeared...to them...tongues like fire (ULT)  
saw what looked...These flames separated from...like  
flames of fire (UST)**

These might not be actual tongues or fire, but something that looked like them. Possible meanings are 1) tongues that looked like they were made of fire or 2) small flames of fire that looked like tongues. When fire burns in a small space, such as on a lamp, the flame can be shaped like a tongue. (See: [Simile](#))

**that were distributed...There appeared...they sat upon  
each one of them (ULT)**

**These flames separated from...Then they...one  
another...came down on each of the believers (UST)**

This means that the “tongues like fire” spread out so that there was one on each person.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [tongues](#)
- [fire](#)
- [like](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [flames](#)
- [of fire](#)
- [like](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> There appeared to them [tongues like fire](#) that were distributed, and they sat upon each one of them.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Then they saw what looked [like flames of fire](#). These flames separated from one another and came down on each of the believers.

## Acts 2:4

**They were...all...filled with...the Holy Spirit and (ULT)  
all of the believers were filled with the Holy Spirit and (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit filled all of those who were there and they" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to speak in other tongues (ULT)  
to speak different languages (UST)**

They were speaking in languages that they did not already know.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [They were...filled with](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [tongues](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were filled](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [with the Holy Spirit](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [languages](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [They were](#) all [filled with the Holy Spirit](#) and began to speak in other [tongues](#), as the [Spirit](#) gave them ability to speak.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then all of the believers [were filled with the Holy Spirit](#) and began to speak different [languages](#) in the way that the [Spirit](#) made each one able to.



## Acts 2:5

### General Information:

Here the word “them” refers to the believers; the word “his” refers to each person in the multitude. Verse 5 gives background information about the large number of Jews who were living in Jerusalem, many of whom were present during this event. (See: [Background Information](#))

### godly men (ULT)

### They were Jewish people who sincerely worshiped (UST)

Here “godly men” refers to people who were devout in their worship of God and tried to obey all of the Jewish laws.

### every nation under heaven (ULT)

### God. They had come...many different countries (UST)

“every nation in the world.” The word “every” is an exaggeration that emphasizes that the people came from many different nations. Alternate translation: “many different nations” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [nation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They had come](#)
- [At that time many Jews](#)
- [Jerusalem to celebrate the Pentecost festival](#)
- [countries](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Now there were [Jews](#) who were living in [Jerusalem](#), godly men, from every [nation](#) under [heaven](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [At that time many Jews](#) were staying in [Jerusalem to celebrate the Pentecost festival](#). They were Jewish people who sincerely worshiped God. [They had come](#) from many different [countries](#).

## Acts 2:6

### When this sound happened (ULT)

### When they heard the loud noise like a wind, a (UST)

This refers to the sound that was similar to a strong wind. Alternate translation: "When they heard this sound" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the multitude (ULT)

### crowd of them...the place where the believers were (UST)

"the large crowd of people"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sound](#)
- [came together](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [loud noise like a wind](#)
- [came together at](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When this [sound](#) happened, the multitude [came together](#) and was confused because each one of them heard them speaking in their own language.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> When they heard the [loud noise like a wind](#), a crowd of them [came together at](#) the place where the believers were. The crowd was amazed because each of them was hearing one of the believers speaking in his own language.

## Acts 2:7

**They were all amazed and marveled (ULT)**

**They were completely amazed...so how can they know our languages (UST)**

These two words share similar meanings. Together they emphasize the intensity of amazement. Alternate translation: "They were greatly amazed" (See: [Doublet](#))

**Really, are not all these who are speaking Galileans (ULT)**

**and they said to each other...All these men who are speaking have come from Galilee (UST)**

The people ask this question to express their amazement. The question could be changed to an exclamation. Alternate translation: "All of these Galileans could not possibly know our languages!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Exclamations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Galileans](#)
- [They were...amazed](#)
- [marveled](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [have come from Galilee](#)
- [They were completely amazed](#)
- [so how can they know our languages](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [They were](#) all [amazed](#) and [marveled](#); they said, "Really, are not all these who are speaking [Galileans](#)?"

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> [They were completely amazed](#), and they said to each other, "All these men who are speaking [have come from Galilee, so how can they know our languages](#)?"

## Acts 2:8

**So how is it that we are hearing them, each in our own language in which we were born (ULT)**

**But all of us hear them speaking our own language that we learned from birth (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) this is a rhetorical question that expresses how amazed they were or 2) this is a real question for which the people wanted an answer. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**in our own language in which we were born (ULT)**  
**of us...our own language that...learned from birth (UST)**

“in our own languages that we have learned from birth”

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So how is it that we are hearing them, each in our own language in which we were born?

### UST

<sup>8</sup> But all of us hear them speaking our own language that we learned from birth!

## Acts 2:9

### Parthians...Medes...Elamites (ULT)

Some of us are from...regions of Parthia...Media...Elam (UST)

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in Mesopotamia, in Judea...in Cappadocia, in Pontus...Asia (ULT)

Mesopotamia, Judea...Cappadocia, Pontus...Asia (UST)

These are names of large areas of land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Asia](#)
- [Elamites](#)
- [in Judea](#)
- [in Pontus](#)
- [Medes](#)
- [in Mesopotamia](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Asia](#)
- [Elam](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Pontus](#)
- [Media](#)
- [Mesopotamia](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Parthians and [Medes](#) and [Elamites](#), and those who live [in Mesopotamia](#), [in Judea](#) and also in Cappadocia, [in Pontus](#) and in [Asia](#),

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Some of us are from the regions of Parthia and [Media](#) and [Elam](#), and others of us are from the regions of [Mesopotamia](#), [Judea](#), Cappadocia, [Pontus](#), and [Asia](#).

**Acts 2:10**

**Phrygia...Pamphylia, in Egypt...of Libya...toward Cyrene (ULT)**

**There are some people there from Phrygia...Pamphylia, Egypt...regions in Libya...city of Cyrene (UST)**

These are names of large areas of land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [from Rome](#)
- [in Egypt](#)
- [toward Cyrene](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [from Rome](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [city of Cyrene](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> Phrygia and also Pamphylia, [in Egypt](#) and in the parts of Libya [toward Cyrene](#), and those visiting [from Rome](#),

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> There are some people there from Phrygia and Pamphylia, [Egypt](#), and the regions in Libya that are near the [city of Cyrene](#). There are others of us who are here visiting Jerusalem [from Rome](#).

## Acts 2:11

### Cretans...Arabians (ULT)

**And others of us are from the Island of Crete...from the region of Arabia (UST)**

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### proselytes (ULT)

**non-Jews who believe what we Jews believe (UST)**

converts to the Jewish religion

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Arabians](#)
- [Cretans](#)
- [languages](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [include native Jews](#)
- [God has done](#)
- [from the region of Arabia](#)
- [And others of us are from the Island of Crete](#)
- [languages about](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Both [Jews](#) and proselytes, [Cretans](#) and [Arabians](#), we hear them telling in our [languages](#) about the mighty works [of God](#)."

### UST

<sup>11</sup> They [include native Jews](#) as well as non-Jews who believe what we Jews believe. [And others of us are from the Island of Crete](#) and [from the region of Arabia](#). So how is it that these people are speaking our [languages about](#) the great things [God has done](#)?"

## Acts 2:12

**they were...amazed...and perplexed (ULT)**

**The people were amazed...and did not know what (UST)**

These two words share similar meanings. Together they emphasize that the people could not understand what was happening. Alternate translation: "surprised and confused" (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they were...amazed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The people were amazed](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> So [they were](#) all [amazed](#) and perplexed, saying to one another, "What does this mean?"

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [The people were amazed](#) and did not know what to think about what was happening. So they asked one another, "What does this mean?"



## Acts 2:13

**They are full...of new wine (ULT)**  
**they have drunk too much new wine (UST)**

Some people accuse the believers of having drunk too much wine.  
 Alternate translation: "They are drunk" (See: [Idiom](#))

**of new wine (ULT)**  
**new wine (UST)**

This refers to wine that is in the process of fermentation.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [mocked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [made fun of what they saw](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But others [mocked](#) and said, "They are full of new wine."

### UST

<sup>13</sup> But some of them [made fun of what they saw](#). They said, "These people are talking like this because they have drunk too much new wine!"

## Acts 2:14

### Connecting Statement:

Peter begins his speech to the Jews who were there on the Day of Pentecost.

**stood...with the eleven (ULT)**

**stood up...with the other eleven apostles (UST)**

All the apostles stood up in support of Peter's statement.

**raised his voice (ULT)**

**and spoke loudly to the crowd of people; he said (UST)**

This is an idiom for "spoke loudly." (See: [Idiom](#))

**let this be known to you (ULT)**

**of you...to you what is happening (UST)**

This means that Peter is about to explain the meaning of what the people had witnessed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "know this" or "let me explain this to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**pay attention to my words (ULT)**

**listen to me...I will explain (UST)**

Peter was referring to what he was saying. Alternate translation: "listen carefully to what I am saying" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [eleven](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [at Jerusalem](#)
- [voice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [other eleven apostles](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [he said](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But [Peter](#) stood with the [eleven](#), raised his [voice](#), and said to them, "Men [of Judea](#) and all of you who live [at Jerusalem](#), let this be known to you, and pay attention to my words.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> So [Peter](#) stood up with the [other eleven apostles](#) and spoke loudly to the crowd of people; [he said](#), "You men [of Judea](#) and you others who are staying [in Jerusalem](#), listen to me, all of you, and I will explain to you what is happening!

**Acts 2:15**

**For...the third hour of the day (ULT)  
not drunk...only nine o'clock in the morning, and  
people here never get drunk at this time of the day  
(UST)**

"It is only nine o'clock in the morning." Peter expected his audience to know that people do not get drunk that early in the day. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the...hour](#)
- [drunk](#)
- [as](#)
- [day](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [only nine o'clock in the morning](#)
- [are drunk, but we are](#)
- [Some of you](#)
- [day](#)

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> For these people are not [drunk as](#) you assume, for it is only the third [hour](#) of the [day](#).

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> [Some of you](#) think that we [are drunk, but we are](#) not drunk. It is [only nine o'clock in the morning](#), and people here never get drunk at this time of the [day](#)!

## Acts 2:16

### General Information:

Here Peter tells them a passage about which the prophet Joel wrote in the Old Testament that relates to what is happening with the languages in which the believers spoke. This is written in the form of poetry as well as being a quotation.

**this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel (ULT)  
what has happened to us is the miraculous thing that  
the prophet Joel wrote about long ago. He wrote (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “this is what God told the prophet Joel to write” or “this is that which the prophet Joel spoke” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#)

#### ULT

**16** But this is what was spoken through the [prophet](#) Joel:

#### UST

**16** Instead, what has happened to us is the miraculous thing that the [prophet](#) Joel wrote about long ago. He wrote:

**Acts 2:17****It will be (ULT)****During (UST)**

“This is what will happen” or “This is what I will do”

**I will pour out of my Spirit on all flesh (ULT)****I will give my Holy Spirit to all people (UST)**

Here the words “pour out” mean to give generously and abundantly.

Alternate translation: “I will give my Spirit abundantly to all people”

(See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sons](#)
- [will prophesy](#)
- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [last days](#)
- [old men](#)
- [days](#)
- [will see](#)
- [dreams](#)
- [will dream](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [sons](#)
- [my messages](#)
- [God](#)
- [people](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [last days](#)
- [old men](#)
- [days](#)
- [will give visions](#)
- [I will give dreams to](#)
- [I will give dreams to](#)

**ULT**

**17** ‘It will be in the [last days](#),’ [God](#) says, ‘I will pour out of my [Spirit](#) on all [flesh](#). Your [sons](#) and your daughters [will prophesy](#), and your young men [will see](#) visions, and your [old men will dream dreams](#).’

**UST**

**17** ‘During the [last days](#),’ [God](#) says, ‘I will give my [Holy Spirit](#) to all [people](#), and your [sons](#) and daughters will tell people [my messages](#), and I [will give visions](#) to the young men, and [I will give dreams to](#) the [old men](#).’

## Acts 2:18

### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues to quote the prophet Joel.

### on my servants and...female servants (ULT) to my servants (UST)

“both my male and my female servants.” These words emphasize that God will pour out his Spirit on all of his servants, both men and women.

### I will pour out of my Spirit (ULT) I will give my Holy Spirit (UST)

Here the words “pour out” mean to give generously and abundantly. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:17](#).  
Alternate translation: “I will give my Spirit abundantly to all people” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they will prophesy](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [days](#)
- [servants](#)
- [female servants](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they can tell people my messages](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [days](#)
- [to my servants](#)
- [to my servants](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Even on my [servants](#) and on my [female servants](#) in those [days](#) I will pour out of my [Spirit](#), and [they will prophesy](#).

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> During those [days](#) I will give my [Holy Spirit to my servants](#) so [they can tell people my messages](#).

**Acts 2:19****vapor of smoke (ULT)****smoke everywhere (UST)**

“thick smoke” or “clouds of smoke”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sky
- signs
- blood
- wonders
- fire
- earth

**Translation Words - UST**

- sky
- I will do miracles on the earth to show that important
- there will be blood
- amazing things
- fire
- earth

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> I will show [wonders](#) in the [sky](#) above and [signs](#) on the [earth](#) below, [blood](#) and [fire](#) and vapor of smoke.

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> I will cause [amazing things](#) to happen in the [sky](#), and [I will do miracles on the earth to show that important](#) and amazing things will happen. Here on the [earth there will be blood](#), [fire](#), and smoke everywhere.

## Acts 2:20

### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes quoting the prophet Joel.

**The sun will be turned to darkness (ULT)**  
**In the sky the sun will appear dark to people (UST)**

This means that the sun will appear to be dark instead of light.  
 Alternate translation: "The sun will become dark" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the moon to blood (ULT)**  
**the moon will appear red to them. Those things will happen (UST)**

This means that the moon will appear to be red like blood. Alternate translation: "the moon will appear to be red" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

**of the...day...great and remarkable (ULT)**  
**the Lord God, will come to judge everyone...the Lord God, will come to judge everyone (UST)**

The words "great" and "remarkable" share similar meanings and emphasize the intensity of greatness. Alternate translation: "the very great day" (See: [Doublet](#))

**remarkable (ULT)**  
**the Lord God, will come to judge everyone (UST)**

great and beautiful

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Lord](#)
- [of the...day of the Lord](#)
- [blood](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [of the...day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Lord God, will come to judge everyone](#)
- [the Lord God, will come to judge everyone](#)
- [Those things will happen](#)
- [dark](#)
- [the Lord God, will come to judge everyone](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The sun will be turned to [darkness](#) and the moon to [blood](#), before the coming [of the](#) great and remarkable [day of the Lord](#).

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> In the sky the sun will appear [dark](#) to people and the moon will appear red to them. [Those things will happen](#) before I, [the Lord God, will come to judge everyone](#).



## Acts 2:21

**everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved (ULT)**

**all those who ask me to...them from the guilt of their sins...be saved (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Lord will save everyone who calls on him" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- will be saved
- who calls
- of the Lord
- name

### Translation Words - UST

- who ask me to...them from the guilt of their sins...be saved
- who ask me to...them from the guilt of their sins...be saved
- who ask me to...them from the guilt of their sins...be saved
- who ask me to...them from the guilt of their sins...be saved

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> It will be that everyone [who calls](#) on the [name of the Lord will be saved](#).'

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Before that time, all those [who ask me to](#) save [them from the guilt of their sins](#) will [be saved](#)."

## Acts 2:22

### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech to the Jews that he began in [Acts 1:16](#).

**hear these words (ULT)**

**listen to me (UST)**

“listen to what I am about to say”

**accredited to you by God with the mighty deeds, and wonders, and signs**

This means that God proved that he had appointed Jesus for his mission, and proved who he was by his many miracles.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus of Nazareth
- signs
- with the mighty deeds
- God
- God
- of Israel
- of Nazareth
- wonders
- as
- you...know

### Translation Words - UST

- When Jesus from Nazareth lived
- making him able to do many amazing miracles
- making him able to do many amazing miracles
- God
- God
- Israelites
- from Nazareth lived
- making him able to do many amazing miracles
- you...You yourselves know that this is true
- you...You yourselves know that this is true

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Men [of Israel](#), hear these words: [Jesus of Nazareth](#) was a man accredited to you by [God with the mighty deeds](#), and [wonders](#), and [signs](#) which [God](#) did through him in your midst, [as](#) you yourselves [know](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Peter continued speaking, “My fellow [Israelites](#), listen to me! [When Jesus from Nazareth lived](#) among you, [God](#) proved to you that he had sent him by [making him able to do many amazing miracles](#) that showed that he was from [God](#). [You yourselves know that this is true](#).

## Acts 2:23

**by the predetermined plan and foreknowledge of God (ULT)**

**the...However, God had already planned for that, and he knew all about it (UST)**

The nouns “plan” and “foreknowledge” can be translated as verbs. This means that God planned out and knew beforehand what would happen to Jesus. Alternate translation: “because God planned out and knew beforehand everything that would happen” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**This man...handed over (ULT)**

**Even though you knew that...you handed this man Jesus over into (UST)**

Possible meanings: 1) “you handed Jesus over into the hands of his enemies” or 2) “Judas betrayed Jesus to you.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by the hand of lawless men, you put to death by nailing him to a cross (ULT)**

**hands of his enemies...Then you urged men who do not obey God’s law to kill Jesus. They did that by nailing him to a cross (UST)**

Although “lawless men” actually crucified Jesus, Peter accuses the crowd of having killed him because they demanded his death.

**by the hand of lawless men (ULT)**

**Then you urged men who do not obey God’s law...They did that by (UST)**

Here “hand” refers to the actions of the lawless men. Alternate translation: “through the actions of lawless men” or “by what lawless men did” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of lawless men (ULT)**

**who do not obey God’s law (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) the unbelieving Jews who accused Jesus of crimes or 2) the Roman soldiers who performed the execution of Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- you put to death
- of God
- the hand
- foreknowledge
- of lawless men
- plan

### Translation Words - UST

- hands of his enemies...nailing him to a cross
- However, God had already planned for that, and he knew all about it

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> This man, by the predetermined [plan](#) and [foreknowledge of God](#), handed over by [the hand of lawless men](#), you [put to death](#) by nailing him to a cross.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Even though you knew that, you handed this man Jesus over into the [hands of his enemies](#). [However, God had already planned for that, and he knew all about it](#). [Then you urged men who do not obey God’s law](#) to kill Jesus. They did that by [nailing him to a cross](#).

- Then you urged men
- However, God had already planned for that, and he knew all about it
- who do not obey God's law
- However, God had already planned for that, and he knew all about it

**Acts 2:24****He is the one whom God raised up (ULT)****He died, but God raised him up again (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "But God caused him to live again" (See: [Idiom](#))

**freeing him from the agony of death (ULT)****God caused Jesus to become alive again (UST)**

Peter speaks of dying as if death were a person who ties people up with painful ropes and holds them captive. He speaks of God ending Christ's death as if God broke the ropes that held Christ and set Christ free. Alternate translation: "ending the pains of death" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

**for him to be held by it (ULT)****for him to remain dead (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for death to hold him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**for him to be held by it (ULT)****for him to remain dead (UST)**

Peter speaks of Christ remaining dead as if death were a person who held him captive. Alternate translation: "for him to remain dead" (See: [Personification](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [of death](#)
- [raised up](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [God caused Jesus to become alive again](#)
- [raised him up again](#)

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> He is the one whom [God raised up](#), freeing him from the agony [of death](#), because it was not possible for him to be held by it.

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> He died, but [God raised him up again](#), because it was not possible for him to remain dead. [God caused Jesus to become alive again](#).

## Acts 2:25

### General Information:

Here Peter quotes a passage that David wrote in a Psalm which relates to Jesus' crucifixion and resurrection. Since Peter says that David said these words about Jesus, the words "I" and "my" refer to Jesus and the words "Lord" and "he" refer to God.

### before my face (ULT)

### beside me (UST)

"in front of me." Alternate translation: "in my presence" or "with me" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

### beside my right hand (ULT)

### right...I (UST)

To be at someone's "right hand" often means to be in a position to help and sustain. Alternate translation: "right beside me" or "with me to help me" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Idiom](#))

### I should not be moved (ULT)

### not be afraid (UST)

Here the word "moved" means to be troubled. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will not be able to cause me trouble" or "nothing will trouble me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord God](#)
- [right](#)
- [Long ago King David wrote what](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> For [David](#) says about him, 'I saw the [Lord](#) always before my face, for he is beside my [right hand](#) so that I should not be moved.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [Long ago King David wrote what](#) the Messiah said, 'I knew that you, [Lord God](#), would always hear me. You are [right](#) beside me, so I will not be afraid of those who want to harm me.

## Acts 2:26

**my heart was glad and my tongue rejoiced (ULT)**  
**I joyfully praise you, O God (UST)**

People consider the “heart” the center of emotions and the “tongue” voices those emotions. Alternate translation: “I was glad and rejoiced” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**my flesh...will live in certain hope (ULT)**  
**I joyfully praise you, O God...And I am completely confident that you will cause my body to become alive again from the dead (UST)**

Possible meanings of the word “flesh” are 1) he is a mortal who will die. Alternate translation: “Even though I am only mortal, I will have confidence in God” or 2) it is synecdoche for his entire person. Alternate translation: “I will live with confidence in God” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Because of this, my [heart was glad](#) and my [tongue rejoiced](#). Indeed, my [flesh](#) also will live in [certain hope](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Because of that [I joyfully praise you, O God](#). And [I am completely confident](#) that you will cause my [body](#) to become alive again from the dead.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [heart](#)
- [certain hope](#)
- [tongue](#)
- [was glad](#)
- [rejoiced](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [body](#)
- [I joyfully praise you, O God](#)
- [I am completely confident](#)
- [I joyfully praise you, O God](#)
- [I joyfully praise you, O God](#)
- [I joyfully praise you, O God](#)

## Acts 2:27

### General Information:

Since Peter says that David said these words about Jesus, the words "my," "Holy One," and "me" refer to Jesus and the words "you" and "your" refer to God.

### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes quoting David.

**neither will you allow your Holy One to see decay (ULT)  
You will...make me remain in the place where...the...  
dead are. You will not even...let...my...body waste  
away...I am devoted to you and always obey you (UST)**

The Messiah, Jesus, refers to himself with the words "your Holy One." Alternate translation: "neither will you allow me, your Holy One, to see decay" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**to see decay (ULT)**

**let...body waste away (UST)**

Here the word "see" means to experience something. The word "decay" refers to the decomposition of his body after death. Alternate translation: "to decay" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Hades](#)
- [soul](#)
- [Holy One](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You will...make me remain in the place where...dead are. You will not even...my](#)
- [You will...make me remain in the place where...dead are. You will not even...my](#)
- [I am devoted to](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For you will not abandon my [soul](#) to [Hades](#), neither will you allow your [Holy One](#) to see decay.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> [You will](#) not [make me remain in the place where](#) the [dead are](#). [You will not even](#) let [my](#) body waste away, because [I am devoted to](#) you and always obey you.



## Acts 2:28

**the paths of life (ULT)**

**how to become alive again (UST)**

“the ways that lead to life”

**you will fill me with gladness in your presence (ULT)**

**You will make me very happy...you will be with me forever (UST)**

Here the word “face” refers to the presence of God. Alternate translation: “very glad when I see you” or “very glad when I am in your presence” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**with gladness (ULT)**

**You will make me very happy (UST)**

joy, happiness

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of life](#)
- [with gladness](#)
- [presence](#)
- [You revealed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [alive again](#)
- [You will make me very happy](#)
- [you will be with me forever](#)
- [You have shown](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> [You revealed](#) to me the paths [of life](#); you will fill me [with gladness](#) in your [presence](#).’

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> [You have shown](#) me how to become [alive again](#). [You will make me very happy](#) because [you will be with me forever](#).”

## Acts 2:29

### General Information:

In verses 29 & 30, the words he," "his," and "him" refer to David. In verse 31, the first "He" refers to David and the words within the quote "He" and "his" refer to Christ.

### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech that he began in [Acts 1:16](#) to the Jews that surround him and the other believers in Jerusalem.

**brothers, I am permitted (ULT)**

**Peter continued, "My fellow Jews, I am sure (UST)**

"My fellow Jews, I"

**he both died and was buried (ULT)**

**died and...him...buried (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he died and people buried him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [David](#)
- [was buried](#)
- [he...died](#)
- [I am permitted](#)
- [tomb](#)
- [patriarch](#)
- [day](#)
- [freedom](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter continued, "My fellow Jews, I am sure](#)
- [King David](#)
- [buried](#)
- [died](#)
- [Peter continued...My fellow Jews, I am sure](#)
- [place where they](#)
- [that our forefather](#)
- [body is still here today](#)
- [Peter continued...My fellow Jews, I am sure](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Men, [brothers](#), [I am permitted](#) to speak to you with [freedom](#) about the [patriarch David](#), that [he](#) both [died](#) and [was buried](#), and his [tomb](#) is with us to this [day](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> [Peter continued, "My fellow Jews, I am sure that our forefather, King David, died](#) and that the people buried him. And his [body is still here today](#) at the [place where they buried](#) him.

## Acts 2:30

**that he would set one of the fruit of his body upon his throne (ULT)**

**that one of his descendants would become king (UST)**

“God would set one of David’s descendants upon David’s throne.”

Alternate translation: “God would appoint one of David’s descendants to be king in David’s place” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**one of the fruit of his body (ULT)**

**that one of his descendants would become king (UST)**

Here the word “fruit” refers to what “his body” produces. Alternate translation: “one of his descendants” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a prophet](#)
- [God](#)
- [the fruit](#)
- [throne](#)
- [of...body](#)
- [had sworn](#)
- [had sworn with an oath](#)
- [knew](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a prophet](#)
- [God](#)
- [that one of his descendants would become king](#)
- [that one of his descendants would become king](#)
- [that one of his descendants would become king](#)
- [promised](#)
- [promised](#)
- [he knew](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Therefore, he was [a prophet](#) and [knew](#) that [God had sworn with an oath](#) to him, that he would set one of [the fruit](#) of his [body](#) upon his [throne](#).

### UST

<sup>30</sup> King David was [a prophet](#), and [he knew](#) that [God promised](#) to him [that one of his descendants would become king](#).

## Acts 2:31

**He was neither abandoned to Hades (ULT)  
God would not allow him to remain in a grave, and he  
would (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God did not abandon him to Hades" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**nor did his flesh see decay (ULT)  
not let his body waste away (UST)**

Here the word "see" means to experience something. The word "decay" refers to the decomposition of his body after death. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:27](#). Alternate translation: "nor did his flesh decay" or "nor did he remain dead long enough for his flesh to decay" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Hades](#)
- [Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to live again after he died](#)
- [let his body](#)
- [a grave, and he would](#)
- [God would cause Jesus the Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Having seen what was to happen in the future, he spoke about the [resurrection](#) of the [Christ](#), that, 'He was neither abandoned to [Hades](#), nor did his [flesh](#) see decay.'

### UST

<sup>31</sup> A long time ago, David knew what God would do. He said that [God would cause Jesus the Messiah to live again after he died](#). God would not allow him to remain in [a grave, and he would](#) not [let his body](#) waste away.

## Acts 2:32

### General Information:

Here, the second word “this” refers to the disciples’ speaking in other languages when they received the Holy Spirit. The word “we” refers to the disciples and those that witnessed the risen Jesus after his death. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### God raised him up (ULT)

### God caused him to become alive again (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “God caused him to live again” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [witnesses](#)
- [raised him up](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus had died](#)
- [God caused him to become alive again](#)
- [saw him](#)
- [God caused him to become alive again](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> This [Jesus](#)—[God raised him up](#), of which we all are [witnesses](#).

### UST

<sup>32</sup> After this man [Jesus had died](#), [God caused him to become alive again](#). All of us, his followers, know this because we [saw him](#).

## Acts 2:33

**to the right hand...having been exalted...of God (ULT)**  
**by causing him to rule where he himself is in heaven...**  
**God has greatly honored Jesus (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because God has exalted Jesus up to his right hand" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to the right hand...having been exalted...of God (ULT)**  
**by causing him to rule where he himself is in heaven...**  
**God has greatly honored Jesus (UST)**

"Right hand of God" here is an idiom that means that Christ will rule as God, with God's authority. Alternate translation: "Christ is in the position of God" (See: [Idiom](#))

**he has poured out...which (ULT)**  
**So Jesus has generously given...by (UST)**

Here the words "poured out" mean that Jesus, who is God, made these events to happen. It is implicit that he does this by giving the Holy Spirit to the believers. Alternate translation: "he has caused to happen these things that" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he has poured out (ULT)**  
**So Jesus has generously given (UST)**

Here the words "pour out" mean to give generously and abundantly. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Acts 2:17](#). Alternate translation: "given abundantly" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [Father](#)
- [promise](#)
- [having been exalted](#)
- [having received](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [us the Holy Spirit](#)
- [God has greatly honored Jesus](#)
- [us the Holy Spirit](#)
- [by causing him to rule where he himself is in heaven](#)
- [Jesus has received...Holy Spirit from God his Father](#)
- [just like God promised](#)
- [God has greatly honored Jesus](#)
- [us the Holy Spirit](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Therefore [having been exalted](#) to the [right hand of God](#) and [having received](#) the [promise](#) of the [Holy Spirit](#) from the [Father](#), he has poured out this which you both see and hear.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> [God has greatly honored Jesus by causing him to rule where he himself is in heaven. Jesus has received the Holy Spirit from God his Father, just like God promised.](#) So Jesus has generously given [us the Holy Spirit](#), and God has confirmed that gift by the things you are see and hear.

## Acts 2:34

### General Information:

Peter again quotes one of David's Psalms. David is not speaking of himself in this Psalm. "The Lord" and "my" refer to God; "my Lord" and "your" refer to Jesus the Messiah.

### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to the Jews that he began in [Acts 1:16](#).

### Sit at my right hand (ULT)

### Reign here where I am (UST)

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [to...Lord](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven as Jesus did](#)
- [The Lord God](#)
- [to...Lord](#)
- [Reign here where I am](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> For [David](#) did not ascend to the [heaven](#), but he himself says, '[The Lord](#) said to my [Lord](#), "Sit at my [right hand](#),

### UST

<sup>34</sup> We know that David was not speaking about himself because [David](#) did not go up into [heaven as Jesus did](#). Besides that, David himself said this about the Messiah: '[The Lord God](#) said to my [Lord](#) the Messiah, "[Reign here where I am](#),

## Acts 2:35

**until I make your enemies the stool for your feet (ULT)**  
**while I completely defeat your enemies (UST)**

This means that God will completely defeat the Messiah's enemies and make them subject to him. Alternate translation: "until I make you victorious over all of your enemies" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the stool](#)
- [enemies](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [completely defeat](#)
- [enemies](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> until I make your [enemies the stool](#) for your feet."

### UST

<sup>35</sup> while I [completely defeat](#) your [enemies](#)."



## Acts 2:36

**all the house of Israel (ULT)**

**all other Israelites (UST)**

This refers to the entire nation of Israel. Alternate translation: “every Israelite” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [crucified](#)
- [God](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [the house](#)
- [let...know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [had nailed to a cross and killed](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [to know](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Therefore, let all [the house of Israel](#) certainly [know](#) that [God](#) has made him both [Lord](#) and [Christ](#), this [Jesus](#) whom you [crucified](#).”

### UST

<sup>36</sup> Peter ended by saying, “So I want you and all other [Israelites to know](#) that [God](#) made Jesus both [Lord](#) and [Messiah](#), this same [Jesus](#) whom you [had nailed to a cross and killed](#).”

## Acts 2:37

### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the people in the crowd to whom Peter spoke.

### Connecting Statement:

The Jews respond to Peter's speech and Peter answers them.

**when they heard this (ULT)**

**When the people heard what (UST)**

"when the people heard what Peter had said"

**they were pierced in the heart (ULT)**

**they knew they had done wrong (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Peter's words pierced their hearts" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were pierced in the heart (ULT)**

**they knew they had done wrong (UST)**

This means that the people felt guilty and became very sad. Alternate translation: "deeply troubled" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [heart](#)
- [of the apostles](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [they were pierced](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)
- [they knew they had done wrong](#)
- [apostles said](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [they knew they had done wrong](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Now when they heard this, [they were pierced](#) in the [heart](#), and said to [Peter](#) and the rest [of the apostles](#), "Men, [brothers](#), what shall we do?"

### UST

<sup>37</sup> When the people heard what [Peter](#) and the other [apostles said](#), [they knew they had done wrong](#). The [people](#) said to them, "What should we do?"

## Acts 2:38

### be baptized (ULT)

### we will baptize you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “allow us to baptize you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in the name of Jesus Christ (ULT)

### Since you...believe what Jesus, the Messiah, has done for you (UST)

“In the name of” here is a metonym for “by the authority of”  
Alternate translation: “by the authority of Jesus Christ” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus Christ
- be baptized
- gift
- of...sins
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- the forgiveness
- name
- Repent
- Christ
- Peter
- you will receive

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus, the Messiah
- we will baptize you
- he will give you his
- sins
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- has forgiven
- Since you...believe what...has done for you
- turn away
- the Messiah
- Peter
- he will give you his

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Then [Peter](#) said to them, “[Repent](#), I say, and [be baptized](#), each of you, in the [name of Jesus Christ](#) for [the forgiveness](#) of your [sins](#), and [you will receive](#) the [gift](#) of the [Holy Spirit](#).”

### UST

<sup>38</sup> [Peter](#) answered them, “Each of you should [turn away](#) from your sinful behavior. [Since you](#) now [believe what Jesus, the Messiah, has done for you](#), [we will baptize you](#), showing that God [has forgiven](#) your [sins](#), and [he will give you his Holy Spirit](#).”

## Acts 2:39

**to...children...to all...are far off (ULT)**

**to...far away from here...to everyone whom (UST)**

This means either 1) "all people who live far away" or 2) "all people who are far from God."

### Translation Words - ULT

- will call
- the Lord
- God
- to...children
- promise

### Translation Words - UST

- he calls
- The Lord
- God will give his Holy Spirit
- children
- God has promised...do this

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> For the [promise](#) is to you and to your [children](#) and to all who are far off, as many people as [the Lord](#) our [God will call](#)."

### UST

<sup>39</sup> [God has promised](#) to [do this](#) for you and your [children](#), and for all others who believe in Jesus, even those who live far away from here. [The Lord](#) our [God will give his Holy Spirit](#) to everyone whom [he calls](#) to become his people!"

## Acts 2:40

This is the end of the part of the story that happened on the Day of Pentecost. Verse 42 begins a section that explains how the believers continued to live after the Day of Pentecost. (See: [End of Story](#))

### he testified and urged them (ULT) and spoke strongly to them (UST)

“he seriously told them and begged them.” Here the words “testified” and “urged” share similar meanings and emphasize that Peter urged them strongly to respond to what he was saying. Alternate translation: “he strongly urged them” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Save yourselves from this wicked generation (ULT) Ask God to save you so that he will not punish you when he punishes these evil people who have rejected Jesus (UST)

The implication is that God will punish “this wicked generation.” Alternate translation: “Save yourselves from the punishment that these wicked people will suffer” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Save yourselves](#)
- [urged](#)
- [he testified](#)
- [wicked](#)
- [generation](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Ask God to save you](#)
- [and spoke strongly](#)
- [and spoke strongly](#)
- [evil people](#)
- [who have rejected Jesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> With many other words [he testified](#) and [urged](#) them, saying, “[Save yourselves](#) from this [wicked generation](#).”

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> Peter spoke much more [and spoke strongly](#) to them. He told them, “[Ask God to save you](#) so that he will not punish you when he punishes these [evil people who have rejected Jesus](#)!”

## Acts 2:41

### they received his word

Here the word “received” means that they accepted what Peter said to be true. Alternate translation: “they believed what Peter said” (See: [Idiom](#))

### and were baptized (ULT) were baptized (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people baptized them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### there were added in that day about three thousand souls (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “about three thousand souls joined the believers on that day” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### about three thousand souls (ULT)

Here the word “souls” refers to people. Alternate translation: “about 3,000 people” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and were baptized](#)
- [souls](#)
- [received](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were baptized](#)
- [There were](#)
- [people who believed](#)
- [day](#)

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Therefore they indeed [received](#) his word [and were baptized](#), and there were added in that [day](#) about three thousand [souls](#).

### UST

<sup>41</sup> So the [people who believed](#) Peter’s message [were baptized](#). [There were](#) about 3,000 of them who joined the group of believers that [day](#).

## Acts 2:42

### breaking of bread (ULT) they ate a meal (UST)

Bread was part of their meals. Possible meanings are 1) this refers to any meals they might eat together. Alternate translation: “eating meals together” or 2) this refers to the meals they would eat together in order to remember Christ’s death and resurrection. Alternate translation: “eating the Lord’s Supper together” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fellowship
- apostles
- in prayers
- teaching
- of bread

#### Translation Words - UST

- They met many times together with...other believers
- apostles
- prayed together
- what...taught
- they ate a meal

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Then they were continuing in the [teaching](#) of the [apostles](#) and [fellowship](#), in the breaking [of bread](#) and [in prayers](#).

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> They continually obeyed [what](#) the [apostles taught](#). [They met many times together with](#) the [other believers](#), and [they ate a meal](#) and [prayed together](#) every day.

**Acts 2:43****Fear came upon every soul (ULT)****All the people who were in Jerusalem respected (UST)**

Here the word “Fear” refers to deep respect and awe for God. The word “soul” refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “Each person felt a deep respect and awe for God” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**and many wonders and signs took place through the apostles (ULT)****and honored God very much because the apostles were doing many kinds of miraculous things (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) “the apostles performed many wonders and signs” or 2) “God performed many wonders and signs through the apostles” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**wonders and signs (ULT)****and...honored God...miraculous things (UST)**

“miraculous deeds and supernatural events.” See how you translated this in [Acts 2:22](#).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Fear](#)
- [signs](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [soul](#)
- [wonders](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [respected](#)
- [miraculous things](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [All...people who were in Jerusalem](#)
- [honored God](#)

**ULT**

<sup>43</sup> [Fear](#) came upon every [soul](#), and many [wonders](#) and [signs](#) took place through the [apostles](#).

**UST**

<sup>43</sup> [All](#) the [people who were in Jerusalem](#) [respected](#) and [honored God](#) very much because the [apostles](#) were doing many kinds of [miraculous things](#).



## Acts 2:44

**All who believed were together (ULT)**

**All of those who believed in Jesus believed the same things...They also (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "All of them believed the same thing" or 2) "All who believed were together in the same place."

**had all things in common (ULT)**

**kept sharing everything that they had with one another (UST)**

"shared their belongings with one another"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who believed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who believed...Jesus believed](#)

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> All [who believed](#) were together and had all things in common,

### UST

<sup>44</sup> All of those [who believed](#) in [Jesus believed](#) the same things and regularly met together. They also kept sharing everything that they had with one another.

**Acts 2:45**

**and...property...possessions (ULT)**  
**their land...some of the other things that they owned (UST)**

“land and things they owned”

**distributed them to all (ULT)**  
**they gave some of the money to others among them (UST)**

Here the word “them” refers to the profit that they made from selling their property and possessions. Alternate translation: “distributed the proceeds to all” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**as anyone had need (ULT)**  
**according to what they needed (UST)**

They distributed the proceeds that they earned from selling their property and possessions to any believer who had a need.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [property](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [land](#)

**ULT**

<sup>45</sup> and they sold their [property](#) and possessions and distributed them to all, as anyone had need.

**UST**

<sup>45</sup> From time to time some of them sold some of their [land](#) and some of the other things that they owned, and they gave some of the money to others among them, according to what they needed.

## Acts 2:46

**they continued with one purpose (ULT)**  
**they gathered (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "they continued meeting together" or 2) "they all continued to have the same attitude."

**breaking...bread in houses (ULT)**  
**then they would have meals together...in their homes...  
 were eating together (UST)**

Bread was part of their meals. Alternate translation: "they eat meals together in their homes" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**with gladness and sincerity of heart (ULT)**  
**They were happy when they...and...what they had with  
 one another (UST)**

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's emotions. Alternate translation: "joyfully and humbly" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of heart
- temple
- bread
- day
- gladness
- houses

### Translation Words - UST

- They were happy when they...and...what they had with one another
- temple area
- were eating together
- day
- They were happy when they...and...what they had with one another
- in their homes

#### ULT

<sup>46</sup> So every [day](#) they continued with one purpose in the [temple](#), also breaking [bread](#) in [houses](#), and sharing food with [gladness](#) and sincerity [of heart](#),

#### UST

<sup>46</sup> Every [day](#) they gathered in the [temple area](#), and then they would have meals together [in their homes](#). [They were happy when they were eating together](#), and they shared [what they had with one another](#).

## Acts 2:47

### praising God and having favor with all the people

“praising God. All the people approved of them”

#### those who were being saved (ULT)

#### the number of people who were being saved (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom the Lord saved” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [those who were being saved](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [favor](#)
- [God](#)
- [people](#)
- [praising](#)
- [day](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [number of people who were being saved](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [respected them](#)
- [God](#)
- [other people in Jerusalem](#)
- [they kept praising](#)
- [day](#)

#### ULT

<sup>47</sup> [praising God](#) and having [favor](#) with all the [people](#), and every [day](#) the [Lord](#) added [those who were being saved](#) to their number.

#### UST

<sup>47</sup> As they did so, [they kept praising God](#), and all the [other people in Jerusalem respected them](#). As those things were happening, every [day](#) the [Lord Jesus](#) increased the [number of people who were being saved](#) from the punishment of their sins.

## **Acts 3**

### **Acts 3 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The covenant God made with Abraham**

This chapter explains that Jesus came to the Jews because God was fulfilling part of the covenant he had made with Abraham. Peter thought that the Jews were the ones who were truly guilty of killing Jesus, but he

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **“You delivered up”**

The Romans were the ones who killed Jesus, but they killed him because the Jews captured him, brought him to the Romans, and told the Romans to kill him. For this reason Peter thought that they were the ones who were truly guilty of killing Jesus. But he tells them that they are also the first ones to whom God has sent Jesus’ followers to invite them to repent (Luke 3:26). (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#))

## Acts 3:1

### General Information:

Verse 2 gives background information about the lame man. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

One day Peter and John go to the temple.

### into the temple (ULT)

They did not go into the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: “to the temple courtyard” or “into the temple area”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of prayer
- temple
- Peter
- John
- hour

### Translation Words - UST

- It was three o'clock in the afternoon
- temple courtyard
- Peter
- John
- time...people prayed there

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now [Peter](#) and [John](#) were going up into the [temple](#) at the [hour of prayer](#), the ninth hour.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> One day [Peter](#) and [John](#) were going to the [temple courtyard](#). [It was three o'clock in the afternoon](#), at the [time](#) when [people prayed there](#).

## Acts 3:2

**a certain man being lame from the womb of his mother was being carried, whom every day they placed at the gate called Beautiful of the temple (ULT)**

**There was a man there...who had not been able to walk from the time he was born. He was sitting by the gate called Beautiful Gate at the entrance to the temple area. People carried him there every day...that (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Every day, people carried a certain man, lame from birth, and laid him near the Beautiful gate" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**lame (ULT)**

**who had not been able to walk (UST)**

unable to walk

### Translation Words - ULT

- called
- temple
- temple
- gate
- for a gift of money
- the womb
- day
- was being carried

### Translation Words - UST

- called
- at the entrance...temple area
- temple courtyard
- gate
- so...he could ask...give him some money
- the time he was born
- day
- People carried him there

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Now a certain man being lame from [the womb](#) of his mother [was being carried](#), whom every [day](#) they placed at the [gate called](#) Beautiful of the [temple](#), so he could ask [for a gift of money](#) from people who were going into the [temple](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> There was a man there who had not been able to walk from [the time he was born](#). He was sitting by the [gate called](#) Beautiful Gate [at the entrance](#) to the [temple area](#). [People carried him there](#) every [day so](#) that [he could ask](#) those who were entering the [temple courtyard](#) to [give him some money](#).

**Acts 3:3**

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**Translation Words - ULT**

- temple
- Peter
- John
- to give him
- a gift of money

**Translation Words - UST**

- temple courtyard
- Peter
- John
- he began...ask them to give him some money
- he began...ask them to give him some money

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> When he saw [Peter](#) and [John](#) about to enter the [temple](#), he asked them [to give him a gift of money](#).

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> As [Peter](#) and [John](#) were about to enter the [temple courtyard](#), [he began](#) to [ask them to give him some money](#).



## Acts 3:4

**looking intently...Peter...at him, with John, said (ULT)**  
**looked directly...As Peter...John...at him, Peter said to him (UST)**

Both Peter and John looked at the man, but only Peter spoke.

**looking intently...at him (ULT)**  
**looked directly...at him (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "looking directly at him" or 2) "looking intently at him" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [As Peter](#)
- [John](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But [Peter](#), looking intently at him, with [John](#), said, "Look at us."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> [As Peter](#) and [John](#) looked directly at him, Peter said to him, "Look at us!"

## Acts 3:5

**the lame man...looked at them (ULT)**

**So...he looked directly at them (UST)**

Here the word "looked" means to pay attention to something.  
Alternate translation: "The lame man paid close attention to them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to receive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to get](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So the lame man looked at them, expecting [to receive](#) something from them.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> So he looked directly at them, expecting [to get](#) some money from them.

## Acts 3:6

### Silver and gold (ULT) any money (UST)

These words refer to money. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### what...I do have (ULT) what...can do (UST)

It is understood that Peter has the ability to heal the man. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### In the name of Jesus Christ (ULT) In the name of Jesus the Messiah (UST)

Here the word "name" refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: "With the authority of Jesus Christ" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Jesus Christ of Nazareth](#)
- [name](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [of Nazareth](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Silver](#)
- [have](#)
- [walk](#)
- [gold](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Jesus the Messiah of Nazareth](#)
- [name](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [of Nazareth](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [any money](#)
- [I do...have](#)
- [you are healed. Get up and walk](#)
- [any money](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But [Peter](#) said, "[Silver](#) and [gold](#) I do not [have](#), but what I do have, this I will give to you. In the [name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth](#), [walk](#)."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then [Peter](#) said to him, "[I do](#) not [have any money](#), but what I can do I will do for you. In the [name of Jesus the Messiah of Nazareth you are healed. Get up and walk!](#)"

## Acts 3:7

### Peter raised him up (ULT) and helped him to stand up (UST)

"Peter caused him to stand"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [were made strong](#)
- [Peter raised...up](#)
- [Taking](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [became strong](#)
- [and helped...to stand up](#)
- [Peter grasped](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [Taking](#) him by the right [hand](#), [Peter raised](#) him [up](#), and immediately his feet and ankles [were made strong](#).

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then [Peter grasped](#) the man's right [hand and helped](#) him [to stand up](#). That moment the man's feet and ankles [became strong](#).

## Acts 3:8

**he entered...into the temple (ULT)**

**he entered...to...the temple area (UST)**

He did not go inside the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "he entered...the temple area" or "he entered...into the temple courtyard"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [temple](#)
- [began to walk](#)
- [walking](#)
- [praising](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [temple area](#)
- [and began...walk](#)
- [walking](#)
- [praising](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then leaping up, the lame man stood and [began to walk](#); and he entered with them into the [temple](#), [walking](#) and leaping and [praising God](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> He jumped up [and began](#) to [walk](#)! Then he entered the [temple area](#) with Peter and John, [walking](#) and leaping and [praising God](#)!

## Acts 3:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- people
- walking
- praising

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- people in the temple
- walking
- praising

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> All the [people](#) saw him [walking](#) and [praising God](#).

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> All the [people in the temple](#) saw him [walking](#) and [praising God](#).

## Acts 3:10

**They...recognized...that he was the man (ULT)**

**They recognized...that...he was the man who (UST)**

“realized that it was the man” or “recognized him as the man”

**the Beautiful Gate (ULT)**

**the Beautiful Gate (UST)**

This was the name of one of the entrances to the temple area. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Acts 3:2](#).

**they were filled with wonder and amazement (ULT)**

**So all the people there were greatly amazed (UST)**

Here the words “wonder” and “amazement” share similar meanings and emphasize the intensity of the people’s amazement. Alternate translation: “they were extremely amazed” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [Gate](#)
- [a gift of money](#)
- [with wonder](#)
- [amazement](#)
- [They...recognized](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [temple courtyard](#)
- [Gate](#)
- [ask people...money](#)
- [So all the people there were greatly amazed](#)
- [So all the people there were greatly amazed](#)
- [They recognized](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> [They](#) also [recognized](#) him, that he was the man who had been asking people for [a gift of money](#) while sitting at the Beautiful [Gate](#) of the [temple](#); and they were filled [with wonder](#) and [amazement](#) because of what had happened to him.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [They recognized](#) that he was the man who used to sit at the Beautiful [Gate](#) in the [temple courtyard](#) and [ask people](#) for [money](#)! [So all the people there were greatly amazed](#) at what had happened to him.

## Acts 3:11

### General Information:

The phrase “in the porch that is called Solomon’s” makes it clear that they were not inside the temple where only the priests were allowed to enter. Here the words “us” and “we” refer to Peter and John but not to the crowd to whom Peter is talking. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

After healing the man who could not walk, Peter talks to the people.

### the porch that is called Solomon’s

“Solomon’s Porch.” This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof, and which people named after king Solomon.

### greatly marveling (ULT)

### surprised that they did not know what to think (UST)

“extremely surprised”

### Translation Words - ULT

- called
- to Peter
- Solomon’s
- John
- people
- greatly marveling
- ran together

### Translation Words - UST

- is called
- Peter
- Solomon’s
- John
- people were
- surprised that they did not know what to think
- So they ran

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> As he was holding on [to Peter](#) and [John](#), all the [people ran together](#) to them in the porch that is [called Solomon’s](#), [greatly marveling](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> As the man clung to [Peter](#) and [John](#), all the [people were](#) so [surprised that they did not know what to think!](#) [So they ran](#) to them at the place in the temple courtyard that [is called Solomon’s](#) Porch.



## Acts 3:12

### When Peter saw this (ULT)

### When Peter saw (UST)

Here the word "this" refers to the amazement of the people.

### Men of Israel (ULT)

### Fellow Israelites...man (UST)

"Fellow Israelites." Peter was addressing the crowd.

### why do you marvel (ULT)

### you should not be surprised...what has happened (UST)

Peter asks this question to emphasize that they should not be surprised by what had happened. Alternate translation: "you should not be surprised" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### why do you look intently at us, as if we had made him to walk by our own power or godliness (ULT)

### Why do you look...at us...as though we had power by ourselves to make this man walk (UST)

Peter asks this question to emphasize that the people should not think that he and John had healed the man by their own abilities. This could be written as two statements. Alternate translation: "Do not fix your eyes on us. We did not make him walk by our own power or godliness" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### at us...you look intently (ULT)

### at us...do you look (UST)

This means that they looked intently at them without stopping. Alternate translation: "stare at us" or "look at us" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- power
- godliness
- of Israel
- Peter
- people
- do you marvel
- to walk
- as if

### Translation Words - UST

- had power
- had power
- Fellow Israelites
- Peter
- people
- you should not be surprised
- to...walk

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> When [Peter](#) saw this, he answered the [people](#), "Men [of Israel](#), why [do you marvel](#) at this? Or why do you look intently at us, [as if](#) we had made him [to walk](#) by our own [power](#) or [godliness](#)?"

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When [Peter](#) saw the [people](#), he said to them, "[Fellow Israelites](#), [you should not be surprised](#) about what has happened to this man! Why do you look at us [as though](#) we [had power](#) by ourselves to make this man [walk](#)?"

- [as though](#)

## Acts 3:13

### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech to the Jews that he began in [Acts 3:12](#).

### rejected in the presence of Pilate (ULT) rejected Jesus in the presence of Pilate (UST)

Here the phrase “before the face of” means “in the presence of.”  
Alternate translation: “rejected in Pilate’s presence” (See: [Idiom](#))

### when he had decided to release him (ULT) after Pilate had decided that he should release Jesus (UST)

“when Pilate had decided to release Jesus”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [the God](#) (2)
- [the God](#) (3)
- [has glorified](#)
- [God](#) (4)
- [when...had decided](#)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [of Pilate](#)
- [of Isaac](#)
- [of Jacob](#)
- [of...fathers](#)
- [delivered up](#)
- [servant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [God](#) (3)
- [has greatly honored](#)
- [worshiped...God](#) (4)
- [after Pilate had decided](#)
- [including Abraham](#)
- [of Pilate](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [Your leaders brought Jesus to...governor, Pilate](#)
- [who faithfully served...as well](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> The [God of Abraham](#) and [the God of Isaac](#), and [the God of Jacob](#), the [God](#) of our [fathers](#), [has glorified](#) his [servant Jesus](#), whom you indeed [delivered up](#) and rejected in the presence [of Pilate](#), [when](#) he [had decided](#) to release him.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> So I will tell you what is really happening. Our [ancestors, including Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, worshiped](#) God. And now [God has greatly honored Jesus, who faithfully served him as well. Your leaders brought Jesus to the governor, Pilate](#), so that his soldiers would execute him. You were the ones who rejected Jesus in the presence [of Pilate, after Pilate had decided](#) that he should release Jesus.

## Acts 3:14

**asked for a man who was a murderer to be released to you (ULT)**

**you asked for a killer to be set free instead of (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for Pilate to release a murderer" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Righteous One](#)
- [Holy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Righteous One](#)
- [Although Jesus was God's own Messiah of Israel](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But you rejected the [Holy](#) and [Righteous One](#), and asked for a man who was a murderer to be released to you.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [Although Jesus was God's own Messiah of Israel, the Righteous One](#), you rejected him and you asked for a killer to be set free instead of him!

## Acts 3:15

### General Information:

Here the word "we" includes just Peter and John. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Founder of life (ULT)

### God considers that...one...gives people eternal life (UST)

This refers to Jesus. Possible meanings are 1) "the one who gives people eternal life" or 2) "the ruler of life" or 3) "the founder of life" or 4) "the one who leads people to life" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of life](#)
- [God](#)
- [witnesses](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [raised](#)
- [Founder](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life](#)
- [God](#)
- [saw Jesus many times](#)
- [he became alive again](#)
- [has caused him to become alive again](#)
- [one...gives people eternal](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But you killed the [Founder of life](#), whom [God raised](#) from [the dead](#)—and we are [witnesses](#) of this.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> God considers that you killed Jesus, the one who [gives people eternal life](#). But [God has caused him to become alive again](#). We [saw Jesus many times](#) after [he became alive again](#).

## Acts 3:16

### Now (ULT)

### It is (UST)

This word, "Now," shifts the audiences' attention to the lame man.

### has been made strong (ULT)

### made...strong again (UST)

"made him well"

### Translation Words - ULT

- in...name
- name
- faith
- faith
- has been made strong
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- we trusted in what Jesus
- could do
- we trusted in what Jesus
- it is because we trusted...Jesus that he has completely healed
- made...strong again
- know

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Now, by [faith](#) in his [name](#), this man whom you see and [know has been made strong](#). The [name](#) of Jesus and the [faith](#) that is through him gave to this man this complete health in the presence of all of you.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> It is because [we trusted in what Jesus could do](#) that he [made](#) this man, whom you see and [know, strong again](#). Yes, [it is because we trusted in Jesus that he has completely healed](#) this man for all of you to see.

## Acts 3:17

### Now (ULT)

### Now...and (UST)

Here Peter shifts the audience's attention from the lame man and continues to talk to them directly.

### you acted in ignorance (ULT)

### you...killed Jesus...you did not know that he was the Messiah (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) that the people did not know that Jesus was the Messiah or 2) that the people did not understand the significance of what they were doing.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [as...did](#)
- [I know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [my fellow countrymen](#)
- [leaders](#)
- [because](#)
- [I know](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Now, [brothers](#), [I know](#) that you acted in ignorance, as also [did](#) your [rulers](#).

### UST

<sup>17</sup> "Now, [my fellow countrymen](#), [I know](#) that you and your [leaders](#) killed Jesus [because](#) you did not know that he was the Messiah.

**Acts 3:18**

**But...God...But...God...foretold by the mouth of all the prophets (ULT)**

**God...God...long ago...God told all the prophets...sent from God (UST)**

When the prophets spoke, it was as though God himself was speaking because he told them what to say. Alternate translation: "God foretold by telling all of the prophets what to speak"

**But...God...But...God...foretold (ULT)**

**God...God...long ago...sent from God (UST)**

"God spoke about ahead of time" or "God told about before they happened"

**the mouth of all the prophets (ULT)**

**long ago...God told all the prophets...sent from God (UST)**

Here the word "mouth" refers to the words that the prophets spoke and wrote down. Alternate translation: "the words of all the prophets" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [prophets](#)
- [But...God](#)
- [he has fulfilled](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [that...should suffer](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God told...prophets](#)
- [God](#)
- [has now fulfilled what he revealed to the prophets](#)
- [Messiah...would suffer and die](#)
- [that people would put Jesus to death](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> [But](#) the things which [God](#) foretold by the mouth of all the [prophets](#), that his [Christ should suffer](#), [he has fulfilled](#) in this way.

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> [God has now fulfilled what he revealed to the prophets](#) long ago; [that people would put Jesus to death](#). [God told](#) all the [prophets](#) that the [Messiah](#), sent from God, [would suffer and die](#).



## Acts 3:19

### and turn (ULT)

### turn away...your sinful lives and...in order that (UST)

“and turn to the Lord.” Here “turn” is a metaphor for starting to obey the Lord. Alternate translation: “and start obeying the Lord” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### so that your sins may be blotted out (ULT)

### from...what pleases him...he may completely forgive you for your sins and in order that he may strengthen you (UST)

Here “blotted out” is a metaphor for forgiving. Sins are spoken of as if they are written in a book and God erases them from the book when he forgives them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that God will forgive you for sinning against him” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [Repent](#)
- [turn](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sins and in order that he may strengthen you](#)
- [ask God to help you do](#)
- [turn away...your sinful lives...in order that](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> [Repent](#), therefore, and [turn](#), so that your [sins](#) may be blotted out,

### UST

<sup>19</sup> So [turn away](#) from [your sinful lives](#) and [ask God to help you do](#) what pleases him [in order that](#) he may completely forgive you for your [sins and in order that he may strengthen you](#).

**Acts 3:20****from the presence of the Lord (ULT)****there will be...you will know that...the Lord God (UST)**

Here the words “presence of the Lord” is a metonym for the Lord himself. Alternate translation: “from the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**periods of refreshing from the presence of the Lord (ULT)****there will be...times when...you will know that the Lord God...is helping you (UST)**

“times of relief from the presence of the Lord.” Possible meanings are 1) “times when God will strengthen your spirits” or 2) “times when God will revive you”

**that he may send the one who has been appointed for you, Christ (ULT)****again send back to earth the Messiah, whom he has given to you (UST)**

“that he may again send the Christ.” This refers to Christ’s coming again.

**the one who has been appointed for you (ULT)****whom he has given to you (UST)**

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom he has appointed for you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Christ Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the one who has been appointed](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [periods](#)
- [that he may send](#)
- [the presence](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the Messiah...That person is Jesus](#)
- [Lord God](#)
- [whom he has given](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [times when...is helping you](#)
- [again send back to earth](#)
- [there will be...you will know that](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> so that there may come [periods](#) of refreshing from [the presence](#) of the [Lord](#); and [that he may send the one who has been appointed](#) for you, [Christ Jesus](#).

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> If you do that, [there will be times when you will know that](#) the [Lord God is helping you](#). And some day he will [again send back to earth the Messiah, whom he has given](#) to you. [That person is Jesus](#).

## Acts 3:21

### General Information:

In verses 22-23 Peter quotes something Moses told before the Messiah came.

### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues his speech that he began in [Acts 3:12](#) to the Jews who stood in the temple area.

**He is the One heaven must receive (ULT)**  
**Jesus will certainly stay...heaven...when (UST)**

"He is the One heaven must welcome." Peter speaks of heaven as if it were a person who welcomes Jesus into his home. (See: [Personification](#))

**heaven must receive until (ULT)**  
**Jesus will certainly stay...heaven until...when (UST)**

This means that it is necessary for Jesus to remain in heaven because that is what God has planned.

**until the time of the restoration of all things (ULT)**  
**until the time...God will cause all...he has created to become new (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "until the time when God will restore all things" or 2) "until the time when God will fulfill everything that he foretold."

**about which God spoke long ago by the mouth of his holy prophets (ULT)**  
**in...that...Long ago God promised to do that, and he chose holy prophets to tell that to people (UST)**

When the prophets spoke long ago, it was as if God himself was speaking because he told them what to say. Alternate translation: "about which things God spoke long ago by telling his holy prophets to speak about them"

**the mouth of...holy...his...prophets (ULT)**  
**promised...holy...and he chose...prophets (UST)**

Here the word "mouth" refers to the words that the prophets spoke and wrote down. Alternate translation: "the words of his holy prophets" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [of...holy](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [God](#)
- [of the restoration](#)
- [receive](#)
- [the time](#)
- [long ago](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> He is the One [heaven](#) must [receive](#) until [the time of the restoration](#) of all things, about which [God](#) spoke [long ago](#) by the mouth of his [holy prophets](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [Jesus will certainly stay](#) in [heaven](#) until [the time](#) when [God will cause](#) all that [he has created to become new](#). [Long ago](#) [God](#) promised to do that, and he chose [holy prophets](#) to tell that to people.

## Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- holy
- prophets
- God
- God will cause...he has created to become new
- Jesus will certainly stay
- the time
- Long ago

## Acts 3:22

**a prophet...will raise up...like me from among your brothers (ULT)**

**a prophet...will send...The...like me from...you (UST)**

“will cause a one of your brothers to become a true prophet, and everyone will know about him”

**your brothers (ULT)**

**The...you (UST)**

“your nation”

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Lord
- brothers
- a prophet
- God
- Moses
- will raise up
- like

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- you
- a prophet
- your God
- For example, the prophet Moses
- will send
- like

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [Moses](#) indeed said, ‘[The Lord](#) your [God will raise up](#) for you [a prophet like](#) me from among your [brothers](#). You will listen to him in everything—whatever he will speak to you.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [For example, the prophet Moses](#) said this about the Messiah: ‘The [Lord your God will send a prophet like](#) me from among [you](#). You must listen to everything he says to you.

## Acts 3:23

### that prophet will be completely destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that prophet, God will completely destroy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [to...prophet](#)
- [soul](#)
- [people](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#)
- [Those who do](#)
- [God's people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But it will be that every [soul](#) who does not listen to that [prophet](#) will be destroyed from among the [people](#).’

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Those who do](#) not listen to that [prophet](#) and obey him will no longer belong to [God's people](#), and God will destroy them.”

## Acts 3:24

### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to the Jews that he began in [Acts 3:12](#).

### Indeed all the prophets (ULT)

### Peter continued, "All the prophets have told (UST)

"In fact, all the prophets." Here the word "Yes" adds emphasis to what follows.

### all...from Samuel...those who came after him (ULT)

### Peter continued...about what would happen during these...Those prophets include Samuel...later (UST)

"beginning with Samuel and continuing with the prophets who lived after he did"

### these days (ULT)

### days...about these events before they happened (UST)

"these times" or "the things that are happening now"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [have...announced](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prophets have told](#)
- [include Samuel](#)
- [who...also spoke](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Indeed all the [prophets](#) from [Samuel](#) and those who came after him, as many as have spoken have also [announced](#) these [days](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Peter continued, "All the [prophets](#) [have told](#) about what would happen during these [days](#). Those prophets [include Samuel](#) and all the others who later [also spoke](#) about these events before they happened.

## Acts 3:25

**You are the sons of the prophets and of the covenant (ULT)**

**strongly promised to bless...he...surely promised to bless you (UST)**

Here the word “sons” refers to heirs who will receive what the prophets and the covenant promised. Alternate translation: “You are the heirs of the prophets and heirs of the covenant” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

**in your seed (ULT)**

**about the Messiah...your descendant will do (UST)**

“Because of your offspring”

**will all the families of the earth be blessed (ULT)**

**I will bless all the people groups on the earth as a result of what (UST)**

Here the word “families” refers to people groups or nations. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will bless all the people groups in the world” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will...be blessed](#)
- [sons](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [God](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [seed](#)
- [earth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I will bless](#)
- [he...surely promised to bless](#)
- [he...surely promised to bless](#)
- [When God](#)
- [strongly promised to bless](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [descendant will do](#)
- [earth as a result of what](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> You are the [sons](#) of the [prophets](#) and of the [covenant](#) that [God](#) made with your [ancestors](#), saying to [Abraham](#), ‘And in your [seed](#) will all the families of the [earth be blessed](#).’

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [When God strongly promised to bless](#) our [ancestors](#), [he](#) also [surely promised to bless](#) you. He said to [Abraham](#) about the Messiah, ‘[I will bless](#) all the people groups on the [earth as a result of what](#) your [descendant will do](#).’”



## Acts 3:26

**After God raised up his servant (ULT)  
when God...the...to serve him as Messiah, he sent (UST)**

"After God caused Jesus to become his servant and made him famous"

**his servant (ULT)  
the...to serve him as Messiah, he (UST)**

This refers to the Messiah, Jesus.

**turning every one of you from your wickedness (ULT)  
Peter concluded, "So...order to stop you doing what is wicked (UST)**

Here "turning...from" is a metaphor for causing someone stop doing something. Alternate translation: "causing every one of you to stop doing wicked things" or "causing every one of you to repent from your wickedness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [wickedness](#)
- [turning](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [After...raised up](#)
- [servant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to bless](#)
- [when God](#)
- [is wicked](#)
- [order to stop](#)
- [sent Jesus to...earth](#)
- [sent](#)
- [to serve him as Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> [After God raised up](#) his [servant](#), [he sent](#) him to you first, [blessing](#) you by [turning](#) every one of you from your [wickedness](#)."

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Peter concluded, "So [when God sent Jesus to](#) the [earth to serve him as Messiah](#), he [sent](#) him first to you Israelites [to bless](#) you, in [order to stop](#) you doing what [is wicked](#)."

## Acts 4

### Acts 4 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 4:25-26.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Unity

The first Christians wanted very much to be united. They wanted to believe the same things and share everything they owned and help those who needed help.

##### “Signs and wonders”

This phrase refers to things that only God can do. The Christians wanted God to do what only he can do so that people would believe that what they said about Jesus was true.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Cornerstone

The cornerstone was the first piece of stone that people put down when they were building a building. This is a metaphor for the most important part of something, the part on which everything depends. To say that Jesus is the cornerstone of the church is to say that nothing in the church is more important than Jesus and that everything about the church depends on Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [faith](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Name

“There is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved” (Acts 4:12). With these words Peter was saying that no other person who has ever been on the earth or will ever be on earth can save people.

## Acts 4:1

### Connecting Statement:

The religious leaders arrest Peter and John after Peter's having healed the man who was born lame.

### came up to them (ULT)

**All these men came to Peter and John while the two (UST)**

"approached them" or "came to them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Sadducees
- temple
- priests
- people

### Translation Words - UST

- some members of...Sadducee group
- temple guard
- there were some priests in the temple courtyard
- people

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> As Peter and John were speaking to the [people](#), the [priests](#) and the captain of the [temple](#) and the [Sadducees](#) came up to them.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Meanwhile, [there were some priests in the temple courtyard](#). There was also the officer in charge of the [temple guard](#), and [some members of the Sadducee group](#). All these men came to Peter and John while the two of them were speaking to the [people](#).

**Acts 4:2****They were deeply troubled (ULT)****These men were very angry (UST)**

“They were very angry.” The Sadducees, in particular, would have been angry about what Peter and John were saying because they did not believe in resurrection. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**proclaiming in Jesus the resurrection from the dead**

Peter and John were saying that God would raise people from the dead in the same way as he had raised Jesus from among the dead. Translate this in a way that allows “the resurrection” to refer to both Jesus’ resurrection and the general resurrection of other people.

**the...from the...dead (ULT)****the...after he had been killed (UST)**

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [resurrection](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [were teaching](#)
- [people](#)
- [proclaiming](#)
- [dead](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God caused Jesus to become alive again](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [two apostles were teaching](#)
- [people](#)
- [telling](#)
- [he had been killed](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> They were deeply troubled because Peter and John [were teaching](#) the [people](#) and [proclaiming](#) in [Jesus](#) the [resurrection](#) from the [dead](#).

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> These men were very angry because the [two apostles were teaching](#) the [people](#) about [Jesus](#). What they were [telling](#) them was that [God caused Jesus to become alive again](#) after [he had been killed](#).

## Acts 4:3

**they laid...on them (ULT)**

**these men arrested Peter and John (UST)**

“The priests, the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees arrested Peter and John”

**since it was...evening (ULT)**

**to question Peter and John because it was...evening (UST)**

It was common practice not to question people at night.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hands](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [these men arrested Peter and John](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So they laid [hands](#) on them and put them in custody until the next day, since it was already evening.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> So [these men arrested Peter and John](#) and put them in jail. The Jewish council had to wait until the next day to question Peter and John because it was already evening.

## Acts 4:4

**of the people who had heard...the number...of the men who believed (ULT)**

**who had heard Peter speak...The number...of men (UST)**

This refers only to men and does not include how many women or children believed.

**was...about five thousand (ULT)**

**The number...who believed in Jesus increased to about five thousand (UST)**

"grew to about five thousand"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [believed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [put their faith in Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But many of the people who had heard the message [believed](#); and the number of the men who believed was about five thousand.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> However, many people who had heard Peter speak [put their faith in Jesus](#). The number of men who believed in Jesus increased to about five thousand.

## Acts 4:5

### General Information:

Here the word "their" refers to the Jewish people as a whole.

### Connecting Statement:

The rulers question Peter and John who answer without fear.

### it came about (ULT) the (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### rulers and the elders and the scribes (ULT) high priest called the other chief priests, the teachers of the Jewish laws, and the other members of the Jewish council, and (UST)

This is a reference to the Sanhedrin, the Jewish ruling court, which consisted of these three groups of people. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [that...gathered together](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [elders](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [teachers of...Jewish laws](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [next day...gathered together...one place](#)
- [high priest called the other chief priests, the](#)
- [other members of...Jewish council](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then it came about on the next day that their [rulers](#) and the [elders](#) and the [scribes gathered together](#) in [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> The [next day](#) the [high priest called the other chief priests, the teachers of the Jewish laws](#), and the [other members of the Jewish council](#), and they [gathered together](#) in [one place](#) in [Jerusalem](#).

## Acts 4:6

**Annas...John...Alexander (ULT)**

**Annas...John...Alexander (UST)**

These two men were members of the high priest's family. This is not the same John as the apostle.

### Translation Words - ULT

- high priest was there
- high priestly
- Caiaphas
- Annas
- the...line

### Translation Words - UST

- former high priest, was there
- the high priest
- there were Caiaphas the new high priest
- Annas
- related to

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> [Annas](#) the [high priest was there](#), and [Caiaphas](#), and John, and Alexander, and all who were of the [high priestly line](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> [Annas](#), the [former high priest, was there](#). Also [there were Caiaphas the new high priest](#), John and Alexander, and other men who were [related to the high priest](#).



## Acts 4:7

**in...what power (ULT)**

**to bring Peter...power (UST)**

“Who gave you power”

**in what name (ULT)**

**to heal the man that could not walk (UST)**

Here the word “name” refers to authority. Alternate translation: “by whose authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [power](#)
- [name](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [power](#)
- [heal the man that could not walk](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When they had set Peter and John in their midst, they asked them, “By what [power](#), or in what [name](#), have you done this?”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They commanded guards to bring Peter and John into the room, and then they asked Peter and John, “Who gave you [power](#) to [heal the man that could not walk](#)?”

**Acts 4:8****Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)  
As the Holy Spirit gave Peter power (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:4](#). Alternate translation: “The Holy Spirit filled Peter and he” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- filled with
- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- Peter
- people
- You rulers
- elders

**Translation Words - UST**

- gave
- Holy
- As the Holy Spirit
- Peter power
- you other
- You fellow Israelites who rule us
- all...elders, listen to me

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> Then [Peter](#), [filled with the Holy Spirit](#), said to them, “[You rulers](#) of the [people](#), and [elders](#),

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> [As the Holy Spirit gave Peter power](#), Peter said to them, “[You fellow Israelites who rule us](#), and [all](#) of [you other elders](#), [listen to me](#)!”

## Acts 4:9

**if we this day being questioned...by what means he was made well (ULT)**

**Today you are questioning us...we...how he became healed. So let me tell you and all other Israelites this (UST)**

Peter asks this question to clarify that this was the real reason that they were on trial. Alternate translation: "You are asking us this day... by what means we made this man well" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**we this day being questioned (ULT)**

**Today you are questioning us...we (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you are questioning us this day" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by what means he was made well (ULT)**

**how he became healed. So let me tell you and all other Israelites this (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "by what means we have made this man well" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a good deed done to](#)
- [was made well](#)
- [being questioned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a good deed](#)
- [became healed. So let me tell you and all other Israelites this](#)
- [you are questioning us](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> if we this day [being questioned](#) concerning [a good deed done to](#) a sick man, by what means he [was made well](#),

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Today [you are questioning us](#) about [a good deed](#) we did for a man who could not walk, and you ask us how he [became healed. So let me tell you and all other Israelites this:](#)

**Acts 4:10**

**let this be known to you all and to all the people of Israel (ULT)**

**So we want you and all of our other fellow Israelites to know this: It is because...to become alive again (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May all of you and all of the people of Israel know this" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to you all and to all the people of Israel (ULT)**  
**you and all of our other fellow Israelites...to become alive again (UST)**

"to you who are questioning us and to all the other people of Israel"

**in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth (ULT)**  
**Jesus the Messiah from Nazareth healed him (UST)**

Here the word "name" refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: "by the power of Jesus Christ of Nazareth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**but whom God raised from the dead (ULT)**  
**God considers that...God caused him...from the dead (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "whom God caused to live again" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of Jesus Christ of Nazareth
- crucified
- God
- name
- people of Israel
- Christ
- of Nazareth
- people
- the dead
- raised
- let...be known

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus the Messiah from Nazareth
- nailed Jesus to a cross
- God considers that
- healed him
- our other fellow Israelites
- the Messiah
- from Nazareth

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> let this [be known](#) to you all and to all the [people](#) of Israel, that in the [name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth](#), whom you [crucified](#), but whom [God raised](#) from [the dead](#), that by him this man stands here before you healthy.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> [So we want](#) you and all of [our other fellow Israelites to know this](#): It is because [Jesus the Messiah from Nazareth healed him](#) that this man is able to stand before you. [God considers that](#) it was you who [nailed Jesus to a cross](#), but [God caused him](#) to become alive again [from the dead](#).

- our other fellow Israelites
- from the dead
- God caused him
- So we want...to know this

## Acts 4:11

### General Information:

Here the word “we” refers to Peter as well as those to whom he is speaking. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Peter completes his speech to the Jewish religious rulers that he began in [Acts 4:8](#).

**Jesus Christ is the stone...but which has been made into the cornerstone (ULT)**

**Jesus the Messiah of Nazareth is the one of whom...The stone that...has become the most important stone in the building (UST)**

Peter is quoting from the Psalms. This is a metaphor that means the religious leaders, like builders, rejected Jesus, but God will make him the most important in his kingdom, as a cornerstone in a building is important. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the cornerstone (ULT)**  
**stone (UST)**

Here the word “head” means “most important” or “vital.”

**you, the builders (ULT)**  
**the builders (UST)**

“you as builders rejected” or “you as builders rejected as worth nothing”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the cornerstone](#)
- [the cornerstone](#)
- [was rejected](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [most important stone](#)
- [stone](#)
- [threw away](#)

### ULT

**11** Jesus Christ is the stone which [was rejected](#) by you, the builders, but which has been made into [the cornerstone](#).

### UST

**11** Jesus the Messiah of Nazareth is the one of whom the scriptures speak: ‘The stone that the builders [threw away](#) has become the [most important stone](#) in the building.’

## Acts 4:12

**There is no...in anyone else (ULT)**  
**no other man (UST)**

The noun "salvation" can be translated as a verb. This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "He is the only person who is able to save" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**for there is not another name under heaven given among men (ULT)**  
**Only Jesus...for God has given...in the world to us (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no other name under heaven that God has given among men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**not...name...another...given...among men (ULT)**  
**Only...Jesus...God has given...in the world to us...God has given...in the world to us (UST)**

The phrase "name...given among men" refers to the person of Jesus. Alternate translation: "no other person under heaven, who is given among men, by whom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**under heaven (ULT)**  
**God has given...in the world to us (UST)**

This is a way of referring to everywhere in the world. Alternate translation: "in the world" (See: [Idiom](#))

**by which we must be saved (ULT)**  
**who can save us from the guilt of our sins (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which can save us" or "who can save us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [salvation](#)
- [be saved](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [name](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [can save us](#)
- [can save...from the guilt...our sins](#)
- [God has given...in the world to us](#)
- [Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> There is no [salvation](#) in anyone else, for there is not another [name](#) under [heaven](#) given among men by which we must [be saved](#)."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Only [Jesus can save us](#), for [God has given](#) no other man [in the world to us](#) who [can save](#) us [from the guilt](#) of [our sins](#)!"

## Acts 4:13

### General Information:

Here the second instance of “they” refers to Peter and John. All other occurrences of the word “they” in this section refer to the Jewish leaders.

### the boldness of Peter and John (ULT)

#### The...Peter and John were not afraid of them (UST)

Here the abstract noun “boldness” refers to the way in which Peter and John responded to the Jewish leaders, and can be translated with an adverb or an adjective. Alternate translation: “how boldly Peter and John had spoken” or “how bold Peter and John were” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### boldness (ULT)

#### were not afraid (UST)

having no fear

### realizing that they were uneducated and ordinary men (ULT)

#### these two men...were ordinary people...who had not studied in schools...So (UST)

The Jewish leaders “realized” this because of the way Peter and John spoke. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### and...realizing (ULT)

#### and...these two men...who had not studied in schools (UST)

“and understood”

### ordinary, uneducated men

The words “ordinary” and “uneducated” share similar meanings. They emphasize that Peter and John had received no formal training in Jewish law. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of Peter](#)
- [John](#)
- [boldness](#)
- [they were surprised](#)
- [realizing](#)
- [they recognized](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [John](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> After seeing the [boldness of Peter](#) and [John](#), and [realizing](#) that they were uneducated and ordinary men, [they were surprised](#), and [they recognized](#) them, that they had been with [Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> The Jewish leaders realized that [Peter](#) and [John were not afraid](#) of them. They also learned that [these two men](#) were ordinary people [who had not studied in schools](#). So [the leaders were amazed](#). [They knew](#) that these men had spent time with [Jesus](#).



- were not afraid
- the leaders were amazed
- these two men...who had not studied in schools
- They knew

## Acts 4:14

**the...man...who was healed (ULT)**

**the...man...who had been healed (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the man whom Peter and John had healed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they had nothing to say against them (ULT)**

**so they were not able to say anything against (UST)**

“nothing to say against Peter and John’s healing of the man.” Here the word “this” refers to what Peter and John had done.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who was healed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who had been healed](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Because they saw the man [who was healed](#) standing with them, they had nothing to say against them.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> They also saw the man [who had been healed](#) standing there with the Peter and John, so they were not able to say anything against them.

## Acts 4:15

**the apostles (ULT)**

**they were meeting (UST)**

This refers to Peter and John.

### Translation Words - ULT

- they had commanded
- council meeting

### Translation Words - UST

- told guards
- The Jewish leaders

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But after [they had commanded](#) the apostles to go outside the [council meeting](#), they talked among themselves.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [The Jewish leaders told guards](#) to take Peter, John, and the healed man outside of the room where they were meeting. After they did so, the leaders talked with each other about Peter and John.

## Acts 4:16

### What will we do to these men (ULT) we can do to punish these two men (UST)

The Jewish leaders ask this question out of frustration because they could not think of what to do with Peter and John. Alternate translation: "There is nothing that we can do with these men!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### For...it is evident to everyone who lives in Jerusalem...a remarkable miracle has happened through them (ULT) Everyone who is living in Jerusalem knows...that...they have done an amazing miracle (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For everyone who lives in Jerusalem knows that they have done a remarkable miracle" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to everyone who lives in Jerusalem (ULT) Everyone who is living in Jerusalem (UST)

This is a generalization. It may also be an exaggeration to show that the leaders think that this is a very big problem. Alternate translation: "many of the people who live in Jerusalem" or "people who live throughout Jerusalem" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [it is evident](#)
- [miracle](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [knows](#)
- [done an amazing miracle](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> They said, "What will we do to these men? For truly [it is evident](#) to everyone who lives [in Jerusalem](#) that a remarkable [miracle](#) has happened through them, and we are not able to deny it.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> They said, "There is nothing that we can do to punish these two men! Everyone who is living [in Jerusalem](#) [knows](#) that they have [done an amazing miracle](#), so we cannot tell people that it did not happen!

**Acts 4:17**

**in order that it might not spread further (ULT)  
not allow other people...about this Jesus...that (UST)**

Here the word "it" refers to any miracles or teaching Peter and John might continue to do. Alternate translation: "in order that news of this miracle spreads no further" or "in order that no more people hear about this miracle" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**no longer to speak in this name to anyone (ULT)  
if they continue to tell other people about the one who  
they say gave them the power to heal this man (UST)**

Here the word "name" refers to the person of Jesus. Alternate translation: "not to speak anymore to anyone about this person, Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [name](#)
- [people](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [one who they say gave them the power to heal this](#)
- [to hear what they have been teaching](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> But in order that it might not spread further among the [people](#), let us warn them no longer to speak in this [name](#) to anyone."

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> However, we must not allow other people [to hear what they have been teaching](#) about this Jesus. So we must tell these men that we will punish them if they continue to tell other people about the [one who they say gave them the power to heal this](#) man."

## Acts 4:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- calling in
- they commanded them
- name
- to teach

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- bring the two apostles into the room again
- After...guards had done so, they told
- about
- teach

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> So [calling in](#) Peter and John, [they commanded them](#) not to speak nor [to teach](#) at all in the [name of Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>18</sup> So the Jewish leaders told the guards to [bring the two apostles into the room again](#). [After](#) the [guards had done so](#), [they told](#) them both that they should no longer speak or [teach about Jesus](#) to anyone.

## Acts 4:19

### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Peter and John but not to those whom they are addressing. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Whether it is right in the sight of God (ULT) God think...it is...right for us (UST)

Here the phrase "in the sight of God" refers to God's opinion.  
Alternate translation: "Whether God thinks it is right" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- it...right
- of God
- God (2)
- you judge
- But Peter
- John

### Translation Words - UST

- right for us
- God
- obey him (2)
- We will let you decide what you think is right
- Peter
- John

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> [But Peter](#) and [John](#) answered and said to them, "Whether [it](#) is [right](#) in the sight [of God](#) to obey you rather than [God](#), [you judge](#)."

### UST

<sup>19</sup> But [Peter](#) and [John](#) said, "Would [God](#) think that it is [right for us](#) to obey you and not to [obey him](#)? [We will let you decide what you think is right](#)."

## Acts 4:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> For we are not able to stop speaking about the things we have seen and heard."

### UST

<sup>20</sup> But as for us, we cannot obey you. We will not stop telling people about the things that we have seen Jesus do and what we have heard him teach."



## Acts 4:21

### General Information:

Verse 22 gives background information about the age of the lame man who was healed. (See: [Background Information](#))

### After further warning Peter and John (ULT)

The Jewish leaders again threatened to punish Peter and John.

### them...They found nothing for which they might punish (ULT)

Although the Jewish leaders threatened Peter and John, they could not find a reason to punish them without causing the people to riot.

### for what had happened (ULT)

### about what had happened (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for what Peter and John had done” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- they were...praising
- people
- they might punish

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- were praising
- people
- punish

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> After further warning Peter and John, they let them go. They found nothing for which [they might punish](#) them because of the [people](#), for [they were](#) all [praising God](#) for what had happened.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Then the Jewish leaders again told Peter and John not to disobey them, but they decided not to [punish](#) them because all the [people](#) in Jerusalem [were praising God](#) about what had happened to the man who could not walk.

## Acts 4:22

**the man to whom this sign of healing had happened (ULT)**

**The man on whom this miracle of healing had been performed (UST)**

“The man whom Peter and John had miraculously healed”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sign](#)
- [of healing](#)
- [years old](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [miracle of](#)
- [healing](#)
- [years old](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> For the man to whom this [sign of healing](#) had happened was more than forty [years old](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The man on whom this [miracle of healing](#) had been performed was over forty [years old](#).

## Acts 4:23

### General Information:

Speaking together, the people quote a Psalm of David from the Old Testament. Here the word “they” refers to the rest of the believers, but not to Peter and John.

### Peter and John came to their own people (ULT) they went to the other believers (UST)

The phrase “their own people” refers to the rest of the believers.  
Alternate translation: “went to the other believers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [reported](#)
- [elders](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [chief priests](#)
- [told them](#)
- [Jewish elders](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But after they were set free, Peter and John came to their own people and [reported](#) all that the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#) had said to them.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> After Peter and John left the council, they went to the other believers and [told them](#) everything that the [chief priests](#) and [Jewish elders](#) had said to them.

## Acts 4:24

**they raised their voices together to God (ULT)**  
**they all agreed as they prayed to God together (UST)**

To raise the voice is an idiom for speaking. "they began speaking together to God" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [their voices](#)
- [earth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)
- [O Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [as they prayed](#)
- [earth](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> When they heard it, they raised [their voices](#) together to [God](#) and said, "[Lord](#), you who made the [heavens](#) and the [earth](#) and the sea, and all that is in them.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> When the believers heard this, they all agreed [as they prayed](#) to [God](#) together, "[O Lord](#)! You made the [sky](#), the [earth](#) and the oceans, and everything in them.

## Acts 4:25

**You are the one who by the Holy Spirit has spoken through the mouth of your servant, our father David (ULT)**

**The Holy Spirit caused our ancestor, King David, who served you, to write these words: 'Why (UST)**

This means that the Holy Spirit caused David to speak or write down what God said.

**our father...through the mouth of your servant...David (ULT)**

**our ancestor...King David, who served you, to write these words (UST)**

Here the word "mouth" refers to the words that David spoke or wrote down. Alternate translation: "by the words of your servant, our father David" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**our father...of...David (ULT)**

**our ancestor...King David (UST)**

Here "father" refers to "ancestor/"

**For what reason did the Gentiles rage, and the peoples imagine useless things (ULT)**

**Why...did the people groups of the world become angry and the Israelite people plan uselessly against God (UST)**

This is a rhetorical question that emphasizes the futility of opposing God. Alternate translation: "The Gentile nations should not have raged, and the peoples should not have imagined useless things" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the peoples imagine useless things (ULT)**

**the Israelite people plan uselessly against God (UST)**

These "useless things" consist of plans to oppose God. Alternate translation: "the peoples imagine useless things against God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the peoples (ULT)**

**the Israelite people (UST)**

people groups

### Translation Words - ULT

- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- the Gentiles
- of...David
- father
- the peoples

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> You are the one who by [the Holy Spirit](#) has spoken through the mouth of your [servant](#), our [father David](#), 'For what reason did [the Gentiles rage](#), and [the peoples](#) imagine [useless things](#)?'

### UST

<sup>25</sup> The [Holy Spirit](#) caused our [ancestor, King David, who served](#) you, to write these words: 'Why did [the people groups of the world become angry](#) and [the Israelite people](#) plan [uselessly against God](#)?'

- useless things
- servant
- did...rage

### Translation Words - UST

- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- the people groups of the world
- King David
- ancestor
- the Israelite people
- uselessly against God
- who served
- did...become angry

## Acts 4:26

### Connecting Statement:

The believers complete their quotation from King David in the Psalms that they began in [Acts 4:25](#).

**The kings of the earth took their stand, and the rulers were gathered together against the Lord (ULT)**  
**The kings in the world prepared to fight God's Ruler, and the rulers joined with them to oppose the Lord God (UST)**

These two lines mean basically the same thing. The two lines emphasize the combined effort of the earth's rulers to oppose God. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**took their stand...were gathered (ULT)**  
**prepared to fight God's Ruler...joined (UST)**

These two phrases mean that they joined their armies together to fight a battle. Alternate translation: "set their armies together...gathered their troops together" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**against the Lord, and against his Christ**

Here the word "Lord" refers to God. In the Psalms, the word "Christ" refers to the Messiah or God's anointed one.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [were gathered](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [kings](#)
- [earth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord God](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [joined](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [kings](#)
- [world](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> 'The [kings](#) of the [earth](#) took their stand, and the [rulers were gathered](#) together against the [Lord](#), and against his [Christ](#).'

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> The [kings](#) in the [world](#) prepared to fight God's Ruler, and the [rulers joined](#) with them to oppose the [Lord God](#) and the one whom he had chosen to be the [Messiah](#).'

**Acts 4:27****Connecting Statement:**

The believers continue praying.

**in this city (ULT)**

**in this city (UST)**

“this city” refers to Jerusalem.

**your holy servant Jesus (ULT)**

**Jesus...to serve you as the Messiah (UST)**

“Jesus who serves you faithfully”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- holy
- truly
- the Gentiles
- you anointed
- the people of Israel
- Pontius Pilate
- Herod
- the people
- gathered together
- servant

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- as...Messiah
- true
- the non-Jews
- you, God, chose
- the Israelite people
- Pontius Pilate
- Herod
- the...people
- together...came
- to serve

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> For [truly](#), both [Herod](#) and [Pontius Pilate](#), with [the Gentiles](#) and [the people](#) of Israel, [gathered together](#) in this city against your [holy servant Jesus](#), whom [you anointed](#).

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> It is [true](#)! Both [Herod](#) and [Pontius Pilate](#), [together](#) with [the non-Jews](#) and [the Israelite people](#), [came](#) in this city against [Jesus](#), whom [you, God, chose to serve](#) you as the [Messiah](#).



**Acts 4:28**

**They gathered together to do all that your hand and your plan had decided in advance (ULT)**

**You allowed them to do this because it was what you decided long ago (UST)**

Here the word “hand” is used to mean God’s power. Additionally, the phrase “your hand and your desire decided” shows God’s power and plan. Alternate translation: “to do all that you had decided because you are powerful and did all that you planned” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [had decided in advance](#)
- [hand](#)
- [plan](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [it was what you decided long ago](#)
- [allowed them](#)
- [it was what you decided long ago](#)

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> They gathered together to do all that your [hand](#) and your [plan had decided in advance](#) would happen.

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> You [allowed them](#) to do this because [it was what you decided long ago](#) would happen.

## Acts 4:29

### Connecting Statement:

The believers complete their prayer that they began in [Acts 4:24](#).

**look upon their threats (ULT)**  
**listen to what they are saying about how they will punish us (UST)**

Here the words “look upon” are a request for God to take notice of the way in which the Jewish leaders threatened the believers.  
 Alternate translation: “notice how they threaten to punish us” (See: [Idiom](#))

**to speak your word with all boldness (ULT)**  
**to speak about Jesus...everyone (UST)**

The word “word” here is a metonym for God’s message. The abstract noun “boldness” can be translated as an adverb. Alternate translation: “speak your message boldly” or “be bold when we speak your message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Now, Lord](#)
- [word](#)
- [boldness](#)
- [to...servants](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [about Jesus](#)
- [everyone](#)
- [serve](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> [Now, Lord](#), look upon their threats and grant to your [servants](#) to speak your [word](#) with all [boldness](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> So now, [Lord](#), listen to what they are saying about how they will punish us! Help us who [serve](#) you to speak [about Jesus](#) to [everyone](#)!

## Acts 4:30

### stretch out your hand to heal (ULT)

### Use...your power to do great miracles of healing (UST)

Here the word "hand" refers to God's power. This is a request for God to show how powerful he is. Alternate translation: "while you show your power by healing people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### through the name of your holy servant Jesus (ULT)

### in...the name of your holy servant, Jesus (UST)

Here the word "name" refers to power and authority. Alternate translation: "through the power of your holy servant Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### your...the...of...holy...servant Jesus (ULT)

### your...the...holy servant, Jesus (UST)

"Jesus who serves you faithfully." See how you translated this in [Acts 4:27](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [signs](#)
- [of...holy](#)
- [name](#)
- [hand](#)
- [heal](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [servant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [signs](#)
- [holy](#)
- [name](#)
- [Use](#)
- [to do great miracles of healing](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [servant](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Therefore stretch out your [hand](#) to [heal](#), and to do [signs](#) and [wonders](#) through the [name](#) of your [holy servant Jesus](#)."

### UST

<sup>30</sup> [Use](#) your power [to do great miracles of healing](#), [signs](#) and [wonders](#) in the [name](#) of your [holy servant, Jesus](#)!"

## Acts 4:31

**the place...was shaken (ULT)**

**the place...shook (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the place... shook" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were all filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**The Holy Spirit...gave them...all power (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:4](#). Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit filled them all" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- they were...filled
- Holy
- of God
- word of God
- Holy Spirit
- finished praying
- boldness
- gathered together

### Translation Words - UST

- gave them
- Holy
- God told them to speak
- words that God told them to speak...this is what they did
- Holy Spirit
- the believers had finished praying
- boldly
- meeting

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> When they [finished praying](#), the place in which they were [gathered together](#) was shaken, and [they were](#) all [filled](#) with the [Holy Spirit](#) and they spoke the [word of God](#) with [boldness](#).

### UST

<sup>31</sup> When [the believers had finished praying](#), the place where they were [meeting](#) shook. The [Holy Spirit gave them](#) all power to [boldly](#) speak the [words that God told them to speak](#), and [this is what they did](#).

## Acts 4:32

**were one in heart and soul (ULT)**  
**were in complete agreement about what they thought (UST)**

Here the word "heart" refers to the thoughts and the word "soul" refers to the emotions. Together they refer to the total person. Alternate translation: "thought the same way and wanted the same things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**were...everything...shared among them (ULT)**  
**were in complete agreement about what they thought...them...they shared with one another everything that they had (UST)**

"shared their belongings with one another." See how you translated this in [Acts 2:44](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in heart](#)
- [of those who believed](#)
- [soul](#)
- [that...possessed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [were in complete agreement about what they thought](#)
- [who believed in Jesus](#)
- [were in complete agreement about what they thought](#)
- [owned](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> The great number [of those who believed](#) were one [in heart](#) and [soul](#). Not one of them said that anything he [possessed](#) was his own, but everything was shared among them.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Those in the group of people [who believed in Jesus were in complete agreement about what they thought](#) and what they wanted. Not one of them said that he alone [owned](#) anything. Instead, they shared with one another everything that they had.

## Acts 4:33

**and abundant grace was upon them all (ULT)**  
**to...God was helping all the believers very much (UST)**

Possible meanings are: 1) that God was greatly blessing the believers or 2) that the people in Jerusalem held the believers in very high esteem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [resurrection](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [testimony](#)
- [power](#)
- [apostles](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God...helping](#)
- [God had caused...become alive again](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [tell others](#)
- [strongly](#)
- [apostles](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> With great [power](#), the [apostles](#) were proclaiming their [testimony](#) about the [resurrection](#) of the [Lord](#) Jesus, and abundant [grace](#) was upon them all.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> The [apostles](#) continued to [strongly tell others](#) that [God had caused](#) the [Lord](#) Jesus to [become alive again](#). And [God](#) was [helping](#) all the believers very much.

## Acts 4:34

### all who...owned title to lands or houses (ULT)

### Some of the believers...who owned land or houses (UST)

The word "all" here is a generalization. Alternate translation: "Many people who owned title to lands or houses" or "People who owned title to lands or houses" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### owned title to lands or houses (ULT)

### who owned land or houses (UST)

"owned land or houses"

### the money of the things that were sold (ULT)

### the money for what they sold (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the money that they received from the things that they sold" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [title to](#)
- [houses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [houses](#)
- [houses](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> For there was no person among them who was in need, for all who owned [title to](#) lands or [houses](#) sold them and brought the money of the things that were sold

### UST

<sup>34</sup> Some of the believers who owned land or [houses](#) would occasionally sell some of their property. Then they would bring the money for what they sold

**Acts 4:35****laid it at the feet of the apostles (ULT)****they would present it to the apostles (UST)**

This means that they presented the money to the apostles. Alternate translation: “presented it to the apostles” or “gave it to the apostles” (See: [Idiom](#))

**it was distributed...to each one according to whatever need anyone had (ULT)****Then the apostles would give money...to any believer who needed it. So no one among the believers was lacking anything (UST)**

The noun “need” can be translated with a verb. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they distributed the money to each believer who needed it” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [apostles](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [apostles](#)

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> and laid it at the feet of the [apostles](#), and it was distributed to each one according to whatever need anyone had.

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> and they would present it to the [apostles](#). Then the apostles would give money to any believer who needed it. So no one among the believers was lacking anything.



## Acts 4:36

### General Information:

Luke introduces Barnabas into the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### Son of Encouragement (ULT) a person who always encourages others (UST)

The apostles used this name to show that Joseph was a person who encouraged others. "Son of" is an idiom used to describe a person's behavior or character. Alternate translation: "Encourager" or "one who encourages" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- was called
- Son
- apostles
- Joseph
- Barnabas
- a citizen of Cyprus
- a Levite
- translated as
- of Encouragement

#### Translation Words - UST

- called him
- a person
- apostles
- a man named Joseph
- Barnabas
- the Island of Cyprus
- who belonged to the tribe of Levi and who came
- that name means
- who always encourages others

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Then [Joseph](#), who [was called Barnabas](#) by the [apostles](#) (which is [translated as Son of Encouragement](#)), [a Levite](#), [a citizen of Cyprus](#) by birth,

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Now there was [a man named Joseph who belonged to the tribe of Levi and who came from the Island of Cyprus](#). The [apostles called him Barnabas](#); in the language of the Jews [that name means a person who always encourages others](#).

**Acts 4:37****laid it at the feet of the apostles (ULT)  
to the apostles for them to give to other believers (UST)**

This means that they presented to money to the apostles. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:35](#). Alternate translation: “presented it to the apostles” or “gave it to the apostles” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [apostles](#)
- [that...owned](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to the apostles for them to give to other believers](#)
- [a field](#)

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> sold a field that he [owned](#) and brought the money and laid it at the feet of the [apostles](#).

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> He sold [a field](#) and brought the money [to the apostles for them to give to other believers](#).

## Acts 5

### Acts 5 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### **“Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit”**

No one knows for sure if Ananias and Sapphira were truly Christians when they decided to lie about the land that they sold ([Acts 5:1-10](#)), because Luke does not say. However, Peter knew that they lied to the believers, and he knew that they had listened to and obeyed Satan.

When they lied to the believers, they also lied to the Holy Spirit. This is because the Holy Spirit lives inside believers.

**Acts 5:1**

Continuing the story of how the new Christians shared their belongings with other believers, Luke tells about two believers, Ananias and Sapphira. (See: [Background Information](#) and [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**Now (ULT)****Now (UST)**

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line to tell a new part of the story.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [named](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [whose name was](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> Now a certain man [named](#) Ananias, with Sapphira his wife, sold a piece of property,

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> Now there was one of the believers [whose name was](#) Ananias, and whose wife's name was Sapphira. He also sold some land.

## Acts 5:2

**and...the...wife...knew it (ULT)**

**He kept for himself...the...his wife...knew that he had done that (UST)**

“his wife also knew that he kept back part of the sale money”

**and laid it at the feet of the apostles (ULT)**

**some...the rest of the money and presented it to the apostles (UST)**

This means that they presented to money to the apostles. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:35](#). Alternate translation: “presented it to the apostles” or “gave it to the apostles” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [apostles](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [apostles](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> and he kept back part of the sale money (his wife also knew it), and brought a certain portion of it and laid it at the feet of the [apostles](#).

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> He kept for himself some of the money he had received for the land, and his wife knew that he had done that. Then he brought the rest of the money and presented it to the [apostles](#).

## Acts 5:3

### General Information:

If your language does not use rhetorical questions, you may reword these as statements.

**why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back part of the price of the land (ULT)**  
**Ananias, you let...Satan completely control you so that you tried to deceive the Holy Spirit. You should not have done such a terrible thing. You have kept for yourself some of the money you received for selling the land. You did not give us all of it (UST)**

Peter uses this question to rebuke Ananias. Alternate translation: "you should not have let Satan fill your heart to lie...land." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**has Satan filled your heart (ULT)**

**Satan completely control you...You should not have done such a terrible thing (UST)**

Here the word "heart" is a metonym for the will and emotions. The phrase "Satan filled your heart" is a metaphor. Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "Satan completely controlled you" or 2) "Satan convinced you" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back part of the price (ULT)**  
**so that you tried to deceive the Holy Spirit...You have kept for yourself some of the money you received (UST)**

This implies that Ananias had told the apostles that he was giving the entire amount that he had received from selling his land. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [Satan completely control you](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Satan completely control you](#)
- [Peter](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But [Peter](#) said, "Ananias, why has [Satan](#) filled your [heart](#) to lie to the [Holy Spirit](#) and to keep back part of the price of the land?

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Then [Peter](#) said, "Ananias, you let [Satan completely control you](#) so that you tried to deceive the [Holy Spirit](#). You should not have done such a terrible thing. You have kept for yourself some of the money you received for selling the land. You did not give us all of it.

## Acts 5:4

**While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own, and after it was sold, was it not in your control (ULT) Before you sold...land, you truly owned it. And after you sold it, the money was still yours (UST)**

Peter uses this question to rebuke Ananias. Alternate translation: "While it remained unsold, it was your own...control." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**While it remained unsold (ULT)  
Before you...land (UST)**

"While you had not sold it"

**after it was sold, was it not in your control (ULT)  
sold...you truly owned it...after you sold it, the money was still yours (UST)**

Peter uses this question to rebuke Ananias. Alternate translation: "after it was sold, you had control over the money that you received." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**after it was sold (ULT)  
sold (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after you sold it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**How is it that you thought of this thing in your heart (ULT)  
that...after you sold it, the money...So you should never think about doing such a wicked thing. You were...trying to (UST)**

Peter used this question to rebuke Ananias. Here the word "heart" refers to the will and emotions. Alternate translation: "You should not have thought of doing this thing" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [control](#)
- [was it not](#)
- [you thought](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God himself](#)
- [So you should never think about doing such](#)
- [you truly owned it](#)
- [after you sold it, the money](#)
- [were...trying](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own, and after it was sold, [was it not](#) in your [control](#)? How is it that [you thought](#) of this thing in your [heart](#)? You have not lied to men, but [to God](#)."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Before you sold that land, [you truly owned it](#). And [after you sold it, the money](#) was still yours. [So you should never think about doing such](#) a wicked thing. You were not [trying](#) to deceive only us! No, you tried to deceive [God himself](#)!"

**Acts 5:5****fell down and breathed his last (ULT)  
immediately, he fell down dead (UST)**

Here “breathed his last” means “breathed his final breath” and is a polite way of saying that he died. Ananias fell down because he died; he did not die because he fell down. Alternate translation: “died and fell to the ground” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [fear](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [terrified](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> After hearing these words, Ananias fell down and breathed his last, and great [fear](#) came upon all who heard it.

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> When Ananias heard these words, immediately, he fell down dead. And all who heard about Ananias' death became [terrified](#).



## Acts 5:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- they buried him
- rising up

### Translation Words - UST

- buried it
- came forward

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then [rising up](#), the young men wrapped him up, and carrying him out, [they buried him](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Some young men [came forward](#), wrapped his body in a sheet, and carried it out and [buried it](#).

## Acts 5:7

**his wife...came in (ULT)**

**his...wife...she...came in (UST)**

"Ananias' wife came in" or "Sapphira came in"

**what had happened (ULT)**

**what had happened (UST)**

"that her husband had died"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hours](#)
- [knowing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hours](#)
- [did...know](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now it happened that after about three [hours](#), his wife also came in, not [knowing](#) what had happened.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> About three [hours](#) later his wife came in, but she did not [know](#) what had happened.

## Acts 5:8

**for so much (ULT)**

**is this the amount of money you two received (UST)**

“for this much money.” This refers to the amount of money that Ananias had given to the apostles.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then [Peter](#) said to her, “Tell me whether you sold the land for so much.” And she said, “Yes, that was the amount.”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then [Peter](#) showed her the money that Ananias had brought and asked her, “Tell me, is this the amount of money you two received for the land you sold?” She said, “Yes, that is what we received.”

## Acts 5:9

### General Information:

Here the word “you” is plural and refers to both Ananias and Sapphira. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Ananias and Sapphira.

**How is it that you have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord (ULT)**  
**You both did a terrible thing! You two agreed to try to deceive the Spirit of the Lord (UST)**

Peter asks this question to rebuke Sapphira. Alternate translation: “You should not have agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**you have agreed together (ULT)**  
**You both did a terrible thing! You two...agreed (UST)**

“the two of you have agreed together”

**to test the Spirit of the Lord (ULT)**  
**to try to deceive the Spirit of the Lord (UST)**

Here the word “test” means to challenge or to prove. They were trying to see if they could get away with lying to God without receiving punishment.

**the feet of the men who buried your husband (ULT)**  
**You can hear the footsteps of the men who buried your husband (UST)**

Here the phrase “the feet” refers to the men. Alternate translation: “the men who have buried your husband” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Lord](#)
- [Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [to test](#)
- [Then Peter said](#)
- [of the men who buried](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of the Lord](#)
- [Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [to try to deceive](#)
- [Peter said](#)
- [men who buried](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [Then Peter said](#) to her, “How is it that you have agreed together [to test](#) the [Spirit of the Lord](#)? Look, the feet [of the men who buried](#) your husband are at the door, and they will carry you out.”

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So [Peter said](#) to her, “You both did a terrible thing! You two agreed [to try to deceive](#) the [Spirit of the Lord](#)! Listen! You can hear the footsteps of the [men who buried](#) your husband. They are right outside this door, and they will carry you out, too!”

## Acts 5:10

**she...fell down...at his feet (ULT)**

**fell down...at Peter's feet (UST)**

This means that when she died, she fell on the floor in front of Peter. This expression should not be confused with falling down at a person's feet as a sign of humility.

**breathed her last (ULT)**

**dead (UST)**

Here "breathed his last" means "breathed her final breath" and is a polite way of saying "she died." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Acts 5:5](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they buried her](#)
- [breathed her last](#)
- [dead](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [buried it](#)
- [dead](#)
- [was dead, too](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then she immediately fell down at his feet and [breathed her last](#). When the young men came in, they found her [dead](#), and carrying her out, [they buried her](#) beside her husband.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Immediately Sapphira fell down [dead](#) at Peter's feet. Then the young men came in. When they saw that she [was dead, too](#), they carried her body out and [buried it](#) beside her husband's body.

## Acts 5:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#)
- [church](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [frightened because of what God had done](#)
- [believers in Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> So great [fear](#) came upon the whole [church](#), and upon all who heard these things.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> All the [believers in Jerusalem](#) became greatly [frightened because of what God had done](#) to Ananias and Sapphira. And everyone else who heard about these things also became greatly frightened.

## Acts 5:12

### General Information:

Here the words “They” and “they” refer to the believers.

### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues to tell what happens in the early days of the church.

**Many signs and wonders were taking place...through the hands of the apostles (ULT)**

**God was enabling the apostles to do many amazing miracles that showed the truth of what they were preaching (UST)**

or “Many signs and wonders took place among the people through the hands of the apostles.” This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: “The apostles performed many signs and wonders among the people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**signs and wonders (ULT)**

**amazing miracles that showed the truth of what they were preaching (UST)**

“supernatural events and miraculous deeds.” See how you translated these terms in [Acts 2:22](#)

**through...the hands of the apostles (ULT)**

**God was enabling...God was enabling...the apostles (UST)**

Here the word “hands” refers to the apostles. Alternate translation: “through the apostles” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Porch of Solomon (ULT)**

**place called Solomon’s Porch (UST)**

This was a covered walkway that consisted of rows of pillars that supported a roof, and which people named after king Solomon. See how you translated “the porch that is called Solomon’s” in [Acts 3:11](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [signs](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [of Solomon](#)
- [hands](#)
- [people](#)
- [wonders](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [miracles that showed the truth of what they were preaching](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [place called Solomon’s](#)
- [God was enabling](#)
- [people](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Many [signs](#) and [wonders](#) were taking place among the [people](#) through the [hands](#) of the [apostles](#). They were all with one mind at the Porch [of Solomon](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [God was enabling](#) the [apostles](#) to do many [amazing miracles that showed the truth of what they were preaching](#) among the [people](#). All the believers were meeting together regularly in the temple courtyard at the [place called Solomon’s Porch](#).

- [amazing](#)



## Acts 5:13

**the people held them in high esteem (ULT)**  
**those people continued to greatly respect the believers (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people held the believers in high esteem" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [had the courage](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [those people](#)
- [were afraid](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But no one else [had the courage](#) to join them; however, the [people](#) held them in high esteem.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> All of the other people who had not believed in Jesus [were afraid](#) to be with the believers. However, [those people](#) continued to greatly respect the believers.

## Acts 5:14

### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the people who lived in Jerusalem.

**more...believers were being added to the Lord (ULT)**  
**Many more...started believing in the Lord Jesus, and they joined (UST)**

This could be stated in active form. See how you translated "were added" in [Acts 2:41](#). Alternate translation: "more people were believing in the Lord" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [believers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [started believing](#)

### ULT

**14** Still more [believers](#) were being added to the [Lord](#), multitudes of both men and women,

### UST

**14** Many more men and women [started believing](#) in the [Lord Jesus](#), and they joined the group of believers.

## Acts 5:15

**his shadow might fall on some of them (ULT)**  
**his shadow might fall on some of them...heal them (UST)**

It is implied that God would heal them if Peter's shadow touched them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [shadow](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [his shadow](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> so that they even carried the sick into the streets and laid them on beds and couches, so that as [Peter](#) came by, at least his [shadow](#) might fall on some of them.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> As a result, people were bringing those who were sick into the streets and laying them on stretchers and mats in order that, when [Peter](#) came by, at least [his shadow](#) might fall on some of them and heal them.

## Acts 5:16

**those afflicted with unclean spirits (ULT)**

**those who were being tormented by evil spirits (UST)**

“those whom unclean spirits had afflicted”

**were all healed (ULT)**

**and God healed...of them (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God healed them all” or “the apostles healed them all” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [unclean](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [unclean spirits](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [were...healed](#)
- [There...came together](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [evil](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [evil spirits](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [and God healed](#)
- [were...coming to](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> [There](#) also [came together](#) a great number of people from the towns around [Jerusalem](#), bringing the sick and those afflicted with [unclean spirits](#), who were all [healed](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Large crowds of people were also [coming to](#) the apostles from the towns near [Jerusalem](#). They were bringing the sick and those who were being tormented by [evil spirits](#), [and God healed](#) all of them.

## Acts 5:17

### Connecting Statement:

The religious leaders began to persecute the believers.

### But (ULT)

### Then (UST)

This begins a contrasting story. You may translate this in the way that your language introduces a contrasting narrative.

### rose up...the high priest (ULT)

### Then...the high priest (UST)

Here the phrase “rose up” means that the high priest decided to take action, not that he stood up from a seated position. Alternate translation: “the high priest took action” (See: [Idiom](#))

### and they were filled with jealousy (ULT)

### became very jealous of the apostles (UST)

The abstract noun “jealousy” can be translated as an adjective. This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they became very jealous” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with jealousy](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Sadducees](#)
- [rose up](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [very jealous of the apostles](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Sadducee group](#)
- [Then](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> But the [high priest rose up](#), and all those who were with him (which is the sect of the [Sadducees](#)); and they were filled [with jealousy](#)

### UST

<sup>17</sup> [Then](#) the [high priest](#) and all who were with him—they were all members of the [Sadducee group](#)—became [very jealous of the apostles](#).

## Acts 5:18

**laid hands on the apostles (ULT)**  
**they commanded the temple guards to arrest the apostles (UST)**

This means that they seized the apostles by force. They would have ordered guards to do this. Alternate translation: “had the guards arrest the apostles” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [apostles](#)
- [hands](#)
- [the public prison](#)
- [laid hands on](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [apostles](#)
- [to arrest](#)
- [public jail](#)
- [they commanded the temple guards to arrest](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> and [laid hands on](#) the [apostles](#), and put them in [the public prison](#).

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> So [they commanded the temple guards to arrest](#) the [apostles](#) and to put them in the [public jail](#).

## Acts 5:19

### General Information:

Here the words "them" and "they" refer to the apostles.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- an angel
- prison

### Translation Words - UST

- from the Lord God
- an angel
- jail

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Yet during the night [an angel of the Lord](#) opened the doors of the [prison](#) bringing them out, and said,

### UST

<sup>19</sup> But during the night [an angel from the Lord God](#) opened the [jail](#) doors and brought the apostles outside. Then the angel said

## Acts 5:20

### in the temple (ULT)

### to the temple courtyard (UST)

This phrase here refers to the temple courtyard, not to the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: “in the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### all the words of this life (ULT)

### all this message of eternal life (UST)

The word “words” here is a metonym for the message that the apostles had already proclaimed. Possible meanings are 1) “all this message of eternal life” or 2) “the whole message of this new way of living” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...life](#)
- [words of...life](#)
- [temple](#)
- [people](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of eternal life](#)
- [of eternal life](#)
- [temple courtyard](#)
- [people](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> “Go and stand and speak in the [temple](#) to the [people](#) all the [words of this life](#).”

### UST

<sup>20</sup> to the apostles, “Go to the [temple courtyard](#), stand there, and tell the [people](#) all this message [of eternal life](#).”



## Acts 5:21

### into the temple (ULT) the temple courtyard...to (UST)

They went into the temple courtyard, not into the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: “into the temple courtyard” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### about daybreak (ULT) about dawn (UST)

“as it began to be light.” Although the angel led them out of the jail during the night, the sun was rising by the time the apostles reached the temple courtyard.

### sent to the prison to bring the apostles (ULT) After they had gathered together, they sent guards...to the jail to bring in the apostles (UST)

This implies someone went to the jail. Alternate translation: “sent someone to the jail to bring the apostles” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [temple](#)
- [taught](#)
- [calling together](#)
- [prison](#)
- [sent](#)
- [council](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [temple courtyard](#)
- [teach the people again about Jesus](#)
- [summoned](#)
- [jail](#)
- [After they had gathered together, they sent guards](#)
- [other Jewish council members. Together they were](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> When they had heard this, they entered into the [temple](#) about daybreak and [taught](#). But the [high priest](#) and those who were with him came, [calling together](#) the [council](#) and all the elders of the [sons of Israel](#), and [sent](#) to the [prison](#) to bring the apostles.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> After hearing this, the apostles entered the [temple courtyard](#) about dawn and began to [teach the people again about Jesus](#). Meanwhile, the [high priest](#) and those who were with him [summoned](#) the [other Jewish council members](#). [Together they were](#) all the leaders [of Israel](#). [After they had gathered together, they sent guards](#) to the [jail](#) to bring in the apostles.

## Acts 5:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prison
- they reported back
- having returned

### Translation Words - UST

- jail
- they...reported
- returned to

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But the officers that went did not find them in the [prison](#), so [having returned](#), [they reported back](#),

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> But when the guards arrived at the [jail](#), they discovered that the apostles were not there. So [they returned to](#) the council and [reported](#),

**Acts 5:23**

**we found no one inside (ULT)  
in to get those men, none of them were inside the jail (UST)**

The words "no one" refer to the apostles. This implies that there was no one else in the jail cell besides the apostles. Alternate translation: "we did not find them inside" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- jail

**Translation Words - UST**

- jail doors

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> saying, "We found the [jail](#) securely shut and the guards standing at the door, but when we had opened it, we found no one inside."

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> "We saw that the [jail doors](#) were very securely locked, and the guards were standing at the doors. But when we opened the doors and went in to get those men, none of them were inside the jail."

## Acts 5:24

### General Information:

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the captain of the temple and the chief priests. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**they were perplexed (ULT)**

**they became greatly confused (UST)**

"they were very puzzled" or "they were very confused"

**concerning them (ULT)**

**and they wondered (UST)**

"concerning the words they had just heard" or "concerning these things"

**as to what might have happened (ULT)**

**where all these events would lead (UST)**

"and what would happen as a result"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [temple](#)
- [when](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [chief priests](#)
- [temple guards](#)
- [When](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Now [when](#) both the captain of the [temple](#) and the [chief priests](#) heard these words, they were perplexed concerning them, as to what might have happened.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> [When](#) the captain of the [temple guards](#) and the [chief priests](#) heard that, they became greatly confused, and they wondered where all these events would lead.

## Acts 5:25

### standing in the temple (ULT)

### standing in the temple courtyard (UST)

They did not go into the part of the temple building where only the priests were allowed. Alternate translation: "standing in the temple courtyard" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [people](#)
- [prison](#)
- [and told](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [temple courtyard](#)
- [they are teaching](#)
- [people](#)
- [jail](#)
- [and reported](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then someone came [and told](#) them, "Look, the men whom you put in the [prison](#) are standing in the [temple](#) and [teaching](#) the [people](#)."

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then someone came [and reported](#) to them, "Listen to this! Right now the men whom you put in [jail](#) are standing in the [temple courtyard](#), and [they are teaching](#) the [people](#)!"

## Acts 5:26

### General Information:

The word “they” in this section refers to the captain and the officers. In the phrase “feared that the people might stone them” the word “them” refers to the captain and the officers. All other occurrences of “them” in this chunk refer to the apostles. Here the word “you” is plural and refers to the apostles. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The captain and the officers bring the apostles before the Jewish religious council.

**they feared that (ULT)**

**they were afraid (UST)**

“they were afraid”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they feared that](#)
- [might stone them](#)
- [people](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they were afraid](#)
- [would kill them by throwing stones at them](#)
- [people](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> So the captain went with the officers, and brought them back, but without violence, for [they feared that](#) the [people might stone them](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> So the captain of the temple guards went to the temple courtyard with the officers, and they brought the apostles back to the council room. But they did not treat them roughly because [they were afraid](#) that the [people would kill them by throwing stones at them](#).

**Acts 5:27****them...the high priest interrogated (ULT)****them...the high priest questioned them (UST)**

“The high priest questioned them.” The word “interrogate” means to question someone to find out what is true.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [high priest](#)
- [council](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [high priest](#)
- [council room, they commanded](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> When they had brought them, they set them before the [council](#). Then the [high priest](#) interrogated them,

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> After the captain and his officers had brought the apostles to the [council room, they commanded](#) them to stand in front of the council members, and the [high priest](#) questioned them.

## Acts 5:28

### in this name (ULT)

### to them...about that man Jesus (UST)

Here the word “name” refers to the person of Jesus. See how you translated this in [Acts 4:17](#). Alternate translation: “not to speak anymore about this person, Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching (ULT) have disobeyed us...Jerusalem about him...you...that we are (UST)

Teaching many people in a city is spoken of as if they were filling the city with a teaching. Alternate translation: “you have taught many people in Jerusalem about him” or “you have taught about him throughout the Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### desire to bring upon us the blood of this man (ULT) you...and you have taught people all over...are trying to make it seem...the ones who are guilty for that man's death (UST)

Here the word “blood” is a metonym for death, and to bring someone’s blood on people is a metaphor for saying that they are guilty of that person’s death. Alternate translation: “desire to make us responsible for this man’s death” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> saying, “[We strictly charged](#) you not [to teach](#) in this [name](#), and yet, you have filled [Jerusalem](#) with your [teaching](#), and desire to bring upon us the [blood](#) of this man.”

### UST

<sup>28</sup> He said to them, “[We commanded](#) you not [to teach people](#) about that [man Jesus](#)! But you have disobeyed us, and you have taught people all over [Jerusalem about him](#)! Furthermore, you are trying to make it seem that we are the ones who are guilty for that man’s [death](#)!”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [We strictly charged](#)
- [blood](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to teach](#)
- [with...teaching](#)
- [We strictly charged](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We commanded](#)
- [death](#)
- [man Jesus](#)
- [Jerusalem...him](#)
- [to teach people](#)
- [about](#)
- [We commanded](#)



## Acts 5:29

### General Information:

Here the word "We" refers to the apostles, and not to the audience.  
(See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**answered...Peter and the apostles (ULT)**  
**speaking for himself...Peter...and the other apostles (UST)**

Peter spoke on behalf of all of the apostles when he said the following words.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [We...obey](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [obey](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [Peter](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> But [Peter](#) and the [apostles](#) answered, saying, "We must [obey God](#) rather than men.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> But [Peter](#), speaking for himself and the other [apostles](#), replied, "We have to [obey](#) what [God](#) commands us to do, not what you people tell us to do!

## Acts 5:30

**The God of our fathers raised up Jesus (ULT)**  
**But God, whom our ancestors worshiped, caused Jesus to become alive again after he died (UST)**

Here “raised up” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “The God of our fathers caused Jesus to live again” (See: [Idiom](#))

**by hanging him on a tree (ULT)**  
**by nailing him to a cross (UST)**

Here Peter uses the word “tree” to refer to the cross which was made out of wood. Alternate translation: “by hanging him on a cross” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [of...fathers](#)
- [raised up](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [But God](#)
- [ancestors worshiped](#)
- [caused...to become alive again after he died](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> The [God](#) of our [fathers raised up Jesus](#), whom you killed by hanging him on a tree.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> You are the ones who killed Jesus by nailing him to a cross! [But God](#), whom our [ancestors worshiped](#), [caused Jesus to become alive again after he died](#).

## Acts 5:31

**God...him...exalted...to his right hand (ULT)**

**God...the one...has honored...rule over...that he (UST)**

To be at the “right hand of God” is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: “God exalted him to the place of honor beside him” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins (ULT)**

**us. He has allowed us Israelites to stop sinning, so... might forgive us for our sins (UST)**

The words “repentance” and “forgiveness” can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: “give the people of Israel an opportunity to repent and have God forgive their sins” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**to Israel (ULT)**

**us. He has...Israelites to (UST)**

The word “Israel” refers to the Jewish people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of sins
- God
- forgiveness
- to...right hand
- to Israel
- a Savior
- repentance
- exalted
- to be a Prince

### Translation Words - UST

- for our sins
- God
- might forgive us
- rule over
- us. He has...Israelites
- to save us
- stop sinning
- has honored
- Jesus more than he has honored anyone else. He has made him

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> [God exalted](#) him to his [right hand to be a Prince](#) and [a Savior](#), to give [repentance to Israel](#), and [forgiveness of sins](#).

### UST

<sup>31</sup> [God has honored Jesus more than he has honored anyone else. He has made him](#) the one [to save us](#) and [rule over us](#). [He has](#) allowed us [Israelites](#) to [stop sinning](#), so that he [might forgive us for our sins](#).

## Acts 5:32

**to those who obey him (ULT)**  
**to us who obey him (UST)**

“those who submit to God’s authority”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [God](#)
- [witnesses](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [to those who obey](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [God](#)
- [that we know happened to Jesus](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [who obey](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> We are [witnesses](#) of these things, and so is the [Holy Spirit](#), whom [God](#) has given [to those who obey](#) him.”

### UST

<sup>32</sup> We tell people about these things [that we know happened to Jesus](#). The [Holy Spirit](#), whom [God](#) has sent to us [who obey](#) him, is also confirming that these things are true.”

## Acts 5:33

### Connecting Statement:

Gamaliel addresses the council members.

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> When the council members heard this, they were furious and wanted to kill the apostles.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> When the council members heard this, they became very angry with the apostles, and they wanted to kill them.

## Acts 5:34

**Gamaliel, a teacher of the law, who was honored by all the people (ULT)**

**Gamaliel. He was a member of...He taught people the Jewish laws, and all the Jewish people respected him (UST)**

Luke introduces Gamaliel and provides background information about him. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#) and [Background Information](#))

**who was honored by all the people (ULT)**  
**He taught people the Jewish laws, and all the Jewish people respected him (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom all the people honored" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**and commanded...outside...the apostles to be taken (ULT)**  
**told the guards...the...out of...to take...apostles...the room (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "commanded the guards to take the apostles outside" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- and commanded
- named
- a Pharisee
- people
- stood up
- a teacher of the law
- council

### Translation Words - UST

- told the guards...the
- named
- Pharisee group
- He taught people the Jewish laws, and
- He stood up
- a member of
- council member

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> But a certain man in the [council](#), a [Pharisee named](#) Gamaliel, [a teacher of the law](#), who was honored by all the [people](#), [stood up and commanded](#) the apostles to be taken outside for a little while.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> But there was a [council member named](#) Gamaliel. He was [a member of](#) the [Pharisee group](#). [He taught people the Jewish laws, and](#) all the Jewish people respected him. [He stood up](#) in the council and [told the guards](#) to take [the](#) apostles out of the room for a short time.

**Acts 5:35****pay close attention (ULT)****you must think carefully (UST)**

“think carefully about” or “be cautious about.” Gamaliel was warning them not to do something that they would later regret.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of Israel](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Fellow Israelites](#)

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> Then he said to them, “Men [of Israel](#), pay close attention to yourselves and what you are about to do with these men.

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> After the guards had taken the apostles out, he said to the other council members, “[Fellow Israelites](#), you must think carefully about what you want to do to these men.

**Acts 5:36**

**Theudas rose up (ULT)**  
**a man named Theudas...rebelled against the government (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "Theudas rebelled" or 2) "Theudas appeared."

**claiming...to be somebody (ULT)**  
**He told people...he was an (UST)**

"claiming to be somebody important"

**He was killed (ULT)**  
**But he was killed...who (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People killed him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**all who had been obeying him were scattered (ULT)**  
**all those...had been accompanying him were scattered. So they (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all the people scattered who had been obeying him" or "all who had been obeying him went in different directions" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**came to nothing (ULT)**  
**were not able to do anything that they had planned (UST)**

This means that they did not do what they had planned to do.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [rose up](#)
- [some time](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [rebelled against the government](#)
- [rebelled against the government](#)

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> For [some time](#) ago, Theudas [rose up](#) claiming himself to be somebody, and a number of men, about four hundred, joined him. He was killed, and all who had been obeying him were scattered and came to nothing.

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> Some years ago a man named Theudas [rebelled against the government](#). He told people that he was an important person, and about four hundred men joined him. But he was killed, and all those who had been accompanying him were scattered. So they were not able to do anything that they had planned.



**Acts 5:37****After this man (ULT)****After that (UST)**

“After Theudas”

**in the days of the census (ULT)****during the time when they were writing down names of...from the (UST)**

“during the time of the census”

**drew away some people after him (ULT)****rebelled...persuaded some people to follow him (UST)**

This means that he persuaded some people to rebel with him against the Roman government. Alternate translation: “caused many people to follow him” or “caused many people to join him in rebellion” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [perished](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [rose up](#)
- [days](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [was killed, too](#)
- [region of Galilee](#)
- [a man named Judas](#)
- [time when they were](#)

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> After this man, Judas [of Galilee rose up](#) in the [days](#) of the census and drew away some people after him. He also [perished](#), and all who had been obeying him were scattered.

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> After that, during the [time when they were](#) writing down names of the people in order to tax them, [a man named Judas](#) from the [region of Galilee](#) rebelled and persuaded some people to follow him. But he [was killed, too](#), and all those who had accompanied him went off in different directions.

## Acts 5:38

### Connecting Statement:

Gamaliel finishes addressing the council members. Though they beat the apostles, command them not to teach about Jesus, and let them go, the disciples continue to teach and preach.

**keep away from these men and let them alone (ULT)**  
**Do not harm these men! Release them (UST)**

Gamaliel is telling the Jewish leaders no to punish the apostles any more or to put them back in jail. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**men...if this plan or this work is of (ULT)**  
**men...I say this...if the things that are happening now are just something that humans have planned, someone will stop them. They (UST)**

"if men have devised this plan or are doing this work"

**it will be overthrown (ULT)**  
**will fail (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will overthrow it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [work](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [someone will stop them](#)

### ULT

**38** Now this I say to you, keep away from these men and let them alone, for if this plan or this [work](#) is of men, it will be overthrown.

### UST

**38** So now I say this to you: Do not harm these men! Release them! I say this because, if the things that are happening now are just something that humans have planned, [someone will stop them](#). They will fail.

## Acts 5:39

### if...it is of God (ULT)

### if...God has commanded them to do these things...you are (UST)

Here the word "it" refers to "this plan or work." Alternate translation: "if God has devised this plan or commanded these men to do this work" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### So they were persuaded (ULT)

### The other members of the council accepted what Gamaliel said (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So Gamaliel persuaded them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [you are...fighting against God](#)
- [you will...be able](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God has commanded them to do these things](#)
- [working against God](#)
- [you will...be able](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> But if it is of [God](#), [you will](#) not [be able](#) to overthrow them; or perhaps you may find [you are](#) also [fighting against God](#)." So they were persuaded by him.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> But if [God has commanded them to do these things](#), [you will](#) not [be able](#) to stop them, because you will find out that you are [working against God!](#)" The other members of the council accepted what Gamaliel said.

## Acts 5:40

### General Information:

Here first word “they” refers to the council members. The rest of the words “them,” “They,” and “they” refer to the apostles.

**they called the apostles in and beat them (ULT)**  
**They told the temple guards to bring the apostles... beat them (UST)**

The council members would have ordered the temple guards to do these things. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to speak in the name of Jesus (ULT)**  
**Then the council members...to speak to people about Jesus any more (UST)**

Here “name” refers to the authority of Jesus. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Acts 4:18](#). Alternate translation: “to speak anymore in the authority of Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- they called...in
- and commanded them
- apostles
- name

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus any more
- They told the temple guards to bring
- So the guards brought them into the council room and beat them...commanded them
- apostles
- about

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Then [they called](#) the [apostles in](#) and beat them [and commanded them](#) not to speak in the [name of Jesus](#), and let them go.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> [They told the temple guards to bring](#) the [apostles](#) and beat them. [So the guards brought them into the council room and beat them.](#) Then the council members [commanded them](#) not to speak to people [about Jesus any more](#), and they released the apostles.

## Acts 5:41

### they had been counted worthy to suffer dishonor for the Name (ULT)

The apostles rejoiced because God had honored them by letting the Jewish leaders dishonor them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God had counted them worthy to suffer dishonor for the Name" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### for the Name (ULT)

Here "the Name" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "for Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they had been counted worthy](#)
- [Name](#)
- [rejoicing](#)
- [the presence](#)
- [to suffer dishonor](#)
- [council](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God had honored them](#)
- [were following Jesus](#)
- [They were rejoicing](#)
- [the council](#)
- [by letting people disgrace them](#)
- [the council](#)

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Therefore, they indeed went out from [the presence](#) of the [council rejoicing](#) that [they had been counted worthy to suffer dishonor](#) for the [Name](#).

### UST

<sup>41</sup> So the apostles went out from [the council](#). [They were rejoicing](#) that, because they [were following Jesus](#), [God had honored them by letting people disgrace them](#).

## Acts 5:42

### Thereafter every day (ULT)

### Every day after that, the apostles went...and (UST)

"After that day, every day." This phrase marks what the apostles did every day through the following days.

### in the temple and from house to house (ULT)

### to the temple area and to various people's houses (UST)

They did not go into the temple building where only the priests went. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard and in different people's houses" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus is...Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [temple](#)
- [they were...teaching](#)
- [proclaiming the gospel that](#)
- [day](#)
- [house to house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus...Messiah](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [temple area](#)
- [teaching people](#)
- [telling them that](#)
- [day after that, the apostles went](#)
- [various people's houses](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Thereafter every [day](#), in the [temple](#) and from [house to house](#), [they were](#) continuously [teaching](#) and [proclaiming the gospel that Jesus is](#) the [Christ](#).

### UST

<sup>42</sup> Every [day after that, the apostles went](#) to the [temple area](#) and to [various people's houses](#), and they continued [teaching people](#) and [telling them that Jesus](#) is the [Messiah](#).

## **Acts 6**

### **Acts 6 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The distribution to the widows**

The believers in Jerusalem gave food every day to women whose husbands had died. All of them had been raised as Jews, but some of them had lived in Judea and spoke Hebrew, and others had lived in Gentile areas and spoke Greek. Those who gave out the food gave it to the Hebrew-speaking widows but not to the Greek-speaking widows. To please God, the church leaders appointed Greek-speaking men to make sure the Greek-speaking widows received their share of the food. One of these Greek-speaking men was Stephen.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **“His face was like the face of an angel”**

No one knows for sure what it was about Stephen's face that was like the face of an angel, because Luke does not tell us. It is best for the translation to say only what the ULT says about this.

## Acts 6:1

### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story. Luke gives important background information to understand the story. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Now in these days (ULT)

### During that time...The (UST)

Consider how new parts of a story are introduced in your language. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### when...was multiplying (ULT)

### many more people (UST)

"was greatly increasing"

### Grecian Jews (ULT)

### non-native Jews (UST)

These were Jews who had lived most of their lives somewhere in the Roman Empire outside of Israel, and had grown up speaking Greek. Their language and culture were somewhat different from those who had grown up in Israel.

### the Hebrews (ULT)

### the native-born Israelites (UST)

These were Jews who had grown up in Israel speaking Hebrew or Aramaic. The church consisted of only Jews and converts to Judaism so far.

### widows (ULT)

### the widows among them (UST)

women whose husband has died

### were being overlooked...their widows (ULT)

### were not receiving...fair share...the widows among them...their (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Hebrew believers were overlooking the Grecian widows" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### were being overlooked (ULT)

### were not receiving...fair share (UST)

"being ignored" or "being forgotten." There were so many who needed help that some were missed.

### the...daily...distribution of food (ULT)

### were not receiving...fair share...every day (UST)

The money that was being given to the apostles was used in part to buy food for the early church widows.

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now in these [days](#), [when](#) the number of the [disciples was multiplying](#), a complaint by the [Grecian Jews](#) began against the [Hebrews](#), because their widows were being overlooked in the daily [distribution of food](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> During that [time](#), [many more people](#) were becoming [believers](#). The [non-native Jews](#) began to complain about the [native-born Israelites](#) because the widows among them [were not receiving](#) their [fair share](#) of food every day.



### Translation Words - ULT

- Hebrews
- distribution of food
- disciples
- Grecian Jews
- when...was multiplying
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- native-born Israelites
- were not receiving...fair share
- believers
- non-native Jews
- many more people
- time

## Acts 6:2

### General Information:

Here the word “you” refers to the believers. The words “us” and “we” here refer to the 12 apostles. Where applicable, use the exclusive form in your language. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

#### the twelve (ULT)

#### the twelve apostles had heard what they were saying, they (UST)

This refers to the eleven apostles plus Matthias, who was selected in [Acts 1:26](#).

#### the multitude of the disciples (ULT)

#### all the other believers in Jerusalem to meet together (UST)

“all of the disciples” or “all the believers”

#### to give up the word of God (ULT)

#### the...stopped preaching and teaching God's message (UST)

This is an exaggeration in order to emphasize the importance of their task of teaching the word of God. Alternate translation: “stop preaching and teaching the word of God” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

#### to serve tables (ULT)

#### in order to distribute food to people (UST)

This is a phrase meaning to serve food to the people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [called to them](#)
- [of God](#)
- [word of God](#)
- [twelve](#)
- [to serve](#)
- [disciples](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [summoned](#)
- [God's](#)
- [God's message](#)
- [twelve apostles had heard what they were saying, they](#)
- [in order to distribute food](#)
- [believers in Jerusalem to meet together](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then the [twelve called to them](#) the multitude of the [disciples](#) and said, “It is not right for us to give up the [word of God to serve](#) tables.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> So, after the [twelve apostles had heard what they were saying, they summoned](#) all the other [believers in Jerusalem to meet together](#). Then the apostles said to them, “We would not be doing right if we stopped preaching and teaching [God's message in order to distribute food](#) to people!

**Acts 6:3****men...full of the Spirit and of wisdom (ULT)****men...Spirit of God directs and...are very wise (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) the men have three qualities—a good reputation, being full of the Spirit, and being full of wisdom or 2) the men have a reputation for two qualities—being full of the Spirit, and being full of wisdom .

**men...of good reputation (ULT)****men...men whom you know that (UST)**

“men that people know are good” or “men whom people trust”

**over this task (ULT)****the...to do this work (UST)**

“to be responsible to do this task”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- brothers
- of the Spirit
- of wisdom
- we may appoint
- of good reputation

**Translation Words - UST**

- fellow believers
- Spirit of God
- are very wise
- Then we will instruct them
- men whom you know that

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> Therefore [brothers](#), choose men [of good reputation](#) from among yourselves, seven men full [of the Spirit](#) and [of wisdom](#), whom [we may appoint](#) over this task.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> So, [fellow believers](#), carefully choose seven men from among you, [men whom you know that](#) the [Spirit of God](#) directs and who [are very wise](#). [Then we will instruct them](#) to do this work.

**Acts 6:4****in the ministry of the word (ULT)****to preach...teach the message about Jesus (UST)**

It may be helpful to add more information. Alternate translation: “the ministry of teaching and preaching the message” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [word](#)
- [ministry](#)
- [prayer](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [message about Jesus](#)
- [to preach...teach](#)
- [using our time to pray](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> But we will always continue in [prayer](#) and in the [ministry](#) of the [word](#).”

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> As for us, we will keep on [using our time to pray](#) and [to preach](#) and [teach](#) the [message about Jesus](#).”

**Acts 6:5**

**Their statement...was pleasing...to the whole multitude (ULT)**  
**recommended pleased all of the other believers (UST)**

"All the disciples liked their suggestion"

**Stephen...and of the Holy Spirit, and Philip, and Prochorus, and Nicanor (ULT)**  
**Stephen...and whom the Holy Spirit controlled completely. They also chose Philip, Procorus, Nicanor (UST)**

These are Greek names, and suggest that all of the men elected were from the Grecian Jewish group of believers. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**a proselyte (ULT)**  
**Nicolas had accepted the Jewish religion before he had believed in Jesus (UST)**

a Gentile who converted to the Jewish religion

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Holy
- of the Holy Spirit
- they chose
- of faith
- Stephen
- from Antioch
- Philip

**Translation Words - UST**

- Holy
- Holy Spirit controlled completely
- they chose
- believed in God
- Stephen
- who was from the city of Antioch
- They also chose Philip

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> Their statement was pleasing to the whole multitude. So [they chose Stephen](#), a man full [of faith](#) and [of the Holy Spirit](#), and [Philip](#), and Prochorus, and Nicanor, and Timon, and Parmenas, and Nicolaus, a proselyte [from Antioch](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> What the apostles recommended pleased all of the other believers. So [they chose Stephen](#), a man who strongly [believed in God](#) and whom the [Holy Spirit controlled completely](#). [They also chose Philip](#), Procorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolas, [who was from the city of Antioch](#). Nicolas had accepted the Jewish religion before he had believed in Jesus.

## Acts 6:6

**and placed their hands upon them (ULT)**  
**and placed their hands on the heads of each one of**  
**them to cause them to do that work (UST)**

This represented giving a blessing and imparting responsibility and authority for the work to the seven. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [apostles](#)
- [they prayed](#)
- [hands](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [apostles](#)
- [prayed for those men](#)
- [their hands](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They brought these men before the [apostles](#), and [they prayed](#) and placed their [hands](#) upon them.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> The believers brought these seven men to the [apostles](#). Then the apostles [prayed for those men](#) and placed [their hands](#) on the heads of each one of them to cause them to do that work.

## Acts 6:7

### General Information:

This verse gives an update on the church's growth.

### word of God continued to spread (ULT) many people the message from God (UST)

The writer speaks of the growing number of people who believed the word as if the word of God itself were covering a larger area.

Alternate translation: "the number of people who believed the word of God increased" or "the number of people who believed the message from God increased" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### became obedient to the faith (ULT) were...message about how they should trust in Jesus (UST)

"followed the teaching of the new belief"

### to the faith (ULT) message about how they should trust in Jesus (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the gospel message of trust in Jesus or 2) the teaching of the church or 3) the Christian teaching.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- word of God
- of disciples
- faith
- priests
- Jerusalem
- increased
- became obedient

### Translation Words - UST

- the...God
- the message from God
- the believers
- trust in Jesus
- Jewish priests who
- Jerusalem who believed in Jesus
- was increasing
- were

### ULT

7 So the [word of God](#) continued to spread, and the number [of disciples](#) in [Jerusalem increased](#) greatly, and a large number of the [priests became obedient](#) to the [faith](#).

### UST

7 So [the believers](#) continued to tell many people [the message from God](#). The number of people in [Jerusalem who believed in Jesus was increasing](#) greatly. Among them were many [Jewish priests who were](#) obeying the message about how they should [trust in Jesus](#).

## Acts 6:8

### General Information:

These verses give background information about Stephen and other people that is important to understanding the story. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story.

### Now Stephen (ULT) Stephen (UST)

This introduces Stephen as the main character in this part of the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### Stephen...full of grace and power, was doing (ULT) Stephen...God was giving...power to do many (UST)

The words “grace” and “power” here refer to power from God. This could be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “God was giving Stephen power to do” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of grace
- signs
- power
- Stephen
- people
- wonders

### Translation Words - UST

- was giving
- amazing
- power...many
- Stephen
- people that showed that the message about Jesus was true
- miracles

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Now [Stephen](#), full of [grace](#) and [power](#), was doing great [wonders](#) and [signs](#) among the [people](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> God [was giving Stephen power](#) to do [many amazing miracles](#) among the [people that showed that the message about Jesus was true](#).



## Acts 6:9

**the synagogue...called Freedmen (ULT)**  
**a group that regularly met together in a synagogue...**  
**was called the Freedmen's Synagogue (UST)**

"Freedmen" were probably ex-slaves from these different locations. It is unclear if the other people listed were part of the synagogue or just participated in the debate with Stephen.

**They were debating with Stephen (ULT)**  
**They all began to argue with Stephen (UST)**

"arguing with Stephen"

### Translation Words - ULT

- called
- synagogue
- from Asia
- Stephen
- Cilicia
- of the Cyrenians
- there arose

### Translation Words - UST

- was called
- a group that regularly met together in a synagogue
- Asia
- with Stephen
- provinces of Cilicia
- people from the cities of Cyrene
- However

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But [there arose](#) some people who belonged to the [synagogue](#) that is [called](#) Freedmen, and [of the Cyrenians](#), and of the Alexandrians, and of those from [Cilicia](#), and [from Asia](#). They were debating with [Stephen](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [However](#), some people opposed Stephen. They were Jews from [a group that regularly met together in a synagogue](#) that [was called](#) the Freedmen's Synagogue, and also [people from the cities of Cyrene](#) and Alexandria and from the [provinces of Cilicia](#) and [Asia](#). They all began to argue [with Stephen](#).

## Acts 6:10

### General Information:

Here the word "We" refers only to the men they persuaded to lie. The word "they" refers back to the people from the synagogue of the freemen in Acts 6:9. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The background information that began in Acts 6:8 continues through verse 10.

**they were not able to stand against (ULT)**

**they were not able to prove (UST)**

This phrase means they could not prove false what he said. Alternate translation: "could not argue against" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Spirit (ULT)**

**God's Spirit (UST)**

this refers to the Holy Spirit

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Spirit](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [they were...able](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's Spirit](#)
- [enabled him...very wisely](#)
- [they were...able](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But [they were](#) not [able](#) to stand against the [wisdom](#) and the [Spirit](#) by whom he spoke.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> But [they were](#) not [able](#) to prove that what he said was wrong, because [God's Spirit enabled him](#) to speak [very wisely](#).

## Acts 6:11

**men to say (ULT)**

**some men to falsely accuse Stephen. Those men said (UST)**

They were given money to give false testimony. Alternate translation: "some men to lie and say" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**blasphemous words against (ULT)**  
**bad things about (UST)**

"bad things about"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [against God](#)
- [blasphemous](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [bad](#)
- [Moses](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then they bribed men to say, "We have heard Stephen speak [blasphemous](#) words against [Moses](#) and [against God](#)."

### UST

<sup>11</sup> So they secretly persuaded some men to falsely accuse Stephen. Those men said, "We heard him say [bad](#) things about [Moses](#) and [God](#)."

## Acts 6:12

### General Information:

Each use of word “they” most likely refers back to the people from the synagogue of the Freedmen in [Acts 6:9](#). They were responsible for the false witnesses and for inciting the council, the elders, the scribes, and the other people. Here the word “we” refers only to the false witness that they brought to testify. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### stirred up the people, the elders, and the scribes

“caused the people, the elders, and the scribes to be very angry at Stephen”

### seizing him (ULT)

### they all...him (UST)

“grabbed him and held him so he could not get away”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [people](#)
- [elders](#)
- [council](#)
- [seizing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [teachers of the Jewish laws](#)
- [other Jewish people](#)
- [elders](#)
- [Jewish council](#)
- [they all](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> They also stirred up the [people](#) and the [elders](#) and the [scribes](#), and they approached Stephen, [seizing](#) him, and brought him before the [council](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> So they made the [other Jewish people](#) angry at Stephen, including the [elders](#) and the [teachers of the Jewish laws](#). Then [they all](#) seized Stephen and took him to the [Jewish council](#).

## Acts 6:13

**does not stop speaking (ULT)**  
**saying bad (UST)**

“continually speaks”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#)
- [law](#)
- [witnesses](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [false witnesses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy temple](#)
- [laws that Moses received from God](#)
- [brought in some men and paid them money so they would give...testimony](#)
- [holy temple](#)
- [brought in some men and paid them money so they would give false testimony](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> They brought [false witnesses](#), saying, “This man does not stop speaking words against this [holy place](#) and the [law](#).”

### UST

<sup>13</sup> They also [brought in some men and paid them money so they would give false testimony](#). They said, “This fellow keeps saying bad things about this [holy temple](#) and about the [laws that Moses received from God](#).”

## Acts 6:14

### handed down to us (ULT)

### us to obey different (UST)

The phrase "handed down" means "passed on." Alternate translation: "taught our ancestors" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus of Nazareth](#)
- [of Nazareth](#)
- [Moses](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus from...town of Nazareth](#)
- [from...town of Nazareth](#)
- [Moses taught our ancestors](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For we have heard him say that this [Jesus of Nazareth](#) will destroy this place and change the customs that [Moses](#) handed down to us."

### UST

<sup>14</sup> What we mean is that we have heard him say that this [Jesus from the town of Nazareth](#) will destroy this temple and will tell us to obey different customs than [Moses taught our ancestors.](#)"

**Acts 6:15****looked intently...at him (ULT)**  
**stared at Stephen (UST)**

This is an idiom that means they looked intently at him. Here “eyes” is a metonym for sight. Alternate translation: “looked intently at him” or “stared at him” (See: [Idiom](#))

**as the face of an angel (ULT)**  
**resembled the face of an angel (UST)**

This phrase compares his face to that of an angel but does not say specifically what they have in common. (See: [Simile](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of an angel](#)
- [face](#)
- [the face](#) (2)
- [as](#)
- [council](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [of an angel](#)
- [face](#)
- [the face](#) (2)
- [resembled](#)
- [council room](#)

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> Everyone who was sitting in the [council](#) looked intently at him, seeing his [face as the face of an angel](#).

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> All the people in the [council room](#) stared at Stephen and saw that his [face resembled the face of an angel](#).

## Acts 7

### Acts 7 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 7:42-43 and 49-50.

It appears that 8:1 is part of the narrative of this chapter.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### “Stephen said”

Stephen told the history of Israel very briefly. He paid special attention to the times that the Israelites had rejected the people God had chosen to lead them. At the end of the story, he said that the Jewish leaders he was talking to had rejected Jesus just as the evil Israelites had always rejected the leaders God had appointed for them.

##### “Full of the Holy Spirit”

The Holy Spirit completely controlled Stephen so that he said only and all of what God wanted him to say.

##### Foreshadowing

When an author speaks of something that is not important at that time but will be important later in the story, this is called foreshadowing. Luke mentions Saul, also known as Paul, here, even though he is not an important person in this part of the story. This is because Paul is an important person in the rest of the Book of Acts.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Implied information

Stephen was talking to Jews who knew the law of Moses well, so he did not explain things that his hearers already knew. But you may need to explain some of these things so that your readers will be able to understand what Stephen was saying. For example, you may need to make explicit that when Joseph's brothers “sold him into Egypt” (Acts 7:9), Joseph was going to be a slave in Egypt. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

##### Metonymy

Stephen spoke of Joseph ruling “over Egypt” and over all of Pharaoh's household. By this he meant that Joseph ruled over the people of Egypt and of the people and possessions in Pharaoh's household. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### Background knowledge

The Jewish leaders to whom Stephen spoke already knew much about the events he was telling them about. They knew what Moses had written in the Book of Genesis. If the Book of Genesis has not been translated into your language, it may be difficult for your readers to understand what Stephen said.



## Acts 7:1

### General Information:

The word “our” includes both Steven, the Jewish council to whom he spoke, and the entire audience. The word “your” is singular refers to Abraham. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The part of the story about Stephen, which began in [Acts 6:8](#), continues. Stephen begins his response to the high priest and the council by talking about things that happened in Israel's history. Most of this history comes from Moses' writings.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [high priest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [high priest](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then the [high priest](#) said, “Are these things true?”

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then the [high priest](#) asked Stephen, “Are the things that these people are saying about you true?”

## Acts 7:2

**brothers, and fathers, listen to me (ULT)**

**Fellow...and respected leaders, please listen to me (UST)**

Stephen was being very respectful to the council in greeting them as extended family.

### Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- God
- of glory
- Abraham
- Mesopotamia
- Haran
- fathers
- to...father

### Translation Words - UST

- Fellow
- God whom we worship
- glorious
- Abraham
- the region...Mesopotamia
- the city...Haran
- respected leaders
- to...ancestor

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then Stephen said, "Men, [brothers](#), and [fathers](#), listen to me: The [God of glory](#) appeared to our [father Abraham](#) when he was in [Mesopotamia](#), even before he lived in [Haran](#);

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Stephen replied, "[Fellow](#) Jews and [respected leaders](#), please listen to me! The [glorious God whom we worship](#) appeared to our [ancestor Abraham](#) while he was still living in [the region](#) of [Mesopotamia](#), before he moved to [the city](#) of [Haran](#).

## Acts 7:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [relatives](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [relatives](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and he said to him, 'Go out from your land and from your [relatives](#), and come into the land that I will show you.'

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> God said to him, 'Leave this land where you and your [relatives](#) are living, and go into the land which I will direct you to.'

## Acts 7:4

### General Information:

In verse 4 the words “he,” “his,” and “him” refer to Abraham. In verse 5 the words “He” and “he” refer to God, but the word “him” refers to Abraham.

### General Information:

Here the word “you” refers to the Jewish council and audience. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Haran](#)
- [of the Chaldeans](#)
- [of...father](#)
- [death](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and he arrived in Haran](#)
- [which](#)
- [father](#)
- [died, God told](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then he went out from the land [of the Chaldeans](#) and lived in [Haran](#); from there, after the [death](#) of his [father](#), God brought him into this land, in which you live now.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> So Abraham left that land, [which](#) was also called Chaldea, [and he arrived in Haran](#) and lived there. After his [father died, God told](#) him to move to this land in which you and I are now living.

**Acts 7:5**

**he did not give...in it (ULT)**  
**not give...of this land (UST)**

“He did not give any of it”

**not even the length of a foot (ULT)**  
**not even a small plot (UST)**

Possible meanings for this phrase are 1) enough ground to stand on or 2) enough ground to take a step. Alternate translation: “a very tiny piece of ground” (See: [Idiom](#))

**But...the land for a possession...to his descendants after him (ULT)**  
**At that time God did...his descendants, and that it would always belong to them. However, at that time Abraham did (UST)**

“for Abraham to own and to give to his descendants”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [an inheritance](#)
- [a child](#)
- [he promised](#)
- [a possession](#)
- [to...descendants](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [any land to own here](#)
- [have any children](#)
- [promised that he would later](#)
- [would always belong](#)
- [descendants, and that](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> But he did not give him [an inheritance](#) in it—not even the length of a foot. But [he promised](#) to give him the land for [a possession](#), and to his [descendants](#) after him—although he did not have [a child](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> At that time God did not give Abraham [any land to own here](#), not even a small plot of this land. But God [promised that he would later](#) give this land to him and his [descendants, and that](#) it [would always belong](#) to them. However, at that time Abraham did not [have any children](#) who would inherit it.

**Acts 7:6**

**spoke to him...God...like this (ULT)**  
**told...God...Abraham (UST)**

It may be helpful to state that this occurred later than the statement in the previous verse. Alternate translation: "Later God told Abraham"

**for four hundred years (ULT)**  
**four hundred years (UST)**

"400 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [for...years](#)
- [foreign](#)
- [the inhabitants there would make...slaves](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [Your descendants](#)
- [years](#)
- [live in a foreign country](#)
- [force them to work as slaves](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> But [God](#) spoke to him like this, that his [descendants](#) would be strangers in a [foreign](#) land, and that [the inhabitants there would make](#) them [slaves](#) and treat them badly for four hundred [years](#).

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> Later [God](#) told Abraham, '[Your descendants](#) will go and [live in a foreign country](#). They will live there for four hundred [years](#), and during that time their leaders will mistreat your descendants and [force them to work as slaves](#).

## Acts 7:7

**the nation...I will judge (ULT)**

**the people...I will punish (UST)**

“nation” refers to the people in it. Alternate translation: “I will judge the people of the nation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the nation that they serve (ULT)**

**the people...make them work as slaves (UST)**

“the nation that they will serve”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [will judge](#)
- [nation](#)
- [they serve](#)
- [worship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [will punish](#)
- [people](#)
- [make them work as slaves](#)
- [they will come...worship](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> ‘But I [will judge](#) the [nation](#) that [they serve](#),’ said [God](#), ‘and after that they will come out and [worship](#) me in this place.’

### UST

<sup>7</sup> ‘But I [will punish](#) the [people](#) who [make them work as slaves](#),’ said [God](#). ‘After that, your descendants will leave that land, and [they will come](#) and [worship](#) me in this land.’

## Acts 7:8

**God gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision (ULT)  
God commanded...all of his male descendants should  
be circumcised to show that they all belonged to God  
(UST)**

The Jews would have understood that this covenant required Abraham to circumcise the males of his family. Alternate translation: "made a covenant with Abraham to circumcise the males of his family" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**so Abraham became the father of Isaac (ULT)  
every male in Abraham's household...Later Abraham's  
son, Isaac, was born (UST)**

The story transitions to Abraham's descendants.

**Jacob became the father of the (ULT)  
Jacob was...father...of the (UST)**

"Jacob became the father." Stephen shortened this. (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of circumcision
- circumcised
- the covenant
- of Isaac
- Isaac (2)
- Jacob
- Jacob
- Abraham became the father
- patriarchs
- day

### Translation Words - UST

- all of...male descendants should be circumcised
- Abraham circumcised
- to show that they all belonged to God
- Abraham's son, Isaac, was born
- Later Isaac's (2)
- son, Jacob, was born
- Jacob was...father
- Later
- whom we Jews call the patriarchs, our forefathers
- days old

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then God gave Abraham [the covenant of circumcision](#), and so [Abraham became the father of Isaac](#) and [circumcised](#) him on the eighth [day](#); and [Isaac](#) became the father of [Jacob](#), and [Jacob](#) became the father of the twelve [patriarchs](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then God commanded that every male in Abraham's household and [all of his male descendants should be circumcised to show that they all belonged to God](#). [Later Abraham's son, Isaac, was born](#), and when Isaac was eight [days old](#), [Abraham circumcised](#) him. [Later Isaac's son, Jacob, was born](#). [Jacob was](#) the [father](#) of the twelve men [whom we Jews call the patriarchs, our forefathers](#).



## Acts 7:9

### the patriarchs (ULT)

### You know that Jacob's older sons...they (UST)

"Jacob's older sons" or "Joseph's older brothers"

### they sold him into Egypt (ULT)

### sold him to merchants who took him to Egypt, where (UST)

The Jews knew their ancestors sold Joseph to be a slave in Egypt.  
Alternate translation: "sold him as a slave in Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### was...with him (ULT)

### God helped Joseph...he became a slave (UST)

This is an idiom for helping someone. Alternate translation: "helped him" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [were jealous](#)
- [of Joseph](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [patriarchs](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God helped Joseph](#)
- [became jealous](#)
- [because their father favored their younger brother Joseph](#)
- [Egypt, where](#)
- [You know that Jacob's older sons](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Because the [patriarchs were jealous of Joseph](#), they sold him into [Egypt](#); but [God](#) was with him

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [You know that Jacob's older sons became jealous because their father favored their younger brother Joseph](#). So they sold him to merchants who took him to [Egypt, where](#) he became a slave. But [God helped Joseph](#).

## Acts 7:10

### over Egypt (ULT)

### over Egypt (UST)

This refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: “over all the people of Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### over all his household (ULT)

### he...all of Pharaoh’s property (UST)

This refers to all his possessions. Alternate translation: “everything he owned” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor
- wisdom
- he appointed
- of Egypt
- Egypt
- Pharaoh
- household
- afflictions
- he rescued
- king
- governor

### Translation Words - UST

- enabled Joseph to
- be wise
- Pharaoh appointed
- of Egypt, to think well of Joseph
- Egypt
- Pharaoh
- all of Pharaoh’s property
- people caused him to suffer
- He protected
- the king
- rule

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> and [he rescued](#) him from all his [afflictions](#). He gave him [favor](#) and [wisdom](#) in the presence of [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#), and [he appointed](#) him [governor](#) over [Egypt](#) and over all his [household](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [He protected](#) him whenever [people caused him to suffer](#). He [enabled Joseph to be wise](#), and he caused [Pharaoh, the king of Egypt, to think well of Joseph](#). So [Pharaoh appointed](#) him to [rule](#) over [Egypt](#) and to look after [all of Pharaoh’s property](#).

## Acts 7:11

**there came...a famine (ULT)**

**Joseph was doing...a time when there was very little food (UST)**

"a famine came." The ground stopped producing food.

**our fathers (ULT)**

**Jacob and his sons in Canaan (UST)**

This refers Jacob and his sons, who were the ancestors of the Jewish people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [suffering](#)
- [a famine](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in Canaan](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [Jacob and his sons in Canaan](#)
- [People were suffering](#)
- [a time when there was very little food](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Now there came [a famine](#) over all [Egypt](#) and [Canaan](#), and great [suffering](#), and our [fathers](#) could not find food.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> While Joseph was doing that work, there was [a time when there was very little food](#) in [Egypt](#) and also [in Canaan](#). [People were suffering](#). At that time [Jacob and his sons in Canaan](#) also could not find enough food.

## Acts 7:12

### grain (ULT)

#### grain that people could buy (UST)

Grain was the most common food at that time.

### our fathers (ULT)

#### Joseph's...brothers to go there to buy grain. They went and bought grain from Joseph, but they did not recognize him. Then they returned home (UST)

Here this phrase refers to Jacob's sons, Joseph's older brothers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [grain](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [brothers to go there to buy grain](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [grain that people could buy](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But when [Jacob](#) heard there was [grain](#) in [Egypt](#), [he sent](#) our [fathers](#) on their first trip.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When [Jacob](#) heard people report that there was [grain that people could buy](#) in [Egypt](#), [he sent](#) Joseph's older [brothers to go there to buy grain](#). They went and bought grain from Joseph, but they did not recognize him. Then they returned home.

## Acts 7:13

**On...their second trip (ULT)  
to Egypt the second time, they again bought grain from (UST)**

"On their next trip" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**made himself known (ULT)  
But this time he told them who he was (UST)**

Joseph revealed to his brothers his identity as their brother.

**the family of Joseph became known to Pharaoh (ULT)  
Pharaoh learned that Joseph's people were Hebrews  
and that...had come from Canaan were (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh learned that they were Joseph's family" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [known](#)
- [to...brothers](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [of Joseph](#)
- [to Pharaoh](#)
- [family](#)
- [made himself known](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [learned](#)
- [brothers went](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [Joseph's](#)
- [Pharaoh...that](#)
- [people were Hebrews and that](#)
- [But this time he told them who he was](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> On their second trip, [Joseph made himself known](#) to his [brothers](#), and the [family of Joseph](#) became [known to Pharaoh](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> When Joseph's [brothers went](#) to Egypt the second time, they again bought grain from [Joseph](#). [But this time he told them who he was](#). And so [Pharaoh learned that Joseph's people were Hebrews and that](#) those men who had come from Canaan were his brothers.

**Acts 7:14****sending his brothers back (ULT)****sent his brothers back home, they told their (UST)**

“sent his brothers back to Canaan” or “sent his brothers back home”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [souls](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [father](#)
- [his relatives](#)
- [sending his brothers back](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [people](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [father](#)
- [family consisted](#)
- [sent his brothers back home, they told their](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> Then [sending his brothers back](#), [Joseph](#) called for [Jacob](#), his [father](#), and all [his relatives](#), seventy-five [souls](#) in all.

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> Then after [Joseph sent his brothers back home, they told their father Jacob](#) that Joseph wanted him and his entire family to come to Egypt. At that time Jacob's [family consisted](#) of seventy-five [people](#).

**Acts 7:15****he died (ULT)****Later on, Jacob died there (UST)**

Make sure it does not sound as though he died as soon as he arrived in Egypt. Alternate translation: “eventually Jacob died”

**So...he...our fathers (ULT)****So when...he and all his family...our other ancestors, his sons (UST)**

“Jacob and his sons who became our ancestors”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Egypt](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [he died](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [live in Egypt](#)
- [Jacob heard that](#)
- [other ancestors, his sons](#)
- [Later on, Jacob died there](#)

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> So [Jacob](#) went down into [Egypt](#), and [he died](#), he and our [fathers](#).

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> So when [Jacob heard that](#), he and all his family went to [live in Egypt](#). [Later on](#), [Jacob died there](#), and our [other ancestors, his sons](#), also died there.

**Acts 7:16****They were carried over...and laid (ULT)****Their bodies were brought back...and were buried (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jacob's descendants carried Jacob's body and his son's bodies over...and buried them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**for a price in silver (ULT)****Abraham had bought (UST)**

"with money"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sons](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [in silver](#)
- [tomb](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [sons](#)
- [Abraham had bought](#)
- [our land](#)
- [city of Shechem](#)
- [Abraham had bought](#)
- [tomb](#)

**ULT**

<sup>16</sup> They were carried over to [Shechem](#) and laid in the [tomb](#) that [Abraham](#) had bought for a price [in silver](#) from the [sons](#) of Hamor in [Shechem](#).

**UST**

<sup>16</sup> Their bodies were brought back to [our land](#) and were buried in the [tomb](#) that [Abraham had bought](#) from Hamor's [sons](#) in the [city of Shechem](#).



## Acts 7:17

### General Information:

The word “our” includes Stephen and his audience. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### As the time of the promise...the people grew and multiplied

In some languages it may be helpful to say that the people increased in number before saying that the time of the promise arrived.

### the time of the promise approached (ULT) when it was almost time...that he would do (UST)

It was close to the time that God would fulfill his promise to Abraham.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [promise](#)
- [had made](#)
- [to Abraham](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [people](#)
- [time](#)
- [multiplied](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [when it was almost time...that he would do](#)
- [he had promised](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [Our ancestors had become very numerous...for](#)
- [when it was almost time...that he would do](#)
- [Our ancestors had become very numerous...for](#)

### ULT

17 Now as the [time](#) of the [promise](#) approached—the promise that [God had made to Abraham](#)—the [people](#) increased and [multiplied](#) in [Egypt](#),

### UST

17 [Our ancestors had become very numerous when it was almost time for God](#) to rescue them from [Egypt](#), as [he had promised Abraham that he would do](#).

## Acts 7:18

**there arose...another king (ULT)**

**Another king...had begun (UST)**

“another king began to rule”

**over Egypt (ULT)**

**in Egypt (UST)**

“Egypt” refers to the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: “the people of Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who did not know Joseph (ULT)**

**He did not know that Joseph had greatly helped the people of Egypt long before his own time (UST)**

“Joseph” refers to the reputation of Joseph. Alternate translation: “who did not know that Joseph had helped Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [king](#)
- [there arose](#)
- [know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Joseph had greatly helped the people of Egypt long before his own time](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [king](#)
- [had begun](#)
- [He did...know](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> until when [there arose](#) over [Egypt](#) another [king](#) who did not [know Joseph](#).

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> Another [king had begun](#) to rule in [Egypt](#). [He did](#) not [know](#) that [Joseph had greatly helped the people of Egypt long before his own time](#).

## Acts 7:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [newborn infants](#)
- [fathers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [newborn babies](#)
- [and caused them to suffer greatly](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> He deceived our people and mistreated our [fathers](#), forcing them to expose their [newborn infants](#) so they would not be kept alive.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> That king tried to get rid of our ancestors in cruel ways. He oppressed them [and caused them to suffer greatly](#). He even commanded them to throw their [newborn babies](#) outside their homes so that they would die.

## Acts 7:20

### At that time Moses was born (ULT)

### During that time Moses was born (UST)

This introduces Moses into the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### he was beautiful to God (ULT)

### God saw...he was a very beautiful child (UST)

This phrase is an idiom that means Moses was very beautiful. (See: [Idiom](#))

### was nourished (ULT)

### So his parents secretly cared for him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “his parents nourished him” or “his parents cared for him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to God
- Moses
- father
- time
- for...months
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- God saw
- Moses
- their
- time
- for...months
- house

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> At that [time Moses](#) was born; and he was beautiful [to God](#). He was nourished for three [months](#) in the [house](#) of his [father](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> During that [time Moses](#) was born, and [God saw](#) that he was a very beautiful child. So his parents secretly cared for him in [their house](#) for three [months](#).

**Acts 7:21****When he was placed outside (ULT)****Then they had to put him outside...house, but...he (UST)**

Moses was “placed outside” because of Pharaoh’s command. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When his parents placed him outside” or “When they abandoned him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the daughter of Pharaoh...him and raised...for herself as a son (ULT)****the...Pharaoh’s daughter...him and cared for...as though...were her own son (UST)**

She did for him every good thing a mother would do for her own son. Use your language’s normal word for what a mother does to make sure her son becomes a healthy adult.

**as a son (ULT)****as though...son (UST)**

“as if he were her own son”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [a son](#)
- [of Pharaoh](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [son](#)
- [Pharaoh’s](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> When he was placed outside, the daughter [of Pharaoh](#) took him and raised him for herself as [a son](#).

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> Then they had to put him outside the house, but [Pharaoh’s](#) daughter found him and cared for him as though he were her own [son](#).

## Acts 7:22

### Moses...was educated (ULT)

### Moses...was taught (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Egyptians educated Moses" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in all the wisdom of the Egyptians (ULT)

### all the learning that the people...Egypt knew (UST)

This is an exaggeration to emphasize that he was trained in the best schools in Egypt. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### was educated...mighty in his words...works (ULT)

### was taught...in...he spoke...things powerfully (UST)

"effective in his speech and actions" or "influential in what he said and did"

### Translation Words - ULT

- mighty
- the wisdom
- works
- Moses
- of the Egyptians
- was educated

### Translation Words - UST

- powerfully
- the learning
- things
- Moses
- that the people...Egypt knew
- was taught

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [Moses was educated](#) in all [the wisdom of the Egyptians](#), and he was [mighty](#) in his words and [works](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [Moses was taught](#) all [the learning that the people](#) in [Egypt knew](#), and when he grew up, he spoke and did [things powerfully](#).

**Acts 7:23****it came into his heart (ULT)****about...decided that he would go (UST)**

Here “heart” is a metonym for “mind.” The phrase “it came into his heart” is an idiom that means to decide something. Alternate translation: “it came into his mind” or “he decided” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

**to visit his brothers, the sons of Israel (ULT)****and visit his relatives, the Israelites (UST)**

This refers to his people, and not just to his family. Alternate translation: “see how his own people, the children of Israel, were doing” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [brothers](#)
- [sons](#)
- [heart](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [was about](#)
- [old](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [relatives](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [decided](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [One day when Moses was](#)
- [forty years old](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> But when he [was about](#) forty years [old](#), it came into his [heart](#) to visit his [brothers](#), the [sons of Israel](#).

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> [One day when Moses was](#) about [forty years old](#), he [decided](#) that he would go and visit his [relatives](#), the [Israelites](#).

## Acts 7:24

**Seeing a certain Israelite being mistreated, Moses defended him and avenged the one who was oppressed by striking the Egyptian (ULT)**

**He saw an Egyptian mistreating one of the Israelites. So he went over to help the Israelite man, and he avenged the Israelite man by killing the Egyptian (UST)**

This can be stated in active form by rearranging the order. Alternate translation: "Seeing an Egyptian mistreating an Israelite, Moses defended and avenged the Israelite by striking the Egyptian who was oppressing him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by striking the Egyptian (ULT)**  
**killing the Egyptian (UST)**

Moses hit the Egyptian so hard that he died.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Egyptian
- avenged
- the one who was oppressed
- being mistreated

### Translation Words - UST

- Egyptian
- he avenged
- Israelite man by
- mistreating one of the Israelites

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Seeing a certain Israelite [being mistreated](#), Moses defended him and [avenged the one who was oppressed](#) by striking the [Egyptian](#):

### UST

<sup>24</sup> He saw an Egyptian [mistreating one of the Israelites](#). So he went over to help the Israelite man, and [he avenged](#) the [Israelite man by](#) killing the [Egyptian](#).



## Acts 7:25

**he thought (ULT)**

**Moses thought that (UST)**

“he imagined”

**by his hand was rescuing them (ULT)**

**his...to free them from being slaves (UST)**

Here “hand” refers to the actions of Moses. Alternate translation: “was rescuing them through what Moses was doing” or “was using the actions of Moses to rescue them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- was rescuing
- brothers
- God
- hand
- would understand
- they...understand

### Translation Words - UST

- to free
- fellow Israelites
- God had sent him
- being slaves
- would understand
- did...understand

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> for he thought his [brothers would understand](#) that [God](#) by his [hand was rescuing](#) them, but [they](#) did not [understand](#) this.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Moses thought that his [fellow Israelites would understand](#) that [God had sent him to free](#) them from [being slaves](#). But they did not [understand](#).

## Acts 7:26

### General Information:

Here the word "us" refers to the Israelites but does not include Moses. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**to some Israelites (ULT)**  
**them (UST)**

The audience would have known from the account in Exodus that these were two men, but Stephen does not specify that. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he urged them to be at peace (ULT)**  
**He tried to make them stop fighting (UST)**

"make them stop fighting"

**Men, you are brothers (ULT)**  
**Men, you two are fellow Israelites (UST)**

Moses was addressing the Israelites who were fighting.

**why are you hurting one another?**

Moses asked this question to encourage them to stop fighting. Alternate translation: "you should not hurt each other!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [peace](#)
- [day](#)
- [you are hurting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are fellow Israelites](#)
- [He tried to make them stop fighting](#)
- [day](#)
- [hurting](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> On the next [day](#) he came to some Israelites who were quarreling, and he urged them to be at [peace](#), saying, 'Men, you are [brothers](#). Why is it that [you are hurting](#) one another?'

### UST

<sup>26</sup> The next [day](#), Moses saw two Israelite men fighting each other. [He tried to make them stop fighting](#) by saying to them, 'Men, you two [are fellow Israelites](#)! You must stop [hurting](#) each other!'

**Acts 7:27****Who made you a ruler and a judge over us (ULT)****No one appointed you ruler and judge over us (UST)**

The man used this question to rebuke Moses. Alternate translation: "You have no authority over us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- made
- a judge
- a ruler
- neighbor
- pushed...away
- who had wronged

**Translation Words - UST**

- appointed
- judge
- ruler
- other man
- pushed Moses away
- man who was injuring

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> But the one [who had wronged](#) his [neighbor pushed](#) him [away](#), and said, 'Who [made](#) you [a ruler](#) and [a judge](#) over us?'

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> But the [man who was injuring](#) the [other man pushed Moses away](#) and said to him, 'No one [appointed](#) you [ruler](#) and [judge](#) over us!'

## Acts 7:28

**You do not want to kill me in the same way you killed the Egyptian yesterday, do you (ULT)**  
**You probably want to kill me as you killed the Egyptian yesterday (UST)**

The man used this question to warn Moses that he and probably others knew Moses had killed the Egyptian.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Egyptian](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Egyptian](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> You do not want to kill me in the same way you killed the [Egyptian](#) yesterday, do you?"

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> You probably want to kill me as you killed the [Egyptian](#) yesterday!"

## Acts 7:29

### General Information:

Stephen's audience already knew that Moses had married a Midianite woman when he fled Egypt. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### at this statement (ULT) heard that...from Egypt to (UST)

The implied information is that Moses understood that the Israelites knew that he had killed an Egyptian the day before ([Acts 7:28](#)). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [of Midian](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [he became the father of](#)
- [a foreigner](#)
- [ran away](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)
- [Midian](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [had](#)
- [lived there](#)
- [he fled](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then [Moses ran away](#) at this statement, and he became [a foreigner](#) in the land [of Midian](#), where [he became the father of](#) two [sons](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> When [Moses](#) heard that, [he fled](#) from Egypt to [Midian](#) land. He [lived there](#) for some years. He got married, and he and his wife [had](#) two [sons](#).

## Acts 7:30

### When forty years were past (ULT)

### One day forty years later (UST)

"After 40 years passed." This was the amount of time Moses had been in Midian. Alternate translation: "Forty years after Moses fled from Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### appeared...an angel (ULT)

### the Lord God appeared...as an angel to Moses (UST)

Stephen's audience knew that God spoke through the angel. The UST makes this explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [an angel](#)
- [of Mount...Sinai](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [years](#)
- [of fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [as an angel to Moses](#)
- [Mount Sinai](#)
- [desert](#)
- [years](#)
- [the flame...that was burning](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> When forty [years](#) were past, [an angel](#) appeared to him in the [wilderness of Mount Sinai](#), in a flame [of fire](#) in a bush.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> One day forty [years](#) later, the Lord God appeared [as an angel to Moses](#). He appeared in [the flame](#) of a bush [that was burning](#) in the [desert](#) near [Mount Sinai](#).

## Acts 7:31

**he marveled at the sight (ULT)**

**he was amazed because the bush was not burning up (UST)**

Moses was surprised that the bush was not burning up in the fire. This was previously known by Stephen's audience. Alternate translation: "because the bush was not burning up" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**When Moses...he approached to look at it (ULT)**

**When...As he went over to look more closely...to him (UST)**

This may mean Moses initially drew close to the bush to investigate.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Lord](#)
- [When Moses](#)
- [a voice](#)
- [he marveled](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord God](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [say](#)
- [he was amazed because](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> [When Moses](#) saw the fire, [he marveled](#) at the sight; and as he approached to look at it, there came [a voice of the Lord](#):

### UST

<sup>31</sup> When [Moses](#) saw it, [he was amazed because](#) the bush was not burning up. As he went over to look more closely, he heard the [Lord God say](#) to him,

## Acts 7:32

**I am the God of your fathers (ULT)**

**I am the God whom your ancestors worshiped (UST)**

"I am the God whom your ancestors worshiped"

**Then Moses began to tremble and did not dare to look (ULT)**

**Moses was so afraid that he began to shake. He was afraid to look at the bush any longer (UST)**

This may mean Moses drew back in fear when he heard the voice.

**to tremble...Moses began (ULT)**

**afraid that he began to shake...Moses...was (UST)**

Moses shook from fear. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Moses trembled with fear" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God (2)
- God
- of Abraham
- of Isaac
- Moses
- of Jacob
- of...fathers
- to tremble

### Translation Words - UST

- God (2)
- God whom
- that Abraham
- Isaac
- Moses
- Jacob worship
- ancestors worshiped
- afraid that he began to shake

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> 'I am the [God](#) of your [fathers](#), the [God of Abraham](#), and [of Isaac](#), and [of Jacob](#).' Then [Moses](#) began [to tremble](#) and did not dare to look.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> 'I am the [God whom](#) your [ancestors worshiped](#). I am the [God that Abraham, Isaac and Jacob worship](#).' [Moses](#) was so [afraid that he began to shake](#). He was afraid to look at the bush any longer.



## Acts 7:33

### Take off the sandals (ULT)

### Take...sandals off...that you honor me. Because (UST)

God told Moses this so he would honor God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**for the place on which you are standing is holy ground (ULT)**

**to show...I am here, the place where you are standing is especially mine (UST)**

The implied information is that where God is present, the immediate area around God is considered or made holy by God. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [holy](#)
- [sandals](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord God](#)
- [especially mine](#)
- [sandals](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Then the [Lord](#) said to him, 'Take off the [sandals](#) from your feet, for the place on which you are standing is [holy](#) ground.'

### UST

<sup>33</sup> Then the [Lord God](#) said to him, 'Take your [sandals](#) off to show that you honor me. Because I am here, the place where you are standing is [especially mine](#).'

## Acts 7:34

### I have certainly seen (ULT)

### I have certainly seen how...people (UST)

“seen for sure.” The word certainly adds emphasis to seen.

### of my people (ULT)

### of...my people (UST)

The word “my” emphasizes that these people belonged to God.  
Alternate translation: “the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob”

### I have come down to rescue them (ULT)

### I have come down to rescue them (UST)

“will personally cause their release”

### now come (ULT)

### Now (UST)

“get ready.” God uses an order here.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...my...people
- Egypt
- Egypt
- of...people
- I will send
- to rescue
- suffering
- groans

### Translation Words - UST

- my people
- Egypt are continually causing
- Egypt
- people
- I am going to send
- to rescue
- to suffer
- groan

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> I have certainly seen the [suffering](#) of my [people](#) who are in [Egypt](#), and I have heard their [groans](#), and I have come down [to rescue](#) them; so now come, [I will send](#) you to [Egypt](#).’

### UST

<sup>34</sup> I have certainly seen how the people of [Egypt are continually causing my people to suffer](#). I have heard my people when they [groan](#) because of it. So I have come down [to rescue](#) them from Egypt. Now get ready, because [I am going to send](#) you back to [Egypt](#).’

## Acts 7:35

### General Information:

Verses 35-38 contains a series of connected phrases referring to Moses. Each phrase begins with statements such as “This Moses” or “This same Moses” or “This is the man” or “It is the same Moses.” If possible, use similar statements to emphasize Moses. After the Israelites left Egypt, they spent 40 years wandering around the wilderness before God led them into the land he had promised them.

### This same Moses, whom they rejected (ULT)

### This Moses is the one...whom they rejected (UST)

This refers back to the events recorded in [Acts 7:27-28](#).

### deliverer (ULT)

### to free them from being slaves (UST)

“rescuer”

### by the hand of the angel who appeared to Moses in the bush (ULT)

### He is the one whom an angel in the bush commanded to do that (UST)

The hand is a metonym for the action performed by the person. In this case, the angel had commanded Moses to return to Egypt. Stephen speaks as if the angel had a physical hand. You may need to make explicit what action the angel did. Alternate translation: “by the action of the angel” or “by having the angel...bush command him to return to Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the angel
- God
- deliverer
- appointed
- a judge
- Moses
- the hand
- a ruler
- a ruler (2)
- sent
- they rejected

### Translation Words - UST

- an angel
- God himself
- to free them from being slaves
- No one appointed
- judge
- Moses is the one
- an angel

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> This same [Moses](#), whom [they rejected](#), saying, ‘Who [appointed](#) you [a ruler](#) and [a judge](#)?’—he was the one whom [God sent](#) as both [a ruler](#) and [deliverer](#)—by [the hand of the angel](#) who appeared to Moses in the bush.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> This [Moses is the one](#) who had tried to help our Israelite people, but whom [they rejected](#) by saying, ‘[No one appointed](#) you [ruler](#) and [judge](#)!’ Moses is the one whom [God himself sent to rule them](#) and [to free them from being slaves](#). He is the one whom [an angel](#) in the bush commanded to do that.

- ruler
- rule them (2)
- sent to
- they rejected

## Acts 7:36

### during forty years (ULT)

### forty years that the Israelite people lived (UST)

Stephen's audience knew about the forty years the Israelites spent in the wilderness. Alternate translation: "during the 40 years that the Israelite people lived in the wilderness" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [signs](#)
- [the Sea of Reeds](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [of Reeds](#)
- [during...years](#)
- [miracles](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [miracles](#)
- [the Sea of Reeds](#)
- [Egypt in order to show that God was with him](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [of Reeds](#)
- [years that the Israelite people lived](#)
- [many kinds of](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> This Moses led them out of Egypt, after doing [miracles](#) and [signs](#) in the land [of Egypt](#) and at [the Sea of Reeds](#), and in the [wilderness during](#) forty [years](#).

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Moses is the one who led our ancestors out from Egypt. He did [many kinds of miracles](#) in [Egypt in order to show that God was with him](#), at [the Sea of Reeds](#), and during the forty [years that the Israelite people lived](#) in the [wilderness](#).

## Acts 7:37

**a prophet...will raise up (ULT)**

**a prophet...cause (UST)**

“cause a man to be a prophet”

**from among your brothers (ULT)**

**from among your own people to be (UST)**

“from among your own people”

### Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- sons
- a prophet
- God
- of Israel
- Moses
- will raise up
- a prophet like

### Translation Words - UST

- own people to be
- Israelite people
- a prophet
- God will...another man
- Israelite people
- Moses
- cause
- like

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> It is the same [Moses](#) who said to the [sons of Israel](#), ‘[God will raise up a prophet](#) for you from among your [brothers](#), [a prophet like](#) me.’

### UST

<sup>37</sup> This [Moses](#) is the one who said to the [Israelite people](#), ‘[God will cause another man](#) from among your [own people to be a prophet like](#) me for you.’

## Acts 7:38

### General Information:

The quotation in verse 40 is from the writings of Moses.

**This is the man who was in the assembly (ULT)**  
**It was this man Moses who was among the Israelites who were together...It is Moses to whom God had the angel on Mount Sinai (UST)**

"This is the man Moses who was among the Israelites"

**This is the man who was (ULT)**  
**It was this man Moses who was...It is Moses to whom God had the angel on Mount Sinai (UST)**

The phrase "This is the man" throughout this passage refers to Moses.

**he is the man who received living words to give to us (ULT)**  
**give him our laws...He was the one who received from God words that tell us how to live eternally and passed them on to us (UST)**

God was the one who gave those words. Alternate translation: "this is the man to whom God spoke living words to give to us"

**living words (ULT)**  
**words that tell us how to live eternally and passed them on (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "a message that endures" or 2) "words that give life." (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [living](#)
- [angel](#)
- [Mount...Sinai](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [received](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [assembly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [how to live eternally and passed them on](#)
- [angel](#)
- [Mount...Sinai](#)
- [ancestors what the angel had said](#)
- [received from God](#)
- [wilderness](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> This is the man who was in the [assembly](#) in the [wilderness](#) with the [angel](#) who was speaking to him on [Mount Sinai](#), and who was with our [fathers](#); he is the man who [received living](#) words to give to us.

### UST

<sup>38</sup> It was this man Moses who was among the Israelites [who were together](#) in the [wilderness](#); he was with the [angel](#) who had spoken to him on [Mount Sinai](#). It is Moses to whom God had the angel on Mount Sinai give him our laws, and he was the one who told our [ancestors what the angel had said](#). He was the one who [received from God](#) words that tell us [how to live eternally and passed them on](#) to us.

- [who were together](#)



## Acts 7:39

**they pushed him away (ULT)**

**they rejected him (UST)**

This metaphor emphasizes their rejection of Moses. Alternate translation: “they rejected him as their leader” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**turned back in their hearts (ULT)**

**as their leader...wanted to return (UST)**

Here “hearts” is a metonym for people’s thoughts. To do something in the heart means to desire do to something. Alternate translation: “they desired to turn back” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hearts](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [obedient](#)
- [turned back](#)
- [they pushed him away](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [wanted](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [to obey Moses](#)
- [to return](#)
- [they rejected him](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> This is the man to whom our [fathers](#) were not willing to be [obedient](#), but instead [they pushed him away](#), and [turned back](#) in their [hearts](#) to [Egypt](#).

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> However, our [ancestors](#) did not want [to obey Moses](#). Instead, [they rejected him](#) as their leader and [wanted to return](#) to [Egypt](#).

## Acts 7:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gods](#)
- [As for...Moses](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [to Aaron](#)
- [we...know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [idols](#)
- [fellow Moses](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [his older brother Aaron](#)
- [we do...know](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> They had said [to Aaron](#), 'Make us [gods](#) who will lead us. [As for](#) this [Moses](#), who brought us out of the land [of Egypt](#), we do not [know](#) what has happened to him.'

### UST

<sup>40</sup> So they told [his older brother Aaron](#), 'Make [idols](#) for us who will be our gods to lead us. As for that [fellow Moses](#) who led us out [of Egypt](#), [we do](#) not [know](#) what has happened to him!'

## Acts 7:41

### General Information:

Stephen's quotation here is from the prophet Amos.

**they made a calf (ULT)**

**they made an image that looked like a calf (UST)**

Stephen's audience knew the calf they made was a statue. Alternate translation: "they made a statue that looked like a calf" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they made a calf...idol...the work of their hands (ULT)**

**they made an image that looked like a calf...idol...**

**because...of what they themselves...had made (UST)**

These phrases all refer to the same statue of the calf.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [work](#)
- [idol](#)
- [of...hands](#)
- [they made a calf](#)
- [rejoiced](#)
- [a sacrifice](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [because...had made](#)
- [idol](#)
- [what they](#)
- [they made an image that looked like a calf](#)
- [they sang and danced](#)
- [sacrifices](#)
- [they made an image that looked like a calf](#)

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> So [they made a calf](#) in those [days](#) and brought [a sacrifice](#) to the [idol](#), and [rejoiced](#) because of the [work](#) of their [hands](#).

### UST

<sup>41</sup> So [they made an image that looked like a calf](#). Then they offered [sacrifices](#) to honor that [idol](#), and [they sang and danced because](#) of [what they themselves had made](#).

## Acts 7:42

**turned...God (ULT)**

**stopped correcting them...God (UST)**

"God turned away." This action expresses that God was not pleased with the people and no longer helped them. Alternate translation: "God stopped correcting them" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**gave them up (ULT)**

**He abandoned them (UST)**

"abandoned them"

**the stars in the sky (ULT)**

**the sun, moon...stars...the sky (UST)**

Possible meanings for the original phrase are 1) the stars only or 2) the sun, moon, and stars.

**the book of the prophets (ULT)**

**This agrees with the words that one of the prophets (UST)**

This was apparently a collection of the writings of several of the Old Testament prophets into one scroll. It would also have included the writings of Amos.

**You...offer to me slain beasts and sacrifices for forty years in the wilderness, did you, house of Israel (ULT)**

**You Israelite people, when you...repeatedly killed animals...and offered them...sacrifices during those forty years that you were in the wilderness, you certainly were not truly offering them to me (UST)**

God asked this question to show Israel they did not worship Him with their sacrifices. Alternate translation: "You did not honor me when you offered slain beasts and sacrifices...Israel" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**house of Israel (ULT)**

**you (UST)**

This refers to the whole nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "all you Israelites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sky](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [God](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [slain beasts](#)
- [for...years](#)
- [turned](#)
- [sacrifices](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> But [God turned](#) and gave them up [to worship](#) the stars in the [sky, as it is written](#) in the book of the [prophets](#), "You did not offer to me [slain beasts](#) and [sacrifices](#) for forty [years](#) in the [wilderness](#), did you, [house of Israel](#)?"

### UST

<sup>42</sup> So [God stopped correcting them](#). He abandoned them [to worship](#) the sun, moon and stars in the [sky](#). This agrees with the words that one of the [prophets](#) wrote: God said, "You Israelite people, when you [repeatedly killed animals](#) and offered them [as sacrifices](#) during those forty [years](#) that you were in the [wilderness](#), [you certainly were not truly offering them](#) to me!"

- as
- it is written
- to worship
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- sky
- prophets
- God
- you
- wilderness...certainly were not truly offering them
- repeatedly killed animals
- years
- stopped correcting them
- sacrifices
- as
- wrote: God said
- to worship
- you

## Acts 7:43

### General Information:

The quotation from the prophet Amos continues here.

### Connecting Statement:

Stephen continues his response to the high priest and the council which he began in [Acts 7:2](#).

### You accepted (ULT)

### you carried with you from place to place (UST)

It is implied that they took these idols with them as they traveled in the wilderness. Alternate translation: “you carried with you from place to place” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### tabernacle of Molech (ULT)

### tent that contained...the...Molech (UST)

the tent that housed the false god Molech

### the star of the god Rephan

the star that is identified with the false god Rephan

### and the images that you made (ULT)

### the idol representing...that...Those were idols that you had made (UST)

They made statues or images of the gods Molech and Rephan in order to worship them.

### I will carry you away beyond Babylon (ULT)

### I will cause you to be taken away far from your homes to regions even farther than Babylon country (UST)

“I will remove you to places even farther than Babylon.” This would be God’s act of judgment.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...god
- to worship
- tabernacle
- Babylon
- of Molech

### Translation Words - UST

- god
- and you worshiped
- tent that contained
- Babylon country
- Molech

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> You accepted the [tabernacle of Molech](#) and the star of your [god Rephan](#), and the images that you made [to worship](#) them: and I will carry you away beyond [Babylon](#).’

### UST

<sup>43</sup> On the contrary, you carried with you from place to place the [tent that contained](#) the idol representing the [god Molech](#) that you worshiped. You also carried with you the image of the star called Rephan. Those were idols that you had made, [and you worshiped](#) them instead of me. So I will cause you to be taken away far from your homes to regions even farther than [Babylon country](#).’

**Acts 7:44**

**The tabernacle of the testimony (ULT)**  
**they worshiped God at the sacred tent that showed**  
**that he was there with them (UST)**

The tent that housed the ark (a box) with the 10 commandments carved in stone inside it

**Translation Words - ULT**

- had commanded
- testimony
- tabernacle
- to Moses
- with...fathers
- wilderness
- just as

**Translation Words - UST**

- had commanded
- that showed that he was there with them
- they worshiped God at...sacred tent
- Moses
- While...ancestors were
- desert
- They had made the tent exactly like God

**ULT**

<sup>44</sup> The [tabernacle](#) of the [testimony](#) was with our [fathers](#) in the [wilderness](#), [just as](#) the one who was speaking [to Moses had commanded](#), to make it like the pattern that he had seen.

**UST**

<sup>44</sup> "While our [ancestors were](#) in the [desert](#), [they worshiped God at the sacred tent that showed that he was there with them](#). [They had made the tent exactly like God had commanded Moses](#) to make it. It was exactly like the model that Moses had seen when he was up on the mountain.

## Acts 7:45

**This is the tabernacle which...our fathers, under Joshua...received and brought with them (ULT)  
carried that tent...Later on, other ancestors of ours...  
with them when Joshua led them into this land (UST)**

The phrase “under Joshua” means that their ancestors did these things in obedience to Joshua’s direction. Alternate translation: “our fathers, in accordance with Joshua’s instructions, received the tabernacle and brought it with them”

**God took the land from the nations and drove them out before the face of our fathers**

This sentence tells why the ancestors were able to take possession of the land. Alternate translation: “God forced the nations to leave the land before the face of our fathers”

**they took possession of the nations...God...from before the face of our fathers (ULT)  
the people...So the Israelites were able...possess this land...That was during the time that they took this land for themselves, when God...The tent remained...this land (UST)**

Here “the face of our fathers” refers to the presence of their ancestors. Possible meanings are 1) “As our ancestors watched, God took the land from the nations and drove them out” or 2) “When our ancestors came, God took the land from the nations and drove them out” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of the nations (ULT)  
the people (UST)**

This refers to the people who lived in the land before Israel. Alternate translation: “the people who previously lived here” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**drove them out (ULT)  
forced...who previously lived here to leave (UST)**

“forced them to leave the land”

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of David
- Joshua
- fathers
- of...fathers
- they took possession
- nations
- the face
- time

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> This is the tabernacle which our [fathers](#), under [Joshua](#), also received and brought with them when [they took possession](#) of the [nations](#). [God](#) drove them out from before [the face](#) of our [fathers](#) until the [time of David](#),

### UST

<sup>45</sup> Later on, other [ancestors](#) of ours carried that tent with them [when Joshua](#) led them into this land. [That was during the time that they took this land for themselves, when God](#) forced the [people](#) who previously lived here to leave. So the Israelites were able to [possess this land](#). The tent [remained](#) in [this land](#) and [was still here when King David ruled](#).



## Translation Words - UST

- when God
- King David ruled
- when Joshua
- ancestors
- remained...this land
- possess this land
- people
- That was during the time that they took this land for themselves
- was still here when

## Acts 7:46

**a dwelling place for the God of Jacob (ULT)**  
**build a...house where he and all...our Israelite people**  
**could worship God (UST)**

"a house for the ark where the God of Jacob could stay." David wanted a permanent place for the ark to reside in Jerusalem, not in a tent.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [favor](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of Jacob](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David pleased God](#)
- [God to let him](#)
- [where he and all...our Israelite people could worship God](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> who found [favor](#) in the sight [of God](#), and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the [God of Jacob](#).

### UST

<sup>46</sup> [David pleased God](#), and he asked [God to let him](#) build a [house where he and all of our Israelite people could worship God](#).

**Acts 7:47****General Information:**

In verses 49 and 50, Stephen quotes from the prophet Isaiah. In the quotation, God is speaking about himself.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Solomon](#)
- [the house](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Solomon](#)
- [a house where people could worship](#)

**ULT**

<sup>47</sup> However, [Solomon](#) built [the house](#) for God.

**UST**

<sup>47</sup> But instead, God told David's son [Solomon](#) to build [a house where people could worship](#) him."

**Acts 7:48****houses made with hands (ULT)****houses that people have made (UST)**

The hand is a synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: "made by people" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Most High](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [as](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God is greater than everything, and he](#)
- [prophet Isaiah](#)
- [It is like](#)

**ULT**

<sup>48</sup> However, the [Most High](#) does not live in houses made with hands, [as](#) the [prophet](#) says,

**UST**

<sup>48</sup> "However, we know that [God is greater than everything, and he](#) does not live in houses that people have made. [It is like](#) the [prophet Isaiah](#) wrote:

## Acts 7:49

### Heaven is my throne, and the earth is the footstool for my feet (ULT)

The prophet is comparing the greatness of God's presence to how impossible it is for man to build a place for God to rest on earth since the whole earth is nothing but a place for God to rest his feet.

### What kind of house can you build for me (ULT)

God asks this question to show how useless man's efforts are to take care of God. Alternate translation: "You can not build a house adequate enough for me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### what is the place for my rest (ULT)

God asks this question to show man that he cannot provide God any rest. Alternate translation: "There is no place of rest good enough for me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>49</sup> 'Heaven is my throne, and the earth is the footstool for my feet. What kind of house can you build for me? says the Lord, or what is the place for my rest?

#### UST

<sup>49-50</sup> God said, "Heaven is my throne and the earth is my footstool. I myself have made everything both in heaven and on the earth. So you human beings cannot make a place good enough for me to live in!"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Heaven is
- the Lord
- is the footstool
- for...feet
- throne
- earth
- for...rest
- kind of house

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- footstool
- footstool
- throne, enthroned
- earth, earthen, earthly
- rest, rested, restless
- house

**Acts 7:50****Did my hand not make all these things (ULT)**

God asks this question to show that man did not create anything.

Alternate translation: "My hand made all these things!" (See:

[Rhetorical Question](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [hand](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [hand](#)

**ULT**

**50** Did my [hand](#) not make all these things?"

**UST**

**49-50** God said, "Heaven is my throne and the earth is my footstool. I myself have made everything both in heaven and on the earth. So you human beings cannot make a place good enough for me to live in!"

## Acts 7:51

### Connecting Statement:

With a sharp rebuke, Stephen finishes his response to the high priest and the council which he began in [Acts 7:2](#).

### You are stiff-necked (ULT)

### You people are (UST)

Stephen shifted from identifying with the Jewish leaders to rebuking them.

### You are stiff-necked (ULT)

### You people are (UST)

This does not mean their necks were stiff but rather that they were “stubborn.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### uncircumcised in heart and ears (ULT)

### extremely stubborn (UST)

The Jews regarded uncircumcised people as disobedient to God. Stephen uses “hearts and ears” to represent to the Jewish leaders who acted the way Gentiles act when they do not obey or listen to God. Alternate translation: “you refuse to obey and hear” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

51 [You are stiff-necked](#) and uncircumcised [in heart](#) and ears. You always resist the [Holy Spirit](#); you also resist [just as](#) your [fathers resisted](#).

#### UST

51 “[You people are extremely stubborn](#) toward him! You are [exactly like](#) your [ancestors](#)! You always resist the [Holy Spirit, just as they did](#)!”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [in heart](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [You are stiff-necked](#)
- [just as...resisted](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [extremely stubborn](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [You people are](#)
- [exactly like...just as they did](#)

**Acts 7:52**

**Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute (ULT)**

**Your ancestors caused every prophet to suffer...what (UST)**

Stephen asked this question to show them that they learned nothing from the errors of their forefathers. Alternate translation: "Your forefathers persecuted every prophet!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Righteous One (ULT)  
pleased God (UST)**

This refers to the Christ, the Messiah.

**They killed...you have...become betrayers...murderers (ULT)  
even...you recently turned over to his enemies...  
insisted that they kill him (UST)**

"you have also betrayed and murdered him"

**murderers (ULT)  
insisted that they kill him (UST)**

"murderers of the Righteous One" or "murderers of the Christ"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Righteous One](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [betrayers](#)
- [did...persecute](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [pleased God](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [recently turned over to his enemies](#)
- [caused...to suffer](#)

**ULT**

<sup>52</sup> Which of the [prophets](#) did your [fathers](#) not [persecute](#)? They killed those who told in advance about the coming of the [Righteous One](#), of whom you have now become [betrayers](#) and murderers,

**UST**

<sup>52</sup> Your [ancestors caused](#) every [prophet to suffer](#). They even killed those who long ago announced that the Messiah would come, the one who always did what [pleased God](#). And the Messiah has come! He is the one whom you [recently turned over to his enemies](#) and insisted that they kill him!



## Acts 7:53

**the law delivered by angels (ULT)**  
**the people...God's laws. Those were laws that God**  
**caused angels to give to our ancestors (UST)**

"the laws that God caused angels to give to our ancestors"

### Translation Words - ULT

- angels
- law
- received
- delivered

### Translation Words - UST

- God caused angels
- God's laws. Those were laws that
- You are...have received
- give to our ancestors

#### ULT

<sup>53</sup> you who [received](#) the [law delivered](#) by [angels](#), but did not keep it."

#### UST

<sup>53</sup> [You are](#) the people who [have received God's laws. Those were laws that God caused angels to give to our ancestors](#). However, you have not obeyed them!"

**Acts 7:54****Connecting Statement:**

The council reacts to Stephen's words.

**When hearing these things (ULT)****When the Jewish council members...others there heard all that Stephen said (UST)**

This is the turning point; the sermon ends and the council members react.

**the council members were cut (ULT)****they became very angry (UST)**

To "cut to the heart" is an idiom for making a person extremely angry. Alternate translation: "were extremely angry" or "became very angry" (See: [Idiom](#))

**they ground their teeth at Stephen (ULT)****They were grinding their teeth together because they were so angry at him (UST)**

This action expressed their strong anger at Stephen or hatred of Stephen. Alternate translation: "they became so angry that they ground their teeth together" or "moved their teeth back and forth as they looked at Stephen"(See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [to...hearts](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [they became very angry](#)

**ULT**

<sup>54</sup> When hearing these things, the council members were cut to their [hearts](#), and they ground their teeth at Stephen.

**UST**

<sup>54</sup> When the Jewish council members and others there heard all that Stephen said, [they became very angry](#). They were grinding their teeth together because they were so angry at him!

**Acts 7:55****looked up intently into heaven (ULT)****He looked up into heaven and (UST)**

“Stared up into heaven.” It appears that only Stephen saw this vision and not anyone else in the crowd.

**and saw the glory of God (ULT)****saw a dazzling light from God (UST)**

People normally experienced the glory of God as a bright light.  
Alternate translation: “saw a bright light from God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**and he saw Jesus standing at the right hand of God (ULT)****and he saw Jesus standing at God’s right side (UST)**

To stand at the “right hand of God” is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: “and he saw Jesus standing in the place of honor and authority beside God” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heaven](#)
- [he saw Jesus](#)
- [full](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [of God](#)
- [of God \(2\)](#)
- [of the Holy Spirit](#)
- [the glory](#)
- [the right hand](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [heaven and](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [But...completely controlled Stephen](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [God](#)
- [God’s \(2\)](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [a dazzling light from](#)
- [right side](#)

**ULT**

<sup>55</sup> But he, being [full of the Holy Spirit](#), looked up intently into [heaven](#) and saw [the glory of God](#); and [he saw Jesus](#) standing at [the right hand of God](#).

**UST**

<sup>55</sup> [But the Holy Spirit completely controlled Stephen](#). He looked up into [heaven and](#) saw [a dazzling light from God](#), and he saw [Jesus](#) standing at [God’s right side](#).

## Acts 7:56

### Son of Man (ULT)

### Son of Man (UST)

Stephen refers to Jesus by the title "Son of Man."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the right hand](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [God](#)
- [in human form...where...rules](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

### ULT

<sup>56</sup> Stephen said, "Look, I see the [heavens](#) opened, and the [Son of Man](#) standing at [the right hand of God](#)."

### UST

<sup>56</sup> "Look," he said, "I see [heaven](#) open, and I see the [Son of Man in human form](#) standing [where God rules](#)!"

## Acts 7:57

### covered their ears (ULT)

### They put their hands over their ears (UST)

“put their hands on their ears.” They did this to show that they did not want to hear any more of what Stephen said. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with a...voice](#)
- [shouting out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [loudly](#)
- [they shouted](#)

### ULT

<sup>57</sup> At this the council members covered their ears, and [shouting out with a](#) loud [voice](#), altogether they rushed at him.

### UST

<sup>57</sup> When the Jewish council members and others heard that, [they shouted loudly](#). They put their hands over their ears so that they would not hear him, and immediately, they all rushed at him.

## Acts 7:58

### dragging him out of the city (ULT)

### They dragged him...outside the city of Jerusalem (UST)

"They seized Stephen and forcefully took him out of the city"

### outer clothing (ULT)

### their outer garments in order to throw stones more easily (UST)

These are cloaks or robes they would wear outside to stay warm, similar in function to a jacket or coat.

### at the feet (ULT)

### the ground next to (UST)

"in front of." They were placed there so Saul could watch them.

### of a young man (ULT)

### a young man (UST)

Saul was probably around 30 years old at the time.

### Translation Words - ULT

- witnesses
- they stoned him
- named
- Saul
- dragging him
- outer clothing

### Translation Words - UST

- people who were accusing him
- started to throw stones at him
- whose name was
- Saul, so that he could guard them
- They dragged him
- their outer garments in order to throw stones more easily

### ULT

<sup>58</sup> Then [dragging him](#) out of the city, [they stoned him](#). The [witnesses](#) laid down their [outer clothing](#) at the feet of a young man [named Saul](#).

### UST

<sup>58</sup> [They dragged him](#) outside the city of Jerusalem and [started to throw stones at him](#). The [people who were accusing him](#) took off [their outer garments in order to throw stones more easily](#), and they put their clothes on the ground next to a young man [whose name was Saul, so that he could guard them](#).

## Acts 7:59

### Connecting Statement:

This ends the story of Stephen.

**receive my spirit (ULT)**

**receive my spirit (UST)**

“take my spirit.” It may be helpful to add “please” to show that this was a request. Alternate translation: “please receive my spirit”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord Jesus
- he was calling out
- Lord
- they were stoning
- spirit
- Stephen
- receive

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord Jesus
- prayed
- Lord
- they continued to throw stones at
- spirit
- Stephen, Stephen
- receive

#### ULT

<sup>59</sup> As [they were stoning Stephen](#), [he was calling out](#) and saying, “[Lord](#) Jesus, [receive](#) my [spirit](#).”

#### UST

<sup>59</sup> While [they continued to throw stones at Stephen](#), [Stephen prayed](#), “[Lord](#) Jesus, [receive](#) my [spirit](#)!”

## Acts 7:60

**But having fallen down on his knees (ULT)**

**Then Stephen fell on his knees (UST)**

This is an act of submission to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**do not hold this sin against them (ULT)**

**do not punish them for this sin (UST)**

This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "forgive them for this sin" (See: [Litotes](#))

**he fell asleep (ULT)**

**he died (UST)**

Here to fall asleep is a euphemism for dying. Alternate translation: "died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [sin](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [he fell asleep](#)
- [he called out](#)
- [having fallen down](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [sin](#)
- [cried out](#)
- [he died](#)
- [cried out](#)
- [Then Stephen fell on his](#)

#### ULT

<sup>60</sup> But [having fallen down](#) on his knees, [he called out with a](#) loud [voice](#), "[Lord](#), do not hold this [sin](#) against them." When he had said this, [he fell asleep](#).

#### UST

<sup>60</sup> [Then Stephen fell on his](#) knees and [cried out](#), "[Lord](#), do not punish them for this [sin](#)!" After he had said this, [he died](#).



## Acts 8

### Acts 8 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 8:32-33.

The first sentence of verse 1 ends the description of the events in chapter 7. Luke begins a new part of his history with the words “So there began.”

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Receiving the Holy Spirit

In this chapter for the first time Luke speaks of people receiving the Holy Spirit ([Acts 8:15-19](#)). The Holy Spirit had already enabled the believers to speak in tongues, to heal the sick, and to live as a community, and he had filled Stephen. But when the Jews started putting believers in prison, those believers who could leave Jerusalem did leave, and as they went, they told people about Jesus. When the people who heard about Jesus received the Holy Spirit, the church leaders knew that those people had truly become believers.

##### Proclaimed

This chapter more than any other in the Book of Acts speaks of the believers proclaiming the word, proclaiming the good news, and proclaiming that Jesus is the Christ. The word “proclaim” translates a Greek word that means to tell good news about something.

## Acts 8:1

### General Information:

It may be helpful to your audience to move these parts of the story about Stephen together by using a verse bridge as the UST does.  
(See: [Verse Bridges](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The story shifts from Stephen to Saul in these verses.

### So there began...except the apostles

This part of verse 1 is background information about the persecution that began after Stephen's death. This explains why Saul was persecuting the believers in verse 3. (See: [Background Information](#))

### the...that...day (ULT)

This refers to the day that Stephen died ([Acts 7:59-60](#)).

### the believers...all...were...scattered (ULT)

The word "all" is a generalization to express that a large number of the believers left Jerusalem because of the persecution. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### except the apostles (ULT)

This statement implies that the apostles remained in Jerusalem even though they also experienced this great persecution. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- church
- apostles
- Saul
- of Judea
- Samaria
- Jerusalem
- a...persecution
- day

### Translation Words - UST

- church, Church
- apostle, apostleship
- Paul, Saul
- Judea
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Jerusalem
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- day

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> [Saul](#) was in agreement with the execution of Stephen. So there began on that [day](#) a great [persecution](#) against the [church](#) that was in [Jerusalem](#); indeed, the believers were all scattered throughout the regions [of Judea](#) and [Samaria](#), except the [apostles](#).

### UST

<sup>1-2</sup> Then some men who revered God buried Stephen's body in a tomb, and they mourned greatly and loudly for him. On that same day people started severely persecuting the believers who were living in Jerusalem. So most of the believers fled to other places throughout the provinces of Judea and Samaria. The apostles remained in Jerusalem.

## Acts 8:2

### Devout men (ULT)

"God-fearing men" or "Men who feared God"

### made great lamentation over him (ULT)

"greatly mourned his death"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamentation](#)
- [Stephen](#)
- [buried](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lament](#), [lamentation](#)
- [Stephen](#)
- [bury](#), [buried](#), [burial](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Devout men [buried Stephen](#) and made great [lamentation](#) over him.

### UST

<sup>1-2</sup> Then some men who revered God buried Stephen's body in a tomb, and they mourned greatly and loudly for him. On that same day people started severely persecuting the believers who were living in Jerusalem. So most of the believers fled to other places throughout the provinces of Judea and Samaria. The apostles remained in Jerusalem.

## Acts 8:3

**dragging out both men and women (ULT)**

**he dragged away men and women who believed (UST)**

Saul forcefully took Jewish believers out of their home and put them into prison.

**house after house (ULT)**

**houses one by one...in Jesus (UST)**

"houses one by one"

**dragging out both men and women (ULT)**

**he dragged away men and women who believed (UST)**

"took away men and women by force"

**men and women (ULT)**

**men and women who believed (UST)**

This refers to men and women who believed in Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [church](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [prison](#)
- [house after house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [group of believers](#)
- [While they were killing Stephen, Saul was there approving that they should kill Stephen. So Saul](#)
- [prison](#)
- [houses one by one](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But [Saul](#) greatly harmed the [church](#); entering into [house after house](#), dragging out both men and women, he put them in [prison](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [While they were killing Stephen, Saul was there approving that they should kill Stephen. So Saul](#) also began trying to destroy the [group of believers](#). He entered [houses one by one](#), he dragged away men and women who believed in Jesus, and then he put them into [prison](#).

## Acts 8:4

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the story of Philip, whom the people had chosen as a deacon ([Acts 6:5](#)).

### who had been scattered (ULT) believers who had left Jerusalem (UST)

The cause for the scattering, the persecution, was stated previously. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who had fled the great persecution and had gone” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### of the word (ULT) the message about Jesus (UST)

This is a metonym for “the message.” You may need to make explicit that the message was about Jesus. Alternate translation: “the message about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [proclaiming the good news](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [message about Jesus](#)
- [preaching](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Therefore the very believers who had been scattered went about [proclaiming the good news](#) of the [word](#).

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> The believers who had left Jerusalem went to different places, where they continued [preaching](#) the [message about Jesus](#).

## Acts 8:5

**went down to the city of Samaria (ULT)**  
**went down from Jerusalem to a city in the district of Samaria (UST)**

The phrase “went down” is used here because Samaria is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

**the city of Samaria (ULT)**  
**a city in the district of Samaria (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) Luke expected the readers to know which city he was writing about. Alternate translation: “the main city in Samaria” or 2) Luke did not expect his readers to know which city he was writing about. Alternate translation: “a city in Samaria”

**proclaiming to them the Christ (ULT)**  
**There he was telling the people that Jesus is the Messiah (UST)**

The title “Christ” refers to Jesus, the Messiah. Alternate translation: “told them that Jesus is the Messiah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [of Samaria](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [proclaiming](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that Jesus is...Messiah](#)
- [in the district of Samaria](#)
- [One of those believers, whose name was Philip](#)
- [There he was telling](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [Philip](#) went down to the city [of Samaria](#), [proclaiming](#) to them the [Christ](#).

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [One of those believers, whose name was Philip](#), went down from Jerusalem to a city [in the district of Samaria](#). [There he was telling](#) the people [that Jesus is the Messiah](#).

**Acts 8:6****Now the crowds (ULT)****Many people there...So (UST)**

"When many people in the city of Samaria." The location was specified in [Acts 8:5](#).

**paid attention...to (ULT)****they...paid close attention to (UST)**

The reason people paid attention was because of all the healing Philip did.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [signs](#)
- [Philip](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [miraculous things](#)
- [Philip](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> Now the crowds paid attention together to the things being spoken by [Philip](#) when they heard them and saw the [signs](#) that he was doing.

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> Many people there heard [Philip](#) speak and saw the [miraculous things](#) that he was doing. So they all paid close attention to his words.

## Acts 8:7

**had unclean spirits (ULT)**

**evil spirits to come out (UST)**

“who had them” or “who were controlled by unclean spirits”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [unclean](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [unclean spirits](#)
- [were healed](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [crying out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [evil](#)
- [spirits to come out](#)
- [evil...spirits to come out](#)
- [were healed](#)
- [screaming](#)
- [screaming](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For many of them had [unclean spirits](#), which came out of them, [crying out with a loud voice](#). Many who were paralyzed and lame [were healed](#).

### UST

<sup>7</sup> For example, Philip commanded [evil spirits to come out](#) of many people, and they came out [screaming](#). Also, many people who were paralyzed and many others who were lame [were healed](#).



## Acts 8:8

**So there was much joy in that city (ULT)**

**So, many people in that city greatly rejoiced (UST)**

The phrase "that city" refers to the people who were rejoicing.

Alternate translation: "So the people of the city were rejoicing" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [joy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in...city greatly rejoiced](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So there was much [joy](#) in that city.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So, many people in that [city greatly rejoiced](#).

## Acts 8:9

### General Information:

Simon is introduced to the story of Philip. This verse gives the beginning of the background information about Simon and who he was among the Samaritans. (See: [Background Information](#))

### But a certain man...named Simon (ULT)

### There was a man...whose name was Simon...One (UST)

This is a way of introducing a new person into the story. Your language may use different wording to introduce a new person into the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### the city (ULT)

### that city (UST)

"the city in Samaria" ([Acts 8:5](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [named](#)
- [of Samaria](#)
- [practicing sorcery](#)
- [astonishing](#)
- [people](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [whose name](#)
- [in the district of Samaria with his magic](#)
- [practicing sorcery for a long time](#)
- [he amazed](#)
- [people](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But a certain man in the city [named](#) Simon, had formerly been [practicing sorcery](#) and [astonishing](#) the [people of Samaria](#), claiming himself to be someone great.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> There was a man in that city [whose name](#) was Simon. He had been [practicing sorcery for a long time](#), and [he amazed](#) the [people in the district of Samaria with his magic](#). He claimed he was "Simon the Great One!"

## Acts 8:10

### General Information:

Simon is introduced to the story of Philip. This verse continues to give the beginning of the background information about Simon and who he was among the Samaritans. (See: [Background Information](#))

### All the Samaritans (ULT)

### All the people there (UST)

The word "all" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "Many of the Samaritans" or "The Samaritans in the city" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### from the least to the greatest (ULT)

### both ordinary and important people (UST)

These two phrases refer to everyone from one extreme to the other. Alternate translation: "no matter how important they were" (See: [Merism](#))

### This man is that power of God which is called Great

People were saying that Simon was the divine power known as "The Great Power."

### that power of God which is called Great

Possible meanings are 1) the powerful representative of God or 2) God or 3) the most powerful man or 4) and angel. Since the term is unclear, it may be best to simply translate it as "the Great power of God" .

### Translation Words - ULT

- [is called](#)
- [of God](#)
- [power](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Great Power of God](#)
- [Great Power of God](#)
- [Great Power of God](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> All the Samaritans, from the least to the greatest, were paying attention to him, saying, "This man is that [power of God](#) which [is called](#) Great."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> All the people there, both ordinary and important people, listened to him. They were saying, "This man is the [Great Power of God](#)."

## Acts 8:11

### General Information:

Simon is introduced to the story of Philip. This verse ends the background information about Simon and who he was among the Samaritans. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)
- [sorceries](#)
- [he had astonished](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [time](#)
- [by practicing sorcery](#)
- [he had astonished](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> They listened to him, because [he had astonished](#) them for a long [time](#) with his [sorceries](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> They continued to listen to him carefully because, for a long [time](#) [he had astonished](#) them [by practicing sorcery](#).

## Acts 8:12

### Connecting Statement:

These verses give more information about Simon and some of the Samaritans coming to believe in Jesus.

### they were baptized (ULT) were baptized (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Philip baptized them" or "Philip baptized the new believers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus Christ
- they were baptized
- of God
- they believed
- name
- kingdom of God
- Christ
- Philip
- proclaiming the good news
- kingdom

### Translation Words - UST

- about Jesus...the Messiah
- were baptized
- when God
- they believed
- about Jesus
- the...when God would show himself as king
- the Messiah
- Philip's message
- good news
- would show himself as king

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But when [they believed Philip](#), [proclaiming the good news](#) about the [kingdom of God](#) and the [name of Jesus Christ](#), [they were baptized](#), both men and women.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> But then [they believed Philip's message](#) of the [good news](#) about [when God would show himself as king](#) and [about Jesus the Messiah](#). The men and the women who believed in Jesus [were baptized](#).

## Acts 8:13

**But Simon...But Simon...himself...believed (ULT)**  
**the...Simon...himself...believed Philip's message (UST)**

The word "himself" is here used to emphasize that Simon believed.  
 Alternate translation: "Simon was also one of those who believed"  
 (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**after he was baptized (ULT)**  
**was baptized (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Philip baptized Simon" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**When he saw signs (ULT)**  
**miracles he saw Philip...was speaking...truth (UST)**

This could begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: "When he saw"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [signs](#)
- [after he was baptized](#)
- [deeds](#)
- [believed](#)
- [with Philip](#)
- [he was amazed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [miracles...Philip...was speaking...truth](#)
- [was baptized](#)
- [miracles...Philip...was speaking...truth](#)
- [believed Philip's message](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [and he was continually amazed by](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But Simon himself also [believed](#), and [after he was baptized](#) he stayed [with Philip](#) constantly. When he saw [signs](#) and mighty [deeds](#) taking place, [he was amazed](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Simon himself [believed Philip's message](#) and [was baptized](#). He began to constantly accompany [Philip](#), [and he was continually amazed by](#) the great [miracles](#) he saw [Philip](#) doing, things that showed Philip [was speaking](#) the [truth](#).

## Acts 8:14

### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues the news of what was happening in Samaria.

### Now when the apostles in Jerusalem heard (ULT) When the apostles in Jerusalem heard (UST)

This marks the beginning of a new part of the story of the Samaritan's becoming believers. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### Samaria (ULT)

### Samaria district (UST)

This refers to the many people, who had become believers, throughout the district of Samaria. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### had received (ULT)

### many people throughout...had believed (UST)

"had believed" or "had accepted"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- word of God
- apostles
- Samaria
- Peter
- John
- Jerusalem
- had received
- they sent

### Translation Words - UST

- God's
- God's...message
- apostles
- Samaria district
- Peter
- John there
- Jerusalem
- many people throughout...had believed
- they sent

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Now when the [apostles](#) in [Jerusalem](#) heard that [Samaria had received](#) the [word of God](#), [they sent](#) to them [Peter](#) and [John](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> When the [apostles](#) in [Jerusalem](#) heard that [many people throughout Samaria district had believed God's message](#), [they sent Peter](#) and [John there](#).

## Acts 8:15

**When they had come down (ULT)**

**When Peter and John arrived in Samaria (UST)**

“when Peter and John had come down”

**they had come down (ULT)**

**arrived in Samaria (UST)**

This phrase is used here because Samaria is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

**they prayed for them (ULT)**

**they prayed for those new believers (UST)**

“Peter and John prayed for the Samaritan believers”

**that they might receive the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**to receive the Holy Spirit (UST)**

“that the Samaritan believers might receive the Holy Spirit”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [they prayed](#)
- [they might receive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [they prayed](#)
- [to receive](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> When they had come down, [they prayed](#) for them, that [they might receive the Holy Spirit](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> When Peter and John arrived in Samaria, [they prayed](#) for those new believers [to receive the Holy Spirit](#).



## Acts 8:16

**only...they had...been baptized (ULT)**

**only...They had...been baptized (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Philip had only baptized the Samaritan believers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**only...they had...been baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus (ULT)**

**only...They had...been baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here "name" represents authority, and being baptized into his name represents being baptized in order to be under his authority. Alternate translation: "they had only been baptized to become disciples of the Lord Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [baptized](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [name](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [baptized](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [name](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> For the Holy Spirit had not yet fallen upon any of them, but they had only been [baptized](#) into the [name](#) of the [Lord](#) Jesus.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> For it was clear that the Holy Spirit had not yet come upon any of them. They had only been [baptized](#) in the [name](#) of the [Lord](#) Jesus.

## Acts 8:17

**Peter and John placed their hands on them (ULT)**

**Peter and John placed their hands on them (UST)**

The word “them” refers to the Samaritan people who believed Stephen’s message of the gospel.

**Peter and John placed their hands on them (ULT)**

**Peter and John placed their hands on them (UST)**

This symbolic action shows that Peter and John wanted God to give the Holy Spirit to the believers. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [they received](#)
- [hands](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [they received](#)
- [their hands](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Then Peter and John placed their [hands](#) on them, and [they received the Holy Spirit](#).

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Then Peter and John placed [their hands](#) on them, and [they received the Holy Spirit](#).

**Acts 8:18**

**the Spirit was given through the laying on of the hands of the apostles (ULT)**

**the Spirit was given to people as a result of the apostles placing their hands on (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the apostles gave the Holy Spirit by laying their hands on people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Spirit
- apostles
- hands

**Translation Words - UST**

- the Spirit was given to people
- apostles
- their hands

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> Now when Simon saw that the [Spirit](#) was given through the laying on of the [hands](#) of the [apostles](#), he offered them money.

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> Simon saw that [the Spirit was given to people](#) as a result of the [apostles](#) placing [their hands](#) on them. So he offered to give money to the apostles,

## Acts 8:19

**that whoever I place my hands on might receive the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**so that everyone on whom I place my hands may receive the Holy Spirit (UST)**

“that I can give the Holy Spirit to anyone on whom I place my hands”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- authority
- might receive
- my hands

### Translation Words - UST

- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- to do what you are doing
- may receive
- my hands

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> He said, “Give to me also this [authority](#), that whoever I place [my hands](#) on [might receive the Holy Spirit](#).”

### UST

<sup>19</sup> saying, “Enable me also [to do what you are doing](#), so that everyone on whom I place [my hands](#) [may receive the Holy Spirit](#).”

## Acts 8:20

### General Information:

Here the words him, your, you, and yours all refer to Simon.

**May your silver perish along with you (ULT)**

**May you...your money be destroyed (UST)**

“May you and your money be destroyed”

**the gift of God (ULT)**

**and...God's gift (UST)**

Here this refers to the ability to give the Holy Spirit by laying his hands on someone.

### Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- of God
- Peter
- silver

### Translation Words - UST

- gift
- God's
- Peter
- money

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But [Peter](#) said to him, “May your [silver](#) perish along with you, because you thought to obtain the [gift of God](#) with money.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> But [Peter](#) said to him, “May you and your [money](#) be destroyed, because you tried to get [God's gift](#) with money!

**Acts 8:21****You have no part or share in this matter (ULT)****You cannot work with us in what we are doing (UST)**

The words “part” and “share” mean the same thing and are used for emphasis. Alternate translation: “You may not participate in this work” (See: [Doublet](#))

**because your heart is not right (ULT)****because your heart is not right (UST)**

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person’s thoughts or motives. Alternate translation: “you are not right in your heart” or “the motives of your mind are not right” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [because...heart](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> You have no part or share in this matter, [because](#) your [heart](#) is not right with [God](#).

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> You cannot work with us in what we are doing, because your [heart](#) is not right with [God](#)!

**Acts 8:22****for the intention of your heart (ULT)  
the...thought in your heart to do (UST)**

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person’s thoughts. Alternate translation: “for what you intended to do” or “for what you were thinking of doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**wickedness...this (ULT)  
wickedly...like that...that (UST)**

“these evil thoughts”

**so that he might perhaps forgive (ULT)  
if he is willing, will forgive (UST)**

“he may be willing to forgive”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- of...heart
- he might...forgive
- repent
- pray
- wickedness

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lord
- heart to do
- will forgive
- stop thinking
- plead
- wickedly

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> Therefore [repent](#) of this [wickedness](#) of yours, and [pray](#) to the [Lord](#), so that [he might](#) perhaps [forgive](#) you for the intention of your [heart](#).

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> So [stop thinking wickedly](#) like that, and [plead](#) that the [Lord](#), if he is willing, [will forgive](#) you for what you wickedly thought in your [heart to do](#)!

## Acts 8:23

### in...the poison of bitterness (ULT)

### to...evil ways...of your continual desire (UST)

Here “in the poison of bitterness” is a metaphor for being very envious. It speaks of envy as if it tastes bitter and poisons the person who is envious. Alternate translation: “very envious” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### in the bond of sin (ULT)

### a slave...do evil (UST)

The phrase “bonds of sin” is spoken of as if sin can restrain Simon and keep him a prisoner. It is metaphor that means Simon is not able to stop himself from sinning. Alternate translation: “because you continue sinning you are like a prisoner” or “you are like a prisoner to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For I see that you are in the poison of bitterness and [in the bond of sin](#).”

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Turn away from your evil ways, because I perceive that you are extremely envious of us, and you are [a slave](#) of your continual desire to [do evil](#)!”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in the bond](#)
- [of sin](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a slave](#)
- [do evil](#)



## Acts 8:24

### General Information:

Here the word "you" refers to Peter and John.

**so that nothing...may happen to me (ULT)**  
**that he will not do to me (UST)**

This can be stated another way. Alternate translation: "the things you have said...may not happen to me"

**so that nothing...may happen to me (ULT)**  
**that he will not do to me (UST)**

This refers to Peter's rebuke about Simon's silver perishing along with him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [Pray](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [Pray](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then Simon answered and said, "[Pray](#) to the [Lord](#) for me, so that nothing of which you have spoken may happen to me."

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Then Simon answered, "[Pray](#) to the [Lord](#) that he will not do to me what you just said!"

## Acts 8:25

### Connecting Statement:

This concludes the part of the story about Simon and the Samaritans.

**had testified (ULT)**  
**told people there what they knew personally about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Peter and John told what they personally knew about Jesus to the Samaritans.

**spoken the word of the Lord (ULT)**  
**declared to them the message of the Lord (UST)**

“Word” here is a metonym for “message.” Peter and John explained the message about Jesus to the Samaritans. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**many...to...villages of the Samaritans (ULT)**  
**Along...both...the way...of Samaria (UST)**

Here “villages” refers to the people in them. Alternate translation: “to the people in many Samaritan villages” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [word of the Lord](#)
- [proclaiming the gospel](#)
- [Samaritans](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Peter and John returned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [message of the Lord](#)
- [they preached the good word about Jesus to people in the district of Samaria](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [they...returned](#)

### ULT

**25** When therefore they had testified and spoken the [word of the Lord](#), [Peter and John returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#), [proclaiming the gospel](#) even to many villages of the [Samaritans](#).

### UST

**25** After Peter and John told people there what they knew personally about the Lord Jesus and declared to them the [message of the Lord](#), [they](#) both [returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#). Along the way [they preached the good word about Jesus to people in the district of Samaria](#).

## Acts 8:26

### General Information:

Verse 27 gives background information about the man from Ethiopia. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the part of the story about Philip and the man from Ethiopia.

### Now (ULT) the (UST)

This marks a transition in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### Arise and go (ULT) Get ready...and go (UST)

These verbs work together to emphasize that he should get ready to start a long journey that will take some time. Alternate translation: "Get ready to travel"

### the...that goes down...from Jerusalem to Gaza (ULT) the...extends from Jerusalem to the city of Gaza (UST)

The phrase "goes down" is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than Gaza.

### This road is in a desert (ULT) That was a road in a desert area (UST)

Most scholars believe Luke added this comment to describe the area through which Philip would travel. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- an angel
- Gaza
- Jerusalem
- Philip
- in a desert
- Arise

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord God had sent
- One day an angel, whom
- the city of Gaza
- Jerusalem
- Philip
- a desert area

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Now [an angel of the Lord](#) spoke to [Philip](#), saying, "[Arise](#) and go toward the south to the road that goes down from [Jerusalem](#) to [Gaza](#)." (This road is [in a desert](#).)

### UST

<sup>26</sup> [One day an angel, whom](#) the [Lord God had sent](#), commanded [Philip](#), "[Get ready](#) and go south along the road that extends from [Jerusalem](#) to [the city of Gaza](#)." That was a road in [a desert area](#).

- [Get ready](#)

## Acts 8:27

### there was (ULT)

### On the road he met (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### a eunuch (ULT)

### an important (UST)

The emphasis of “eunuch” here is about the Ethiopian’s being a high government official, not so much his physical state of being castrated.

### under Candace (ULT)

### of...Candace (UST)

This was a title for the queens of Ethiopia. It is similar to the way the word Pharaoh was used for the kings of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### He had come to Jerusalem to worship (ULT)

### In his language people called their queen...This man had gone to Jerusalem to worship God (UST)

This implies that he was a Gentile who believed in God and had come to worship at the Jewish temple. Alternate translation: “He had come to worship God at the temple in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a eunuch
- of great authority
- to worship
- from Ethiopia
- of the Ethiopians
- Jerusalem
- queen
- he arose

### Translation Words - UST

- an important
- official...took care
- to worship God
- from the land of Ethiopia
- of Ethiopia
- Jerusalem
- the queen
- Philip got ready

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> So [he arose](#) and went. Now there was a man [from Ethiopia](#), [a eunuch of great authority](#) under Candace, [queen of the Ethiopians](#). He was in charge of all her treasure. He had come to [Jerusalem to worship](#).

### UST

<sup>27</sup> So [Philip got ready](#) and went along that road. On the road he met a man [from the land of Ethiopia](#). The man was [an important official](#) who [took care](#) of all the funds for [the queen of Ethiopia](#). In his language people called their queen Candace. This man had gone to [Jerusalem to worship God](#).

## Acts 8:28

### chariot (ULT)

### chariot (UST)

Possibly “wagon” or “carriage” is more fitting in this context. Chariots are normally mentioned as a vehicle for war, not as a vehicle for long-distance travel. Also, people stood to ride in chariots.

### was reading the prophet Isaiah (ULT)

### As he was riding, he was reading aloud in the book of the prophet Isaiah (UST)

This is the Old Testament book Isaiah. Alternate translation: “reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [returning](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [book of the prophet](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [returning home](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> He was [returning](#) and sitting in his [chariot](#), and was reading the [prophet Isaiah](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> and he was [returning home](#) and was seated, riding in his [chariot](#). As he was riding, he was reading aloud in the [book of the prophet Isaiah](#).

**Acts 8:29****stay close to this chariot (ULT)  
to that chariot...keep walking close to it (UST)**

Philip understood that this meant he was to stay close to the person riding in the chariot. Alternate translation: “accompany the man in this chariot” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Spirit](#)
- [to Philip](#)
- [chariot](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God's Spirit](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [to...chariot](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> Then the [Spirit](#) said [to Philip](#), “Go over and stay close to this [chariot](#).”

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> [God's Spirit](#) told [Philip](#), “Go near to that [chariot](#) and keep walking close to it!”

## Acts 8:30

### reading Isaiah the prophet (ULT)

### reading what the prophet Isaiah had written (UST)

This is the Old Testament book Isaiah. Alternate translation: “reading from the book of the prophet Isaiah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Do you...understand what you are reading (ULT) the man...Do you understand what you are reading (UST)

The Ethiopian was intelligent and could read, but he lacked spiritual discernment. Alternate translation: “Do you understand the meaning of what you are reading?”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [understand](#)
- [ran to him](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#)
- [Isaiah had written](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [Do you understand](#)
- [ran to the chariot](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So [Philip ran to him](#), and heard him reading [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#), and said, “Do you really [understand](#) what you are reading?”

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> So [Philip ran to the chariot](#) and heard the official reading what the [prophet Isaiah had written](#). He asked the man, “[Do you understand](#) what you are reading?”



## Acts 8:31

**How...can I, unless someone guides me (ULT)**  
**No! I cannot possibly understand it...No! I cannot possibly understand it...if there is no one to explain...to me (UST)**

This question was asked to state emphatically that he could not understand without help. Alternate translation: "I cannot understand unless someone guides me" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**he invited...Philip to come up into the chariot to sit with him (ULT)**  
**man said to...it...the...Philip, "Please come up...sit beside me (UST)**

It is implied here that Philip agreed to travel down the road with him to explain the scriptures. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philip](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Philip](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> Then he said, "How indeed can I, unless someone guides me?" So he invited [Philip](#) to come up into the chariot to sit with him.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> He answered Philip, "No! I cannot possibly understand it if there is no one to explain it to me!" Then the man said to [Philip](#), "Please come up and sit beside me."

## Acts 8:32

### General Information:

This is a passage from the book of Isaiah. Here the words "he" and "his" refer to the Messiah.

**like...a lamb before his shearer is silent (ULT)**  
**He is as...they...a lamb stands in silence...its wool is being cut off (UST)**

A shearer is a person who cuts the wool off the sheep so that it may be used.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a lamb
- scripture
- the slaughter
- a sheep
- like
- like (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- a lamb
- scriptures
- the place where...are going to kill it
- calm as a sheep that
- He is as
- as (2)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Now the passage of the [scripture](#) which the Ethiopian was reading was this, "He was led [like a sheep](#) to [the slaughter](#), and [like a lamb](#) before his shearer is silent, so he did not open his mouth.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> The part of the [scriptures](#) that the official was reading was this: "[He is as calm as a sheep that](#) people lead to [the place where](#) they [are going to kill it](#), or [as a lamb](#) stands in silence while its wool is being cut off.

## Acts 8:33

**In humiliation his justice was taken away (ULT)  
He will be humiliated. He will not receive justice for  
justice will be taken away from him...for (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He was humiliated and they did not judge him fairly" or "he allowed himself to be humbled before his accusers and he suffered injustice" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Who can fully describe his descendants (ULT)  
for justice will be taken away from him...No one will be  
able to tell...his (UST)**

This question was used to emphasize the he will not have descendants. Alternate translation: "No one will be able to speak about his descendant, for there will not be any" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**his life was taken from the earth (ULT)  
about...descendants...he will have no descendants...they will take away his life on this earth  
(UST)**

This referred to his death. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "men killed him" or "men took his life from the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [justice](#)
- [humiliation](#)
- [earth](#)
- [descendants](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life](#)
- [will not receive justice](#)
- [He will be humiliated](#)
- [earth](#)
- [for justice will be taken away from him](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> In [humiliation](#) his [justice](#) was taken away. Who can fully describe his [descendants](#)? For his [life](#) was taken from the [earth](#)."

### UST

<sup>33</sup> [He will be humiliated](#). He [will not receive justice for justice will be taken away from him](#). No one will be able to tell about his descendants—for he will have no descendants—because they will take away his [life](#) on this [earth](#)."

## Acts 8:34

**I beg you (ULT)**

**Tell me (UST)**

"Please tell me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- eunuch
- Philip

### Translation Words - UST

- prophet writing
- official
- Philip

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> So the [eunuch](#) asked [Philip](#), saying, "I beg you, who is the [prophet](#) saying this about, concerning himself, or concerning some other person?"

### UST

<sup>34</sup> The [official](#) asked [Philip](#) concerning these words that he was reading, "Tell me, who was the [prophet writing](#) about? Was he writing about himself or about someone else?"

**Acts 8:35****this scripture (ULT)****that scripture passage (UST)**

This refers to Isaiah's writings in the Old Testament. Alternate translation: "in the writings of Isaiah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [about Jesus](#)
- [scripture](#)
- [Philip](#)
- [he proclaimed the gospel](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus](#)
- [scripture passage](#)
- [Philip replied...and he told him](#)
- [the good message](#)

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> So [Philip](#) opened his mouth, and beginning with this [scripture](#), [he proclaimed the gospel about Jesus](#) to him.

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> So [Philip replied](#) to him; he began with that [scripture passage](#), [and he told him the good message](#) about [Jesus](#).

**Acts 8:36****they went along the road (ULT)**

"they continued to travel along the road"

**What prevents me from being baptized (ULT)**

The eunuch uses this question as a way of asking Philip for permission to be baptized. Alternate translation: "Please allow me to be baptized" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [from being baptized](#)
- [eunuch](#)
- [water](#)
- [here is water](#) (2)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [baptize, baptized, baptism](#)
- [eunuch](#)
- [water](#)
- [water](#) (2)

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> As they went along the road, they came to some [water](#) and the [eunuch](#) said, "Look, [here is water](#). What prevents me [from being baptized](#)?"

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> While they were traveling along the road, they came to a place where there was some water. Then the official said to Philip, "Look, there is some water! I would like you to baptize me, because I do not know of anything that would prevent me from being baptized."

## Acts 8:37

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**37**<sup>[1]</sup> [Philip said, "If you believe with all your heart, you may be baptized." The Ethiopian answered, "I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God."]

### UST

**37**<sup>[1]</sup> [Philip said, "If you believe with all your heart, you may be baptized." The Ethiopian answered, "I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God."]

## Acts 8:38

**the Ethiopian commanded the chariot to stop (ULT)**  
**told the driver to stop the chariot (UST)**

“told the driver of the chariot to stop”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Philip baptized
- the Ethiopian commanded
- eunuch
- both Philip
- chariot
- water

### Translation Words - UST

- baptized
- told the driver
- official
- Philip
- chariot
- water

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> So [the Ethiopian commanded](#) the [chariot](#) to stop. Then they both went down into the [water](#), [both Philip](#) and the [eunuch](#), and [Philip baptized](#) him.

### UST

<sup>38</sup> So the official [told the driver](#) to stop the [chariot](#). Then both Philip and the [official](#) went down into the [water](#), and [Philip baptized](#) him.



## Acts 8:39

### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Philip and the man from Ethiopia. The story of Philip ends at Caesarea.

**the eunuch did not see him anymore (ULT)**

**The official...never...saw Philip again...never saw Philip again, the official (UST)**

"the eunuch did not see Philip again"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- the Spirit of the Lord
- eunuch
- Philip
- water
- rejoicing
- took...away

### Translation Words - UST

- of the Lord
- the Spirit of the Lord
- saw Philip again, the official
- Philip
- water, suddenly
- very happy
- took...away

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> When they came up out of the [water](#), [the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away](#), and the [eunuch](#) did not see him anymore, but went on his way [rejoicing](#).

### UST

<sup>39</sup> When they came up out of the [water](#), [suddenly the Spirit of the Lord took Philip away](#). The official never saw Philip again. But although he never [saw Philip again, the official](#) continued going along the road, [very happy](#).

## Acts 8:40

**Philip...appeared at Azotus (ULT)**

**Philip...realized that the Spirit had miraculously taken...to the town of Azotus (UST)**

There was no indication of Philip's traveling between where he baptized the Ethiopian and Azotus. He just suddenly disappeared along the road to Gaza and reappeared at the town of Azotus.

**he went through that region (ULT)**

**While he traveled around in that region (UST)**

This refers to the area around the town of Azotus.

**to all...cities (ULT)**

**all the towns (UST)**

"to all the cities in that region"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [proclaiming the gospel...the](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [Philip](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he continued proclaiming the message about Jesus in](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [Philip](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> But [Philip](#) appeared at Azotus and he went through that region, [proclaiming the gospel](#) to all [the](#) cities until he came to [Caesarea](#).

8:37 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 37.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> [Philip](#) then realized that the Spirit had miraculously taken him to the town of Azotus. While he traveled around in that region, [he continued proclaiming the message about Jesus in](#) all the towns between the cities of Azotus and Caesarea. And he was still proclaiming it when he finally arrived in [Caesarea](#).

8:37 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 37.

## **Acts 9**

### **Acts 9 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **“The Way”**

No one knows for sure who first started calling believers “followers of the Way.” This is probably what the believers called themselves, because the Bible often speaks of a person living his life as if that person were walking on a path or “way.” If this is true, the believers were “following the way of the Lord” by living in a way that pleased God.

#### **“Letters for the synagogues in Damascus”**

The “letters” Paul asked for were probably legal papers that permitted him to put Christians in prison. The synagogue leaders in Damascus would have obeyed the letter because it was written by the high priest. If the Romans had seen the letter, they also would have allowed Saul to persecute the Christians, because they permitted the Jews to do as they desired to people who broke their religious laws.

### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

#### **What Saul saw when he met Jesus**

It is clear that Saul saw a light and that it was because of this light that he “fell upon the ground.” Some people think that Saul knew that it was the Lord speaking to him without seeing a human form, because the Bible often speaks of God as being light and living in light. Other people think that later in his life he was able to say, “I have seen the Lord Jesus” because it was a human form that he saw here.

## Acts 9:1

### General Information:

These verses give background information telling us what Saul has been doing since the stoning of Stephen. Here the word “him” refers to the high priest and “he” refers to Saul. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The story shifts back to Saul and his salvation.

**still speaking threats and murder against the disciples (ULT)**

**angrily continued to threaten to kill those...followed (UST)**

The noun “murder” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “still speaking threats, even to murder the disciples” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [But Saul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [followed](#)
- [high priest in Jerusalem](#)
- [Saul](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> [But Saul](#), still speaking threats and murder against the [disciples](#) of the [Lord](#), went to the [high priest](#)

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Meanwhile, [Saul](#) angrily continued to threaten to kill those who [followed](#) the [Lord](#). He went to the [high priest in Jerusalem](#)

## Acts 9:2

### to the synagogues (ULT) introducing Saul to the leaders of the Jewish synagogues (UST)

This refers to the people in the synagogues. Alternate translation: “for the people in the synagogues” or “for the leaders in the synagogues” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### if he found any (ULT) The letters asked them to give Saul power to seize any...who followed (UST)

“when he found anyone” or “if he found anyone”

### who belonged to the Way (ULT) the way that Jesus had taught (UST)

“who followed the teachings of Jesus Christ”

### the Way (ULT) the way (UST)

This term appears to have been a title for Christianity at that time.

### he might bring them bound to Jerusalem (ULT) and to take them as prisoners to Jerusalem (UST)

“he might take them as prisoners to Jerusalem.” Paul’s purpose can be made clear by adding “so that the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [bound](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [letters](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish synagogues](#)
- [and to take them as prisoners](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [write letters](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> and asked [letters](#) from him to the [synagogues](#) in [Damascus](#), so that if he found any who belonged to the Way, both men and women, he might bring them [bound](#) to [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> and requested him to [write letters](#) introducing Saul to the leaders of the [Jewish synagogues](#) in [Damascus](#). The letters asked them to give Saul power to seize any man or woman who followed the way that Jesus had taught, [and to take them as prisoners](#) to [Jerusalem](#) so that the Jewish leaders could judge and punish them.

## Acts 9:3

### Connecting Statement:

After the high priest gave Saul the letters, Saul left for Damascus.

**As he...As he...was traveling (ULT)**  
**those with him were...traveling...were (UST)**

Saul left Jerusalem and now travels to Damascus.

**it happened that (ULT)**  
**traveling...were (UST)**

This is an expression that marks a change in the story to show something different is about to happen. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**as he...there shone all around...a light out of heaven (ULT)**  
**and...they...a brilliant light from heaven...shone around Saul (UST)**

“a light from heaven shone all around him”

**out of heaven (ULT)**  
**from heaven (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) heaven, where God lives or 2) the sky. The first meaning is preferable. Use that meaning if your language has a separate word for it.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [a light](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [a brilliant light](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> As he was traveling, it happened that as he came near to [Damascus](#), suddenly there shone all around him [a light](#) out [of heaven](#);

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> While Saul and those with him were traveling, they were approaching [Damascus](#). Suddenly [a brilliant light](#) from [heaven](#) shone around Saul.

## Acts 9:4

### he fell upon the ground (ULT)

### he fell down to the ground (UST)

Possible meanings are that 1) "Saul threw himself to the ground" or 2) "The light caused him to fall to the ground" or 3) "Saul fell to the ground the way one who fainted fell." Saul did not fall accidentally.

### why are you persecuting me (ULT)

### why are you trying to hurt me (UST)

This rhetorical question communicates a rebuke to Saul. In some languages a statement would be more natural (AT): "You are persecuting me!" or a command (AT): "Stop persecuting me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [a voice](#)
- [are you persecuting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [the voice of someone](#)
- [are you trying to hurt](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> and he fell upon the ground and heard [a voice](#) saying to him, "[Saul](#), [Saul](#), why [are you persecuting](#) me?"

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Immediately he fell down to the ground. Then he heard [the voice of someone](#) say to him, "[Saul](#), [Saul](#), why [are you trying to hurt](#) me?"

## Acts 9:5

### General Information:

Every occurrence of the word “you” here is singular.

### Who are you, Lord (ULT)

### Lord, who are you (UST)

Saul was not acknowledging that Jesus is the Lord. He uses that title because he understood that he spoke to someone of supernatural power.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [are persecuting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [are hurting](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Saul replied, “Who are you, [Lord](#)?” The Lord said, “I am [Jesus](#) whom you [are persecuting](#);

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Saul asked him, “[Lord](#), who are you?” He replied, “I am [Jesus](#), whom you [are hurting](#).”



## Acts 9:6

**but rise and enter into the city (ULT)**

**Now stand up and go into the city (UST)**

“get up and go into the city Damascus”

**it will be told to you (ULT)**

**will tell...you (UST)**

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: “someone will tell you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [rise](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [stand up](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> but [rise](#) and enter into the city, and it will be told to you that which you must do.”

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Now [stand up](#) and go into the city! Someone there will tell you what I want you to do.”

## Acts 9:7

**But...hearing the voice...seeing no one (ULT)**  
**so...They heard the Lord speak...they did not see anyone (UST)**

"they heard the voice, but they did not see anyone"

**But...seeing no one (ULT)**  
**so...they did not see anyone (UST)**

"but saw no one." Apparently only Saul experienced the light.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [voice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord speak](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But the men who were travelling with Saul stood speechless, hearing the [voice](#), but seeing no one.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> The men who were traveling with Saul were so astonished that they could not say anything. They just stood there. They heard the [Lord speak](#), but they did not see anyone.

**Acts 9:8****when he opened...his eyes (ULT)****when he opened...his eyes (UST)**

This implies that he had closed his eyes because the light was too bright. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he could see nothing (ULT)****he could not see anything (UST)**

"he could not see anything." Saul was blind.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Damascus](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [they led...by the hand](#)
- [arose](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Damascus](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [So the men with him took him by the hand](#)
- [got up](#)

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> Then [Saul arose](#) from the ground, but when he opened his eyes, he could see nothing; so [they led](#) him [by the hand](#) and brought him into [Damascus](#).

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> [Saul got up](#) from the ground, but when he opened his eyes he could not see anything. [So the men with him took him by the hand](#) and led him into [Damascus](#).

## Acts 9:9

**he was...without sight (ULT)**

**the next...Saul could not see anything (UST)**

“was blind” or “could not see anything”

**he neither ate nor drank (ULT)**

**he did not eat or drink anything (UST)**

It is not stated whether he chose not to eat or drink as a form of worship, or if he had no appetite because he was too distressed from his situation. It is preferable not to specify the reason.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [days](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> For three [days](#) he was without sight, and he neither ate nor drank.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> For the next three [days](#) Saul could not see anything, and he did not eat or drink anything.

## Acts 9:10

### General Information:

The story of Saul continues but Luke introduces another man named Ananias. This is not the same Ananias who died earlier in Acts [Acts 5:3](#). You may translate this name the same way though as you did in [Acts 5:1](#). Though there is more than one Judas mentioned in the New Testament, it is likely this is the only appearance of this Judas. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Now there was (ULT) there was (UST)

This introduces Ananias as a new character. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### The...said (ULT) The...said (UST)

"Ananias said"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Lord
- disciple
- named
- Damascus
- a vision

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord Jesus made him see
- Lord
- a follower
- named
- Damascus
- a vision

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Now there was a certain [disciple](#) at [Damascus](#) [named](#) Ananias. The [Lord](#) said to him in [a vision](#), "Ananias!" So he said, "See, I am here, [Lord](#)."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> In [Damascus](#) there was [a follower](#) of Jesus [named](#) Ananias. The [Lord Jesus](#) [made him see a vision](#) and said to him, "Ananias!" He replied, "[Lord](#), I am listening."

## Acts 9:11

### go to the street which is called Straight

“go to Straight Street”

### the house of Judas (ULT)

### the house that belongs to Judas (UST)

This Judas is not the disciple who betrayed Jesus. This Judas was owner of a house in Damascus where Saul was staying.

### a man named Saul, from Tarsus (ULT)

### a man named Saul of Tarsus (UST)

“a man from the city of Tarsus named Saul” or “Saul of Tarsus”

### Translation Words - ULT

- is called
- Lord
- a man named
- he is...praying
- from Tarsus
- Saul
- Arise
- ask for
- the house

### Translation Words - UST

- Straight
- Lord Jesus told
- named
- he is praying to me at this moment
- of Tarsus
- a man...Saul
- Go
- Ask someone there if you can talk to
- the house

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Then the [Lord](#) said to him, “[Arise](#), go to the street which [is called](#) Straight, and at [the house](#) of Judas [ask for a man named Saul, from Tarsus](#), for [he is](#) indeed [praying](#).”

### UST

<sup>11</sup> The [Lord Jesus told](#) him, “[Go](#) to [Straight](#) Street to [the house](#) that belongs to Judas. [Ask someone there if you can talk to a man named Saul of Tarsus](#), because [he is praying to me at this moment](#).”

## Acts 9:12

**laying his hands on him (ULT)**

**put his hands on him (UST)**

This was a symbol of giving a spiritual blessing to Saul. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**he might see again (ULT)**

**he might see again (UST)**

"he might regain his ability to see"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [named...in](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [a vision](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [named](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [a vision](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For he has seen in [a vision](#) a man [named](#) Ananias coming [in](#) and laying [his hands](#) on him, so that he might see again."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Saul has seen [a vision](#) in which a man [named](#) Ananias entered the house where he was staying and put [his hands](#) on him in order that he might see again."

## Acts 9:13

**to...your...saints (ULT)**

**people...who believe in you (UST)**

Here "holy people" refers to Christians. Alternate translation: "the people in Jerusalem who believe in you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- to...saints
- harm
- Jerusalem

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- people...who believe in
- evil things
- Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But Ananias answered, "[Lord](#), I have heard from many about this man, how much [harm](#) he has done to your [saints](#) in [Jerusalem](#)."

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Ananias answered, "But [Lord](#), many people have told me about this man! He has done many [evil things](#) to the [people](#) in [Jerusalem who believe in](#) you!"



## Acts 9:14

**here...authority...to arrest everyone (ULT)**  
**to come here to Damascus...power...in order to arrest all (UST)**

It is implied that the extent of the power and authority granted Saul was limited to the Jewish people at this point in time. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**who calls upon your name (ULT)**  
**those who believe in you (UST)**

Here "your name" refers to Jesus. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who calls upon](#)
- [to arrest](#)
- [authority](#)
- [name](#)
- [chief priests](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who believe in](#)
- [in order to arrest](#)
- [power](#)
- [who believe in](#)
- [chief priests](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> He has [authority](#) from the [chief priests to arrest](#) everyone here [who calls upon](#) your [name](#)."

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> The [chief priests](#) have given him [power](#) to come here to Damascus [in order to arrest](#) all those [who believe in you!](#)"

## Acts 9:15

**this man is a chosen instrument of mine (ULT)**  
**I have chosen...to serve me...he might speak (UST)**

“chosen instrument” refers to something that is set apart for service.  
 Alternate translation: “I have chosen him to serve me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who will carry my name (ULT)**  
**about me...the (UST)**

This is an expression for identifying or speaking out for Jesus.  
 Alternate translation: “in order that he might speak about me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- the sons
- the Gentiles
- chosen
- name
- of Israel
- kings
- who will carry

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord Jesus
- people
- to non-Jewish people
- I have chosen
- me
- to...Israelite
- kings
- about

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But the [Lord](#) said to him, “Go, for this man is a [chosen](#) instrument of mine, [who will carry](#) my [name](#) before [the Gentiles](#) and also [kings](#) and [the sons of Israel](#);

### UST

<sup>15</sup> But the [Lord Jesus](#) told Ananias, “Go to Saul! Do what I say, because [I have chosen](#) him to serve me in order that he might speak [about me to non-Jewish people](#) and their [kings](#) and to the [Israelite people](#).”

## Acts 9:16

**for my name (ULT)**

**in order to tell people about me (UST)**

This is an expression meaning “for telling people about me.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [suffer](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in order to tell people about](#)
- [suffer](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> for I will show him how much he must [suffer](#) for my [name](#).”

### UST

<sup>16</sup> I myself will tell him that he must often [suffer in order to tell people about](#) me.”

## Acts 9:17

### General Information:

The word “you” here is singular and refers to Saul. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Ananias goes to the house where Saul is staying. After Saul is healed, the story shifts from Ananias back to Saul.

**So Ananias departed, and entered into the house (ULT)**  
**So Ananias went, and after he found the house...Saul was, he entered it...to (UST)**

It may be helpful to state that Ananias went to the house before he entered into it. Alternate translation: “So Ananias went, and after he found the house where Saul was, he entered it”

**Laying...his hands on him (ULT)**  
**he put his hands on him, and (UST)**

Ananias put his hands on Saul. This was a symbol of giving a blessing to Saul. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**so that you might receive your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)**

**He sent me to you in order that you might see again and that you might be completely controlled by the Holy Spirit (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “has sent me so that you might see again and that the Holy Spirit might fill you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Brother](#)
- [be filled](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [with the Holy Spirit](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [hands](#)
- [has sent](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus himself](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Brother](#)
- [completely controlled by](#)

### ULT

**17** So Ananias departed, and entered into the [house](#). Laying his [hands](#) on him, he said, “[Brother Saul](#), the [Lord Jesus](#), who appeared to you on the road when you were coming, [has sent](#) me so that you might receive your sight and [be filled with the Holy Spirit](#).”

### UST

**17** So Ananias went, and after he found the [house](#) where Saul was, he entered it. Then, as soon as he met Saul, he put his [hands](#) on him, and he said, “[Brother Saul](#), the [Lord Jesus himself](#) [commanded](#) me to come to you. He is the same one who appeared to you while you were traveling along the road to Damascus. He sent me to you in order that you might see again and that you might be [completely controlled by the Holy Spirit](#).”

- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- Saul
- hands
- commanded
- house

**Acts 9:18****fell...something like scales (ULT)****fell...like fish scales (UST)**

“something that appeared like fish scales fell”

**and he received his sight (ULT)****he was able to see again (UST)**

“he was able to see again”

**arose and was baptized (ULT)****Then he stood up...was baptized (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he got up and Ananias baptized him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [and was baptized](#)
- [arose](#)
- [something like](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [was baptized](#)
- [Then he stood up](#)
- [like](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> Then immediately [something like](#) scales fell from Saul's eyes, and he received his sight, and also [arose and was baptized](#);

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> Instantly, things [like](#) fish scales fell from Saul's eyes, and he was able to see again. [Then he stood up](#) and [was baptized](#).

## Acts 9:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [and was strengthened](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [other believers](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [strong again](#)
- [for...days](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> and he took food [and was strengthened](#). Then he stayed with the [disciples](#) in [Damascus](#) a few [days](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> After Saul ate some food, he became [strong again](#). Saul stayed with the [other believers](#) in [Damascus](#) for several [days](#).

## Acts 9:20

### General Information:

Here only the second “he” refers to Jesus, the Son of God. The first “he” and the other ones refer to Saul.

### Son of God (ULT)

### Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Son of God](#)
- [he proclaimed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jewish synagogues](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Son of God](#)
- [he began to preach about](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Right away [he proclaimed Jesus](#) in the [synagogues](#), saying that he is the [Son of God](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Right away [he began to preach about Jesus](#) in the [Jewish synagogues](#). He told them that Jesus is the [Son of God](#).



## Acts 9:21

### All who heard him (ULT)

### All the people who heard (UST)

The word "All" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "Those who heard him" or "Many who heard him" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Is not this the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name (ULT)

### We can hardly believe that this is the same man who pursued the believers in Jerusalem (UST)

This is a rhetorical and negative question that emphasizes that Saul was indeed the man who had persecuted the believers. Alternate translation: "This is the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name Jesus!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### this name (ULT)

### the believers (UST)

Here "name" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "the name of Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who called on](#)
- [and bring](#)
- [name](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [were amazed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the believers](#)
- [who has come](#)
- [the believers](#)
- [chief priests in Jerusalem](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [preach were amazed](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> All who heard him [were amazed](#) and said, "Is not this the man who destroyed those in [Jerusalem](#) [who called on](#) this [name](#)? He has come here for this reason, so that he might arrest them [and bring](#) them to the [chief priests](#)."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> All the people who heard him [preach](#) [were amazed](#). Some of them were saying, "We can hardly believe that this is the same man who pursued [the believers](#) in [Jerusalem](#) and [who has come](#) here to take them as prisoners to the [chief priests in Jerusalem](#)!"

**Acts 9:22****he was causing distress among the Jews (ULT)****He was...So the Jewish leaders (UST)**

They were distressed in the sense that they could not find a way to refute Saul's arguments that Jesus was the Christ.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jews
- Christ
- Damascus
- Saul
- became...powerful

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jewish leaders
- Messiah
- Damascus
- Saul to preach to many people
- God enabled

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> But [Saul became](#) more and more [powerful](#), and he was causing distress among the [Jews](#) who lived in [Damascus](#) by proving that Jesus is the [Christ](#).

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> But [God enabled Saul to preach to many people](#) even more convincingly. He was proving from the scriptures that Jesus is the [Messiah](#). So the [Jewish leaders](#) in [Damascus](#) could not think how to disprove what he said.

## Acts 9:23

### General Information:

The word “him” in this section refers to Saul.

#### the Jews (ULT)

#### the Jewish leaders there plotted (UST)

This refers to the leaders of the Jews. Alternate translation: “the Jewish leaders” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Jewish leaders there plotted](#)
- [later](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> But after many [days](#) had passed, the [Jews](#) planned together to kill him.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Some time [later](#), [the Jewish leaders there plotted](#) to kill him.

## Acts 9:24

**But their plan became known to Saul (ULT)  
the people passing through...they saw Saul...However,  
someone told Saul what they planned to do (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But someone told their plan to Saul" or "But Saul learned about their plan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were watching...indeed...the gates (ULT)  
those Jews were continually watching...the city gates  
(UST)**

This city had a wall surrounding it. People could normally only enter and exit the city through the gates.

### Translation Words - ULT

- to Saul
- gates
- they were watching
- day
- became known

### Translation Words - UST

- someone told Saul what
- city gates
- those Jews were continually watching
- During each day
- they planned to do

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But their plan [became known to Saul](#). For indeed [they were watching](#) the [gates](#) both [day](#) and night in order to kill him.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> [During each day](#) and night, [those Jews were continually watching](#) the people passing through the [city gates](#) in order that, when they saw Saul, they might kill him. However, [someone told Saul what they planned to do](#).

## Acts 9:25

### his disciples (ULT)

**some of those whom he had led to believe in Jesus (UST)**

people who believed Saul's message about Jesus and were following his teaching

**and let him down through the wall, lowering him in a basket (ULT)**

**the high stone wall that surrounded the city. They used ropes to lower him in a large basket through an opening in the wall. In this way he escaped from Damascus (UST)**

"used ropes to lower him in a large basket through an opening in the wall"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [a basket](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had led to believe in Jesus](#)
- [a large basket](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But his [disciples](#) took him by night and let him down through the wall, lowering him in [a basket](#).

### UST

<sup>25</sup> So some of those whom he [had led to believe in Jesus](#) took him one night to the high stone wall that surrounded the city. They used ropes to lower him in [a large basket](#) through an opening in the wall. In this way he escaped from Damascus.

## Acts 9:26

### General Information:

Here the words “he” and “him” refer to Saul all but one time. “And ‘he’ told them how” in verse 27 refers to Barnabas.

**but they were all afraid of him (ULT)**  
**However, almost all of them continued to be afraid of him (UST)**

Here “they were all” is a generalization, but it is possible that it refers to every person. Alternate translation: “but they were afraid of him” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they were...afraid](#)
- [believing](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [a disciple](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [continued to be afraid](#)
- [because they did...believe](#)
- [believers](#)
- [a believer](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> When he had come to [Jerusalem](#), Saul attempted to join the [disciples](#), but [they were](#) all [afraid](#) of him, not [believing](#) that he was [a disciple](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> When Saul arrived in [Jerusalem](#), he tried to meet with other [believers](#). However, almost all of them [continued to be afraid](#) of him [because they did](#) not [believe](#) that he had become [a believer](#).

## Acts 9:27

### Saul had spoken boldly in the name of Jesus (ULT) the Lord...had preached boldly about Jesus to people (UST)

This is a way of saying he preached or taught the gospel message of Jesus Christ without fear. Alternate translation: “had openly preached the message about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [name](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Saul had spoken boldly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord...Jesus](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [about](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [had preached boldly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But [Barnabas](#) took him and brought him to the [apostles](#), and he told them how Saul had seen the [Lord](#) on the road and that the Lord had spoken to him, and how at [Damascus](#) [Saul had spoken boldly](#) in the [name of Jesus](#).

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> But [Barnabas](#) took him and brought him to the [apostles](#). He explained to the apostles how, while Saul was traveling along the road to Damascus, he had seen the [Lord Jesus](#) and how the [Lord](#) had spoken to him there. He also told them how Saul [had preached boldly about Jesus](#) to people in [Damascus](#).

**Acts 9:28****he was with them (ULT)****began to meet with...apostles and other believers (UST)**

Here the word “He” refers to Paul. The word “them” probably refers to the apostles and other disciples in Jerusalem.

**in the name of the Lord (ULT)****the...to people about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) this simply refers to the Lord Jesus and tells who Paul spoke about. Alternate translation: “about the Lord Jesus” or 2) “name” is a metonym for authority. Alternate translation: “under the authority of the Lord Jesus” or “with the authority that the Lord Jesus gave him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Lord](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [He spoke boldly](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [about the](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [and he spoke boldly](#)

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> So he was with them as they were coming in and going out of [Jerusalem](#). [He spoke boldly](#) in the [name](#) of the [Lord](#).

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> So Saul began to meet with the apostles and other believers throughout [Jerusalem](#), [and he spoke boldly](#) to people [about the Lord Jesus](#).



## Acts 9:29

**debated with the Grecian Jews (ULT)**  
**with Jews who spoke Greek...and he was debating...**  
**with them (UST)**

Saul tried to reason with the Jews who spoke Greek.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Grecian Jews](#)
- [kept trying](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [with Jews who spoke Greek](#)
- [they were continually trying to think of a way](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> He also spoke and debated with the [Grecian Jews](#); but they [kept trying](#) to kill him.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Saul was also speaking about Jesus [with Jews who spoke Greek](#), and he was debating with them. But [they were continually trying to think of a way](#) to kill him.

## Acts 9:30

**the brothers (ULT)**

**the other believers (UST)**

The words “the brothers” refers to the believers in Jerusalem.

**they brought him down to Caesarea (ULT)**

**some of them took Saul down to the city of Caesarea...**

**him on a ship going (UST)**

The phrase “brought him down” is used here because Caesarea is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

**sent him away to Tarsus (ULT)**

**planning to kill him...There they put...to Tarsus, his hometown (UST)**

Caesarea was a seaport. They brothers probably sent Saul to Tarsus by ship. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Tarsus](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [sent...away](#)
- [learned of this](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers](#)
- [Tarsus, his hometown](#)
- [to the city of Caesarea](#)
- [There they put](#)
- [heard that the Jews were](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> When the [brothers](#) [learned of this](#), they brought him down to [Caesarea](#) and [sent](#) him [away](#) to [Tarsus](#).

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> When the other [believers](#) [heard that the Jews were](#) planning to kill him, some of them took Saul down [to the city of Caesarea](#). [There they put](#) him on a ship going to [Tarsus, his hometown](#).

## Acts 9:31

### General Information:

Verse 31 is a statement that gives an update on the church's growth.

### Connecting Statement:

In verse 32, the story shifts from Saul to a new part of the story about Peter.

### the church throughout all Judea, Galilee, and Samaria

This is the first use of the singular "church" to refer to more than one local congregation. Here it refers to all the believers in all the groups throughout Israel.

### had peace (ULT) lived peacefully (UST)

"lived peacefully." This means the persecution that started with the murder of Stephen was finished.

### and was built up (ULT) encouraging them (UST)

The agent was either God or the Holy Spirit. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God helped them grow" or "the Holy Spirit built them up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### walking in the fear of the Lord (ULT) The...They were continuing to honor the Lord Jesus (UST)

"Walking" here is a metaphor for "living." Alternate translation: "living in obedience to the Lord" or "continuing to honor the Lord" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of the...in the comfort...Holy Spirit (ULT) Holy Spirit was strengthening them...the...the...Holy...Spirit (UST)

"with the Holy Spirit strengthening and encouraging them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear
- Lord
- church
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- Judea
- Samaria
- Galilee
- the church grew in numbers
- peace
- comfort

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> So then, the [church](#) throughout all [Judea](#) and [Galilee](#) and [Samaria](#) had [peace](#) and was built up; and, walking in the [fear](#) of the [Lord](#) and in the [comfort](#) of the [Holy Spirit](#), [the church grew in numbers](#).

### UST

<sup>31</sup> [So the groups of believers](#) throughout the entire [regions of Judea](#), [Galilee](#), and [Samaria](#) lived [peacefully](#) because no one was persecuting them anymore. The [Holy Spirit was strengthening them](#) and encouraging them. They were continuing to [honor](#) the [Lord Jesus](#), and the [Holy Spirit was enabling many other people to become believers](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- honor
- Lord Jesus
- So the groups of believers
- Holy
- Holy...Spirit
- regions of Judea
- Samaria
- Galilee
- was enabling many other people to become believers
- peacefully
- Holy Spirit was strengthening them

## Acts 9:32

**Now it came about that, as (ULT)**

**While...once (UST)**

This phrase is used to mark a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**throughout the whole region (ULT)**

**throughout those regions (UST)**

This is an generalization for Peter's visiting the believers in many places in the region of Judea, Galilee, and Samaria. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**he came down (ULT)**

**he went to the coastal plain (UST)**

The phrase "came down" is used here because Lydda is lower in elevation than the other places where he was traveling.

**in Lydda (ULT)**

**in...town of Lydda (UST)**

Lydda is a city located about 18 kilometers southeast of Joppa. This city was called Lod in the Old Testament and in modern Israel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [saints](#)
- [Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers](#)
- [Peter](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Now it came about that, as [Peter](#) went throughout the whole region, he came down also to the [saints](#) who lived in Lydda.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> While [Peter](#) was traveling throughout those regions, once he went to the coastal plain to visit the [believers](#) who lived in the town of Lydda.

## Acts 9:33

**he found...There...a certain man (ULT)**  
**met...There...he...a man whose (UST)**

Peter was not intentionally searching for a paralyzed person, but happened upon him. Alternate translation: "There Peter met a man"

**a certain man named Aeneas (ULT)**  
**he...a man whose name was Aeneas. Aeneas (UST)**

This introduces Aeneas as a new character in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**who had been lying in a bed...for he was paralyzed (ULT)**  
**had not been able to get up from his bed...because he was paralyzed (UST)**

This is background information about Aeneas. (See: [Background Information](#))

**paralyzed (ULT)**  
**paralyzed (UST)**

unable to walk, probably unable to move below the waist

### Translation Words - ULT

- [named](#)
- [years](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [name was](#)
- [years](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> There he found a certain man [named](#) Aeneas, who had been lying in a bed for eight [years](#), for he was paralyzed.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> There he met a man whose [name](#) [was](#) Aeneas. Aeneas had not been able to get up from his bed for eight [years](#) because he was paralyzed.

## Acts 9:34

**make your bed (ULT)**  
**roll up your mat (UST)**

“roll up your mat”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus Christ
- Christ
- Peter
- heals
- Get up
- he got up

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus the Messiah
- the Messiah
- Peter
- heals
- Get up
- stood up

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> So [Peter](#) said to him, “Aeneas, [Jesus Christ heals](#) you. [Get up](#) and make your bed,” and right away [he got up](#).

### UST

<sup>34</sup> [Peter](#) said to him, “Aeneas, [Jesus the Messiah heals](#) you! [Get up](#) and roll up your mat!” Right away Aeneas [stood up](#).

## Acts 9:35

**everyone who lived in Lydda and in Sharon (ULT)**  
**Most of the people...lived in Lydda and...Sharon Plain (UST)**

This is a generalization referring to many of the people there.  
 Alternate translation: “those who lived in Lydda and in Sharon” or  
 “many people who lived in Lydda and Sharon” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**So...in Lydda...in Sharon (ULT)**  
**in Lydda...Sharon Plain...so (UST)**

The city of Lydda was located in the Plain of Sharon.

**saw the man (ULT)**  
**saw Aeneas after the Lord had healed him (UST)**

It may be helpful to state that they saw that he was healed. Alternate translation: “saw the man whom Peter had healed”

**and they turned to the Lord (ULT)**  
**who...on...they believed in the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here “turned to the Lord” is a metaphor for starting to obey the Lord. Alternate translation: “and they repented of their sins and started obeying the Lord” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [turned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [they believed in](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> So everyone who lived in Lydda and in Sharon saw the man and they [turned](#) to the [Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Most of the people who lived in Lydda and on Sharon Plain saw Aeneas after the Lord had healed him, so [they believed in](#) the [Lord Jesus](#).



## Acts 9:36

### General Information:

These verses give background information about the woman named Tabitha. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues the story with a new event about Peter.

### Now...there was (ULT) the town of Joppa there...was (UST)

This introduces a new part in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### Tabitha, which is translated as “Dorcas (ULT) was Tabitha. Her name in the Greek language was Dorcas (UST)

Tabitha is her name in the Aramaic language, and Dorcas is her name in the Greek language. Both names mean “gazelle.” Alternate translation: “Her name in the Greek language was Dorcas” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### full of good works (ULT) was always...good deeds (UST)

“doing many good things”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...works
- a...disciple
- named
- good
- Joppa
- merciful deeds...for the poor
- is translated

### Translation Words - UST

- deeds
- a believer
- name
- good
- the town of Joppa there
- for poor people...giving them things...they needed
- Her name in the Greek language was

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Now there was in [Joppa](#) a certain [disciple named](#) Tabitha, which [is translated](#) as “Dorcas.” This woman was full of [good works](#) and [merciful deeds](#) that she did [for the poor](#).

### UST

<sup>36</sup> In [the town of Joppa there](#) was a [believer](#) whose [name](#) was Tabitha. [Her name in the Greek language was](#) Dorcas. She was always doing [good deeds for poor people](#) by [giving them things](#) that [they needed](#).

## Acts 9:37

### It came about in those days (ULT)

### During the time that Peter was in Lydda (UST)

This refers to the time when Peter was in Joppa. This can be stated.  
Alternate translation: "It came about while Peter was nearby" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### they had washed...she (ULT)

### Some women there washed...body according to the Jewish custom...she (UST)

This was washing to prepare for her burial.

### in...they laid her...an upper room (ULT)

### During...placed it...an upstairs room in her house (UST)

This was a temporary display of the body during the funeral process.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [died](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and died](#)
- [time](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> It came about in those [days](#) that fallling sick, she [died](#). When they had washed her, they laid her in an upper room.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> During the [time](#) that Peter was in Lydda, she became sick [and died](#). Some women there washed her body according to the Jewish custom. Then they covered her body with cloth and placed it in an upstairs room in her house.

## Acts 9:38

**they sent two men to him (ULT)**

**they sent two men to...him (UST)**

"the disciples sent two men to Peter"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [begging him](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [they sent](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [go to Peter. When they arrived where Peter was, they urged](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [the city of Joppa](#)
- [they sent](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Since Lydda was near [Joppa](#), and the [disciples](#) had heard that [Peter](#) was there, [they sent](#) two men to him, [begging him](#), "Come to us without delay."

### UST

<sup>38</sup> Lydda was near [the city of Joppa](#), so when the [disciples](#) heard that [Peter](#) was still in Lydda, [they sent](#) two men to [go to Peter. When they arrived where Peter was, they urged](#) him, "Please come immediately with us to Joppa!"

## Acts 9:39

**to the upper room (ULT)**

**to the upstairs room where Dorcas' body was lying (UST)**

"to the upstairs room where Dorcas' body was lying"

**all the widows (ULT)**

**All the widows there (UST)**

It is possible that all the widows of the town were there since it was not a large town.

**widows (ULT)**

**widows there (UST)**

women whose husbands had died and therefore needed help

**while she had been with them (ULT)**

**had made for people while...she was still alive (UST)**

"while she was still alive with the disciples"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- weeping
- arose
- the coats
- garments

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- They were crying
- got ready right away
- the tunics
- other garments

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> So [Peter arose](#) and went with them. When he had arrived, they brought him to the upper room, and all the widows stood by him [weeping](#), and showing him [the coats](#) and [garments](#) that Dorcas had made while she had been with them.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> [Peter got ready right away](#) and went with them. When he arrived at the house in Joppa, they took him to the upstairs room where Dorcas' body was lying. All the widows there stood around him. [They were crying](#) and showing him [the tunics](#) and [other garments](#) that Dorcas had made for people while she was still alive.

## Acts 9:40

The story of Tabitha ends in verse 42. Verse 43 tells us what happens to Peter after the story ends. (See: [End of Story](#))

**put them...all out of the room (ULT)**

**sent them...all out of the room (UST)**

"told them all to leave the room." Peter had everyone leave so he could be alone to pray for Tabitha.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [he prayed](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [turning](#)
- [arise](#)
- [kneeling down](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [her body](#)
- [and prayed](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [turning](#)
- [stand up](#)
- [got down on](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Then [Peter](#) put them all out of the room, and [kneeling down, he prayed](#). Then, [turning](#) to the [body](#), he said, "Tabitha, [arise](#)." Then she opened her eyes, and seeing [Peter](#), she sat up.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> But [Peter](#) sent them all out of the room. Then he [got down on](#) his knees [and prayed](#). Then, [turning](#) toward [her body](#), he said, "Tabitha, [stand up](#)!" Immediately she opened her eyes and, when she saw [Peter](#), she sat up.

## Acts 9:41

**Peter...gave...her his hand and lifted her up (ULT)**  
**He grasped one of...her hands...helped her to stand up (UST)**

Peter took hold of her hand and helped her stand up.

### the believers and the widows

The widows were possibly also believers but are mentioned specifically because Tabitha was so important to them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [alive](#)
- [when he called](#)
- [saints](#)
- [his hand](#)
- [and lifted...up](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [was alive again](#)
- [After he had summoned](#)
- [believers](#)
- [hands](#)
- [helped...to stand up](#)

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Peter then gave her [his hand and lifted](#) her [up](#); and [when he called](#) the [saints](#) and the widows, he presented her [alive](#).

### UST

<sup>41</sup> He grasped one of her [hands](#) and [helped](#) her [to stand up](#). [After he had summoned](#) the [believers](#) and especially the widows among them to come back in, he showed them that she [was alive again](#).

## Acts 9:42

### This matter became known throughout all Joppa

This refers to the miracle of Peter's raising Tabitha from the dead. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People throughout all Joppa heard about this matter" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**believed...on the Lord (ULT)**

**believed...in the Lord Jesus (UST)**

"believed in the gospel of the Lord Jesus"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [believed](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [known](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [believed](#)
- [in Joppa](#)
- [knew about](#)

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> This matter became [known](#) throughout all [Joppa](#), and many people [believed](#) on the [Lord](#).

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> Soon people everywhere [in Joppa](#) [knew about](#) that miracle and, as a result, many people [believed](#) in the [Lord Jesus](#).

## Acts 9:43

**it happened that (ULT)**

**Peter stayed...many days (UST)**

"It came about that." This introduces the beginning of the next event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

**named Simon, a tanner (ULT)**

**named Simon, who made leather from animal skins (UST)**

"a man named Simon who made leather from animal skins"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joppa](#)
- [for...days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Joppa](#)
- [Peter stayed...many days](#)

#### ULT

<sup>43</sup> Then it happened that Peter stayed for many [days](#) in [Joppa](#) with a certain man named Simon, a tanner.

#### UST

<sup>43</sup> [Peter stayed](#) in [Joppa many days](#) with a man named Simon, who made leather from animal skins.



## **Acts 10**

### **Acts 10 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Unclean**

The Jews believed that they could become unclean in God's sight if they visited or ate food with a Gentile. This was because the Pharisees had made a law against it because they wanted to keep people from eating foods that the law of Moses said were unclean. The law of Moses did say that some foods were unclean, but it did not say that God's people could not visit or eat with Gentiles. (See: [clean, wash](#) and [law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law](#))

#### **Baptism and the Holy Spirit**

The Holy Spirit "fell on" those who were listening to Peter. This showed the Jewish believers that Gentiles could receive the word of God and receive the Holy Spirit just as the Jewish believers had. After that, the Gentiles were baptized.

## Acts 10:1

### General Information:

These verses give background information about Cornelius. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of the part of the story about Cornelius.

### Now there was a certain man (ULT)

### There was a man...who lived in (UST)

This was a way of introducing a new person to this part of the historical account. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**Cornelius by name, a centurion of what was called the Italian Regiment (ULT)**  
**whose name was Cornelius...the...He was an officer who commanded 100 men in a large group of Roman soldiers from Italy (UST)**

"his name was Cornelius. He was an officer in charge of 100 soldiers from the Italian section of the Roman army.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [what was called](#)
- [a centurion](#)
- [by name](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [the city of Caesarea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in a large group](#)
- [He was an officer who commanded](#)
- [whose name](#)
- [was Cornelius](#)
- [city of Caesarea](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now there was a certain man in [the city of Caesarea](#), [Cornelius by name](#), a [centurion](#) of [what was called](#) the Italian Regiment.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> There was a man [whose name was Cornelius](#) who lived in the [city of Caesarea](#). [He was an officer who commanded](#) 100 men [in a large group](#) of Roman soldiers from Italy.

## Acts 10:2

**He was devout and feared God (ULT)**

**He always tried to do what would please God (UST)**

“He believed in God and sought to honor and worship God in his life”

**feared God (ULT)**

**He always tried to do what would please...God (UST)**

The word for “worshiped” here has the sense of deep respect and awe.

**he constantly prayed to God (ULT)**

**he prayed to God regularly (UST)**

The word “constantly” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “he prayed to God a lot” or “he prayed to God regularly” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [feared](#)
- [God](#)
- [to God](#)
- [he...prayed](#)
- [to people in need](#)
- [household](#)
- [money](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He always tried to do what would please](#)
- [God](#)
- [to God](#)
- [he prayed](#)
- [poor Jewish people](#)
- [household were non-Jews who habitually worshiped God](#)
- [He...gave money](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He was devout and [feared God](#) with all his [household](#); he gave much [money to people in need](#) and [he](#) constantly [prayed to God](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> [He always tried to do what would please God](#); he and his entire [household were non-Jews who habitually worshiped God](#). He sometimes [gave money](#) to help [poor Jewish people](#), and [he prayed to God](#) regularly.

## Acts 10:3

**the ninth hour (ULT)**

**about three o'clock (UST)**

"three o'clock in the afternoon." This is the normal afternoon prayer time for Jews.

**he...saw...clearly (ULT)**

**He...saw...afternoon...clearly (UST)**

"Cornelius clearly saw"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [an angel](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [the...hour](#)
- [day](#)
- [a vision](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [an angel](#)
- [whom God had sent](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [about three o'clock](#)
- [One day](#)
- [Cornelius saw a vision](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> About the ninth [hour](#) of the [day](#), he clearly saw in [a vision an angel of God](#) coming to him and saying to him, "[Cornelius!](#)"

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [One day](#) at [about three o'clock](#) in the afternoon, [Cornelius saw a vision](#). He clearly saw [an angel whom God had sent](#). He saw the angel coming into his room and saying to him, "[Cornelius!](#)"

## Acts 10:4

**Your prayers and your gifts to the poor have gone up as a memorial offering into God's presence (ULT)**  
**The angel, who was sent from God...you have been praying regularly to him and you often give money to help poor people. Those things have been like a memorial offering to God (UST)**

It is implied that his gifts and prayers had been accepted by God.  
 Alternate translation: "God is pleased by your prayers and your gifts...a memorial offering to him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [frightened](#)
- [sir](#)
- [God's](#)
- [prayers](#)
- [a memorial offering](#)
- [gifts to the poor](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [terrified](#)
- [Sir](#)
- [to God](#)
- [have been praying regularly to him](#)
- [Those things have been](#)
- [help poor people](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But Cornelius stared at the angel and becoming [frightened](#) he said, "What is it, [sir](#)?" Then the angel said to him, "Your [prayers](#) and your [gifts to the poor](#) have gone up as [a memorial offering](#) into [God's](#) presence.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Cornelius stared at the angel and became [terrified](#). Then he asked fearfully, "[Sir](#), what do you want?" The angel, who was sent from God, answered him, "You have pleased God because you [have been praying regularly to him](#) and you often give money to [help poor people](#). [Those things have been](#) like a memorial offering [to God](#)."

## Acts 10:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [summon](#)
- [who is called](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [send](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [tell them to bring back](#)
- [other](#)
- [a man named Simon](#)
- [name is Peter](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [command](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So now [send](#) men to [Joppa](#) and [summon](#) a certain [Simon who is called Peter](#).

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> So now [command](#) some men to go to [Joppa](#) and [tell them to bring back a man named Simon](#) whose [other name is Peter](#).

## Acts 10:6

**a tanner (ULT)**

**makes leather (UST)**

a person who makes leather from animal skins

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the seaside](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the ocean](#)
- [His house](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He is staying with a certain Simon, a tanner, whose [house](#) is by [the seaside](#)."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> He is staying with a man, also named Simon, who makes leather. [His house](#) is near [the ocean](#)."

## Acts 10:7

### When the angel who spoke to him had left

"When Cornelius' vision of the angel had ended."

**to him...of his...a devout soldier...who served (ULT)**  
**Cornelius...of...a soldier who served...worshiped God (UST)**

"one of the soldiers who served him, who also worshiped God." This soldier worshiped God. That was rare in the Roman army, so Cornelius' other soldiers probably did not worship God.

**devout (ULT)**  
**worshiped God (UST)**

An adjective to describe a person who worshiped God and served him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Cornelius called](#)
- [angel](#)
- [a...soldier](#)
- [house servants](#)
- [who served](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he summoned](#)
- [angel](#)
- [a soldier](#)
- [his household servants](#)
- [who served](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When the [angel](#) who spoke to him had left, [Cornelius called](#) two of his [house servants](#), and a devout [soldier](#) from among those [who served](#) him.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> When the [angel](#) who spoke to Cornelius had gone, [he summoned](#) two of [his household servants](#) and [a soldier who served](#) him, one who also worshiped God.



## Acts 10:8

**having told them all that had happened (ULT)**  
**He explained...to them everything that the angel had said (UST)**

Cornelius explained his vision to his two servants and to one of his soldiers.

**Cornelius sent them to Joppa (ULT)**  
**Then he told them to go to city of Joppa to ask Peter to come to Caesarea (UST)**

"sent two of his two servants and the one soldier to Joppa."

### Translation Words - ULT

- Joppa
- Cornelius sent

### Translation Words - UST

- of Joppa to ask Peter to come to Caesarea
- Then he told...to go

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So having told them all that had happened, [Cornelius sent](#) them to [Joppa](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> He explained to them everything that the angel had said. [Then he told](#) them [to go](#) to city [of Joppa to ask Peter to come to Caesarea](#).

## Acts 10:9

### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Cornelius' two servants and the soldier under Cornelius' command ([Acts 10:7](#)).

### Connecting Statement:

The story shifts away from Cornelius to tell us what God is doing with to Peter.

**at about the sixth hour (ULT)**

**About noon (UST)**

"around noon"

**went up...upon the housetop (ULT)**

**went up...on the flat housetop (UST)**

The roofs of the houses were flat, and people often did many different activities on them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to pray](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [the...hour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to pray](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [noon](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Now on the next day at about the sixth [hour](#), as they were on their journey and were approaching the city, [Peter](#) went up upon the housetop [to pray](#).

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> About [noon](#) the next day, those three men were traveling along the road and were coming near Joppa. As they were approaching Joppa, [Peter](#) went up on the flat housetop [to pray](#).

## Acts 10:10

**while...were cooking some food...the people (ULT)  
were preparing...food...Peter saw (UST)**

“before the people finished cooking the food”

**a vision came upon him (ULT)  
Peter saw...a vision (UST)**

“God gave him a vision” or “he saw a vision” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> He then became hungry and wanted something to eat, but while the people were cooking some food, a vision came upon him,

### UST

<sup>10</sup> He became hungry and wanted something to eat. While some people were preparing the food, Peter saw a vision.

## Acts 10:11

**he saw the sky open (ULT)**

**He saw...the sky open (UST)**

This was the beginning of Peter's vision. It can be a new sentence.

**something like a large sheet...by its four corners (ULT)**

**like a large sheet...with its four corners raised up (UST)**

The container holding the animals had the appearance of a large square piece of cloth.

**being let down by its four corners (ULT)**

**being lowered...with its four corners raised up (UST)**

"with its four corners suspended" or "with its four corners higher than the rest of it"

### Translation Words - ULT

- sky
- earth
- something like

### Translation Words - UST

- sky
- ground
- like

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> and he saw the [sky](#) open and a certain container descending, [something like](#) a large sheet, being let down by its four corners to the [earth](#).

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> He saw the [sky](#) open and something [like](#) a large sheet descending, being lowered to the [ground](#), with its four corners raised up.

**Acts 10:12**

**all kinds of four-footed animals and things that crawled on the earth, and birds of the sky (ULT)  
Inside the sheet...all kinds...and birds...the Mosaic laws forbade Jews to eat. Some had four feet, others crawled on the ground, and others were wild birds (UST)**

From Peter's response in the next verse, it can be implied that the law of Moses commanded the Jews not to eat some of them. Alternate translation: "animals and birds that the Mosaic laws forbade Jews to eat" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sky](#)
- [earth](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Inside the sheet...birds](#)
- [ground](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> In it were all kinds of four-footed animals and things that crawled on the [earth](#), and birds of the [sky](#).

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> [Inside the sheet](#) were all kinds of creatures. These included animals and birds that the Mosaic laws forbade Jews to eat. Some had four feet, others crawled on the [ground](#), and others were wild [birds](#).

**Acts 10:13**

**a voice spoke to him (ULT)**  
**he heard God say to him (UST)**

The person speaking is not specified. The “voice” was probably God, although it could possibly have been an angel from God. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)
- [a voice](#)
- [Rise](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)
- [say](#)
- [stand up](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> Then [a voice](#) spoke to him: “[Rise](#), [Peter](#), kill and eat.”

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> Then he heard God [say](#) to him, “[Peter](#), [stand up](#), kill some of these and eat them!”

## Acts 10:14

**Not so (ULT)**

**surely you do not really want me to do (UST)**

"I will not do that"

**I have never eaten anything that was defiled and  
unclean (ULT)**

**I have never eaten anything that our Jewish law says is  
unacceptable to you or something that we must not  
eat (UST)**

It is implied that some the animals in the container were unclean as defined by the law of Moses and were not to be eaten by believers who lived before Christ died. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [But Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [something that we must not eat](#)
- [Peter](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> [But Peter](#) said, "Not so, [Lord](#); for I have never eaten anything that was defiled and [unclean](#)."

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> But [Peter](#) replied, "[Lord](#), surely you do not really want me to do that, since I have never eaten anything that our Jewish law says is unacceptable to you or [something that we must not eat](#)!"

## Acts 10:15

### What God has cleansed (ULT)

**He said, "I am God, so if I have made something acceptable to eat, do not...that it is (UST)**

If God is the speaker, he is referring to himself in the third person.

Alternate translation: "What I, God, have cleansed" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- has cleansed
- the voice

### Translation Words - UST

- He said...I am God, so if I have
- made something acceptable to eat, do not
- say

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But [the voice](#) came to him again a second time: "What [God has cleansed](#), do not call it defiled."

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Then Peter heard God talk to him a second time. [He said, "I am God, so if I have made something acceptable to eat, do not say](#) that it is not acceptable to eat!"



**Acts 10:16****this...happened three times (ULT)****This...happened three times...after that (UST)**

It is not likely that everything Peter saw happened three times. This probably means that the phrase, "What God has cleansed, do not call it defiled," was repeated three times. However, it may be best to simply say "This happened three times" instead of trying to explain in detail.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sky](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [sky](#)

**ULT**

**16** Now this happened three times; then the container was immediately taken back up into the [sky](#).

**UST**

**16** This happened three times. Immediately after that, the sheet with the animals and birds was then pulled back into the [sky](#).

## Acts 10:17

### Peter was very confused (ULT)

### Peter was trying to understand what (UST)

This means that Peter was having difficulty understanding what the vision meant.

### behold (ULT)

### the men who (UST)

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows, in this case, the two men standing at the gate.

### stood before the gate (ULT)

### to...were standing outside the gate (UST)

“stood before the gate to the house.” It is implied that this house had a wall with a gate in it to enter the property. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### after they had asked their way to the house (ULT)

### They asked people how to get...house. So they found his house and (UST)

This happened before they arrived at the house. This could be stated earlier in the verse, as the UST does.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Cornelius](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [gate](#)
- [who were sent](#)
- [while](#)
- [vision](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Cornelius arrived](#)
- [Peter was trying to understand what](#)
- [gate](#)
- [had been sent](#)
- [While](#)
- [vision meant](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Now [while Peter](#) was very confused in his mind about what the [vision](#) that he had seen could mean, behold, the men [who were sent](#) by [Cornelius](#) stood before the [gate](#), after they had asked their way to the [house](#) of Simon.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> [While Peter was trying to understand what](#) that [vision meant](#), the men who [had been sent](#) by [Cornelius arrived](#). They asked people how to get to Simon's [house](#). So they found his house and were standing outside the [gate](#).

## Acts 10:18

**they called out (ULT)**

**They called (UST)**

Cornelius' men remained outside the gate while asking about Peter.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they called out](#)
- [who was called](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They called](#)
- [other name](#)
- [named Simon](#)
- [was Peter](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Then [they called out](#), asking if [Simon](#), [who was called Peter](#), was staying there.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> [They called](#) and asked if a man [named Simon](#), whose [other name was Peter](#), was staying there.

## Acts 10:19

**While Peter was still thinking about...vision (ULT)**

**While...was still trying to understand...the vision meant (UST)**

“wondering about the meaning of the vision”

**the Spirit (ULT)**

**what...God’s Spirit (UST)**

“the Holy Spirit”

**Behold (ULT)**

**Listen (UST)**

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: three”

**three men are looking for you**

Some ancient texts have a different number of men. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- While Peter
- are looking
- vision

### Translation Words - UST

- God’s Spirit
- Peter
- who want to see
- vision meant

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> [While Peter](#) was still thinking about the [vision](#), the [Spirit](#) said to him, “Behold, men [are looking](#) for you. <sup>[1]</sup>”

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> While [Peter](#) was still trying to understand what the [vision meant](#), [God’s Spirit](#) said to him, “Listen! Three men are here [who want to see](#) you.”

## Acts 10:20

**and go down (ULT)**

**go downstairs (UST)**

“go down from the roof of the house”

**go with them. Do not hesitate (ULT)**

**go with them! Do not think that you should not go with them (UST)**

It would be natural for Peter not to want to go with them, because they were strangers and they were Gentiles.

### Translation Words - ULT

- have sent
- arise

### Translation Words - UST

- have sent
- So get up

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But [arise](#) and go down and go with them. Do not hesitate, because I [have sent](#) them.”

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> [So get up](#) and go downstairs and go with them! Do not think that you should not go with them, because I [have sent](#) them here!”

## Acts 10:21

**I am he whom you are seeking (ULT)**

**I am...you are looking for (UST)**

"I am the man you are looking for"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [you are seeking](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [you are looking for](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> So [Peter](#) went down to the men and said, "Look, I am he whom [you are seeking](#). What is the reason for which you have come?"

### UST

<sup>21</sup> So [Peter](#) went down to the men and said to them, "Greetings! I am the man [you are looking for](#). Why have you come?"

## Acts 10:22

### General Information:

The words “They” and “them” here refer to the two servants and the soldier from Cornelius ([Acts 10:7](#)).

**Cornelius, a centurion, a man who is righteous and fears God, who is also well spoken of by all the nation of the Jews, was instructed by a holy angel to send for you to come to his house, so he could hear a message from you (ULT)**

**Cornelius, who is a Roman army officer, sent us here. He is a good man who worships God, and all of the Jewish people who know about him say that he is a very good man. An angel said to him, ‘Tell some men to go to Joppa to see Simon Peter and bring him here so that you can hear what he has to say (UST)**

This can be divided into several sentences and stated in active form as the UST does. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**fears God (ULT)**

**who worships God (UST)**

The word for “worship” here has the sense of deep respect and awe.

**all the nation of the Jews (ULT)**

**all of the Jewish people (UST)**

This number of people is exaggerated with the word “all” to emphasize how widely this was known among the Jews. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fears
- who is righteous
- Jews
- a...angel
- holy
- God
- who is...well spoken of
- a centurion
- was instructed
- Cornelius
- nation
- to send for
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- who worships

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> They said, “[Cornelius, a centurion](#), a man [who is righteous](#) and [fears God](#), [who is](#) also [well spoken of](#) by all the [nation](#) of the [Jews](#), [was instructed](#) by a [holy angel to send for](#) you to come to his [house](#), so he could hear a message from you.”

### UST

<sup>22</sup> They replied, “[Cornelius, who is a Roman army officer](#), sent us here. [He is a good man who worships God](#), and all of the [Jewish people who know](#) about him say that he is a very good man. [An angel said to him](#), ‘Tell some men to go to Joppa to [see Simon Peter](#) and bring him here so that you can hear what he has to say.’”

- He is a good man
- Jewish
- An angel said to him
- An angel said to him
- God
- who know
- a Roman army officer
- An angel said to him
- Cornelius, who is
- people
- An angel said to him
- see Simon Peter



## Acts 10:23

**So Peter invited them to come in and stay with him (ULT)**

**So Peter invited them into the house (UST)**

The journey to Caesarea was too long for them to begin that afternoon.

**and stay with him (ULT)**  
**into the house (UST)**

“be his guests”

**some of the brothers from Joppa**

This refers to believers who lived in Joppa.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [he got up](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [Peter got ready](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So Peter invited them to come in and stay with him. Then on the next morning [he got up](#) and went with them, and some of the [brothers](#) who were from [Joppa](#) accompanied him.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> So Peter invited them into the house and told them that they should stay there that night. The next day [Peter got ready](#) and went with the men. Several of the [believers](#) from [Joppa](#) also went with him.

## Acts 10:24

**on the...following day (ULT)**

**The...day after that (UST)**

This was the next day after they left Joppa. The journey to Caesarea took longer than one day.

**Then...Cornelius was waiting for them (ULT)**

**Cornelius was waiting for them...also...so they were there in his house too (UST)**

"Cornelius expected them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he had called together](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [relatives](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He had...invited](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [the city of Caesarea](#)
- [relatives](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then on the following day they came to [Caesarea](#). [Cornelius](#) was waiting for them; [he had called together](#) his [relatives](#) and his close friends.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> The day after that, they arrived in [the city of Caesarea](#). [Cornelius](#) was waiting for them. [He had](#) also [invited](#) his [relatives](#) and close friends to come, so they were there in his house too.

## Acts 10:25

**when...Peter entered (ULT)**

**When...Peter...the house (UST)**

“when Peter entered the house”

**and fell down at his feet to worship him (ULT)**

**bowled low in front of him to worship him (UST)**

“he knelt down and put his face close to Peter’s feet.” He did this to honor Peter. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**and fell down (ULT)**

**bowled low in front of him (UST)**

He purposely lies down facing the ground to show that he is worshiping.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to worship him](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [and fell down](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [worship him](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [bowled low in front of him](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> It came about that when [Peter](#) entered, [Cornelius](#) met him [and fell down](#) at his feet [to worship him](#).

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> When [Peter](#) entered the house, [Cornelius](#) met him and [bowled low in front of him](#) to [worship him](#).

## Acts 10:26

**Stand up! I too...am a man (ULT)**

**Stand up! Do not bow down and worship me! I...am only human, like you (UST)**

This was a mild rebuke or correction to Cornelius not to worship Peter. Alternate translation: "Stop doing that! I am only a man, as you are"

### Translation Words - ULT

- But Peter
- helped...up
- Stand up

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter grasped Cornelius by
- lifted
- Stand up! Do not bow down

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But Peter helped him up, saying, "[Stand up!](#) I too am a man myself."

### UST

<sup>26</sup> But Peter grasped Cornelius by the hand and lifted him to his feet. He said, "[Stand up! Do not bow down](#) and worship me! I myself am only human, like you!"

## Acts 10:27

### General Information:

The word “him” here refers to Cornelius. Here the words “You” and “you” are plural and include Cornelius as well as the Gentiles who were present. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Peter addresses the people who are gathered in Cornelius’ house.

**many people gathered together (ULT)**  
**saw...that many people...had gathered together there (UST)**

“many Gentile people gathered together.” It is implied that these people Cornelius had invited were Gentiles. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gathered together](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [saw...had gathered together there](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> While Peter was talking with him, he went in and found many people [gathered together](#).

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> While he was talking to Cornelius, Peter and the others entered the house and [saw](#) that many people [had gathered together there](#).

## Acts 10:28

### You know (ULT)

### You all know that (UST)

Peter is addressing Cornelius and his invited guests.

**unlawful it is for a Jewish man (ULT)**  
**any of us Jews think we are disobeying our Jewish laws...is (UST)**

"it is forbidden for a Jewish man." This refers to the Jewish religious law.

**a person from another nation (ULT)**  
**of non-Jewish parents (UST)**

This refers to people who were not Jews and not specifically to where they lived.

### Translation Words - ULT

- I should...call
- Jewish
- But God
- a person from another nation
- unclean
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- say
- Jews
- God
- of non-Jewish parents
- unclean that God would not accept him
- all know that

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> He said to them, "You [know](#) how unlawful it is for a [Jewish](#) man to associate with or to visit [a person from another nation](#). [But God](#) has shown me that [I should](#) not [call](#) any man defiled or [unclean](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Then Peter said to them, "You [all know that](#) any of us [Jews](#) think we are disobeying our Jewish laws if we associate with those who are descendants [of non-Jewish parents](#) or if we even visit in their homes. However, [God](#) has shown me in a vision that I should not [say](#) anyone is so defiled and [unclean that God would not accept him](#).

## Acts 10:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> That is why I came without arguing, when I was sent for. So I ask you for what reason did you send for me?"

### UST

<sup>29</sup> So when you sent some men to ask me to come here, I came right away without objection. So, please tell me, why have you asked me to come here?"

## Acts 10:30

### General Information:

In verses 31 and 32 Cornelius quotes what the angel had said to him when he appeared to him at the ninth hour. The words “you” and “your” are all singular. The word “we” here does not include Peter. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Cornelius responds to Peter’s question.

### Four days ago (ULT)

### About...three days (UST)

Cornelius is referring to the day before the third night before he is speaking to Peter. Biblical culture counts the current day, so the day before three nights ago is “four days ago.” Current Western culture does not count the current day, so many Western translations read, “three days ago.”

### praying (ULT)

### praying to God...as I regularly do (UST)

Some ancient authorities say “fasting and praying” instead of simply “praying.” (See: [Textual Variants](#))

### at the ninth hour (ULT)

### at three o’clock in the afternoon (UST)

The normal afternoon time that the Jews pray to God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [praying](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [hour](#)
- [days](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [praying to God...as I regularly do](#)
- [Cornelius](#)
- [time](#)
- [days](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Then [Cornelius](#) said, “Four [days](#) ago at this very [hour](#), I was [praying](#) at the ninth hour in my [house](#); and see, a man stood before me in bright clothing.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> [Cornelius](#) replied, “About this [time](#) three [days](#) ago, I was [praying to God](#) in my [house](#), [as I regularly do](#) at three o’clock in the afternoon. Suddenly a man whose clothes shone brightly stood in front of me



## Acts 10:31

**your prayer has been heard (ULT)**  
**has heard your prayer. He has also (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has heard your prayer" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**have been remembered in the presence of God (ULT)**  
**God...noticed that (UST)**

"brought you to God's attention." This does not imply that God had forgotten.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- prayer
- Cornelius
- gifts to the poor

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- prayer. He has also
- Cornelius
- money to help poor people

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> He said, '[Cornelius](#), your [prayer](#) has been heard, and your [gifts to the poor](#) have been remembered in the presence of God.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> and said, '[Cornelius](#), [God](#) has heard your [prayer](#). [He has also](#) noticed that you have often given [money to help poor people](#), and he is pleased with that.

## Acts 10:32

**summon Simon who is called Peter (ULT)**  
**in order to ask...Simon, whose other name is Peter...to**  
**come here (UST)**

"tell Simon who is also called Peter to come to you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [summon](#)
- [who is called](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [the seaside](#)
- [send someone](#)
- [the house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in order to ask...to come here](#)
- [other name is](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [the city of Joppa](#)
- [the ocean](#)
- [send messengers](#)
- [a house that belongs to another man named](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> So [send someone](#) to [Joppa](#), and [summon Simon who is called Peter](#). He is staying in [the house](#) of Simon, a tanner, by [the seaside](#).<sup>[2]</sup>

### UST

<sup>32</sup> So now, [send messengers](#) to go to [the city of Joppa in order to ask Simon](#), whose [other name is Peter](#), [to come here](#). He is staying near [the ocean](#) in [a house that belongs to another man named](#) Simon, who makes leather.'

## Acts 10:33

**at once (ULT)**

**immediately (UST)**

“right away”

**You did well to have come (ULT)**

**and I certainly thank you for coming (UST)**

This expression is a polite way of thanking Peter for coming.

Alternate translation: “I certainly thank you for coming”

**before God (ULT)**

**God is with us (UST)**

This refers to the presence of God.

**that you have been instructed by the Lord to say (ULT)**  
**the things that the Lord God has commanded you to say (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the Lord has told you to say” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [have been instructed...to say](#)
- [God](#)
- [I sent](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [God has commanded](#)
- [God](#)
- [I...sent some men who asked](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> So at once [I sent](#) for you. You did well to have come. Now therefore, we are all here present before [God](#), to hear everything that you [have been instructed](#) by the [Lord to say](#).” <sup>[3]</sup>

### UST

<sup>33</sup> So I immediately [sent some men who asked](#) you to come here, and I certainly thank you for coming. Now we all are gathered here, knowing that [God](#) is with us, in order to hear all the things that the [Lord God has commanded](#) you to say. So please speak to us.”

## Acts 10:34

### Connecting Statement:

Peter begins speaking to everyone in the house of Cornelius.

**Then Peter opened his mouth and said (ULT)**  
**So Peter began to speak...He said (UST)**

"Peter began to speak to them"

**Truly (ULT)**  
**to them...true that (UST)**

This means that what he is about to say is especially important to know.

**God is not one who shows partiality (ULT)**  
**is...God does not favor only certain groups of people (UST)**

"God does not favor certain people"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Truly
- Peter
- one who shows partiality
- I perceive

### Translation Words - UST

- God does
- true that
- So Peter began to speak
- favor only certain groups of people
- Now I understand

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Then [Peter](#) opened his mouth and said, "[Truly, I perceive](#) that [God](#) is not [one who shows partiality](#)."

### UST

<sup>34</sup> [So Peter began to speak](#) to them. He said, "[Now I understand](#) that it is [true that God does](#) not [favor only certain groups of people](#)."

## Acts 10:35

**anyone who fears him and does righteous deeds is acceptable to him (ULT)**  
**he accepts everyone who honors him and who does what pleases him (UST)**

“he accepts anyone who worships him and does righteous deeds”

**anyone who fears (ULT)**  
**honors (UST)**

The word “worships” here has the sense of deep respect and awe.

### Translation Words - ULT

- anyone who fears
- righteous deeds
- does
- nation

### Translation Words - UST

- honors
- what pleases
- who does
- people group

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Instead, in every [nation anyone who fears](#) him and [does righteous deeds](#) is acceptable to him.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> Instead, from every [people group](#) he accepts everyone who [honors](#) him and [who does what pleases](#) him.

## Acts 10:36

### General Information:

The word “him” here refers to Jesus.

### Connecting Statement:

Peter continues to talk to Cornelius and his guests.

### who is Lord of all (ULT)

**This Jesus is not Lord only over us Israelites. He is also the Lord who rules over all people (UST)**

Here “all” means “all people.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus Christ
- Lord
- sons
- message
- of Israel
- Christ
- announcing the gospel
- he sent
- about peace

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus the Messiah has done
- the Lord who rules
- us
- message
- Israelites
- the Messiah has done
- He proclaimed to us...good news that he would cause people to
- sent to
- have peace with him

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> The [message](#) that [he sent](#) to the [sons of Israel](#), [announcing the gospel about peace](#) through [Jesus Christ](#), who is [Lord of all](#)—

### UST

<sup>36</sup> You know the [message](#) that God [sent to us Israelites](#). [He proclaimed to us the good news that he would cause people to have peace with him](#) because of what [Jesus the Messiah has done](#). This Jesus is not Lord only over us Israelites. He is also [the Lord who rules](#) over all people.

## Acts 10:37

**and spread throughout all Judea (ULT)**  
**throughout the land of Judea (UST)**

The word “all” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “throughout Judea” or “in many places in Judea” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the...after...baptism that John announced (ULT)**  
**what...after John had been proclaiming to people that... before he baptized them (UST)**

“after John preached to the people to repent and then baptized them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- baptism
- Judea
- Galilee
- John
- announced
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- before he baptized them
- of Judea
- Galilee. He began to do those things
- John
- had been proclaiming to people
- know

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> you yourselves [know](#) the message which came and spread throughout all [Judea](#), beginning in [Galilee](#), after the [baptism](#) that [John announced](#);

### UST

<sup>37</sup> You [know](#) what he did throughout the land [of Judea](#), beginning in [Galilee](#). [He began to do those things](#) after [John had been proclaiming to people](#) that they should turn away from their sinful behavior [before he baptized them](#).

## Acts 10:38

**the events concerning Jesus of Nazareth, how God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power (ULT)  
You know that God gave his Holy Spirit to Jesus, the man from the town of Nazareth, and gave him the power to do miracles. You also know how Jesus (UST)**

This long sentence, which begins in verse 36, can be shortened into several sentences as in the UST. "You know...of all. You yourselves know...announced. You know the events...with power"

**God anointed him with the Holy Spirit and with power (ULT)  
You know that God gave his Holy Spirit...and gave him the power to do miracles. You also know (UST)**

The Holy Spirit and God's power are spoken of as if they are something that can be poured out onto a person. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**all who were oppressed by the devil (ULT)  
all the people whom the devil was causing to suffer.  
Jesus was able to do those things (UST)**

The word "all" is a generalization. Alternate translation: "those who were oppressed by the devil" or "many people who were oppressed by the devil" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**God was with him (ULT)  
God was always helping him (UST)**

The idiom "was with him" means "was helping him." (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the events concerning Jesus](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [God...with the Holy Spirit](#)
- [with power](#)
- [anointed](#)
- [devil](#)
- [doing good](#)
- [Nazareth](#)
- [healing](#)
- [who were oppressed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to Jesus](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [You know that God...his](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> [the events concerning Jesus](#) of [Nazareth](#), how [God anointed](#) him [with the Holy Spirit](#) and [with power](#). He went about [doing good](#) and [healing](#) all [who were oppressed](#) by the [devil](#), for [God](#) was with him.

### UST

<sup>38</sup> [You know that God gave his Holy Spirit to Jesus](#), the man from [the town of Nazareth](#), and gave him [the power to do miracles](#). [You also know](#) how Jesus went to many places, [always doing good deeds](#) and [healing people](#). He was healing all the people whom the [devil was causing to suffer](#). [Jesus was able to do those things](#) because [God](#) was always helping him."



- God (2)
- You know that God...his...Holy Spirit
- the power to do miracles. You also know
- gave
- devil
- always doing good deeds
- the town of Nazareth
- healing people
- whom...was causing to suffer. Jesus was able to do those things

## Acts 10:39

### General Information:

The words "We" and "we" here refer to Peter and the apostles and believers who were with Jesus when he was on earth. The words "he" and "him" here refer to Jesus. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**in...the country of the Jews (ULT)**

**in...around every part...of the country of Israel where he lived (UST)**

This refers mainly to Judea at that time.

**by hanging him on a tree (ULT)**

**by nailing him to a wooden cross (UST)**

This is another expression that refers to crucifixion. Alternate translation: "nailing him to a wooden cross"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [are witnesses](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [country of Israel where he lived](#)
- [saw](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> We [are witnesses](#) of all the things that Jesus did, both in the country of the [Jews](#) and [in Jerusalem](#). They also killed him by hanging him on a tree,

### UST

<sup>39</sup> "We all [saw](#) the things Jesus did in [Jerusalem](#) and around every part of the [country of Israel where he lived](#). His enemies killed him by nailing him to a wooden cross.

**Acts 10:40****but God raised him up (ULT)****Then God raised him back to life...that (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "God caused him to live again" (See: [Idiom](#))

**on the third day (ULT)****on the third day after he died (UST)**

"the third day after he died"

**caused him to be seen (ULT)**

**he made sure...many people would see him alive after he was brought back to life. People were sure it was him who had died, and now they saw with their own eyes, and were fully convinced, that he was alive again (UST)**

"permitted many people to see him after he was raised from the dead"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [but God](#)
- [raised...up](#)
- [day](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Then God](#)
- [raised him back to life](#)
- [day after he died](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> [but God raised](#) him [up](#) on the third [day](#) and caused him to be seen,

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> [Then God raised him back to life](#) on the third [day after he died](#), and he made sure that many people would see him alive after he was brought back to life. People were sure it was him who had died, and now they saw with their own eyes, and were fully convinced, that he was alive again.

**Acts 10:41****from the dead (ULT)****back to life (UST)**

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- God
- to the witnesses
- people
- the dead
- rose

**Translation Words - UST**

- At that time God did...see him, only those he selected to spend time
- At that time God did...see him, only those he selected to spend time
- At that time God did...see him, only those he selected to spend time
- back to life
- God raised

**ULT**

<sup>41</sup> not by all the [people](#), but [to the witnesses](#) who were chosen beforehand by [God](#)—by us who ate and drank with him after he [rose](#) from [the dead](#).

**UST**

<sup>41</sup> [At that time God did](#) not let everyone [see him, only those he selected to spend time](#) with him and to eat a meal together in those first days just after [God raised](#) him [back to life](#).

## Acts 10:42

### General Information:

Here the word “us” includes Peter and believers. It excludes his audience. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech to everyone in the house of Cornelius, which he began in [Acts 10:34](#).

**that it is he who has been chosen by God (ULT)**  
**God...that he appointed Jesus to be the judge of everyone one day, a day that is sure to come (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that God chose this Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**of the living and the dead (ULT)**  
**living and all those who have died before that time (UST)**

This refers to people who are still living and people who have died. Alternate translation: “the people who are alive and the people who are dead” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the living](#)
- [He commanded](#)
- [God](#)
- [to testify fully](#)
- [people](#)
- [to proclaim](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [to be the Judge](#)
- [who has been chosen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [living](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [God](#)
- [he told us to tell them](#)
- [people](#)
- [to preach](#)
- [all those who have died before that time](#)
- [He will judge all those who will still be](#)
- [judge](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> [He commanded](#) us [to proclaim](#) to the [people](#) and [to testify fully](#) that it is he [who has been chosen](#) by [God](#) [to be the Judge of the living](#) and [the dead](#).

### UST

<sup>42</sup> [God commanded](#) us [to preach](#) to the [people](#) and [he told us to tell them](#) that he appointed Jesus to be the [judge](#) of everyone one day, a day that is sure to come. [He will judge all those who will still be living](#) and [all those who have died before that time](#).

**Acts 10:43**

**It is to him that all the prophets bear witness (ULT)**  
**All the prophets who wrote about him long ago told the people about him...that (UST)**

"All the prophets bear witness to Jesus"

**shall receive forgiveness of sins...so that everyone who believes in him (ULT)**  
**God could forgive whatever sins they have done...They wrote...if anyone believed in him...this...man, Jesus, had done for them (UST)**

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive the sins of everyone who believes in Jesus because of what Jesus has done" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**through his name (ULT)**  
**because of what...man, Jesus, had done for them (UST)**

Here "his name" refers to the actions of Jesus. His name means God who saves. Alternate translation: "through what Jesus has done for them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of sins
- prophets
- bear witness
- forgiveness
- who believes
- name
- in him
- shall receive

**Translation Words - UST**

- sins they have done
- prophets
- who wrote about him long ago told the people about him
- God could forgive whatever
- They wrote...if anyone believed
- man, Jesus, had done for them
- in him
- sins they have done

**ULT**

<sup>43</sup> It is to him that all the [prophets bear witness](#), so that everyone [who believes in him shall receive forgiveness of sins](#) through his [name](#)."

**UST**

<sup>43</sup> All the [prophets who wrote about him long ago told the people about him](#). [They wrote](#) that [if anyone believed in him, God could forgive whatever sins they have done](#), because of what this [man, Jesus, had done for them](#)."

## Acts 10:44

### the Holy Spirit fell

Here the word “fell” means “happened suddenly.” Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit suddenly came”

### all of those who were listening (ULT)

### all those people from other nations who were listening (UST)

Here “all” refers to all the Gentiles at the house who were listening to Peter.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Peter](#)

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> While [Peter](#) was still saying these things, the [Holy Spirit](#) fell on all of those who were listening to his message.

### UST

<sup>44</sup> While [Peter](#) was still speaking those words, suddenly the [Holy Spirit](#) came down on all those people from other nations who were listening to the message.

## Acts 10:45

### the gift of the Holy Spirit (ULT) given the Holy Spirit (UST)

This refers to the Holy Spirit himself who was given to them.

### the Holy Spirit was poured out (ULT) generously...the Holy Spirit (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God poured out the Holy Spirit" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### was poured out (ULT) generously (UST)

The Holy Spirit is spoken of as if he were something that could be poured out upon people. It implies a generous amount. Alternate translation: "generously given" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the gift of (ULT) given (UST)

"the free gift"

### were amazed...on the Gentiles (ULT) were amazed...to people from all different nations (UST)

Here "also" refers to the fact that the Holy Spirit had already been given to the Jewish believers.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- gift of
- Holy
- who belonged to the circumcision
- Holy Spirit
- Gentiles
- believers
- with Peter
- were amazed

#### Translation Words - UST

- given
- Holy
- Jewish
- Holy Spirit
- people from all different nations
- believers
- with Peter
- were amazed

#### ULT

<sup>45</sup> The [believers who belonged to the circumcision](#)—all of those who had come [with Peter](#)—[were amazed](#), because the [gift of](#) the [Holy Spirit](#) was poured out also on the [Gentiles](#).

#### UST

<sup>45</sup> The [Jewish believers](#) who had come [with Peter](#) from Joppa [were amazed](#) that God had generously [given](#) the [Holy Spirit](#) to [people from all different nations](#) too.



## Acts 10:46

### General Information:

The words “he” and “him” refer to Peter.

### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Cornelius.

**these Gentiles speaking in other languages and praising God (ULT)  
those people speaking languages that they had not learned and telling how great God is (UST)**

These were known spoken languages that caused the Jews to acknowledge that the Gentiles were indeed praising God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [in other languages](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God is](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [languages that they had not learned](#)

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> For they heard these Gentiles speaking [in other languages](#) and praising [God](#). Then [Peter](#) answered,

### UST

<sup>46</sup> The Jewish believers knew that God had done that because they were hearing those people speaking [languages that they had not learned](#) and telling how great [God is](#). Then [Peter](#) said

## Acts 10:47

**Can anyone keep water from these people so they should not be baptized, these people who have received the Holy Spirit as well as we (ULT) to the other Jewish believers who were there, "God has given them the Holy Spirit just like he gave him to us Jewish believers, so surely all of you would agree that we should baptize these people (UST)**

Peter uses this question to convince the Jewish Christians that the Gentile believers should be baptized. Alternate translation: "No one should keep water from these people! We should baptize them because they have received...we!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [should...be baptized](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [have received](#)
- [water](#)
- [as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that we should baptize](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [he gave him](#)
- [to the other Jewish believers](#)
- [just like](#)

### ULT

<sup>47</sup> "Can anyone keep [water](#) from these people so they should not [be baptized](#), these people who [have received](#) the [Holy Spirit as](#) well as we?"

### UST

<sup>47</sup> [to the other Jewish believers](#) who were there, "God has given them the [Holy Spirit just like he gave him](#) to us Jewish believers, so surely all of you would agree [that we should baptize](#) these people!"

## Acts 10:48

**he commanded...them...to be baptized (ULT)**  
**Peter told...those non-Jewish people that they should be baptized as believers...baptized all of them (UST)**

It is implied that the Jewish Christians were the ones who would baptize them. Alternate translation: "Peter commanded the Gentile believers to allow the Jewish Christians to baptize them" or "Peter commanded the Jewish Christians to baptize them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**in Jesus the Messiah...baptized all of them...the (UST)**

Here "in the name of Jesus Christ" expresses that the reason for their baptism was that they believed in Jesus. Alternate translation: "be baptized as believers in Jesus Christ" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Jesus Christ](#)
- [to be baptized](#)
- [he commanded](#)
- [name](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [for...days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus...the Messiah](#)
- [baptized all of them](#)
- [Peter told](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>48</sup> Then [he commanded](#) them [to be baptized](#) in the [name of Jesus Christ](#). Then they asked him to stay with them for several [days](#).

10:19 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient copies have, *two men are looking for you* or *some men are looking for you*.

10:32 <sup>[2]</sup> Some ancient copies add: *When he comes, he will speak to you*.

10:33 <sup>[3]</sup> Instead of *instructed by the Lord to say*, some ancient copies have, *instructed by God to say*.

### UST

<sup>48</sup> Then [Peter told](#) those non-Jewish people that they should be baptized as believers in [Jesus the Messiah](#). So they [baptized all of them](#). After they were baptized, they requested that Peter stay with them several [days](#). So Peter and the other Jewish believers did that.

## **Acts 11**

### **Acts 11 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **“The Gentiles also had received the word of God”**

Almost all of the first believers were Jewish. Luke writes in this chapter that many Gentiles started to believe in Jesus. They believed that the message about Jesus was true and so began to “receive the word of God.” Some of the believers in Jerusalem did not believe that Gentiles could truly follow Jesus, so Peter went to them and told them what had happened to him and how he had seen the Gentiles receive the Word of God and receive the Holy Spirit.

## Acts 11:1

### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new event in the story.

### Connecting Statement:

Peter arrives in Jerusalem and begins talking to the Jews there.

### Now (ULT)

### heard people say (UST)

This marks a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### the...brothers (ULT)

### The...believers (UST)

The phrase "brothers" here refers to the believers in Judea.

### the...were in Judea (ULT)

### The...lived in various towns in the province of Judea (UST)

"who were in the province of Judea"

### had received the word of God (ULT)

### had...believed the message of God about Jesus (UST)

This expression refers to the fact that the Gentiles believed the gospel message about Jesus. Alternate translation: "believed the message of God about Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [of God](#)
- [word of God](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [had received](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers](#)
- [of God about Jesus](#)
- [message of God about Jesus](#)
- [non-Jewish people](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [various towns in the province of Judea](#)
- [had...believed](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now the [apostles](#) and the [brothers](#) who were in [Judea](#) heard that the [Gentiles](#) also [had received](#) the [word of God](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> The [apostles](#) and other [believers](#) who lived in [various towns in the province of Judea](#) heard people say that some [non-Jewish people](#) had also [believed](#) the [message of God about Jesus](#).

**Acts 11:2****had come up...to Jerusalem (ULT)****But there were some...to Jerusalem (UST)**

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of coming up to Jerusalem and going down from it.

**they who belonged to the circumcision group (ULT)**  
**Jewish believers in Jerusalem who wanted all followers of the Messiah to be circumcized...from Caesarea (UST)**

This is a reference to some of the Jews who believed that every believer must be circumcised. Alternate translation: "some Jewish believers in Jerusalem who wanted all followers of Christ to be circumcized" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the circumcision group](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jewish believers in Jerusalem who wanted all followers of](#)
- [Peter returned](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> Now when [Peter](#) had come up to [Jerusalem](#), they who belonged to [the circumcision group](#) argued with him;

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> But there were some [Jewish believers in Jerusalem who wanted all followers of](#) the Messiah to be circumcized. When [Peter returned](#) from Caesarea to [Jerusalem](#), they met with him and criticized him.

## Acts 11:3

**uncircumcised men (ULT)**

**uncircumcized non-Jews (UST)**

The phrase “uncircumcised men” refers to Gentiles. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**ate with them (ULT)**

**you...ate with them (UST)**

It was against Jewish tradition for Jews to eat with Gentiles.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [uncircumcised](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [uncircumcized non-Jews](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> they said, “You associated with [uncircumcised](#) men and ate with them!”

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> They said to him, “Not only was it wrong for you to visit in the homes of [uncircumcized non-Jews](#), you even ate with them!”

## Acts 11:4

### Connecting Statement:

Peter responds to the Jews by telling them about his vision and about what had happened at Cornelius' house.

**started...Peter...to explain the matter (ULT)**

**began...Peter...to...exactly (UST)**

Peter did not criticize the Jewish believers but reacted in a friendly explanatory manner.

**in detail (ULT)**

**what had happened (UST)**

"exactly what happened"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But [Peter](#) started to explain the matter to them in detail; he said,

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> So [Peter](#) began to explain exactly what had happened.



**Acts 11:5****like a large sheet (ULT)****I saw that something like a...large...sheet was (UST)**

The container holding the animals had the appearance of a large square piece of cloth. See how you translated this in [Acts 10:11](#).

**by its four corners (ULT)****by its four corners (UST)**

“with its four corners suspended” or “with its four corners higher than the rest of it.” See how you translated this in [Acts 10:11](#).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heaven](#)
- [praying](#)
- [of Joppa](#)
- [like](#)
- [a vision](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [heaven](#)
- [praying by myself](#)
- [of Joppa](#)
- [I saw that something like a...sheet was](#)
- [a vision](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> I was [praying](#) in the city [of Joppa](#), and I saw in a trance [a vision](#) of a certain container coming down, [like](#) a large sheet let down from [heaven](#) by its four corners. It descended to me.

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> He said, “I was [praying by myself](#) in the city [of Joppa](#), and in a trance I saw [a vision](#). [I saw that something like a large sheet was](#) being lowered from [heaven](#) by its four corners, and it came down to where I was.

**Acts 11:6****four-legged animals of the earth (ULT)  
tame animals...and also some wild animals (UST)**

From Peter's response, it can be implied that the law of Moses commanded the Jews not to eat some of them. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Acts 10:12](#). Alternate translation: "animals and birds that the Mosaic laws forbade Jews to eat" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**wild beasts (ULT)  
and also some wild animals (UST)**

This probably refer to the animals people do not or can not tame or control.

**creeping animals (ULT)  
reptiles (UST)**

These are reptiles.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [sky](#)
- [wild beasts](#)
- [earth](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [wild birds](#)
- [and also some wild animals](#)
- [and also some wild animals](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> I gazed at it and thought about it. I saw the four-legged animals of the [earth](#), and the [wild beasts](#), and the creeping animals, and the birds of the [sky](#).

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> As I was looking intently into it, I saw some tame animals [and also some wild animals](#), reptiles, and [wild birds](#).

**Acts 11:7****I...heard...a voice (ULT)****I heard...God commanding (UST)**

The person speaking is not specified. The “voice” was probably God, although it could possibly have been an angel from God. See how you translated “a voice” in [Acts 10:13](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Peter](#)
- [a voice](#)
- [Get up](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Peter](#)
- [God commanding](#)
- [get up](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> Then I also heard [a voice](#) say to me, “[Get up, Peter](#); kill and eat!”

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> Then I heard [God commanding](#) me, ‘[Peter, get up](#), kill and eat them!’

## Acts 11:8

**Not so (ULT)**

**surely do not really want (UST)**

"I will not do that." See how you translated this in [Acts 10:14](#).

**nothing unholy or unclean has ever entered into my mouth (ULT)**

**me...because I have never eaten anything that our laws say that we must not eat (UST)**

Apparently the animals in the sheet were animals which the Jewish law in the Old Testament forbade the Jews to eat. This can be said in a positive way. Alternate translation: "I have eaten only meat from holy and clean animals" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

**unclean (ULT)**

**because I have...we must (UST)**

In the Old Testament Jewish law, a person became ritually "unclean" in various ways, such as eating certain forbidden animals.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [unclean](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord, you](#)
- [because I have...we must](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But I said, "Not so, [Lord](#); for nothing unholy or [unclean](#) has ever entered into my mouth."

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> But I replied, '[Lord, you](#) surely do not really want me to do that, [because I have](#) never eaten anything that our laws say that [we must](#) not eat!'

## Acts 11:9

**What God has declared clean, do not call unclean (ULT)  
God, so if I have made something acceptable to eat, do  
not...it is unacceptable (UST)**

This refers to the animals in the sheet. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [God](#)
- [has declared clean](#)
- [the voice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven to me](#)
- [God, so](#)
- [if I have made something acceptable to eat, do](#)
- [say](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But [the voice](#) answered a second time from [heaven](#), "What [God has declared clean](#), do not call unclean."

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> God spoke from [heaven to me](#) a second time, 'I am [God, so if I have made something acceptable to eat, do](#) not [say](#) it is unacceptable.'

**Acts 11:10****this...happened three times (ULT)****This same thing...happened two more times (UST)**

It is not likely that everything was repeated three times. This probably means that “What God has cleansed, do not call it defiled” was repeated three times. However, it may be best to simply say “This happened three times” instead of trying to explain in detail. See how you translated “This happened three times” in [Acts 10:16](#).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heaven](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [heaven](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> Now this happened three times, and then everything was taken back up into [heaven](#) again.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> This same thing happened two more times, and then the sheet with all those animals and birds was pulled up into [heaven](#) again.

## Acts 11:11

### General Information:

Here “we” refers to Peter and the believers in Joppa. It does not include his current audience in Jerusalem. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

### Behold (ULT)

#### At that exact moment (UST)

This word alerts us to the new people in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

### right away (ULT)

#### At that exact moment (UST)

“immediately” or “at that exact moment”

### they had been sent (ULT)

#### who had been sent (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone had sent them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Caesarea](#)
- [they had been sent](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Caesarea](#)
- [who had been sent](#)
- [at the house](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Behold, right away there were three men standing in front of the [house](#) where we were; [they had been sent](#) from [Caesarea](#) to me.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> At that exact moment, three men [who had been sent](#) from [Caesarea](#) arrived [at the house](#) where I was staying.

## Acts 11:12

**not making any distinction regarding them (ULT)**  
**that I should not hesitate (UST)**

“that I should not be concerned that they were Gentiles”

**went...with me...These six brothers (ULT)**  
**went...with me to Caesarea...they were not Jews. Six Jewish believers (UST)**

“These six brothers went with me to Caesarea”

**These six brothers (ULT)**  
**they were not Jews. Six Jewish believers (UST)**

“These six Jewish believers”

**into the man’s house (ULT)**  
**into that non-Jewish man’s house (UST)**

This refers to the house of Cornelius.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [six brothers](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish believers](#)
- [God’s Spirit](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The [Spirit](#) commanded me to go with them, not making any distinction regarding them. These [six brothers](#) also went with me, and we entered into the man’s [house](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [God’s Spirit](#) told me that I should not hesitate to go with them even though they were not Jews. Six [Jewish believers](#) also went with me to Caesarea, and then we went into that non-Jewish man’s [house](#).



## Acts 11:13

**the...Simon...who is called...Peter (ULT)**

**The angel told...Simon...other name is Peter (UST)**

“Simon who is also called Peter.” See how you translated the same phrase in [Acts 10:32](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [summon](#)
- [who is called](#)
- [angel](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [he told](#)
- [Send men](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bring back](#)
- [other name is](#)
- [an angel](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [He told](#)
- [Tell some men](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then [he told](#) us how he had seen the [angel](#) standing in his [house](#) and saying, “[Send men](#) to [Joppa](#) and [summon Simon who is called Peter](#).”

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [He told](#) us that he had seen [an angel](#) standing in his [house](#). The angel told him, “[Tell some men](#) to go to [Joppa](#) and [bring back Simon](#) whose [other name is Peter](#).”

## Acts 11:14

**all your household (ULT)**

**everyone else...your house (UST)**

This refers to all the people in the household. Alternate translation: “everyone who lives in your house” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you will be saved](#)
- [household](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [will be saved](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> He will speak to you a message by which [you will be saved](#)—you and all your [household](#).”

### UST

<sup>14</sup> He will tell you how you and everyone else in your [house will be saved](#).’

## Acts 11:15

### General Information:

Here the word “us” refers to Peter, the apostles, and any of the Jewish believers who had received the Holy Spirit at Pentecost. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### As I began to speak to them, the Holy Spirit came on them

This implies that Peter had not finished speaking but had intended to say more.

**the Holy Spirit came on them, just as also on us in the beginning (ULT)**

**the Holy Spirit suddenly came down on them, just like he had first come on us during... Pentecost festival (UST)**

Peter leaves out some things to keep the story short. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit came on the Gentile believers, just as he came on the Jewish believers at Pentecost” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**as...the beginning (ULT)**

**As...first (UST)**

Peter is referring to the day of Pentecost.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [just as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit suddenly](#)
- [just like he had](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But as I began to speak, the [Holy Spirit](#) came on them, [just as](#) also on us in the beginning.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> As I started to speak, the [Holy Spirit suddenly](#) came down on them, [just like he had](#) first come on us during the Pentecost festival.

## Acts 11:16

**you...will be baptized in the Holy Spirit (ULT)**  
**you...God will baptize you with the Holy Spirit (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will baptize you in the Holy Spirit" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- baptized
- will be baptized
- Lord
- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- John
- with water

### Translation Words - UST

- baptized
- God will baptize you
- the Lord had said
- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- John
- with water

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Then I remembered the word of the [Lord](#), how he said, "[John](#) indeed [baptized with water](#); but you [will be baptized](#) in [the Holy Spirit](#)."

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Then I remembered what [the Lord](#) [had said](#): '[John baptized](#) you [with water](#), but [God will baptize you](#) with [the Holy Spirit](#).'

## Acts 11:17

### General Information:

The word “them” refers to Cornelius and his Gentile guests and household. Peter does not call them Gentiles in his account to the Jewish believers at Jerusalem. The word “they” refers to the Jewish believers to whom Peter spoke. The word “us” includes all of the Jewish believers. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes his speech (which he began in [Acts 11:4](#)) to the Jews about his vision and about what had happened at the house of Cornelius.

**Then if God gave to them the same gift as he also gave to us when we believed on the Lord Jesus Christ, who was I, that I could oppose God (ULT)**

**God gave those non-Jews the same Holy Spirit that he had given to us after we had believed in the Lord Jesus the Messiah. So I could not possibly tell God that he did wrong when he gave them the Holy Spirit (UST)**

Peter uses this question to emphasize that he was only obeying God. Alternate translation: “Since God gave to them...I decided that I could not oppose God!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the same gift (ULT)**

**gave...the same Holy Spirit that he had given (UST)**

Peter refers to the gift of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord Jesus Christ](#)
- [gift](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [when we believed](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [as he...gave](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [gave](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [could not possibly tell God that he did wrong](#)
- [after we had believed](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [when he gave](#)

### ULT

17 Then if [God](#) gave to them the same [gift as he](#) also [gave](#) to us [when we believed](#) on the [Lord Jesus Christ](#), who was I, that I could oppose [God](#)?”

### UST

17 [God gave](#) those non-Jews the same Holy Spirit that he had given to us [after we had believed](#) in the [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#). So I [could not possibly tell God that he did wrong when he gave](#) them the Holy Spirit!”

**Acts 11:18**

**they said nothing in response (ULT)**  
**they stopped criticizing him (UST)**

“they did not argue with Peter”

**God has given repentance for life to the Gentiles also (ULT)**  
**to us that God has also accepted the non-Jews so that they will have eternal life, if they turn from their sinful behavior (UST)**

“God has given repentance that leads to life to the Gentiles also.”  
Here “life” refers to eternal life. The abstract nouns “repentance” and “life” can be translated as the verbs “repent” and “live.” Alternate translation: “God has allowed the Gentiles also to repent and live eternally” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [life](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [they praised](#)
- [repentance](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [eternal life](#)
- [God](#)
- [God has](#)
- [the non-Jews](#)
- [they praised](#)
- [if they turn from their sinful behavior](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> When they heard these things, they said nothing in response, but [they praised God](#), saying, “Then [God](#) has given [repentance](#) for [life](#) to the [Gentiles](#) also.”

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> After those Jewish believers heard what Peter said, they stopped criticizing him. Instead, [they praised God](#), saying, “Then it is clear to us that [God has](#) also accepted [the non-Jews](#) so that they will have [eternal life](#), [if they turn from their sinful behavior](#).”

## Acts 11:19

### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells about what happened to the believers who fled after the stoning of Stephen.

### Now (ULT)

### left Jerusalem...went to other places (UST)

This introduces the new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### those who had been scattered by the persecution that arose over Stephen spread

The Jews began persecuting Jesus' followers because Stephen had said and done things that the Jews did not like. Because of this persecution, many of Jesus' followers left Jerusalem and went to many different places.

### those...spread (ULT)

### the believers...went (UST)

"those went in many different directions"

### who had been scattered by the persecution (ULT)

### of...left Jerusalem...went to other places...because they were suffering there in Jerusalem.

### Some of them (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the Jews had been persecuting and so had left Jerusalem" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the persecution that arose over Stephen

the persecution that happened because of what Stephen had said and done

### except to Jews (ULT)

### were continually telling people the message about Jesus, but they told only...other Jewish people (UST)

The believers thought God's message was for the Jewish people, and not for the Gentiles.

### Translation Words - ULT

- to Jews
- word
- Stephen
- Antioch
- Cyprus
- Phoenicia
- persecution

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Now indeed those who had been scattered by the [persecution](#) that arose over [Stephen](#) spread as far as [Phoenicia](#), and [Cyprus](#), and [Antioch](#), speaking the [word](#) to no one except [to Jews](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> After [Stephen died, many](#) of the believers left Jerusalem and went to other places [because they were suffering there in Jerusalem](#). Some of them went to [Phoenicia](#), [some went to the Island of Cyprus](#), and [others went to Antioch, a city in Syria](#). [In those places they were continually telling people the message about Jesus, but they told only other Jewish people](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- other Jewish people
- were continually telling people the message about Jesus, but they told only
- Stephen died, many
- others went to Antioch, a city in Syria. In those places they
- Island of Cyprus
- Phoenicia, some went to
- because they were suffering there in Jerusalem



## Acts 11:20

### and spoke also to the Greeks (ULT) were also telling non-Jewish people about (UST)

These Greek-speaking people were Gentiles, not Jews. Alternate translation: “also spoke to Gentiles who spoke Greek” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord Jesus
- Lord
- Antioch
- from Cyprus
- Greeks
- Cyrene
- proclaiming the gospel

#### Translation Words - UST

- Lord Jesus
- Lord
- Antioch and
- from the Island of Cyprus
- were also telling non-Jewish people about
- Cyrene city in north Africa
- were also telling non-Jewish people about

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> But some of them were men [from Cyprus](#) and [Cyrene](#), who came to [Antioch](#) and spoke also to the [Greeks](#), [proclaiming the gospel](#) about the [Lord Jesus](#).

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Some of the believers were men [from the Island of Cyprus](#) and [Cyrene city in north Africa](#). They went to [Antioch](#) [and were also telling non-Jewish people about](#) the [Lord Jesus](#).

**Acts 11:21****The hand of the Lord...was...with them (ULT)****The Lord God was powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively. As a result (UST)**

God's hand signifies his powerful help. Alternate translation: "God was powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**turned to the Lord (ULT)****trusted in the Lord (UST)**

Here "turned to the Lord" is a metaphor for starting to obey the Lord. Alternate translation: "and they repented of their sins and began to obey the Lord" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of the Lord](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [having believed](#)
- [The hand](#)
- [turned](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [The Lord God](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [believed their message](#)
- [powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively](#)
- [trusted](#)

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> [The hand of the Lord](#) was with them; and a great number, [having believed](#), [turned](#) to the [Lord](#).

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> [The Lord God](#) was [powerfully enabling those believers to preach effectively](#). As a result, very many non-Jewish people [believed their message](#) and [trusted](#) in the [Lord](#).

## Acts 11:22

### General Information:

In these verses, the word “he” refers to Barnabas. The word “they” refers to the believers of the church at Jerusalem. The words “them” and “their” refer to the new believers ([Acts 11:20](#)).

### ears of the church (ULT)

Here “ears” refers to the believers’ hearing about the event. Alternate translation: “the believers in the church” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- church
- Antioch
- Barnabas
- Jerusalem
- report
- they sent out

### Translation Words - UST

- church, Church
- Antioch
- Barnabas
- Jerusalem
- report, reported, reputation
- sent

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Now the [report](#) about them came to the ears of the [church](#) that was in [Jerusalem](#), and [they sent out Barnabas](#) as far as [Antioch](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The group of believers in [Jerusalem](#) heard people say that many people in Antioch were believing in Jesus. So the leaders of the believers in Jerusalem [sent Barnabas](#) to [Antioch](#).

## Acts 11:23

### saw the grace of God

“saw how God acted kindly toward the believers”

### he encouraged them all (ULT)

### he was encouraging all...believers (UST)

“he kept on encouraging them”

### to remain with the Lord (ULT)

### to continue...trust completely...in the Lord Jesus (UST)

“to remain faithful to the Lord” or “to continue to trust in the Lord”

### with all their heart (ULT)

### to continue...trust completely (UST)

Here the “heart” refers to a person’s will and desire. Alternate translation: “with all their will” or “with complete commitment” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [of God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [he encouraged](#)
- [he was glad](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God had acted kindly toward the believers...of the](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [God had acted kindly toward the believers...of the](#)
- [to continue...trust completely](#)
- [he was encouraging](#)
- [he was very happy](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> When he came and saw the [grace of God](#), [he was glad](#); and [he encouraged](#) them all to remain with the [Lord](#) with all their [heart](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> When he got there, he realized that [God had acted kindly toward the believers](#). So [he was very happy](#), and [he was encouraging](#) all [of the](#) believers [to continue](#) to [trust completely](#) in the [Lord Jesus](#).

## Acts 11:24

### full of the Holy Spirit (ULT)

### Holy Spirit completely controlled...one who trusted God completely (UST)

The Holy Spirit controlled Barnabas as he obeyed the Holy Spirit.

### many people were added to the Lord (ULT)

### many...people there believed...in the Lord Jesus (UST)

Here “added” means they came to believe the same thing as the others. Alternate translation: “many more people also believed in the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- full
- Holy
- of the Holy Spirit
- good
- of faith

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord Jesus
- one who trusted God completely
- Holy
- Holy Spirit completely controlled
- good
- people there believed

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> For he was a [good](#) man and [full of the Holy Spirit](#) and [of faith](#), and many people were added to the [Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Barnabas was a [good](#) man whom the [Holy Spirit completely controlled](#), [one who trusted God completely](#). Because of what Barnabas did, many [people there believed](#) in the [Lord Jesus](#).

## Acts 11:25

### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Barnabas and "him" refers to Saul.

### Barnabas...went out...to Tarsus (ULT) went...to Tarsus city in Cilicia (UST)

"out to the city of Tarsus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Tarsus](#)
- [Saul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Tarsus city in Cilicia](#)
- [Saul](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Barnabas then went out to [Tarsus](#) to look for [Saul](#).

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then Barnabas went to [Tarsus city in Cilicia](#) to look for [Saul](#).

## Acts 11:26

### When he found him (ULT)

### After he found him, Barnabas (UST)

It probably took some time and effort for Barnabas to locate Saul.

### it came about, that (ULT)

### It was (UST)

This begins a new event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### they...gathered together with the church (ULT)

### the believers...met regularly with the church there (UST)

"Barnabas and Saul gathered together with the church"

### were called...the disciples...Christians...in Antioch (ULT)

This implies that other people called the believers by this name. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The people of Antioch called the disciples Christians" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### with...first...Antioch (ULT)

### with...Antioch that...were first (UST)

"for the first time in Antioch"

### Translation Words - ULT

- were called
- church
- Christians
- disciples
- Antioch
- Antioch
- taught
- gathered together
- an...year

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- church there
- called Christians
- disciples
- Antioch to help teach
- Antioch that
- taught
- met regularly
- during a...year

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> When he found him, he brought him to [Antioch](#). So it came about, that for an entire [year](#) they [gathered together](#) with the [church](#) and [taught](#) many people. Now the [disciples were called Christians](#) first in [Antioch](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> After he found him, Barnabas brought him back to [Antioch to help teach](#) the believers. So, [during a whole year](#), Barnabas and Saul [met regularly](#) with the [church there](#) and [taught](#) large numbers of people about Jesus. It was at [Antioch that](#) the [disciples](#) were first [called Christians](#).

## Acts 11:27

### General Information:

Here Luke tells background information about a prophecy in Antioch.  
(See: [Background Information](#))

### Now (ULT) and Saul were (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story-line.

### came down from Jerusalem...to Antioch (ULT) arrived...from Jerusalem...at Antioch, some believers who were (UST)

Jerusalem was higher in elevation than Antioch, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem or going down from it.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [some prophets](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prophets...there](#)
- [Antioch, some believers who were](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [time that Barnabas](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Now in these [days some prophets](#) came down from [Jerusalem](#) to [Antioch](#).

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> During the [time that Barnabas](#) and Saul were at [Antioch, some believers who were prophets](#) arrived [there](#) from [Jerusalem](#).



## Acts 11:28

**Agabus by name (ULT)**  
**whose name was Agabus (UST)**

“whose name was Agabus”

**and indicated by the Spirit (ULT)**  
**in order to speak. God’s Spirit enabled him to prophesy**  
**that there (UST)**

“the Holy Spirit enabled him to prophesy”

**that a great famine was about to occur (ULT)**  
**would soon be a famine (UST)**

“a great shortage of food would happen”

**over all the world (ULT)**  
**in many countries. (This famine happened...Claudius**  
**was the Roman emperor (UST)**

This was a generalization referring to the part of the world that they were interested in. Alternate translation: “all over the inhabited world” or “throughout the Roman Empire” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**in the days of Claudius (ULT)**  
**in many countries...This famine happened...Claudius was the Roman emperor (UST)**

Luke’s audience would know that Claudius was the emperor of Rome at that time. Alternate translation: “when Claudius was the Roman emperor” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- world
- by name
- stood up
- that a...famine

### Translation Words - UST

- God’s Spirit enabled him
- in many countries...This famine happened...Claudius was the Roman emperor
- whose name
- stood up
- a famine

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> One of them, Agabus [by name](#), [stood up](#) and indicated by the [Spirit that a](#) great [famine](#) was about to occur over all the [world](#). This happened in the days of Claudius.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> One of them, [whose name](#) was Agabus, [stood up](#) in order to speak. [God’s Spirit enabled him](#) to prophesy that there would soon be [a famine in many countries](#). ([This famine happened when Claudius was the Roman emperor.](#))

## Acts 11:29

### General Information:

The words “They” and “they” refer to the believers in the church in Antioch ([Acts 11:27](#)).

### So (ULT)

### When (UST)

This word marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, they sent money because of Agabus' prophesy or the famine.

**as anyone was able (ULT)**  
**decided to give as much money as he was able to give (UST)**

The richer people sent more; the poorer people sent less.

**brothers...in Judea (ULT)**

**the believers...in Judea (UST)**

“the believers in Judea”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [help](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [would send](#)
- [as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the believers](#)
- [to help](#)
- [believers there heard what Agabus said, they decided that they would](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [send money](#)
- [as much money](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> So, the [disciples](#), [as](#) anyone was able, decided that each of them [would send help](#) to the [brothers](#) who lived in [Judea](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> When the [believers there heard what Agabus said, they decided that they would send money to help the believers](#) who lived in [Judea](#). Each of them decided to give [as much money](#) as he was able to give.

## Acts 11:30

### by the hand of Barnabas and Saul (ULT) with Barnabas and Saul...in Jerusalem (UST)

The hand is a synecdoche for the action of the whole person.  
Alternate translation: "by having Barnabas and Saul take to them"  
(See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Saul](#)
- [of Barnabas](#)
- [the hand](#)
- [elders](#)
- [they sent money](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Saul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [with](#)
- [leaders of the believers](#)
- [They sent the money](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So they did this; [they sent money](#) to the [elders](#) by [the hand of Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#).

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> [They sent the money with Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#) to the [leaders of the believers](#) in Jerusalem.

## **Acts 12**

### **Acts 12 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

Chapter 12 tells what happened to King Herod while Barnabas was bringing Saul back from Tarsus and they were delivering money from Antioch Jerusalem (11:25-30). He killed many of the leaders of the church, and he put Peter in prison. After God helped Peter escape the prison, Herod killed the prison guards, and then God killed Herod. In the last verse of the chapter, Luke tells how Barnabas and Saul return to Antioch.

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Personification**

The “word of God” is spoken of as if it were a living thing that could grow and become many. (See: [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [word of truth](#), [scripture](#) and [Personification](#))

## Acts 12:1

### General Information:

This is background information about Herod's killing James. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the new persecution, first of James' death and then of Peter's imprisonment and then release.

### Now (ULT) that (UST)

This begins a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### about that...time (ULT) It was about...that...this time (UST)

This refers to the time of the famine.

### laid...hands...on some (ULT) King Herod Agrippa sent soldiers to arrest...King Herod Agrippa sent soldiers to arrest... some of the leaders (UST)

This means Herod had the believers arrested. See how you translated this in [Acts 5:18](#). Alternate translation: "sent soldiers to arrest" (See: [Idiom](#))

### on some who belonged to the church (ULT) some of the leaders of the group of believers in Jerusalem. The soldiers put them in prison. The king did that because he wanted to make the believers suffer (UST)

Only James and Peter are specified, which implies that these were leaders of the church in Jerusalem. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### so that he might mistreat them (ULT) King Herod Agrippa sent soldiers to arrest (UST)

"in order to cause the believers to suffer"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [church](#)
- [Herod the king](#)
- [hands](#)
- [time](#)
- [king](#)
- [so that he might mistreat them](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now about that [time](#) [Herod the king](#) laid [hands](#) on some who belonged to the [church](#) [so that he might mistreat them](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> It was about [this time](#) that [King Herod Agrippa sent soldiers to arrest](#) some of the leaders of the group of believers in Jerusalem. The soldiers put them in prison. The king did that [because he wanted to make the believers suffer](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- because he wanted to make the believers suffer
- King Herod Agrippa sent soldiers to arrest
- King Herod Agrippa sent soldiers to arrest
- this time
- King Herod Agrippa sent soldiers to arrest
- King Herod Agrippa sent soldiers to arrest

**Acts 12:2**

**He killed James the brother of John with the sword (ULT)**

**He commanded a soldier to cut off the head of the apostle James, the older brother of the apostle John, so the soldier did that (UST)**

This tells the manner in which James was killed.

**He killed...James (ULT)**

**He commanded a soldier...of the apostle James (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) Herod himself killed James or 2) Herod ordered someone to kill James. Alternate translation: "Herod gave the order and they killed James" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [brother](#)
- [of John](#)
- [James](#)
- [with the sword](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [older brother](#)
- [of the apostle John](#)
- [of the apostle James](#)
- [to cut off the head](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> He killed [James](#) the [brother of John](#) [with the sword](#).

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> He commanded a soldier [to cut off the head of the apostle James](#), the [older brother of the apostle John](#), so the soldier did that.

## Acts 12:3

### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Herod ([Acts 12:1](#)).

**After he saw that this was pleasing to the Jews (ULT)**  
**When Herod realized that he had pleased the leaders of the Jewish people (UST)**

"When Herod realized that putting James to death pleased the Jewish leaders"

**pleased the Jews**

"made the Jewish leaders happy"

**that...this was (ULT)**  
**realized that...he had pleased (UST)**

"Herod did this" or "This happened"

**during the days of unleavened bread (ULT)**  
**This happened during the festival when the Jewish people ate bread without yeast (UST)**

This refers to a time of Jewish religious feast time during the Passover season. Alternate translation: "the festival when the Jewish people ate bread without yeast"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of unleavened bread](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [during the days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [This happened during the festival when the Jewish people ate bread without yeast](#)
- [of the Jewish people](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [This happened during the festival when the Jewish people ate bread without yeast](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> After he saw that this was pleasing to the [Jews](#), he proceeded to arrest [Peter](#) also. Now that was [during the days of unleavened bread](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> When Herod realized that he had pleased the leaders [of the Jewish people](#), he commanded soldiers to arrest [Peter](#) too. [This happened during the festival when the Jewish people ate bread without yeast](#).



## Acts 12:4

### to four squads of soldiers (ULT)

### four groups of soldiers...four soldiers (UST)

“four groups of soldiers.” Each squad had four soldiers that guarded Peter, one group at a time. The groups divided the 24 hour day into four shifts. Each time two soldiers would have been at his side and the other two soldiers by the entrance.

### he was intending...to bring him to the people (ULT)

### Herod wanted...to bring Peter out of prison...judge him in front of the Jewish people (UST)

“Herod planned to judge Peter in the presence of the people” or  
“Herod planned to judge Peter before the Jewish people”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Passover](#)
- [people](#)
- [prison](#)
- [of soldiers](#)
- [After arresting him](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Passover Festival was finished. He then planned to execute Peter](#)
- [Jewish people](#)
- [prison. They commanded](#)
- [of soldiers...four](#)
- [After they arrested Peter, they](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [After arresting him](#), he put him in [prison](#), assigning him over to four squads [of soldiers](#) to guard him; he was intending to bring him to the [people](#) after the [Passover](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> [After they arrested Peter, they](#) put him in [prison](#). [They commanded](#) four groups [of soldiers](#) to guard Peter. Each group had [four](#) soldiers. Herod wanted to bring Peter out of prison and judge him in front of the [Jewish people](#) after the [Passover Festival was finished. He then planned to execute Peter](#).

## Acts 12:5

**So therefore, Peter was kept in the prison (ULT)**  
**So...Peter stayed in prison (UST)**

This implies that the soldiers continually guarded Peter in prison. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So the soldiers guarded Peter in the prison" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**prayer...was made earnestly to God for him by the church (ULT)**  
**praying...for several days...the other believers in their group in Jerusalem were...earnestly to God that he would help Peter (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the group of believers in Jerusalem earnestly prayed to God for him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**earnestly (ULT)**  
**in Jerusalem were...earnestly (UST)**

continuously and with dedication

### Translation Words - ULT

- church
- God
- prayer
- So therefore, Peter
- prison

### Translation Words - UST

- the other believers in their group
- God
- praying
- Peter
- prison

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [So therefore, Peter](#) was kept in the [prison](#), but [prayer](#) was made earnestly to [God](#) for him by the [church](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> So for several days [Peter](#) stayed in [prison](#). But [the other believers in their group](#) in Jerusalem were [praying](#) earnestly to [God](#) that he would help Peter.

**Acts 12:6**

**the night before Herod was going to bring him out for trial (ULT)**

**The night...Herod...planned...to bring...out from prison to have him executed publicly, Peter (UST)**

That Herod planned to execute him can be clarified. Alternate translation: "The happened on the day before Herod was going to bring Peter out from prison to put him on trial and then to execute him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**bound with two chains (ULT)**  
**with two chains (UST)**

"tied with two chains" or "fastened with two chains." Each chain would have been attached to one of the two guards who stayed beside Peter.

**were...keeping watch over the prison (ULT)**  
**were guarding the prison (UST)**

"were guarding the prison doors"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [bound](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [prison](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [were...keeping watch](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [with...chains](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [prison](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [were guarding](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> Now on the night before [Herod](#) was going to bring him out for trial, [Peter](#) was sleeping between two [soldiers](#), [bound](#) with two chains, while guards in front of the door were also [keeping watch](#) over the [prison](#).

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> The night before [Herod](#) planned to bring [Peter](#) out from prison to have him executed publicly, Peter was sleeping in the prison between two [soldiers](#), with two [chains](#) binding him. Two other soldiers [were guarding](#) the [prison](#) doors.

## Acts 12:7

### General Information:

The words “him” and “his” refer to Peter.

### Behold (ULT)

### Suddenly (UST)

This word alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

### suddenly appeared by him (ULT)

### stood beside Peter (UST)

“next to him” or “beside him”

### in the prison cell (ULT)

### in his cell (UST)

“in the prison room”

### He struck...Peter (ULT)

### The angel poked...Peter (UST)

“The angel tapped Peter” or “The angel poked Peter.” Peter was evidently sleeping deeply enough that this was required to wake him.

### his chains fell off his hands (ULT)

### the chains fell off from his wrists. However, the soldiers were not aware of what was happening (UST)

The angel caused the chains to fall from Peter without touching them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- an angel
- Peter
- hands
- a light
- Get up

### Translation Words - UST

- from the Lord God
- an angel
- Peter
- what was happening
- a bright light
- Get up

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Behold, [an angel of the Lord](#) suddenly appeared by him, and [a light](#) shone in the prison cell. He struck [Peter](#) on the side and woke him, saying, “[Get up](#) quickly,” and his chains fell off his [hands](#).

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Suddenly, [an angel from the Lord God](#) stood beside Peter, and [a bright light](#) shone in his cell. The angel poked [Peter](#) in the side and woke him up and said, “[Get up](#) quickly!” While Peter was getting up, the chains fell off from his wrists. However, the soldiers were not aware of [what was happening](#).

## Acts 12:8

**Peter did...so (ULT)**

**did...that (UST)**

"Peter did what the angel told him to do" or "Peter obeyed"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [Dress yourself](#)
- [sandals](#)
- [outer garment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [Fasten your belt around you](#)
- [sandals](#)
- [around you](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then the [angel](#) said to him, "[Dress yourself](#) and put on your [sandals](#)." So Peter did so. The angel said to him, "Put on your [outer garment](#) and follow me."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then the [angel](#) said to him, "[Fasten your belt around you](#) and put on your [sandals](#)!" So Peter did that. Then the angel told him, "Wrap your cloak [around you](#) and follow me!"

## Acts 12:9

### General Information:

Here the word "He" refers to Peter. The words "they" and "They" refer to Peter and the angel.

**he did not know (ULT)**

**he had no idea (UST)**

"He did not understand"

**what was done by the angel was real (ULT)**  
**angel out of the prison cell...this was really**  
**happening...was (UST)**

This could be changed to active form. Alternate translation: "the actions of the angel were real" or "what the angel did truly happened" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [angel](#)
- [real](#)
- [a vision](#)
- [he...know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [angel out of](#)
- [really...was](#)
- [dreaming](#)
- [he had...idea](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So Peter followed the angel and went out. But [he](#) did not [know](#) that what was done by the [angel](#) was [real](#). For he thought he was seeing [a vision](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So Peter put on his cloak and sandals and followed the [angel out of](#) the prison cell, but [he had](#) no [idea](#) that all this was [really](#) happening. He thought that he [was dreaming](#).

**Acts 12:10**

**After they had passed by the first guard and the second (ULT)**

**Peter and the angel walked by the soldiers who were guarding the two doors (UST)**

It is implied that the soldiers were not able to see Peter and the angel as they walked by. Alternate translation: "The first and second guards did not see them as they passed by, and then" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they had passed by (ULT)**  
**walked by the soldiers who were guarding the (UST)**

"had walked by"

**and the second (ULT)**  
**Peter and the angel...two doors (UST)**

The word "guard" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "and the second guard" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**they came to the iron gate**

"Peter and the angel arrived at the iron gate"

**that led into the city**

"that opened to the city" or "that went from the prison to the city"

**it opened for them by itself (ULT)**  
**but the soldiers did not see them...The gate opened by itself (UST)**

Here "by itself" means neither Peter nor the angel opened it. Alternate translation: "the gate swung open for them" or "the gate opened itself for them" (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**and went down a street (ULT)**  
**After they had walked some distance along one street (UST)**

"walked along a street"

**left...right away...him (ULT)**  
**suddenly...disappeared...angel (UST)**

"left Peter suddenly" or "suddenly disappeared"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [angel](#)
- [gate](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> After they had passed by the first guard and the second, they came to the iron [gate](#) that led into the city; it opened for them by itself. Then they went out and went down a street, and the [angel](#) left him right away.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> Peter and the angel walked by the soldiers who were guarding the two doors, but the soldiers did not see them. Then they came to the iron [gate](#) that led into the city. The gate opened by itself, and Peter and the angel walked out of the prison. After they had walked some distance along one street, the [angel](#) suddenly disappeared.

## Translation Words - UST

- angel
- gate



## Acts 12:11

### When Peter came to himself (ULT)

**Then Peter finally realized that what had happened to him was not a vision, but that it had really happened (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “When Peter became fully awake and alert” or “When Peter became aware that what had happened was real” (See: [Idiom](#))

### delivered me out of the hand of Herod (ULT)

**rescued me from what Herod planned to do to me (UST)**

Here “the hand of Herod” refers to “Herod’s hold” or “Herod’s plans.” Alternate translation: “brought me from the harm Herod had planned for me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### delivered me (ULT)

**rescued me (UST)**

“rescued me”

### from everything the Jewish people were expecting (ULT)

**from all the things that the Jewish leaders expected would happen (UST)**

Here “the people of the Jews” probably referred mainly to the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: “all that the Jewish leaders thought would happen to me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Jewish
- angel
- truly
- Jewish people
- of Herod
- Peter
- the hand
- people
- has sent
- delivered
- I...know

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord God
- Jewish leaders expected would happen
- an angel to help me
- really
- Jewish leaders expected would happen
- Herod planned to do to me
- Peter finally realized that what had happened to him was not a vision

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> When [Peter](#) came to himself, he said, “Now I [truly know](#) that the [Lord has sent](#) his [angel](#) and [delivered](#) me out of [the hand of Herod](#), and from everything the [Jewish people](#) were expecting.”

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Then [Peter finally realized that what had happened to him was not a vision](#), but that it had really happened. So he thought, “Now I [really know](#) that the [Lord God sent an angel to help me](#). He [rescued](#) me from what [Herod planned to do to me](#) and also from all the things that the [Jewish leaders expected would happen](#).”

- Herod planned to do to me
- Jewish leaders expected would happen
- sent
- rescued
- I...know

**Acts 12:12****he realized this (ULT)****When Peter realized that God had rescued him (UST)**

He became aware that God had rescued him.

**of John, also called Mark (ULT)****of John, whose other name was Mark (UST)**

John was also called Mark. This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "John, whom people also called Mark" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [also called](#)
- [were praying](#)
- [of John, also called Mark](#)
- [gathered](#)
- [house](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [other name was](#)
- [were praying that God would help Peter somehow](#)
- [of John, whose other name was Mark](#)
- [believers had assembled](#)
- [house](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> When he realized this, he went to the [house](#) of Mary the mother [of John, also called Mark](#), where many people had [gathered](#) and [were praying](#).

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> When Peter realized that God had rescued him, he went to Mary's [house](#). She was the mother [of John, whose other name was Mark](#). Many [believers had assembled](#) there, and they [were praying that God would help Peter somehow](#).

## Acts 12:13

### General Information:

Here the words “she” and “her” all refer to the servant girl Rhoda.  
Here the words they” and “They” refer to the people who were inside praying (Acts 12:12).

### knocked...he (ULT)

### When...knocked...Peter (UST)

“Peter knocked.” Tapping on the door was a normal Jewish custom to let others know you wish to visit them. You may need to change this to fit your culture.

### at the door of the gate (ULT)

### at the outer entrance...who was outside the door (UST)

“at the outer door” or “at the door of the entrance from the street to the courtyard”

### came...to answer (ULT)

### came...to find out (UST)

“came to the gate to ask who was knocking”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [named](#)
- [gate](#)
- [a servant girl](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [named](#)
- [the door](#)
- [a servant girl](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> When he knocked at the door of the [gate](#), [a servant girl named](#) Rhoda came to answer.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> When Peter knocked at the outer entrance, [a servant girl named](#) Rhoda came to find out who was outside [the door](#).

## Acts 12:14

**out of joy (ULT)**

**so happy and excited (UST)**

“because she was so joyful” or “being overly excited”

**she failed to open the door (ULT)**

**she did not open the door (UST)**

“did not open the door” or “forgot to open the door”

**she came running into the room (ULT)**

**she ran back into the house (UST)**

You may prefer to say “went running into the room in the house”

**she reported (ULT)**

**She announced to the other believers that (UST)**

“she told them” or “she said”

**that...was standing...Peter’s...at...door (ULT)**

**was standing...that...outside...door (UST)**

“standing outside the door.” Peter was still standing outside.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter’s
- Peter
- voice
- door
- door
- she reported
- joy
- she came running into the room
- she recognized

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- Peter
- his voice, but she was
- door
- door
- She announced to the other believers that
- so happy and excited
- she ran back into the house
- answered her, she recognized

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> When [she recognized Peter’s voice](#), out of [joy](#) she failed to open the [door](#); instead, [she came running into the room](#); [she reported](#) that [Peter](#) was standing at the [door](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> When [Peter answered her, she recognized his voice, but she was so happy and excited](#) that she did not open the [door](#)! Instead, [she ran back into the house. She announced to the other believers that Peter](#) was standing outside the [door](#).

## Acts 12:15

**You are insane (ULT)**

**You are crazy (UST)**

The people not only did not believe her, but rebuked her by saying she was crazy. Alternate translation: "You are crazy"

**she...insisted that it was so (ULT)**

**But...she continued saying that it was really true. They kept saying, "No, it cannot be Peter (UST)**

"she insisted that what she said was true"

**they...said (ULT)**

**But one of them...They kept saying (UST)**

"They answered"

**It is his angel (ULT)**

**It is probably his angel (UST)**

"What you have seen is Peter's angel." Some Jews believed in guardian angels and may have thought that Peter's angel had come to them.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [angel](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [angel](#)

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> So they said to her, "You are insane." But she insisted that it was so. Then they said, "It is his [angel](#)."

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> But one of them said to her, "You are crazy!" But she continued saying that it was really true. They kept saying, "No, it cannot be Peter. It is probably his [angel](#)."

## Acts 12:16

### General Information:

Here the words “they” and “them” refer to the people in the house. The words “He” and “he” refer to Peter.

### But Peter continued knocking (ULT)

### But Peter continued knocking on the door. So when someone (UST)

The word “continued” means that Peter kept knocking the entire time those inside were talking.

### Translation Words - ULT

- But Peter
- were amazed

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- they were completely amazed

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But Peter continued knocking, and when they had opened the door, they saw him and were amazed.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> But Peter continued knocking on the door. So when someone finally opened the door, they saw that it was Peter, and they were completely amazed!

## Acts 12:17

**Report...these things (ULT)**

**Tell...what has happened (UST)**

"Tell these things"

**the brothers (ULT)**

**our other fellow believers (UST)**

"the other believers"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- brothers
- to James
- hand
- of prison
- and he told them
- Report

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord God
- fellow believers
- James, the leader of our group
- with his hand
- prison
- he told them exactly
- Tell

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Then Peter motioned to them with his [hand](#) to be silent, [and he told them](#) how the [Lord](#) had brought him out [of prison](#). He said, "[Report](#) these things [to James](#) and the [brothers](#)." Then he left and went to another place.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Peter motioned [with his hand](#) for them to be quiet. Then [he told them exactly](#) how the [Lord God](#) had led him out of the [prison](#). He also said, "[Tell James, the leader of our group](#), and our other [fellow believers](#) what has happened." Then Peter left and went away somewhere else.



## Acts 12:18

### General Information:

The word “him” here refers to Peter. The word “he” refers to Herod.

### Now (ULT)

### became...they did (UST)

This word is used to mark a break in the story-line. Time has passed; it is now the next day.

### when it became...day (ULT)

### became...they did...The next morning (UST)

“in the morning”

**there was no small disturbance among the soldiers over what had happened to Peter (ULT)**

**The next morning...the soldiers who had been guarding Peter...terribly upset because...not know what had happened to him (UST)**

This phrase is used to emphasize what really happened. This could be said in a positive way. Alternate translation: “there was a great disturbance among the soldiers over what had happened to Peter” (See: [Litotes](#))

**there was no small disturbance among the soldiers over what had happened to Peter (ULT)**

**The next morning...the soldiers who had been guarding Peter...terribly upset because...not know what had happened to him (UST)**

The abstract noun “disturbance” can be expressed with the words “disturbed” or “upset.” Alternate translation: “the soldiers were very disturbed about what had happened to Peter” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [The next morning](#)

### ULT

**18** Now when it became [day](#), there was no small disturbance among the [soldiers](#) over what had happened to [Peter](#).

### UST

**18** [The next morning](#) the [soldiers](#) who had been guarding [Peter](#) became terribly upset because they did not know what had happened to him.

## Acts 12:19

**After Herod had searched for him and could not find him (ULT)**

**Then Herod heard about it. So he commanded soldiers to search for Peter, but they did not find him (UST)**

“After Herod searched for Peter and could not find him”

**After Herod had searched for him (ULT)**

**Then Herod heard about it. So he commanded soldiers to search for Peter...him (UST)**

Possible meanings are that 1) “when Herod heard Peter was missing, he went himself to search the prison” or 2) “when Herod heard Peter was missing, he sent other soldiers to search the prison.”

**he questioned the guards and ordered them to be put to death (ULT)**

**Then he questioned the soldiers who had been guarding Peter and commanded them to be led away to be executed (UST)**

It was the normal punishment for the Roman government to kill the guards if their prisoner escaped.

**and...he went down (ULT)**

**but...went...down (UST)**

The phrase “went down” is used here because Caesarea is lower in elevation than Judea.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and ordered them](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [he questioned](#)
- [had searched](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and commanded them](#)
- [the province of Judea](#)
- [Herod heard about it. So he commanded soldiers to](#)
- [the city of Caesarea, where](#)
- [Then he questioned](#)
- [search for Peter](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> After [Herod had searched](#) for him and could not find him, [he questioned](#) the guards [and ordered them](#) to be put to death. Then he went down from [Judea](#) to [Caesarea](#) and stayed there.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Then [Herod heard about it. So he commanded soldiers to search for Peter](#), but they did not find him. [Then he questioned](#) the soldiers who had been guarding Peter [and commanded them](#) to be led away to be executed. Afterwards, Herod went from [the province of Judea](#) down to [the city of Caesarea, where](#) he stayed for some time.

## Acts 12:20

### Connecting Statement:

Luke continues with another event in Herod's life.

### Now (ULT)

### King Herod had been (UST)

This word is used here to mark the next event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

### together...they went to him (ULT)

### Then one day some men who represented them...came together to...They persuaded (UST)

Here the word "They" is a generalization. It is unlikely that all the people of Tyre and Sidon went to Herod. Alternate translation: "Men representing the people of Tyre and Sidon went together to talk with Herod" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### They persuaded...Blastus...to help them (ULT)

### They persuaded...Blastus, who was one of (UST)

"These men persuaded Blastus"

### Blastus (ULT)

### Blastus, who was one of (UST)

Blastus was an assistant to or an officer of King Herod. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Then they asked for peace (ULT)

### peace with him. They wanted to be able to trade with (UST)

"these men requested peace"

### their country received its food from the king's country (ULT)

### their cities wanted to make...the people that Herod ruled...they needed to buy food from those regions (UST)

They probably purchased this food. Alternate translation: "the people of Tyre and Sidon bought all their food from the people that Herod ruled" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### received its food (ULT)

### their cities wanted to make...they needed to buy food (UST)

It is implied that Herod restricted this supply of food because he was angry with the people of Tyre and Sidon. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Sidon](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Now Herod was very angry [with the people of Tyre](#) and [Sidon](#). So they went to him together. [They persuaded](#) Blastus, the [king's](#) assistant, [to help them](#). Then they asked for [peace](#), because their country received its food from the [king's country](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> King Herod had been furiously angry [with the people who lived in the cities of Tyre](#) and [Sidon](#). Then one day some men who represented them came together to the city of Caesarea in order to meet with Herod. [They persuaded](#) Blastus, who was one of [Herod's](#) important officials, to tell Herod that the people in their cities wanted to make [peace with him](#). They wanted to be [able to trade with](#) the people that [Herod ruled](#), because they needed to buy food from those regions.

- with the people of Tyre
- They persuaded...to help them
- king's
- king's country
- peace

### Translation Words - UST

- Sidon
- with the people who lived in the cities of Tyre
- They persuaded
- Herod's
- Herod ruled
- peace with him...able to trade with

**Acts 12:21****on a set...day (ULT)****planned to meet with...On the day that (UST)**

This was probably the day on which Herod agreed to meet with the representatives. Alternate translation: "On the day when Herod agreed to meet them"

**in royal clothing (ULT)****clothes that showed that he was king (UST)**

expensive clothing that would demonstrate he was the king

**sat on a throne**

This was where Herod formally addressed people who came to see him.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Herod
- royal
- throne
- day
- dressed himself

**Translation Words - UST**

- Herod had
- that showed that he was king
- his throne
- On the day that
- put on very expensive

**ULT**

<sup>21</sup> So on a set [day](#), [Herod dressed himself](#) in [royal](#) clothing. Sitting on the [throne](#), he made a speech to them.

**UST**

<sup>21</sup> [On the day that Herod had](#) planned to meet with them, he [put on very expensive](#) clothes [that showed that he was king](#). Then he sat on [his throne](#) and formally addressed all the people who had gathered there.

## Acts 12:22

### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Herod.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of a god
- This is the voice
- shouted

### Translation Words - UST

- shouted repeatedly...This man who is speaking is a god
- shouted repeatedly...This man who is speaking is a god
- shouted repeatedly, "This man who is speaking is a god

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But the people shouted, "This is the voice of a god, and not of a man!"

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Those who were listening to him shouted repeatedly, "This man who is speaking is a god, not a man!"

## Acts 12:23

**Immediately...an angel (ULT)**

**immediately...an angel (UST)**

“Right away an angel” or “While the people were praising Herod, an angel”

**struck him (ULT)**

**him instead of...caused Herod to become seriously ill (UST)**

“afflicted Herod” or “caused Herod to become very ill”

**he did not give God the glory (ULT)**

**praising God (UST)**

Herod let those people worship him instead of telling them to worship God.

**he was eaten by worms and died (ULT)**

**Many worms ate his intestines. Soon he died very painfully (UST)**

Here “worms” refers to worms inside the body, probably intestinal worms. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “worms ate Herod’s insides and he died” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Lord](#)
- [an angel](#)
- [God](#)
- [glory](#)
- [and died](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [from the Lord God](#)
- [an angel](#)
- [God](#)
- [praising](#)
- [he died very painfully](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Immediately [an angel of the Lord](#) struck him, because he did not give [God](#) the [glory](#); and he was eaten by worms [and died](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Herod let the people praise him instead of [praising God](#). So, immediately, [an angel from the Lord God](#) caused Herod to become seriously ill. Many worms ate his intestines. Soon [he died very painfully](#).

## Acts 12:24

Verse 24 continues the history from verse 23. Verse 25 continues the history from 11:30. (See: [End of Story](#))

**the...word of God increased and multiplied (ULT)**  
**The believers continued telling...God's message to people in many places, and...number of people who believed in Jesus was continually increasing (UST)**

The word of God is spoken of as if it was a living plant that was able to grow and reproduce. Alternate translation: "the message of God spread to more places and more people believed in him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the...word of God (ULT)**  
**The believers continued telling...God's message to people in many places (UST)**

"the message God sent about Jesus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of God](#)
- [word of God](#)
- [multiplied](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's](#)
- [God's message to people in many places](#)
- [was continually increasing](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But the [word of God](#) increased and [multiplied](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> The believers continued telling [God's message to people in many places](#), and the number of people who believed in Jesus [was continually increasing](#).



## Acts 12:25

**had completed their mission (ULT)**  
**finished delivering the money to help the Jewish**  
**believers in the province of Judea, they left (UST)**

This refers back to when they brought money from the believers at Antioch in [Acts 11:29-30](#). Alternate translation: “delivered the money to the church leaders in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they returned to Jerusalem (ULT)**  
**Jerusalem and returned to the city of Antioch (UST)**

They went back to Antioch from Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “Barnabas and Saul returned to Antioch” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- also called Mark
- mission
- had completed
- Saul
- Barnabas
- John, also called Mark
- Jerusalem
- they returned

### Translation Words - UST

- whose other name
- delivering
- finished
- Saul
- Barnabas
- in the province of Syria...John, whose other name was Mark
- Jerusalem
- and returned

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> So when [Barnabas](#) and [Saul had completed](#) their [mission](#), [they returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#), <sup>[1]</sup> bringing with them [John, also called Mark](#).

12:25 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient copies read, *they returned from Jerusalem* .

### UST

<sup>25</sup> When [Barnabas](#) and [Saul finished delivering](#) the money to help the Jewish believers in the province of Judea, they left [Jerusalem and returned](#) to the city of Antioch, [in the province of Syria](#). They took [John, whose other name was Mark](#), with them.

## Acts 13

### Acts 13 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the three quotes from Psalms in 13:33-35.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 13:41.

The chapter is where the second half of the Book of Acts begins. Luke writes more about Paul than about Peter, and it describes how it is the Gentiles and not the Jews to whom the believers tell the message about Jesus.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### A light for the Gentiles

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. The Jews considered all Gentiles as walking in darkness, but Paul and Barnabas spoke of telling the Gentiles about Jesus as if they were going to bring them physical light. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

## Acts 13:1

### General Information:

Verse 1 gives background information about the people in the church at Antioch. Here the first word “they” probably refers to these five leaders but may also include the other believers. The next words “they” and “their” probably refer to the other three leaders not including Barnabas and Saul but could include other believers. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Luke begins to tell about the mission trips on which the church at Antioch send Barnabas and Saul.

**Now present in the church in Antioch (ULT)**  
**Among the group of believers in Antioch in the province of Syria...there were (UST)**

“At that time in the church at Antioch”

**Simeon...Niger...Lucius...Manaen (ULT)**  
**Simeon...Niger...Lucius, who...Manaen (UST)**

These are men’s names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the foster brother of Herod the tetrarch (ULT)**  
**who had grown up with King...Herod Antipas (UST)**

Manaen was probably Herod’s playmate or close friend growing up.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who is called](#)
- [church](#)
- [tetrarch](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [of Herod the tetrarch](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [of Cyrene](#)
- [teachers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [was...called](#)
- [group of believers](#)
- [King](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Antioch in the province of Syria](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now present in the [church](#) in [Antioch](#), there were [prophets](#) and [teachers](#). They were both [Barnabas](#) and Simeon ([who is called](#) Niger), and Lucius [of Cyrene](#), both Manaen (the foster brother [of Herod the tetrarch](#)) and [Saul](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Among the [group of believers](#) in [Antioch in the province of Syria](#) there were [prophets](#) and [those who taught people about Jesus](#). They were: [Barnabas](#); Simeon, who was also [called](#) Niger; Lucius, who was [from Cyrene](#); Manaen, who had grown up with [King Herod Antipas](#); and [Saul](#).

- King...Herod Antipas
- They were: Barnabas
- from Cyrene
- those who taught people about Jesus

## Acts 13:2

### Set apart for me

"Appoint to serve me"

**I have called them (ULT)**

**I have chosen them to do (UST)**

The verb here means that God chose them to do this work.

### Translation Words - ULT

- I have called
- Lord
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- were worshiping
- do the work
- set apart
- Saul
- Barnabas
- fasting

### Translation Words - UST

- I have chosen
- Lord
- Holy...said
- Holy Spirit said
- While...were worshiping
- work
- Choose
- Saul
- Barnabas
- fasting

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> While they [were worshiping](#) the [Lord](#) and [fasting](#), the [Holy Spirit](#) said, "You must [set apart](#) for me [Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#), to [do the work](#) to which [I have called](#) them."

### UST

<sup>2</sup> [While](#) they [were worshiping](#) the [Lord](#) and [fasting](#), the [Holy Spirit said](#) to them, "[Choose Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#) to serve me and to go and do the [work](#) that [I have chosen](#) them to do!"

**Acts 13:3**

**laid their hands on these men (ULT)**  
**they put their hands on Barnabas and Saul and prayed**  
**that God would help them (UST)**

“laid their hands on these men whom God had set apart for his service.” This act showed that the leaders agreed that the Holy Spirit had called Barnabas and Saul to do this work. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**they sent them off (ULT)**  
**Then they sent them off to do what the Holy Spirit had**  
**commanded (UST)**

“sent those men off” or “sent those men off to do the work the Holy Spirit told them to do”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [prayed](#)
- [hands](#)
- [they sent them off](#)
- [they had fasted](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [pray](#)
- [hands on Barnabas and Saul and prayed that God would help them](#)
- [Then they sent them off to do what the Holy Spirit had commanded](#)
- [they continued to fast](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> After [they had fasted](#) and [prayed](#) and laid their [hands](#) on these men, [they sent them off](#).

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> So [they continued to fast](#) and [pray](#). Then they put their [hands on Barnabas and Saul and prayed that God would help them](#). [Then they sent them off to do what the Holy Spirit had commanded](#).

## Acts 13:4

### General Information:

Here the words "they," "They," and "their" refer to Barnabas and Silas.

**So (ULT)**

**So (UST)**

This word marks an event that happened because of a previous event. In this case, the previous event is Barnabas and Saul being set apart by the Holy Spirit.

**and went down (ULT)**

**went down from Antioch (UST)**

The phrase "went down" is used here because Seleucia is lower in elevation than Antioch.

**Seleucia (ULT)**

**city of Seleucia (UST)**

a city by the sea

### Translation Words - ULT

- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- the island of Cyprus
- were sent out

### Translation Words - UST

- The Holy
- The Holy Spirit gave Barnabas
- the city of Salamis on the Island of Cyprus
- instructions about where to go

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So indeed Barnabas and Saul were sent out by the Holy Spirit and went down to Seleucia; and from there they sailed to the island of Cyprus.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The Holy Spirit gave Barnabas and Saul instructions about where to go. So they went down from Antioch to the city of Seleucia by the sea. From there they went by ship to the city of Salamis on the Island of Cyprus.

## Acts 13:5

### the city of Salamis (ULT)

### Salamis, they went to (UST)

The city of Salamis was on Cyprus Island.

### they proclaimed the word of God (ULT)

### they proclaimed the message from God (UST)

“Word of God” here is a synecdoche for “message of God.” Alternate translation: “proclaimed the message of God” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### synagogues of the Jews (ULT)

### Jewish meeting places (UST)

Possible meanings are that 1) “there were multiple Jewish synagogues in the city of Salamis where Barnabas and Saul preached” or 2) “Barnabas and Saul started at the synagogue at Salamis and continued to preach in all the synagogues they found while they traveled around the Island of Cyprus.”

### When...They...had John Mark as their assistant (ULT)

### While they were...There...John Mark went with them and was helping them (UST)

“John Mark went with them and was helping them”

### as their assistant (ULT)

### and was helping them (UST)

“helper”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [of God](#)
- [word of God](#)
- [John Mark](#)
- [they proclaimed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish meeting places](#)
- [Jewish meeting places](#)
- [from God](#)
- [message from God](#)
- [There...John Mark went with them](#)
- [they proclaimed](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When they were in the city of Salamis, [they proclaimed](#) the [word of God](#) in the [synagogues](#) of the [Jews](#). They also had [John Mark](#) as their assistant.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> While they were in Salamis, they went to the [Jewish meeting places](#). [There they proclaimed](#) the [message from God](#) about Jesus. [John Mark went with them](#) and was helping them.



## Acts 13:6

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to Paul, Silas, and John Mark. The words “This man” refer to “Sergius Paulus.” The first word “he” refers to Sergius Paulus, the proconsul; the second word “he” refers to Elymas (also called Bar-Jesus), the magician.

### the whole island (ULT)

### the entire island (UST)

They crossed from one side of the island to the other and shared the gospel message in each town they passed through.

### Paphos (ULT)

### the city of Paphos. There (UST)

a major city on Cyprus island where the proconsul lived

### they found (ULT)

### they met (UST)

Here “found” means they came upon him without looking for him. Alternate translation: “they met” or “they came upon”

### a certain magician (ULT)

### a magician (UST)

“a particular person who practices witchcraft” or “a person who practices supernatural magic arts”

### whose name was Bar Jesus (ULT)

### whose name was Bar Jesus. He was (UST)

“Bar Jesus” means “Son of Jesus.” There is no relation between this man and Jesus Christ. Jesus was a common name at that time. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jewish](#)
- [name](#)
- [a certain magician](#)
- [a...false prophet](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a Jew](#)
- [name was](#)
- [a magician](#)
- [who falsely claimed to be a prophet](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When they had gone through the whole island to Paphos, they found [a certain magician](#), a [Jewish false prophet](#), whose [name](#) was Bar Jesus.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> The three of them went across the entire island to the city of Paphos. There they met [a magician](#) whose [name was](#) Bar Jesus. He was [a Jew who falsely claimed to be a prophet](#).

## Acts 13:7

**associated with (ULT)**  
**with (UST)**

“was often with” or “was often in the company of”

**proconsul (ULT)**  
**governor of the island (UST)**

This was a governor in charge of a Roman province. Alternate translation: “governor”

**who was an intelligent man (ULT)**  
**intelligent man. The governor sent someone (UST)**

This is background information about Sergius Paulus. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- word of God
- Saul
- Barnabas
- because he wanted

### Translation Words - UST

- of God
- word of God
- Saul
- Barnabas
- he wanted

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> This magician was associated with the proconsul, Sergius Paulus, who was an intelligent man. This man summoned [Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#), [because he wanted](#) to hear the [word of God](#).

### UST

<sup>7</sup> He was with the governor of the island, Sergius Paulus, who was an intelligent man. The governor sent someone to ask [Barnabas](#) and [Saul](#) to come to him because [he wanted](#) to hear the [word of God](#).

## Acts 13:8

### Elymas “the magician” (ULT) the magician...Elymas in the Greek language (UST)

This was Bar-Jesus, who was also called “the magician.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### that is...how his name is translated (ULT) is translated...whose name...is translated...He (UST)

“that was what he was called in Greek”

### opposed...them...he tried to turn...away (ULT) tried to stop...them...repeatedly tried to persuade (UST)

“resisted them by trying to turn” or “attempted to stop them by trying to turn”

### he tried to turn the proconsul away from the faith (ULT) repeatedly tried to persuade the governor not to believe in Jesus (UST)

Here “to turn...away from” is a metaphor for convincing someone to not do something. Alternate translation: “attempted to persuade the governor not to believe the gospel message” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [faith](#)
- [how...is translated](#)
- [magician](#)
- [to turn...away](#)
- [he tried](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [whose name](#)
- [believe in Jesus](#)
- [is translated](#)
- [magician](#)
- [to persuade](#)
- [repeatedly tried](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But Elymas “the [magician](#)” (for that is [how](#) his [name is translated](#)) opposed them; [he tried to turn](#) the proconsul [away](#) from the [faith](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> However, the [magician](#), [whose name is translated](#) Elymas in the Greek language, tried to stop them. He [repeatedly tried to persuade](#) the governor not to [believe in Jesus](#).

## Acts 13:9

### General Information:

The word “him” refers to the magician Elymas, who is also called Bar Jesus ([Acts 13:6-8](#)).

### Connecting Statement:

While on the island of Paphos, Paul begins to talk to Elymas.

### Saul...who is also called Paul (ULT)

“Saul” as his Jewish name, and “Paul” was his Roman name. Since he was speaking to a Roman official, he used his Roman name. Alternate translation: “Saul, who now called himself Paul” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### stared at him intensely (ULT)

### intently at the magician. Paul said (UST)

“looked at him intensely”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [filled](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [with the Holy Spirit](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [filled with the Holy Spirit](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [called himself Paul](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But [Saul](#), who is also called [Paul](#), [filled with the Holy Spirit](#), stared at him intensely

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> [Saul](#) now [called himself Paul](#). The [Holy Spirit](#) caused Paul to look intently at the magician. Paul said,

**Acts 13:10****You son of the devil (ULT)****You are serving the devil...evil things to them (UST)**

Paul is saying the man is acting like the devil. Alternate translation: "You are like the devil" or "You act like the devil" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**you are full of all kinds of deceit and all kinds of wickedness (ULT)**  
**and...always lying to people...evil things to them (UST)**

"you are always intent in causing others to believe what is not true using falsehood and always doing what is wrong"

**wickedness (ULT)**  
**evil things to them (UST)**

In this context it means to be lazy and not diligent in following God's law.

**all kinds of...You are an enemy...of righteousness (ULT)**  
**you try to stop everything that is good...always (UST)**

Paul is grouping Elymas with the devil. Just as the devil is an enemy of God and is against righteousness, so also was Elymas.

**You will never stop twisting the straight paths of the Lord, will you (ULT)**  
**You must stop saying that the truth about the Lord God is false (UST)**

Paul uses this question to rebuke Elymas for opposing God. Alternate translation: "You are always saying that the truth about the Lord God is false!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the straight paths of the Lord (ULT)**  
**the truth about the Lord God is false (UST)**

Here "straight paths" refer to the ways that are true. Alternate translation: "the true ways of the Lord" (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of righteousness](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [You son](#)
- [of the devil](#)
- [You are an enemy](#)
- [twisting](#)
- [of deceit](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [that is good](#)
- [truth about the Lord God is false](#)
- [evil things to them](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> and said, "[You son of the devil](#), you are full of all kinds [of deceit](#) and all kinds of wickedness. [You are an enemy](#) of every kind [of righteousness](#). You will never stop [twisting](#) the straight paths of the [Lord](#), will you?"

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> "[You are serving the devil](#), and [you try to stop everything that is good](#)! You are always [lying to people](#) and doing other [evil things to them](#). You [must stop saying that](#) the [truth about the Lord God is false](#)!"

- You are serving the devil
- you try to stop everything
- must stop saying that
- lying to people

## Acts 13:11

### General Information:

The words “you” and “him” refer to Elymas the magician. The word “he” refers to the Sergius Paulus, proconsul (governor of Paphos).

### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes speaking to Elymas.

### the hand of the Lord is upon you (ULT) the Lord God is going to punish...you (UST)

Here “hand” represents the power of God and “upon you” implies punishment. Alternate translation: “The Lord will punish you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### you will become blind (ULT) You will become blind (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will make you blind” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### You will not see the sun (ULT) not be able to see the sun (UST)

Elymas will be so completely blind that he not even be able to see the sun. Alternate translation: “You will not even see the sun”

### for a while (ULT) for a while (UST)

“for a period of time” or “until the time appointed by God”

### Now...there fell on Elymas a mist...darkness (ULT) Right now...At once he became blind, as though...he were in a dark mist...him (UST)

“the eyes of Elymas became blurry and then dark” or “Elymas started seeing unclearly and then he could not see anything”

### he started going around (ULT) lead him (UST)

“Elymas wandered around” or “Elymas started feeling around and”

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- the hand
- people to lead him by the hand
- a while
- darkness

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Now look, [the hand of the Lord](#) is upon you, and you will become blind. You will not see the sun for [a while](#).” Immediately there fell on Elymas a mist and [darkness](#), and he started going around [asking people to lead him by the hand](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Right now [the Lord God is going to punish](#) you! You will become blind and you will not be able to see the sun for [a while](#).” At once he became blind, as though he were in a [dark](#) mist, and [he groped about, searching for someone to hold](#) him [by the hand](#) and lead him.

- asking

### Translation Words - UST

- the Lord God is going to punish
- the Lord God is going to punish
- someone to hold...by the hand
- a while
- dark
- he groped about, searching for



## Acts 13:12

**proconsul (ULT)**

**governor (UST)**

This was a governor in charge of a Roman province. Alternate translation: "governor"

**he believed (ULT)**

**he believed in Jesus (UST)**

"he believed in Jesus"

**because he was astonished at the teaching about the Lord (ULT)**

**He was amazed by what Paul and Barnabas were teaching about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the teaching about the Lord amazed him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- he believed
- teaching
- because he was astonished

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord Jesus
- he believed in Jesus
- were teaching
- He was amazed

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> After the proconsul saw what had happened, [he believed](#), [because he was astonished](#) at the [teaching](#) about the [Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When the governor saw what had happened to Elymas, [he believed in Jesus](#). [He was amazed](#) by what Paul and Barnabas [were teaching](#) about the [Lord Jesus](#).

## Acts 13:13

### General Information:

Verses 13 and 14 give background information about this part of the story. "Paul and his friends" were Barnabas and John Mark (also called John). From this point on, Saul is called Paul in Acts. Paul's name is listed first which indicates that he had become the leader of the group. It is important to keep this order in the translation. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This is a new part of the story about Paul in Antioch in Pisidia.

### Now (ULT) and the men (UST)

This marks the beginning of a new part of the story.

### set sail...from Paphos (ULT) by ship...from Paphos (UST)

"traveled by sailboat from Paphos"

### Paphos and came to Perga...in Pamphylia (ULT) went...Paphos to...city of Perga...in the province of Pamphylia. At Perga (UST)

"arrived in Perga which is in Pamphylia"

### Now...John left them (ULT) and the men...John Mark left them (UST)

"But John Mark left Paul and Barnabas"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)
- [John](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [and returned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [After that, Paul](#)
- [John Mark](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [returned](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Now [Paul](#) and his friends set sail from Paphos and came to Perga in Pamphylia. But [John](#) left them [and returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [After that, Paul](#) and the men with him went by ship from Paphos to the city of Perga in the province of Pamphylia. At Perga, [John Mark](#) left them and [returned](#) to his home [in Jerusalem](#).

## Acts 13:14

### Antioch of Pisidia (ULT)

### the city of Antioch in the district of Pisidia (UST)

“the city of Antioch in the district of Pisidia”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [day](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [synagogue](#)
- [Sabbath...and sat](#)
- [On the](#)

#### ULT

**14** But Paul and his friends traveled from Perga and came to Antioch of Pisidia. They went into the [synagogue](#) there on the [Sabbath day](#) and sat down.

#### UST

**14** Then Paul and Barnabas traveled by land from Perga and arrived in the city of Antioch in the district of Pisidia in the province of Galatia. [On the Sabbath](#) they entered the [synagogue and sat](#) down.

## Acts 13:15

**After the reading of the law and the prophets (ULT)**  
**Someone read aloud from what Moses had written... the books of the law. Next someone read from what the prophets had written...and (UST)**

The "law and the prophets" refer to parts of the Jewish scriptures which were read. Alternate translation: "After someone read from the books of the law and the writings of the prophets" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**sent...a message...them...saying (ULT)**  
**sent a...to Paul...Barnabas...Jews (UST)**

"told someone to say" or "asked someone to say"

**brothers (ULT)**  
**Fellow (UST)**

The term "brothers" is here used by the people in the synagogue to refer to Paul and Barnabas as fellow Jews.

**if you have any message of encouragement (ULT)**  
**in...message...if one of you wants to speak...to encourage them (UST)**

"if you want to say anything to encourage us"

**say it (ULT)**  
**please speak to us now (UST)**

"please speak it" or "please tell it to us"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [law](#)
- [of encouragement](#)
- [people here](#)
- [sent...a message](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Fellow](#)
- [Next someone read from what...prophets had written](#)
- [law](#)
- [to encourage them](#)
- [people here](#)
- [sent a](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> After the reading of the [law](#) and the [prophets](#), the leaders of the synagogue [sent](#) them [a message](#), saying, "Men, [brothers](#), if you have any message [of encouragement](#) for the [people here](#), say it."

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Someone read aloud from what Moses had written in the books of the [law](#). [Next someone read from what the prophets had written](#). Then the leaders of the Jewish meeting place [sent a](#) message to Paul and Barnabas: "[Fellow Jews](#), if one of you wants to speak to the [people here to encourage them](#), please speak to us now."

## Acts 13:16

### General Information:

The first word “he” refers to Paul. The second word “he” refers to God. Here the word “our” refers to Paul and his fellow Jews. The words “they” and “them” refer to the Israelites. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins his speech to those in the synagogue in Pisidian Antioch. He begins by talking about things that happened in Israel's history.

**motioned with his hand (ULT)**

**motioned with his hand so that the (UST)**

This could refer to moving his hands as a signal that he was ready to speak. Alternate translation: “moved his hands to show that he was about to speak” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**you who honor God (ULT)**

**who also worship God (UST)**

This refers to Gentiles who had converted to Judaism. “you who are not Israelites but who worship God”

**God, listen (ULT)**

**God, please listen to me (UST)**

“God, listen to me” or “God, listen to what I am about to say”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you who honor](#)
- [God](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [hand](#)
- [stood up](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [worship](#)
- [God](#)
- [Fellow Israelites](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [hand so that the](#)
- [stood up](#)

### ULT

**16** So [Paul stood up](#) and motioned with his [hand](#); he said, “Men [of Israel](#) and [you who honor God](#), listen.

### UST

**16** So [Paul stood up](#) and motioned with his [hand so that the](#) people would listen to him. Then he said, “[Fellow Israelites](#) and you non-Jewish people who also [worship God](#), please listen to me!

## Acts 13:17

**The God of this people Israel (ULT)**  
**God, whom we Israelites worship (UST)**

“The God the people of Israel worship”

**our fathers (ULT)**  
**our ancestors (UST)**

“our ancestors”

**made the people numerous (ULT)**  
**to be his people...to become very numerous while they were foreigners (UST)**

“caused them to become very numerous”

**with an uplifted arm (ULT)**  
**God did powerful things...lead them out of slavery (UST)**

This refers to God’s mighty power. Alternate translation: “with great power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**out of it (ULT)**  
**God did powerful things...lead them out of slavery (UST)**

“out from the land of Egypt”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [chose](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [made...numerous](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [of...people](#)
- [people](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [chose](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [become very numerous](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [we...worship](#)
- [to be his people](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> The [God](#) of this [people Israel](#) [chose](#) our [fathers](#) and [made](#) the [people numerous](#) when they stayed in the land [of Egypt](#), and with an uplifted arm he led them out of it.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> [God](#), whom we [Israelites worship](#), [chose](#) our [ancestors to be his people](#), and he caused them to [become very numerous](#) while they were foreigners living in [Egypt](#). Then God did powerful things in order to lead them out of slavery.

**Acts 13:18****he put up with them (ULT)****he endured their behavior (UST)**

This means “he tolerated them.” Some versions have a different word that means “he took care of them.” Alternate translation: “God endured their disobedience” or “God took care of them”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- wilderness
- forty years
- he put up with

**Translation Words - UST**

- wilderness
- Even though they repeatedly disobeyed him
- he endured

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> For about [forty years he put up with](#) them in the [wilderness](#). <sup>[1]</sup>

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> [Even though they repeatedly disobeyed him, he endured](#) their behavior for about forty years while they were in the [wilderness](#).

## Acts 13:19

### General Information:

Here the word “he” refers to God. The words “their land” refer to the land the seven nations had previously occupied. The word “them” refers to the people of Israel. The word “our” refers to Paul and his audience. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### nations (ULT)

### people groups who were then living (UST)

Here the word “nations” refers to different people groups and not to geographical boundaries.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he gave our people...for an inheritance](#)
- [of](#)
- [nations](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and he gave...the Israelites to possess forever](#)
- [of Canaan](#)
- [people groups who were then living](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> After he had destroyed seven [nations](#) in the land [of](#) Canaan, [he gave our people](#) their land [for an inheritance](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> He enabled the Israelites to conquer seven [people groups who were then living](#) in the region [of Canaan](#), [and he gave](#) their land to [the Israelites to possess forever](#).



## Acts 13:20

### All these events took place over 450 years (ULT)

"took more than 450 years to accomplish"

### until Samuel the prophet (ULT)

"until the time of the prophet Samuel"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [the prophet](#)
- [Samuel the prophet](#)
- [years](#)
- [judges](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [year](#)
- [judge](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> All these events took place over 450 [years](#). After all these things, God gave them [judges](#) until [Samuel the prophet](#).

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> All of these things happened about 450 years after their ancestors had gone to Egypt." "After that, God chose people to serve as judges and as leaders to rule the Israelite people. Those leaders continued to rule our people, and the prophet Samuel was the last judge to rule them.

## Acts 13:21

### General Information:

The quotation here is from the history of Samuel and from a Psalm of Ethan in the Old Testament.

### for forty years (ULT)

“to be their king for forty years”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Saul
- of Benjamin
- for...years
- for a king
- the tribe

### Translation Words - UST

- the son of Kish
- God
- Saul
- of Benjamin, to be their king. He ruled them
- for 40 years
- a king to rule
- the tribe

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then the people asked [for a king](#), and [God](#) gave them [Saul son](#) of Kish, a man from [the tribe of Benjamin](#), for forty [years](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Then, while Samuel was still their leader, the people demanded that he choose [a king to rule](#) them. So [God](#) chose [Saul, the son of Kish](#) from [the tribe of Benjamin, to be their king. He ruled them for 40 years](#).

**Acts 13:22****God removed him from the kingship (ULT)****After God had rejected Saul from being king...him (UST)**

This expression means God caused Saul to stop being king. Alternate translation: "rejected Saul from being king"

**he raised up David for them as their king (ULT)****he chose David to be their king. God (UST)**

"God chose David to be their king"

**their king (ULT)****king. God (UST)**

"the king of Israel" or "the king over the Israelites"

**It was about David...that God said (ULT)****that...said (UST)**

"God said this about David"

**I have found (ULT)****I have seen (UST)**

"I have observed that"

**to be a man after my heart (ULT)****about...the kind of man who desires what I desire (UST)**

This expression means he "is a man who wants what I want." (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heart](#)
- [testifying](#)
- [my...will](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#) (2)
- [of Jesse](#)
- [their king](#)
- [he raised up](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [who desires what I desire](#)
- [I have seen](#)
- [I want](#)
- [David](#)
- [David, son](#) (2)
- [of Jesse, is exactly](#)
- [king. God](#)

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> After God removed him from the kingship, [he raised up David](#) for them as [their king](#). It was about David also that God said, [testifying](#), 'I have found [David](#) son [of Jesse](#) to be a man after my [heart](#), who will do all my [will](#).'

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> After God had rejected Saul from being king, [he chose David](#) to be their [king](#). God said about him, '[I have seen](#) that [David, son of Jesse, is exactly](#) the kind of man [who desires what I desire](#). He will do everything that [I want](#) him to do.'

- [he chose](#)

## Acts 13:23

### General Information:

The quotation here is from the Gospels.

**this man's...From...descendants (ULT)**  
**that he would do...From among David's descendants (UST)**

"From David's descendants." This is placed at the beginning of the sentence to emphasize that the savior had to be one of David's descendants ([Acts 13:22](#)).

**has brought to Israel (ULT)**  
**brought one of them...to us Israelite people (UST)**

This refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "gave to the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**as he promised to do (ULT)**  
**just as he had promised David and our other ancestors (UST)**

"just as God promised he would do"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [to Israel](#)
- [a Savior](#)
- [descendants](#)
- [he promised to do](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israelite people](#)
- [to save us](#)
- [David's descendants](#)
- [had promised David and our other ancestors](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> From this man's [descendants](#) [God](#) has brought [to Israel a Savior, Jesus](#), as [he promised to do](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> "From among [David's descendants](#), [God](#) brought one of them, [Jesus](#), to us [Israelite people to save us](#), just as he [had promised David and our other ancestors](#) that he would do.

## Acts 13:24

**the baptism of repentance (ULT)**  
**turn away from their sinful behavior...Then he would baptize them (UST)**

You can translate the word “repentance” as the verb “repent.”  
 Alternate translation: “the baptism to repent” or “the baptism that people requested when they wanted to repent for their sin” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the baptism
- people of Israel
- of repentance
- John
- people
- first announced
- This began to happen when, before

### Translation Words - UST

- Then he would baptize them
- of our Israelite people who came to him. He told them that they should
- turn away from their sinful behavior
- John the Baptizer
- people who came to him. He told them that they should
- preached
- work

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> [This began to happen when, before](#) Jesus came, [John first announced the baptism of repentance](#) to all the [people](#) of Israel.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Before Jesus began his [work](#), [John the Baptizer preached](#) to all [of our Israelite people who came to him](#). He told them [that they should turn away from their sinful behavior](#) and ask God to forgive them. [Then he would baptize them](#).

## Acts 13:25

### Who do you think I am (ULT)

### Do you think that I am the Messiah whom God promised to send (UST)

John asked this question to compel the people to think about who he was. Alternate translation: "Think about who I am" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### I am not the one (ULT)

### No, I am not (UST)

John was referring to the Messiah, whom they were expecting to come. Alternate translation: "I am not the Messiah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### But listen (ULT)

### But listen (UST)

This emphasizes the importance of what he will say next.

### one is coming after me (ULT)

### The Messiah will soon come...I am that (UST)

This also refers to the Messiah. Alternate translation: "The Messiah will soon come" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### am not...the shoes of whose feet...worthy to untie (ULT)

### No...am not...He is so much greater than...important enough to take the sandals off of his feet (UST)

"I am not worthy even to untie his shoes." The Messiah is so much greater than John that he did not even feel worthy to do the lowest job for him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [was finishing](#)
- [John](#)
- [shoes](#)
- [As](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [important enough](#)
- [was about to finish](#)
- [John](#)
- [sandals](#)
- [When](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [As John was finishing](#) his work, he said, 'Who do you think I am? I am not the one. But listen, one is coming after me, the [shoes](#) of whose feet I am not [worthy](#) to untie.'

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [When John was about to finish](#) the work that God gave him to do, he was saying, 'Do you think that I am the Messiah whom God promised to send? No, I am not. But listen! The Messiah will soon come. He is so much greater than I am that I am not even [important enough](#) to take the [sandals](#) off of his feet.'

## Acts 13:26

### General Information:

The word “they” and “their” refers to the Jews who lived in Jerusalem. Here the word “us” includes Paul and his entire audience in the synagogue. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### Brothers, children of the line of Abraham...who worship God

Paul addresses his audience of Jews and Gentile converts to Judaism to remind them of their special status as worshipping the true God.

### that the message about this salvation has been sent (ULT)

### It is to...has sent the message about how he saves people (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God has sent the message about this salvation” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### about this salvation (ULT)

### It is to...saves people (UST)

The word “salvation” can be translated with the verb “save.” Alternate translation: “that God will save people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [about...salvation](#)
- [who fear](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [sons](#)
- [God](#)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [has been sent](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [saves people](#)
- [worship](#)
- [Dear brothers](#)
- [and all you who are descendants](#)
- [God, please listen](#)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [has sent](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Men, [brothers](#), [sons](#) of the family [of Abraham](#), and those among you [who fear God](#), it is to us that the message [about](#) this [salvation has been sent](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> “[Dear brothers](#), [and all you who are descendants of Abraham](#), and you non-Jewish people among you who also [worship God, please listen!](#) It is to all of us that God [has sent](#) the message about how he [saves people](#).”



**Acts 13:27**

**did not recognize him (ULT)**  
**their...did not recognize Jesus. They did not understand (UST)**

"did not realize that this man Jesus was the one whom God had sent to save them"

**sayings of the prophets (ULT)**  
**the messages of their own prophets even though they heard the prophets (UST)**

Here the word "sayings" represents the message of the prophets. Alternate translation: "the writings of the prophets" or "the message of the prophets" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**sayings...are read (ULT)**  
**the messages...read aloud to them (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which someone reads" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**sayings of the prophets...they fulfilled (ULT)**  
**the messages of their own prophets even though they heard the prophets...Jesus to death (UST)**

"they actually did just what the prophets said they would do in the books of the prophets"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [by condemning him](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [they fulfilled](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [sayings](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [did not recognize](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [they condemned](#)
- [own prophets](#)
- [Jesus to death](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [even though they heard the prophets](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [did not recognize Jesus. They did not understand](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> For they who live in [Jerusalem](#), and their [rulers](#), [did not recognize](#) him, and [they fulfilled sayings](#) of the [prophets](#) that are read every [Sabbath by condemning him](#).

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> The people living in [Jerusalem](#) and their [rulers](#) [did not recognize Jesus](#). [They did not understand](#) the messages of their [own prophets even though they heard the prophets](#) read aloud to them every [Sabbath](#). What the prophets predicted long ago was made true when [they condemned Jesus to death](#).

## Acts 13:28

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to the Jewish people and their religious leaders in Jerusalem. The word him” here refers to Jesus.

**though they found no reason for death (ULT)**  
**not prove that he had done anything for which he deserved to die...death (UST)**

“they did not find any reason why anyone should kill Jesus”

**they asked Pilate (ULT)**  
**they asked Pilate, the governor (UST)**

The word “asked” here is a strong word meaning to demand, beg or plead for.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [reason](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [they asked](#)
- [for death](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [done anything for which he](#)
- [Pilate, the governor](#)
- [they asked](#)
- [death](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Even though they found no [reason for death](#), [they asked Pilate](#) to kill him.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Many people accused Jesus of doing wicked things, but even though they could not prove that he had [done anything for which he](#) deserved to die, [they asked Pilate, the governor](#), to condemn Jesus to [death](#).

## Acts 13:29

**When they had completed all the things that were written about him (ULT)**

**They did to Jesus all the things that the prophets long ago had written that the people would do to him. They killed Jesus by nailing him to a cross. Then his body was taken down...and (UST)**

“When thy did to Jesus all the things that the prophets said would happen to him”

**they took him down from the tree (ULT)**  
**the prophets long ago had written that the people would do to him...from the cross (UST)**

It may be helpful to explicitly say Jesus died before this happened.

Alternate translation: “they killed Jesus and then took him down from the cross after he died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**from the tree (ULT)**  
**from the cross (UST)**

“from the cross.” This was another way people at that time referred to the cross. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a tomb](#)
- [written](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a tomb](#)
- [the prophets long ago had written that the people would do to him](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> When they had completed all the things that were [written](#) about him, they took him down from the tree and laid him in [a tomb](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> They did to Jesus all the things that [the prophets long ago had written that the people would do to him](#). They killed Jesus by nailing him to a cross. Then his body was taken down from the cross and placed in [a tomb](#).

## Acts 13:30

**But God raised him (ULT)**

**However, God raised him (UST)**

“But” indicates a strong contrast between what the people did and what God did.

**raised him from the dead (ULT)**

**raised him from the dead (UST)**

“raised him from among those who were dead.” To be with “the dead” means that Jesus was dead.

**raised him (ULT)**

**raised him (UST)**

Here, to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: “caused him to live again” (See: [Idiom](#))

**from the dead (ULT)**

**from the dead (UST)**

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To raise someone from among them speaks of making that person alive again.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [But God](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [raised](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [raised](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> [But God raised](#) him from [the dead](#).

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> However, [God raised](#) him from [the dead](#).

## Acts 13:31

**He was seen for many days by those who had come up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem (ULT)**

**For many days he repeatedly appeared...who had come along with him from Galilee to Jerusalem (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The disciples who traveled with Jesus from Galilee to Jerusalem saw him for many days" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**many days (ULT)**

**many days (UST)**

We know from other writings that this period was 40 days. Translate "many days" with a term that would be appropriate for that length of time.

**are now his witnesses to the people (ULT)**

**to his followers...saw him are telling the people about him now (UST)**

"are now testifying to the people about Jesus" or "are now telling the people about Jesus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [witnesses](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [people](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [saw him](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [people about](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> He was seen for many [days](#) by those who had come up with him from [Galilee](#) to [Jerusalem](#). These people are now his [witnesses](#) to the [people](#).

### UST

<sup>31</sup> For many [days](#) he repeatedly appeared to his followers who had come along with him from [Galilee](#) to [Jerusalem](#). Those who [saw him](#) are telling the [people about](#) him now."

## Acts 13:32

### General Information:

The second quotation here is from the prophet Isaiah.

### So (ULT)

### Right now (UST)

This word marks an event that happened because of previous event. In this case, the previous event is God's raising Jesus from the dead.

### our fathers (ULT)

### our Jewish ancestors (UST)

"our ancestors." Paul is still speaking to the Jews and Gentile converts in the synagogue at Antioch of Pisidia. These were the physical ancestors of the Jews, and the spiritual ancestors of the converts.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God promised](#)
- [our fathers](#)
- [proclaiming...the gospel](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [what he promised](#)
- [our Jewish ancestors](#)
- [are proclaiming](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> So we are [proclaiming](#) to you [the gospel](#) which [God promised](#) to [our fathers](#).

### UST

<sup>32</sup> "Right now we [are proclaiming](#) to you this good message. We want to tell you that God has fulfilled [what he promised](#) to [our Jewish ancestors](#)!

## Acts 13:33

**has fulfilled...for us, their children, by raising up (ULT)**  
**has done this for us who are their descendants...by**  
**making Jesus alive again (UST)**

You may need to rearrange the parts of this sentence, which begins in verse 32. "God has fulfilled for us, their children, these promises that he made to our ancestors, by" (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

**for us, their children (ULT)**  
**for us who are their descendants (UST)**

"for us, who are the children of our ancestors." Paul is still speaking to the Jews and Gentile converts in the synagogue at Antioch of Pisidia. These were the physical ancestors of the Jews, and the spiritual ancestors of the converts.

**by raising up Jesus (ULT)**  
**by making Jesus alive again (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "by making Jesus alive again" (See: [Idiom](#))

### As it is written in the second Psalm

"This is what was written in the second Psalm"

**the...Psalm...the...second (ULT)**  
**the...Psalm...the...second (UST)**

"Psalm 2"

**Son...have become your Father (ULT)**  
**Son...have become your Father (UST)**

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [Son](#)
- [has fulfilled](#)
- [children](#)
- [by raising up](#)
- [As](#)
- [it is...written](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [by making Jesus alive again](#)
- [when God was speaking about sending his Son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> For [God has fulfilled](#) this promise for us, their [children, by raising up Jesus](#). [As it is](#) also [written](#) in the second Psalm: 'You are my [Son](#), today I have become your Father.'

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> Now he [has done this](#) for us [who are their descendants](#), and also for you who are not Jews, [by making Jesus alive again](#). That is [just like what David wrote](#) in the second Psalm, [when God was speaking about sending his Son](#): 'You are my [Son](#); today I have become your Father.'

- Son
- has done this
- who are their descendants
- by making Jesus alive again
- just like what David
- wrote



## Acts 13:34

**The fact that he raised him up from the dead so that his body would never decay, God has spoken in this way (ULT)**

**God has raised the Messiah from the dead and will never let him die again. God said to our Jewish ancestors...as (UST)**

"God spoke these words about his making Jesus alive again so that he would never die again"

**from the dead (ULT)**

**from the dead and (UST)**

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

**the holy...blessings...the...and sure (ULT)**

**I promised...I promised...I would do (UST)**

"certain blessings"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy...blessings](#)
- [promised to David](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [he raised...up](#)
- [so that his body would](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I promised](#)
- [David](#)
- [the dead and](#)
- [God has raised](#)
- [die again](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> The fact that [he raised](#) him [up](#) from [the dead so that his body would](#) never decay, God has spoken in this way: 'I will give you the [holy](#) and sure [blessings](#) [promised to David](#).'

### UST

<sup>34</sup> [God has raised](#) the Messiah from [the dead and](#) will never let him [die again](#). God said to our Jewish ancestors, 'I will surely help you, as [I promised David](#) that I would do.'

## Acts 13:35

**This is why he also says in another Psalm (ULT)**  
**In another Psalm of David, he also says about the Messiah (UST)**

Paul's audience would have understood that this Psalm refers to the Messiah. Alternate translation: "In another Psalm of David, he also says about the Messiah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**also...he...says (ULT)**  
**In...he also says about the Messiah (UST)**

"David also says." David is the author of Psalm 16 from which this quotation is taken.

**You will not allow your Holy One to see decay (ULT)**  
**You will not allow the body of your holy one to decay (UST)**

The phrase "see decay" is a metonym for "decay." Alternate translation: "You will not allow the body of your Holy One to rot" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**You will not allow (ULT)**  
**You will not allow (UST)**

David is speaking to God here.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Holy One](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [holy one](#)

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> This is why he also says in another Psalm, 'You will not allow your [Holy One](#) to see decay.'

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> In another Psalm of David, he also says about the Messiah: 'You will not allow the body of your [holy one](#) to decay.'

## Acts 13:36

**in his own generation (ULT)**  
**was living, he did what (UST)**

“during his lifetime”

**when...had served the desires of God (ULT)**  
**was living, he did what...God wanted him to do...about himself in this Psalm (UST)**

“did what God wanted him to do” or “did what pleased God”

**he fell asleep (ULT)**  
**when he died (UST)**

This was a polite way to refer to death. Alternate translation: “he died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

**he was laid with his fathers (ULT)**  
**his body was buried, as his ancestors’ bodies had been buried, and his body decayed. So he could not have been speaking (UST)**

“was buried with his ancestors who had died”

**his body experienced decay (ULT)**  
**and his body decayed. So he could not have been speaking (UST)**

The phrase “experienced decay” is a metonym for “his body decayed.” Alternate translation: “his body rotted” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- when...had served
- David
- fathers
- he fell asleep
- desires
- generation

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- was living, he did what
- While David
- his body was buried, as his ancestors’ bodies had been buried
- when he died
- wanted him to do
- was living, he did what

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> For indeed [when David had served](#) the [desires of God](#) in his own [generation, he fell asleep](#), and he was laid with his [fathers](#) and his body experienced decay.

### UST

<sup>36</sup> [While David was living, he did what God wanted him to do](#). And [when he died, his body was buried, as his ancestors’ bodies had been buried](#), and his body decayed. So he could not have been speaking about himself in this Psalm.

## Acts 13:37

**But he whom (ULT)**

**But Jesus was the one (UST)**

“but Jesus whom”

**God raised up (ULT)**

**God raised from the dead (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: “God caused to live again” (See: [Idiom](#))

**experienced no decay (ULT)**

**and his body did not decay (UST)**

The phrase “experienced no decay” is a way to say “his body did not decay.” Alternate translation: “did not rot” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [raised up](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [raised from the dead](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> But he whom [God raised up](#) experienced no decay.

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> But Jesus was the one [God raised from the dead](#), and his body did not decay.”

## Acts 13:38

### General Information:

Here the word "him" refers to Jesus.

**known...let it be...to you (ULT)**

**know...it is important for you to (UST)**

"know this" or "this is important for you to know"

**brothers (ULT)**

**fellow Israelites (UST)**

Paul uses this term because they are his fellow-Jews and followers of Judaism. They are not Christian believers at this point. Alternate translation: "my fellow Israelites and other friends"

**that through this man is proclaimed to you forgiveness of sins (ULT)**

**that God can forgive you for your sins as a result of what Jesus has done. He will even forgive you for (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that we proclaim to you that your sins can be forgiven through Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**forgiveness of sins (ULT)**

**God can forgive you...for your sins (UST)**

The abstract noun "forgiveness" can be translated with the verb "to forgive." Alternate translation: "that God can forgive your sins" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of sins
- brothers
- the law of Moses
- forgiveness
- justified
- of Moses
- is proclaimed
- known

### Translation Words - UST

- for your sins
- fellow Israelites
- the laws that Moses wrote
- God can forgive you
- be forgiven
- Moses wrote
- He will even forgive you for
- know

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> So let it be [known](#) to you, men, [brothers](#), that through this man [is proclaimed](#) to you [forgiveness of sins](#), and freedom from everything which could not be [justified](#) in [the law of Moses](#).

### UST

<sup>38</sup> "Therefore, my [fellow Israelites](#) and other friends, it is important for you to [know](#) that [God can forgive you for your sins](#) as a result of what Jesus has done. [He will even forgive you for](#) those things that you could not [be forgiven](#) for by [the laws that Moses wrote](#).

## Acts 13:39

**By him every one who believes (ULT)**  
**All people who believe in Jesus...that they have done that displeased God (UST)**

"By him every person who believes" or "Every one who believes in him"

**By him every one who believes is justified (ULT)**  
**All people who believe in Jesus are no longer guilty of any of the things that they have done that displeased God (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus justifies everyone who believes" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [one who believes](#)
- [is justified](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believe...Jesus](#)
- [are no longer guilty of any of the things](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> By him every [one who believes is justified](#).

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> All people who [believe](#) in [Jesus are no longer guilty of any of the things](#) that they have done that displeased God.

## Acts 13:40

### General Information:

In his message to the people in the synagogue, Paul quotes the prophet Habakkuk. Here the word "I" refers to God.

### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes his speech in the synagogue in Pisidian Antioch, which he began in [Acts 13:16](#).

**be careful that (ULT)**

**be careful that God does (UST)**

It is implied that the thing they should be careful about is Paul's message. Alternate translation: "give close attention to the things I have said" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the thing the prophets spoke about (ULT)**

**as the prophets said that God would do (UST)**

"so that what the prophets spoke about"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prophets said that](#)

#### ULT

<sup>40</sup> So then be careful that the thing the [prophets](#) spoke about does not happen to you:

#### UST

<sup>40</sup> So then be careful that God does not judge you, as the [prophets said that](#) God would do!

## Acts 13:41

### Look, you despisers (ULT)

The prophet wrote...You who ridicule me...when you see what (UST)

"you who feel contempt" or "you who ridicule"

### be astonished (ULT)

will certainly be astonished (UST)

"be amazed" or "be shocked"

### and...perish (ULT)

you...then you will be destroyed. You will be astonished because I will do something terrible (UST)

"then die"

### am doing a work (ULT)

am doing (UST)

"am doing something" or "am doing a deed"

### in your days (ULT)

to you while you are living (UST)

"during your lifetime"

### a work...that (ULT)

am doing...that (UST)

"I am doing something which"

### even if someone announces it to you (ULT)

that even though someone told you (UST)

"even if someone tells you about it"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [perish](#)
- [a work](#)
- [A work](#) (2)
- [you will...believe](#)
- [be astonished](#)
- [am doing](#)
- [days](#)
- [announces it](#)

## ULT

<sup>41</sup> 'Look, you despisers, and [be astonished](#) and then [perish](#); For I [am doing a work](#) in your [days](#), [A work](#) that [you will](#) never [believe](#), even if someone [announces it](#) to you.'

## UST

<sup>41</sup> The prophet wrote that God said, 'You who ridicule me, you [will certainly be astonished](#) when you see what I [am doing](#), and then [you will be destroyed](#). [You will be astonished because I will do something terrible](#) to [you while](#) you [are living](#). You would not [believe](#) that [I would do](#) that even though someone [told](#) you!'



## Translation Words - UST

- you will be destroyed. You will be astonished because I will do something terrible
- am doing
- I would do (2)
- would...believe
- will certainly be astonished
- am doing
- you while...are living
- told

## Acts 13:42

**As Paul and Barnabas left (ULT)**

**After Paul finished speaking and were going away,  
many of the people there asked (UST)**

“When Paul and Barnabas were leaving”

**begged them (ULT)**

**them to return (UST)**

“begged them to”

**these same words (ULT)**

**these things (UST)**

Here “words” refers to the message that Paul had spoken. Alternate translation: “this same message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [begged them](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [them to return](#)
- [Sabbath and](#)

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> As Paul and Barnabas left, the people [begged them](#) to speak to them these same words on the next [Sabbath](#).

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> After Paul finished speaking and were going away, many of the people there asked [them to return](#) on the next [Sabbath and](#) say these things to them again.

## Acts 13:43

### When the synagogue meeting ended (ULT)

### When the meeting was over (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this restates "As Paul and Barnabas left" in verse 42 or 2) Paul and Barnabas left the meeting before it ended and this occurs later.

### proselytes (ULT)

### non-Jews (UST)

These were non-Jewish people who converted to Judaism.

### who spoke to them and urged them (ULT)

### These people were both...Paul and Barnabas continued talking to them. They were urging them (UST)

"and Paul and Barnabas spoke to those people and urged them"

### to continue in the grace of God (ULT)

### to continue to trust that God kindly forgives people's sins because of what Jesus did (UST)

It is implied that they believed Paul's message that Jesus was the Messiah. Alternate translation: "to continue to trust that God kindly forgives people's sins because of what Jesus did" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [synagogue meeting](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [of God](#)
- [devout](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [kindly forgives people's sins](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [God](#)
- [who worshiped](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> When the [synagogue meeting](#) ended, many of the [Jews](#) and the [devout](#) proselytes followed [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#), who spoke to them and urged them to continue in the [grace of God](#).

### UST

<sup>43</sup> When the [meeting](#) was over, many of them began to follow [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#). These people were both [Jews](#) and non-Jews [who worshiped](#) God. Paul and Barnabas continued talking to them. They were urging them to continue to trust that [God kindly forgives people's sins](#) because of what Jesus did.

## Acts 13:44

### General Information:

Here the word "him" refers to Paul.

**almost the whole city (ULT)**

**most of...the Jewish meeting place (UST)**

The "city" represents the people in the city. This phrase is used to show the great response to the Lord's word. Alternate translation: "almost all the people of the city" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**to hear the word of the Lord (ULT)**

**the people in Antioch came to...to hear Paul...about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

It is implied that Paul and Barnabas were the ones who spoke the word of the Lord. Alternate translation: "to hear Paul and Barnabas speak about the Lord Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [word of the Lord](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [was gathered together](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [the people in Antioch came to...about the Lord Jesus](#)
- [Sabbath day](#)
- [the Jewish meeting place](#)

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> Then on the next [Sabbath](#), almost the whole city [was gathered together](#) to hear the [word of the Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>44</sup> On the next [Sabbath day](#), most of [the people in Antioch came to the Jewish meeting place](#) to hear Paul and Barnabas speak [about the Lord Jesus](#).

## Acts 13:45

### the Jews (ULT)

### the leaders of the Jews (UST)

Here "Jews" represents Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### they were filled with jealousy (ULT)

### became extremely jealous (UST)

Here jealousy is spoken of as if it were something that could fill up a person. Alternate translation: "became very jealous" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### spoke against (ULT)

### they began to contradict (UST)

"contradicted" or "opposed"

### the things that were said by Paul (ULT)

### the things that Paul was saying and also to insult him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that Paul said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [and insulted him](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [with jealousy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [insult him](#)
- [Paul was saying and also to](#)
- [became...jealous](#)

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> But when the [Jews](#) saw the crowds, they were filled [with jealousy](#) and spoke against the things that were said by [Paul and insulted him](#).

### UST

<sup>45</sup> But the leaders of the [Jews became](#) extremely [jealous](#) when they saw the large crowds of people that were coming to hear Paul and Barnabas. So they began to contradict the things that [Paul was saying and also to insult him](#).

## Acts 13:46

### General Information:

The first two instances of the word “you” are plural and refer to the Jews to whom Paul is speaking. Here the words “we” and “us” refers to Paul and Barnabas but not the crowd that was present. Paul’s quotation is from the prophet Isaiah in the Old Testament. In the original passage, the word “I” refers to God and the word “you” is singular and refers to the Messiah. Here, Paul and Barnabas seem to be saying that the quotation also refers to their ministry. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### It was necessary that (ULT) first before we...it to non-Jews (UST)

This implies that God had commanded this be done. Alternate translation: “God commanded” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### to you...necessary that the word of God should first be spoken (ULT)

### to you Jews...the message from God about Jesus...first before we...proclaim...it to non-Jews (UST)

This can be stated in active form. “Word of God” here is a synecdoche for “message from God.” Alternate translation: “that we speak the message from God to you first” or “that we speak the word of God to you first” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### Seeing you push it away from yourselves (ULT) because God commanded us to do that. But you are rejecting God’s message. By doing that (UST)

Their rejection of the word of God is spoken of as if it were something they pushed away. Alternate translation: “Since you reject the word of God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### consider yourselves unworthy of eternal life (ULT) you have shown that you are not worthy of eternal life (UST)

“have shown that you are not worthy of eternal life” or “act as though you are not worthy of eternal life”

### we will turn to the Gentiles (ULT) leaving you...to the non-Jewish people to tell them the message from God (UST)

“we will go to the Gentiles.” Paul and Barnabas were implying that they would preach to the Gentiles. Alternate translation: “we will leave you and start preaching to the Gentiles” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> But [Paul](#) and [Barnabas spoke out boldly](#) and said, “It was necessary that the [word of God](#) should first be spoken to you. Seeing [you push it away from yourselves](#) and [consider yourselves unworthy of eternal life](#), see, [we will turn](#) to the [Gentiles](#).”

### UST

<sup>46</sup> [Then, speaking very boldly, Paul and Barnabas](#) said to those Jewish leaders, “We had to speak the [message from God about Jesus](#) to you Jews first before we proclaim it to non-Jews, because God commanded us to do that. But [you are rejecting God’s message](#). By doing that, [you have shown that](#) you are not [worthy of eternal life](#). Therefore, we are [leaving you](#), and now we will go to the [non-Jewish people to tell them the message from God](#).”

- of eternal
- unworthy
- of God
- word of God
- Gentiles
- consider
- Paul
- Barnabas
- spoke out boldly
- we will turn
- you push...away from yourselves

### Translation Words - UST

- life
- of eternal
- you have shown that...worthy
- from God about Jesus
- message from God about Jesus
- non-Jewish people to tell them the message from God
- you have shown that...worthy
- Paul
- Barnabas
- Then, speaking very boldly
- leaving you
- you are rejecting God's message

**Acts 13:47****as a light (ULT)**

**to reveal things about me...light to them. I have chosen (UST)**

Here the truth about Jesus that Paul was preaching is spoken of as if it were a light that allowed people to see. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**bring salvation to the uttermost parts of the earth (ULT)**

**to tell people everywhere in the world the message that I want to save them (UST)**

The abstract word “salvation” can be translated with the verb “to save.” The phrase “uttermost parts” refers to everywhere. Alternate translation: “tell people everywhere in the world that I want to save them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [bring salvation](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [has...commanded...saying](#)
- [for the Gentiles](#)
- [I have placed](#)
- [a light](#)
- [earth](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to save them](#)
- [Lord God](#)
- [has commanded](#)
- [to non-Jewish people](#)
- [He said in the scriptures, 'I have chosen](#)
- [light to them. I have chosen](#)
- [world](#)

**ULT**

<sup>47</sup> For so has the [Lord commanded](#) us, [saying, 'I have placed](#) you as [a light for the Gentiles](#), that you should [bring salvation](#) to the uttermost parts of the [earth](#).'"

**UST**

<sup>47</sup> We are doing this also because the [Lord God has commanded](#) us to do it. He said in the scriptures, 'I have chosen you to reveal things about me [to non-Jewish people](#) that will be like a [light to them. I have chosen](#) you to tell people everywhere in the [world](#) the message that I want [to save them](#).'"



**Acts 13:48**

**praised the word of the Lord (ULT)**  
**praise for the message about Jesus...about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here "word" refers to the message about Jesus that they had believed. Alternate translation: "praised God for the message about the Lord Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**As many as were appointed to eternal life (ULT)**  
**All of the non-Jewish people whom God had chosen... eternal life (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As many as God appointed to eternal life believed" or "All the people whom God had chosen to receive eternal life" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [life](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [word of the Lord](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [praised](#)
- [appointed](#)
- [believed](#)
- [they were glad](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [life](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [message about Jesus...about the Lord Jesus](#)
- [non-Jewish people](#)
- [praise for](#)
- [whom God...chosen](#)
- [believed the message](#)
- [they began to rejoice](#)

**ULT**

<sup>48</sup> When the [Gentiles](#) heard this, [they were glad](#) and [praised](#) the [word of the Lord](#). As many as were [appointed](#) to [eternal life believed](#).

**UST**

<sup>48</sup> When the [non-Jewish people](#) heard those words, [they began to rejoice](#), and they gave God [praise for](#) the [message about Jesus](#). All of the non-Jewish people [whom God](#) had [chosen](#) for [eternal life believed the message about the Lord Jesus](#).

**Acts 13:49**

**was spread out...the word of the Lord...through the whole region (ULT)**  
**traveled around...At that time, many of the believers... throughout that region, spreading the message about the Lord Jesus everywhere they went (UST)**

Here “word” refers to the message about Jesus. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Those who believed spread the word of the Lord through the whole region” or “Those who believed went everywhere in the region and told others about the message of Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Lord](#)
- [word of the Lord](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Lord Jesus everywhere they went](#)
- [spreading...message about the Lord Jesus everywhere they went](#)

**ULT**

<sup>49</sup> So the [word of the Lord](#) was spread out through the whole region.

**UST**

<sup>49</sup> At that time, many of the believers traveled around throughout that region, [spreading](#) the [message about the Lord Jesus everywhere they went](#).

## Acts 13:50

### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Paul and Barnabas.

### Connecting Statement:

This ends Paul and Barnabas' time in Antioch of Pisidia and they go to Iconium.

### the...Jews (ULT)

### the...of...Jews (UST)

This probably refers to the leaders of the Jews. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### urged on (ULT)

### talked (UST)

"convinced" or "stirred up"

### the leading men (ULT)

### the most important men (UST)

"the most important men"

### as well as...These stirred up...a persecution against Paul...Barnabas (ULT)

### persuaded...to try to stop Paul...Barnabas. So those non-Jewish people led many citizens against Paul and Barnabas (UST)

"They convinced the important men and women to persecute Paul and Barnabas"

### threw them out beyond the border of their city (ULT)

### they drove them out of their region (UST)

"removed Paul and Barnabas from their city"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [and important](#)
- [devout](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [threw](#)
- [a persecution](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of...Jews](#)
- [some important](#)
- [who worshiped with them](#)

### ULT

<sup>50</sup> But the [Jews](#) urged on the [devout and important](#) women, as well as the leading men of the city. These stirred up [a persecution](#) against [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) and [threw](#) them out beyond the border of their city.

### UST

<sup>50</sup> However, some leaders of the [Jews](#) talked to [some important](#) women [who worshiped with them](#). They also talked to the most important men in the city. The Jewish leaders persuaded the non-Jewish city leaders [to try to stop Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#). So those non-Jewish people led many citizens against Paul and Barnabas, and [they drove](#) them [out](#) of their region.

- Paul
- Barnabas
- they drove...out
- to try to stop

## Acts 13:51

**shook off the dust from their feet against them (ULT)  
they shook the dust from their feet to show those  
leaders that God had rejected them and would punish  
them (UST)**

This was a symbolic act to indicate to the unbelieving people that God had rejected them and would punish them. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the city of Iconium](#)
- [dust](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the city of Iconium](#)
- [dust](#)

### ULT

<sup>51</sup> But Paul and Barnabas shook off the [dust](#) from their feet against them. Then they went to [the city of Iconium](#).

### UST

<sup>51</sup> As the two apostles were leaving, they shook the [dust](#) from their feet to show those leaders that God had rejected them and would punish them. Then they left the city of Antioch and went to [the city of Iconium](#).

## Acts 13:52

### The...disciples (ULT)

### the...believers (UST)

This probably refers to the new believers in the Antioch of Pisidia that Paul and Silas just left.

### Translation Words - ULT

- were filled
- Holy
- with the Holy Spirit
- disciples
- with joy

### Translation Words - UST

- continued to
- Holy
- power of...Holy Spirit...the
- believers
- joy

### ULT

<sup>52</sup> The [disciples were filled with joy](#) and [with the Holy Spirit](#).

13:18 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient copies read, *For about forty years he cared for them in the wilderness .*

### UST

<sup>52</sup> Meanwhile, the [joy](#) and [power of](#) the [Holy Spirit continued to](#) fill [the believers](#).

## Acts 14

### Acts 14 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “The message of his grace”

The message of Jesus is the message that God will show grace to those who believe in Jesus. (See: [grace](#), [gracious](#) and [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

#### Zeus and Hermes

The Gentiles in the Roman Empire worshiped many different false gods who do not really exist. Paul and Barnabas told them to believe in the “living God.” (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### “We must enter into the kingdom of God through many sufferings.”

Jesus told his followers before he died that everyone who followed him would suffer persecution. Paul is saying the same thing using different words.

## Acts 14:1

### General Information:

The story of Paul and Barnabas in Iconium continues.

### It came about in Iconium (ULT)

### At Iconium Paul and Barnabas (UST)

Possible meanings here are 1) "It happened in Iconium that" or 2) "In Iconium as usual"

### spoke in such a way (ULT)

### as...spoke very powerfully about the Lord Jesus (UST)

"spoke so powerfully." It may be helpful to state that they spoke the message about Jesus. Alternate translation: "spoke the message about Jesus so powerfully" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [of Jews](#) (2)
- [believed](#)
- [Iconium](#)
- [of Greeks](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish meeting](#)
- [Jewish meeting](#)
- [Jews](#) (2)
- [believed in Jesus](#)
- [Iconium Paul](#)
- [non-Jews](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about in [Iconium](#) that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the [synagogue](#) of the [Jews](#) and spoke in such a way that a great multitude both [of Jews](#) and [of Greeks believed](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> At [Iconium Paul](#) and Barnabas went as usual into the [Jewish meeting](#) place and spoke very powerfully about the Lord Jesus. As a result, many [Jews](#) and also [non-Jews believed in Jesus](#).



## Acts 14:2

**the...Jews who were disobedient (ULT)**  
**the...Jews refused to believe that message. They told (UST)**

This refers to a portion of the Jews who did not believe the message about Jesus.

**stirred up...the minds of the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**they made...angry...the non-Jews not to believe it... some of the non-Jews (UST)**

Causing the Gentiles to become angry is spoken of as if calm waters were disturbed. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the minds (ULT)**  
**the non-Jews not to believe it (UST)**

Here the word “minds” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “the Gentiles” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**of the...brothers (ULT)**  
**some of the...believers there (UST)**

Here “brothers” refers to Paul and Barnabas and the new believers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [minds](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews...that message. They told](#)
- [believers there](#)
- [non-Jews](#)
- [non-Jews not to believe it](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> But the [Jews](#) who were disobedient stirred up the [minds](#) of the [Gentiles](#) and made them bitter against the [brothers](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> But some of the [Jews](#) refused to believe [that message. They told](#) the [non-Jews not to believe it](#); they made some of the [non-Jews](#) angry toward the [believers there](#).

## Acts 14:3

### General Information:

Here the word "He" refers to the Lord.

### So...they stayed there (ULT)

### Paul and Barnabas...a...long...spent...time there (UST)

"Nevertheless they stayed there." Paul and Barnabas stayed in Iconium to help the many people who had believed in [Acts 14:1](#). "So" could be omitted if it adds confusion to the text.

### gave evidence about the message of his grace

"demonstrated that the message about his grace was true"

### the...message of his grace (ULT)

### the...this way he...message that, even though we do not deserve it, the Lord saves us (UST)

"about the message of the Lord's grace"

### by granting signs and wonders to be done by the hands of Paul and Barnabas (ULT) and the Lord Jesus enabled them to do many miracles. In (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "by enabling Paul and Barnabas to perform signs and wonders" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### by the hands of Paul and Barnabas (ULT)

### and the Lord Jesus enabled...them...miracles. In (UST)

Here "hands" refers to the will and effort of these two men as guided by the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "by the ministry of Paul and Barnabas" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...grace](#)
- [signs](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [message of...grace](#)
- [while he gave evidence](#)
- [hands](#)
- [speaking boldly](#)
- [time](#)
- [wonders](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [even though we do not deserve it](#)
- [and the Lord Jesus enabled...miracles. In](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [this way...message that, even though we do not deserve it, the Lord saves us](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So they stayed there for a long [time](#), [speaking boldly](#) for the [Lord](#), [while he gave evidence](#) about the [message of his grace](#) by granting [signs](#) and [wonders](#) to be done by the [hands](#) of Paul and Barnabas.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> But Paul and Barnabas [spent](#) a long [time there speaking boldly](#) for the [Lord](#), [and the Lord Jesus enabled](#) them to do many [miracles](#). [In this way](#) he [showed people the truth of the message that, even though we do not deserve it, the Lord saves us](#).

- showed people the truth of
- and the Lord Jesus enabled...miracles. In
- speaking boldly
- spent...time there
- and the Lord Jesus enabled...miracles. In

**Acts 14:4**

**was divided...the population of the city (ULT)**  
**two different opinions...The people who lived in Iconium (UST)**

Here "city" refers to the people in the city. Alternate translation: "most of the people of the city were divided" or "most of the people of the city did not agree with each other" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**sided with the Jews (ULT)**  
**had...with the Jews (UST)**

"supported the Jews" or "agreed with the Jews." The first group mentioned did not agree with the message about grace.

**with the apostles (ULT)**  
**with the apostles (UST)**

The second group mentioned agreed with the message about grace. It may be helpful to restate the verb. Alternate translation: "sided with the apostles" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**the...apostles (ULT)**  
**the...apostles (UST)**

Luke refers to Paul and Barnabas. Here "apostle" might be used in the general sense of "ones sent out."

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [apostles](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jews](#)
- [apostles](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> But the population of the city was divided; for some people sided with the [Jews](#), but some with the [apostles](#).

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> The people who lived in Iconium had two different opinions. Some agreed with the [Jews](#). Others agreed with the [apostles](#).

## Acts 14:5

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to Paul and Barnabas.

**attempted to persuade...their leaders (ULT)**  
**they would kill Paul...themselves about how they**  
**could...Some of the important men in that city (UST)**

“tried to convince the leaders of Iconium.” Here “attempted” implies they were not able to fully persuade them before the apostles left the city.

**and...to mistreat...stone Paul and Barnabas (ULT)**  
**and...mistreat Paul and Barnabas...agreed to help**  
**them...throwing stones at them (UST)**

“to beat Paul and Barnabas and to kill them by throwing stones at them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [stone](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [leaders](#)
- [to mistreat](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Jews who opposed Paul](#)
- [throwing stones](#)
- [non-Jewish people](#)
- [important men in that city](#)
- [mistreat Paul and Barnabas...agreed to help them](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But when both [Gentiles](#) and [Jews](#) attempted to persuade their [leaders to mistreat](#) and [stone](#) Paul and Barnabas,

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then the [non-Jewish people](#) and [the Jews who opposed Paul](#) and Barnabas talked among themselves about how they could [mistreat Paul and Barnabas](#). Some of the [important men in that city agreed to help them](#). Together, they decided that they would kill Paul and Barnabas by [throwing stones](#) at them.

## Acts 14:6

**of Lycaonia (ULT)**

**of Lycaonia (UST)**

A district in Asia Minor (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Lystra (ULT)**

**They went to the...Lystra (UST)**

A city in Asia Minor south of Iconium and north of Derbe (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Derbe (ULT)**

**Derbe in that district (UST)**

A city in Asia Minor south of Iconium and Lystra (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lystra](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They went to the...Lystra](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> they became aware of it and fled to the cities of Lycaonia, [Lystra](#) and Derbe, and the surrounding region,

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> But Paul and Barnabas heard about their plan, so they quickly went away to the district of Lycaonia. [They went to the](#) cities of [Lystra](#) and Derbe in that district and to the surrounding area.

## Acts 14:7

**where they continued to proclaim the gospel (ULT)**  
**While they were in that area, they continually told the people the message about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

“where Paul and Barnabas continued to proclaim the good news”

### Translation Words - ULT

- to proclaim the gospel

### Translation Words - UST

- they continually told the people the message about the Lord Jesus

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> where they continued [to proclaim the gospel](#).

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> While they were in that area, [they continually told the people the message about the Lord Jesus](#).

## Acts 14:8

### General Information:

The first word “he” refers to the crippled man; the second word “he” refers to Paul. The word “him” refers to the crippled man.

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas are now in Lystra.

**a certain...man...sat (ULT)**

**a man...was sitting there...so (UST)**

This introduces a new person in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**powerless...in his feet (ULT)**

**he had crippled legs...was sitting there...to him...so (UST)**

“unable to move his legs” or “unable to walk on his feet”

**a cripple from his mother’s womb (ULT)**

**was crippled in his legs. When his mother gave birth (UST)**

“having been born as a cripple”

**a cripple (ULT)**

**was crippled in his legs. When (UST)**

person who cannot walk

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lystra](#)
- [had walked](#)
- [womb](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lystra](#)
- [he was...able to walk](#)
- [mother gave birth](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> At [Lystra](#) a certain man sat, powerless in his feet, a cripple from his mother’s [womb](#), who never [had walked](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> In [Lystra](#), a man was sitting there who was crippled in his legs. When his [mother gave birth](#) to him, he had crippled legs, so [he was](#) never [able to walk](#).



## Acts 14:9

**Paul fixed his eyes on him (ULT)**

**Paul looked directly at him...that (UST)**

“Paul looked straight at him”

**he had faith to be made well (ULT)**

**believed...the Lord Jesus could make him well (UST)**

The abstract noun “faith” can be translated with the verb “believe.”

Alternate translation: “believed that Jesus could heal him” or

“believed that Jesus could make him well” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to be made well
- faith
- Paul

### Translation Words - UST

- believed...the Lord Jesus could make him well
- believed...the Lord Jesus could make him well
- Paul

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> This man heard [Paul](#) speaking. Paul fixed his eyes on him and saw that he had [faith to be made well](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> He listened as [Paul](#) was speaking about the Lord Jesus. Paul looked directly at him and could see in the man's face that he [believed](#) that [the Lord Jesus could make him well](#).

## Acts 14:10

**the man jumped up (ULT)**

**he...jumped up (UST)**

“leaped in the air.” This implies that his legs were completely healed.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [voice](#)
- [Stand](#)
- [walked around](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [voice, Paul](#)
- [Stand up](#)
- [began to walk around](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So he said to him in a loud [voice](#), “[Stand](#) up on your feet.” Then the man jumped up and [walked around](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So with a loud [voice, Paul](#) called out to him, “[Stand up!](#)” When the man heard that, he immediately jumped up and [began to walk around](#).

## Acts 14:11

### what Paul had done (ULT)

### what Paul had done, they thought that Paul (UST)

This refers to Paul's healing the crippled man.

### they raised their voice (ULT)

### the...excitedly...their own...language (UST)

To raise the voice is to speak loudly. Alternate translation: "they spoke loudly" (See: [Idiom](#))

### The gods...have come down to us (ULT)

### Look! The gods...have come down from the sky to help us (UST)

A large number of people believed Paul and Barnabas were their pagan gods who had come down from heaven. Alternate translation: "The gods have come down from heaven to us" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### in the dialect of Lycaonia (ULT)

### Lycaonian (UST)

"in their own Lycaonian language." The people of Lystra spoke Lycaonian and also Greek.

### in the form of men (ULT)

### have made themselves to look like people and (UST)

These people believed that the gods needed to change their appearance in order to look like men.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gods](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [voice](#)
- [in the form](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gods](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [language](#)
- [have made themselves to look like](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> When the multitude saw what [Paul](#) had done, they raised their [voice](#), saying in the dialect of Lycaonia, "The [gods](#) have come down to us [in the form](#) of men."

### UST

<sup>11</sup> When the crowd saw what [Paul](#) had done, they thought that Paul and Barnabas were the gods that they worshiped. So they shouted excitedly in their own Lycaonian [language](#), "Look! The [gods have made themselves to look like](#) people and have come down from the sky to help us!"

**Acts 14:12****Zeus (ULT)****Zeus (UST)**

Zeus was the king over all the other pagan gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Hermes (ULT)****Hermes (UST)**

Hermes was the pagan god who brought messages to people from Zeus and the other gods. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [They called](#)
- [and Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [they began to say that](#)
- [Paul was](#)
- [They began to say that Barnabas was probably the chief god, whose name was](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> [They called Barnabas](#) “Zeus,” [and Paul](#) “Hermes,” because he was the main speaker.

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> [They began to say that Barnabas was probably the chief god, whose name was](#) Zeus. And [they began to say that Paul was](#) Hermes, the messenger for the other gods. They had that thought because Paul was the one who had been speaking.

## Acts 14:13

**The priest of Zeus, whose temple was just outside the city...brought (ULT)  
worshiped Zeus at a temple just outside the gates of the city. The priest who was there heard what Paul and Barnabas had done, so he came...He brought two (UST)**

It may be helpful to include additional information about the priest. Alternate translation: "There was a temple just outside the city where the people worshiped Zeus. When the priest who served in the temple heard what Paul and Barnabas had done, he brought" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**oxen and wreaths (ULT)  
bulls...wreaths of flowers around their necks. The priest and (UST)**

The oxen were to be sacrificed. The wreaths were either to crown Paul and Barnabas, or put on the oxen for sacrifice.

**to the gates (ULT)  
to the city gate, where many people had already gathered (UST)**

The gates of the cities were often used as a meeting place for the people of the city.

**wanted to offer sacrifice (ULT)  
wanted to kill the bulls as part of a ceremony to worship Paul and Barnabas (UST)**

"wanted to offer sacrifice to Paul and Barnabas as the gods Zeus and Hermes"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest](#)
- [oxen](#)
- [gates](#)
- [to offer sacrifice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [priest](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [city gate, where many people had already gathered](#)
- [to kill the bulls as part of a ceremony to worship Paul and Barnabas](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> The [priest](#) of Zeus, whose temple was just outside the city, brought [oxen](#) and wreaths to the [gates](#); he and the multitudes wanted [to offer sacrifice](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> People worshiped Zeus at a temple just outside the gates of the city. The [priest](#) who was there heard what Paul and Barnabas had done, so he came to the [city gate, where many people had already gathered](#). He brought two [bulls](#) with wreaths of flowers around their necks. The priest and the crowd of people wanted [to kill the bulls as part of a ceremony to worship Paul and Barnabas](#).

**Acts 14:14****the apostles, Barnabas and Paul (ULT)****the apostles, Barnabas and Paul (UST)**

Luke is here probably using “apostle” in the general sense of “one sent out.”

**they tore their clothing (ULT)****they tore their own clothes (UST)**

This was a symbolic action to show that they were deeply distressed and upset that the crowd wanted to sacrifice to them.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [apostles](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [crying out](#)
- [clothing](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [apostles](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [shouting](#)
- [clothes](#)

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> But when the [apostles](#), [Barnabas](#) and [Paul](#), heard of it, they tore their [clothing](#) and quickly went out into the crowd, [crying out](#)

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> But when the [apostles](#), [Barnabas](#) and [Paul](#), heard about that, they were very upset, so they tore their own [clothes](#). They rushed among the people, [shouting](#),

## Acts 14:15

**Men, why are you doing these things (ULT)**

**Men, you must not kill...those bulls to worship us! We are not gods (UST)**

Barnabas and Paul are rebuking the people for trying to sacrifice to them. Alternate translation: "Men, you must not do these things!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**are you doing these things (ULT)**

**those bulls to worship us...We are not gods (UST)**

"worshiping us"

**and...We...are human beings with the same feelings as you (ULT)**

**Men, you must not kill...We are just human beings with the same feelings as you (UST)**

By this statement, Barnabas and Paul are saying that they are not gods. Alternate translation: "We are just human beings like you. We are not gods!"

**with the same feelings...as you (ULT)**

**with the same feelings...as you (UST)**

"like you in every way"

**that you should turn from these useless things to a living God (ULT)**

**about the God...all-powerful. He wants you to stop worshiping other gods...they cannot help you...God (UST)**

Here "turn from...to" is a metaphor meaning to stop doing one thing and start doing something else. Alternate translation: "stop worshiping these false gods that cannot help you, and instead begin to worship the living God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a living God (ULT)**

**all-powerful...God (UST)**

"a God who truly exists" or "a God who lives"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [living](#)
- [heavens](#)
- [a...God](#)
- [useless things](#)
- [We proclaim the gospel](#)
- [that you should turn](#)
- [earth](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> and saying, "Men, why are you doing these things? We also are human beings with the same feelings as you. [We proclaim the gospel](#) to you, [that you should turn](#) from these [useless things](#) to a [living God](#), who made the [heavens](#), and the [earth](#), and the sea, and everything that is in them.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> "Men, you must not kill those bulls to worship us! We are not gods! We are just human beings with the same feelings as you! [We have come to tell](#) you some [good news! We have come to tell you](#) about the God who is [all-powerful](#). [He wants you to stop worshiping](#) other gods because [they cannot help you](#). This true [God](#) made the [heavens](#), the [earth](#), the oceans, and everything in them.

## Translation Words - UST

- all-powerful
- heavens
- God
- they cannot help you
- We have come to tell...good news! We have come to tell you
- He wants you to stop worshiping
- earth



## Acts 14:16

**In the past ages (ULT)**

**In the past...let (UST)**

“In previous times” or “Until now”

**to walk in their own ways (ULT)**

**worshiped whatever gods...you worship them because you did not know him (UST)**

Walking in a way, or walking on a path, is a metaphor for living one's life. Alternate translation: “to live their lives the way they wanted to” or “to do whatever they wanted to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [nations](#)
- [to walk](#)
- [ages](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [non-Jewish people](#)
- [worshiped whatever gods](#)
- [the past...let](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> In the past [ages](#), he allowed all the [nations to walk](#) in their own ways.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> In [the past](#), all of you [non-Jewish people worshiped whatever gods](#) that you wanted to worship. God [let](#) you worship them because you did not know him.

## Acts 14:17

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas continue speaking to the crowd outside the city of Lystra ([Acts 14:8](#)).

**he did not leave himself without witness (ULT)**

**he...shown us...he acts kindly (UST)**

This could also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "God has certainly left a witness" or "God has indeed testified" (See: [Litotes](#))

**in that he did good (ULT)**

**he acts kindly (UST)**

"as shown by the fact that"

**filling your hearts with food and gladness (ULT)**

**of food and fills your hearts with joy (UST)**

Here "you hearts" refers to the people. Alternate translation: "giving you enough to eat and things about which to be happy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from heaven](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [in that he did good](#)
- [fruitful](#)
- [seasons](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [toward us. He is the one who causes it to rain](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [he acts kindly](#)
- [and causes crops to grow. He is the one who](#)
- [and causes crops to grow. He is the one who](#)

### ULT

**17** But still, he did not leave himself without witness, [in that he did good](#) and gave you the rains [from heaven](#) and [fruitful seasons](#), filling your [hearts](#) with food and gladness."

### UST

**17** But he has shown us that [he acts kindly toward us. He is the one who causes it to rain and causes crops to grow. He is the one who](#) gives you plenty of food and fills your [hearts](#) with joy."

## Acts 14:18

**Paul and Barnabas barely kept the multitudes from sacrificing to them (ULT)**

**The people heard what Paul...said, but they still thought...that they should sacrifice those bulls to worship Paul...people decided not to do it (UST)**

Paul and Barnabas stopped the multitude from sacrificing to them, but it was difficult to do so.

**Paul and Barnabas barely kept (ULT)  
said, but they still thought (UST)**

"had difficulty preventing"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sacrificing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sacrifice](#)

#### ULT

**18** Even saying these words, Paul and Barnabas barely kept the multitudes from [sacrificing](#) to them.

#### UST

**18** The people heard what Paul said, but they still thought that they should [sacrifice](#) those bulls to worship Paul and Barnabas. But finally, the people decided not to do it.

## Acts 14:19

### General Information:

Here the words “he” and “him” refer to Paul.

**persuaded the crowds (ULT)**  
**persuaded many of the people of Lystra that the message Paul had been telling...was not true (UST)**

It may be helpful to explicitly state what they persuaded the crowd to do. Alternate translation: “persuaded the people not to believe Paul and Barnabas, and to turn against them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**the crowds (ULT)**  
**the people of Lystra that the message Paul had been telling...was not true (UST)**

This may not be the same group as the “multitude” in the previous verse. Some time had passed, and this might be a different group that gathered together.

**thinking that he was dead (ULT)**  
**They all thought that he was dead, so...him lying there (UST)**

“because they thought that he was already dead”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [some Jews](#)
- [they stoned](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [Iconium](#)
- [was dead](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [some Jews](#)
- [them...They let the Jews throw stones at him until he fell down, unconscious](#)
- [The people who believed what those Jews said became angry with Paul](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [Iconium](#)
- [was dead, so](#)

### ULT

**19** But [some Jews](#) from [Antioch](#) and [Iconium](#) came and persuaded the crowds. So [they stoned Paul](#) and dragged him out of the city, thinking that he [was dead](#).

### UST

**19** However, [some Jews](#) came from [Antioch](#) and [Iconium](#) and persuaded many of the people of Lystra that the message Paul had been telling [them](#) was not true. [The people who believed what those Jews said became angry with Paul. They let the Jews throw stones at him until he fell down, unconscious.](#) They all thought that he [was dead, so](#) they dragged him outside the city and left him lying there.

## Acts 14:20

**the disciples (ULT)**

**the believers in Lystra came and (UST)**

These were new believers in the city of Lystra.

**and entered into the city (ULT)**

**went back into the city (UST)**

“Paul re-entered Lystra with the believers”

**into...he went...Derbe with Barnabas (ULT)**

**into...with the believers...Barnabas left the city of Lystra and traveled...the city of Derbe (UST)**

“Paul and Barnabas went to the city of Derbe”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [he got up](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers in Lystra came and](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [He stood up and](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Yet as the [disciples](#) were standing around him, [he got up](#) and entered into the city. The next day, he went to Derbe with [Barnabas](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> But some of the [believers in Lystra](#) [came and](#) stood around Paul, where he was lying on the ground. And Paul became conscious! [He stood up and](#) went back into the city with the believers. The next day, Paul and [Barnabas](#) left the city of Lystra and traveled to the city of Derbe.

## Acts 14:21

### General Information:

Here the words “they” and “They” refer to Paul. Here the word “We” includes Paul, Barnabas, and the believers. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

**in that city (ULT)**

**the...that...city (UST)**

“Derbe” ([Acts 14:20](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- made...disciples
- to Antioch
- Lystra
- Iconium
- After they had...proclaimed the gospel
- they returned

### Translation Words - UST

- kept telling...people the good message about Jesus
- to the...of Antioch in the province of Pisidia
- Lystra
- Iconium
- They stayed there several days, and they
- started on their way back. They went again

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> [After they had](#) both [proclaimed the gospel](#) in that city and [made](#) many [disciples](#), [they returned](#) to [Lystra](#), and to [Iconium](#), and [to Antioch](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [They stayed there several days, and they kept telling](#) the [people the good message about Jesus](#). Many people became believers. After that, Paul and Barnabas [started on their way back](#). [They went again](#) to [Lystra](#). Then they went from there to [Iconium](#), and then they went [to the](#) city [of Antioch in the province of Pisidia](#).

**Acts 14:22****They kept strengthening the souls of the disciples (ULT)  
In each place, they urged the believers (UST)**

Here “souls” refers to the disciples. This emphasizes their inner thoughts and beliefs. Alternate translation: “Paul and Barnabas urged the believers to continue to believe the message about Jesus” or “Paul and Barnabas urged the believers to continue to grow strong in their relationship with Jesus (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**and encouraging them to continue in the faith (ULT)  
In each place, they urged the believers...to keep on trusting in the Lord Jesus...the believers (UST)**

“encouraging the believers to keep trusting in Jesus”

**and saying, “We must enter into the kingdom of God through many sufferings (ULT)****They told...We must suffer many hardships before God will rule over us forever (UST)**

Some version translate this as an indirect quote, “saying that we must enter into the kingdom of God through many sufferings.” The word “we” here includes Luke and the readers. (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#) and [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

**We must enter (ULT)****We must suffer...God will rule over us forever (UST)**

Paul includes his hearers, so the word “we” is inclusive. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of God
- disciples
- souls
- kingdom of God
- faith
- sufferings
- They kept strengthening
- and encouraging them
- kingdom

**Translation Words - UST**

- God will rule over us forever
- In each place, they urged the believers
- In each place, they urged the believers
- God will rule over us forever
- the believers
- hardships
- In each place, they urged the believers
- In each place, they urged the believers
- God will rule over us forever

**ULT**

<sup>22</sup> [They kept strengthening](#) the [souls](#) of the [disciples and encouraging them](#) to continue in the [faith](#), and saying, “We must enter into the [kingdom of God](#) through many [sufferings](#).”

**UST**

<sup>22</sup> [In each place, they urged the believers](#) to keep on trusting in the Lord Jesus. They told [the believers](#), “We must suffer many [hardships](#) before [God will rule over us forever](#).”

## Acts 14:23

### General Information:

Except for the third use of the word “they” which refers to the people that Paul and Barnabas had led to the Lord, all the words “they” here refer to Paul and Barnabas.

**When they had appointed for them elders in every church (ULT)**

**Paul and Barnabas chose leaders for each congregation. Before Paul and Barnabas left each place, they gathered the believers together and spent some time...Then Paul and Barnabas (UST)**

“When Paul and Barnabas had appointed leaders in each new group of believers”

**they entrusted them (ULT)**

**entrusted the leaders and other believers...them (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) “Paul and Barnabas entrusted the elders they had appointed” or 2) “Paul and Barnabas entrusted the leaders and other believers”

**in whom they had believed (ULT)**

**in whom they had believed, in order that he would care for (UST)**

Who “they” refers to depends on your choice for the meaning of “them” in the previous note (either elders or leaders and other believers).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- church
- they had appointed
- they had believed
- and had prayed
- they entrusted
- elders
- fasting

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord Jesus
- each congregation. Before Paul and Barnabas left each place, they gathered
- Paul and Barnabas chose
- they had believed, in order that he would care for
- praying and
- entrusted the leaders and other believers
- leaders
- fasting

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> When they had appointed for them elders in every church, and had prayed with fasting, they entrusted them to the Lord, in whom they had believed.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Paul and Barnabas chose leaders for each congregation. Before Paul and Barnabas left each place, they gathered the believers together and spent some time praying and fasting. Then Paul and Barnabas entrusted the leaders and other believers to the Lord Jesus, in whom they had believed, in order that he would care for them.



## Acts 14:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then they passed through Pisidia and came to Pamphylia.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> After Paul and Barnabas had traveled through the district of Pisidia, they went south to the district of Pamphylia.

## Acts 14:25

**When they had spoken the word in Perga (ULT)  
In that district, they arrived at the town of Perga and  
preached God's message about the Lord Jesus to the  
people there. Then (UST)**

"Word" here is a metonym for "message of God." Alternate translation: "(See: [Metonymy](#))"

**they went down to Attalia (ULT)  
they went down to the seacoast at the town of Attalia  
(UST)**

The phrase "went down" is used here because Attalia is lower in elevation than Perga.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [message about the Lord Jesus to](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> When they had spoken the [word](#) in Perga, they went down to Attalia.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> In that district, they arrived at the town of Perga and preached God's [message about the Lord Jesus to](#) the people there. Then they went down to the seacoast at the town of Attalia.

**Acts 14:26**

**where they had been committed to the grace of God (ULT)**

**the place where Paul and Barnabas had been chosen to go to other places and preach, and where the believers had asked God to help Paul and Barnabas (UST)**

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: “where believers and leaders in Antioch had committed Paul and Barnabas to the grace of God” or “where the people of Antioch prayed that God would care for and protect Paul and Barnabas”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [grace](#)
- [of God](#)
- [work](#)
- [they had now completed](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [been committed](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [to help](#)
- [God...Paul and Barnabas](#)
- [work](#)
- [they had now completed](#)
- [the city of Antioch in the province of Syria. That was](#)
- [to go to other places](#)

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> From there they sailed to [Antioch](#), where they had [been committed](#) to the [grace of God](#) for the [work](#) which [they had now completed](#).

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> There they got on a ship and went back to [the city of Antioch in the province of Syria. That was](#) the place where Paul and Barnabas had been chosen [to go to other places](#) and preach, and where the believers had asked [God to help Paul and Barnabas](#) in the [work](#) that [they had now completed](#).

## Acts 14:27

### General Information:

Here the words “they,” “them,” and “They” refer to Paul and Barnabas. The word “he” refers to God.

**gathered the church together (ULT)**  
**they called the believers together. Then Paul...**  
**Barnabas (UST)**

“called the local believers to meet together”

**he had opened a door of faith for the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**them...Specifically, they told them how God had**  
**enabled...non-Jewish people to...believe in Jesus (UST)**

God’s enabling the Gentiles to believe is spoken of as if he had opened a door that had prevented them from entering into faith. Alternate translation: “God had made it possible for the Gentiles to believe” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [church](#)
- [God](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [of faith](#)
- [gathered...together](#)
- [they reported](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the believers](#)
- [God had helped](#)
- [them...Specifically, they told them how God had enabled...non-Jewish people to](#)
- [believe in Jesus](#)
- [they called...together. Then Paul...Barnabas](#)
- [told them all that](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> When they arrived in Antioch and [gathered](#) the [church together](#), [they reported](#) all the things that [God](#) had done with them, and how he had opened a door [of faith](#) for the [Gentiles](#).

### UST

<sup>27</sup> When they arrived in the city of Antioch, [they called the believers together. Then Paul](#) and [Barnabas told them all that God had helped them](#) to do. [Specifically, they told them how God had enabled](#) many [non-Jewish people to believe in Jesus](#).

## Acts 14:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [time](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers for](#)
- [a long time](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> They stayed for a long [time](#) with the [disciples](#).

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Then Paul and Barnabas stayed in Antioch with the other [believers for a long time](#).

## Acts 15

### Acts 15 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry that is quoted from the Old Testament in 15:16-17.

The meeting that Luke describes in this chapter is commonly called the “Jerusalem Council.” This was a time when many church leaders got together to decide if believers needed to obey the whole law of Moses.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Brothers

In this chapter Luke begins to use the word “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians instead of fellow Jews.

##### Obedying the law of Moses

Some believers wanted the Gentiles to be circumcised because God had told Abraham and Moses that everyone who wanted to belong to him had to be circumcised and that this was a law that would always exist. But Paul and Barnabas had seen God give uncircumcised Gentiles the gift of the Holy Spirit, so they did not want the Gentiles to be circumcised. Both groups went to Jerusalem to have the church leaders decide what they should do.

##### “Abstain from things sacrificed to idols, blood, things strangled, and from sexual immorality”

It is possible that the church leaders decided on these laws so that Jews and Gentiles could not only live together but eat the same foods together.

## Acts 15:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas are still in Antioch when there is a dispute about the Gentiles and circumcision.

#### some men (ULT)

#### some Jewish believers (UST)

"Some men." You can make explicit that these men were Jews who believed in Christ. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### came down from Judea to Antioch (ULT)

#### went down from Judea province to Antioch. They started (UST)

The phrase "came down" is used here because Judea is higher in elevation than Antioch.

#### and taught the brothers (ULT)

#### teaching the non-Jewish believers there, saying (UST)

Here "brothers" stands for believers in Christ. It is implied that they were in Antioch. Alternate translation: "taught the believers at Antioch" or "were teaching the believers at Antioch" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Unless you are circumcised according to the custom of Moses, you cannot be saved (ULT)

#### You must be circumcised to show...Moses commanded in the laws that he received from God. If you do not do that, you will not be saved (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Unless someone circumcises you according to the custom of Moses, God cannot save you" or "God will not save you from your sins unless you receive circumcision according to the law of Moses" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- be saved
- brothers
- you are circumcised
- Judea
- of Moses
- and taught

### Translation Words - UST

- be saved
- non-Jewish believers there, saying
- You must be circumcised to show
- Judea province to Antioch. They started
- Moses commanded
- teaching

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now some men came down from [Judea](#) to Antioch [and taught](#) the [brothers](#), saying, "Unless [you are circumcised](#) according to the custom [of Moses](#), you cannot [be saved](#)."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then some Jewish believers went down from [Judea province to Antioch](#). [They started teaching](#) the [non-Jewish believers there, saying](#), "[You must be circumcised to show](#) that you belong to God, as [Moses commanded](#) in the laws that he received from God. If you do not do that, you will not [be saved](#)."

## Acts 15:2

**into a sharp dispute and debate...with them (ULT)  
strongly disagreed...and started arguing...with those  
Jews...with them. So the believers at Antioch (UST)**

The abstract nouns “sharp dispute” and “debate” can be stated as verbs and where the men came from can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “had confronted and debated with the men from Judea” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to go up...to Jerusalem (ULT)  
appointed...to Jerusalem (UST)**

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

**this question (ULT)  
this matter (UST)**

“this issue”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [So they appointed](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [elders](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appointed](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [other leaders](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> This brought [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) into a sharp dispute and debate with them. [So they appointed Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) along with some others from among them to go up to [Jerusalem](#) to meet with the [apostles](#) and [elders](#) about this question.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) strongly disagreed with those Jews and started arguing with them. So the believers at Antioch [appointed Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) and some of the other believers to go to [Jerusalem](#), in order that they might discuss this matter with the [apostles](#) and [other leaders](#).



## Acts 15:3

### General Information:

Here the words "They," "they," and "them" refer to Paul, Barnabas, and certain others ([Acts 15:2](#)).

**They therefore, being sent by the church (ULT)**  
**After Paul, Barnabas, and the others were sent on their way by the believers in Antioch (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Therefore the community of believers sent them from Antioch to Jerusalem" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**being sent by the church (ULT)**  
**were sent on their way by the believers in Antioch (UST)**

Here "church" stands for the people that were a part of the church. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**passed through...announced**

The words "passed through" and "announced" indicate they spent some time in different places sharing in detail what God was doing.

**announcing the conversion of the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**of...the way, they reported to the believers that many non-Jews had become believers (UST)**

The abstract noun "conversion" means the Gentiles were rejecting their false gods and believing in God. Alternate translation: "announced to the community of believers in those places that Gentiles were believing in God" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**They brought...great joy to all the brothers (ULT)**  
**As a result...all the believers in those places rejoiced greatly (UST)**

Their message causing the brothers to be joyful is spoken of as if "joy" were an object that they brought to the brothers. Alternate translation: "What they said caused their fellow believers to rejoice" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the brothers (ULT)**  
**the believers in those places (UST)**

Here "brothers" refers to fellow believers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [church](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [Samaria](#)
- [both Phoenicia](#)
- [joy](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> They therefore, [being sent](#) by the [church](#), passed through [both Phoenicia](#) and [Samaria](#) announcing the conversion of the [Gentiles](#). They brought great [joy](#) to all the [brothers](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> After Paul, Barnabas, and the others [were sent on their way](#) by the [believers in Antioch](#), they traveled through [the provinces](#) of [Phoenicia](#) and [Samaria](#). [When they stopped at different places along](#) the way, they reported to the believers that many [non-Jews](#) had become believers. As a result, all the [believers in those places rejoiced](#) greatly.

- being sent

### Translation Words - UST

- believers in Antioch
- believers in those places
- non-Jews
- Samaria. When they stopped at different places along
- the provinces...Phoenicia
- rejoiced
- were sent on their way

## Acts 15:4

**they were welcomed by the church and the apostles and the elders (ULT)**

**they were welcomed by the apostles, other elders, and the other believers in the group there. Then Paul and Barnabas (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the apostles, the elders, and the rest of the community of believers welcomed them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**with them (ULT)**

**them...to do among non-Jewish people (UST)**

"through them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- church
- God
- apostles
- Jerusalem
- elders
- they reported

### Translation Words - UST

- other believers in the group there
- God had enabled
- apostles
- Jerusalem
- other elders, and the...Then Paul...Barnabas
- reported the things

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> When they came to [Jerusalem](#), they were welcomed by the [church](#) and the [apostles](#) and the [elders](#), and [they](#) [reported](#) all the things that [God](#) had done with them.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> When Paul, Barnabas, and the others arrived in [Jerusalem](#), they were welcomed by the [apostles](#), [other elders](#), [and the other believers in the group there](#). Then Paul and Barnabas [reported the things](#) that [God had enabled](#) them to do among non-Jewish people.

## Acts 15:5

### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to non-Jewish believers who were not circumcised and did not keep the Old Testament laws of God.

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas are now in Jerusalem to meet with the apostles and elders there.

### But certain men (ULT)

### But some (UST)

Here Luke contrasts those who believe that salvation is only in Jesus to others who believe salvation is by Jesus yet also believe that circumcision is required for salvation.

### to keep the law of Moses (ULT)

### to obey the laws...God gave to Moses (UST)

"to obey the law of Moses"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to command them
- law of Moses
- to circumcise
- who believed
- of Pharisees
- of Moses
- to keep
- law

### Translation Words - UST

- they must be told
- laws...God gave to Moses
- be circumcised
- who have believed in Jesus
- Pharisee
- God gave to Moses
- to obey
- laws

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But certain men [who believed](#), who belonged to the group [of Pharisees](#), stood up and said, "It is necessary [to circumcise](#) them and [to command them to keep](#) the [law of Moses](#)."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But some of the Jewish believers who belonged to the [Pharisee](#) sect stood up among the other believers and said to them, "The non-Jews [who have believed in Jesus](#) must [be circumcised](#), and [they must be told to obey](#) the [laws](#) that [God gave to Moses](#)."

## Acts 15:6

**to consider this matter (ULT)**

**talk about this matter (UST)**

The church leaders decided to discuss whether or not Gentiles needed to be circumcised and obey the law of Moses in order for God to save them from their sins.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [apostles](#)
- [gathered together](#)
- [elders](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [apostles](#)
- [met together in order to](#)
- [elders](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So the [apostles](#) and the [elders](#) [gathered together](#) to consider this matter.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then the [apostles](#) and the [elders met together in order to](#) talk about this matter.

## Acts 15:7

### General Information:

The first word “them” refers to apostles and elders ([Acts 15:6](#)) and the other words “them” and “their” refer to the believing Gentiles. Here the word “you” is plural and refers to the apostles and elders present. The word “he” refers to God. Here “us” is plural and refers to Peter, the apostles and elders, and all Jewish believers in general. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Peter begins to speak to the apostles and elders who met to discuss whether Gentiles had to receive circumcision and keep the law ([Acts 15:5-6](#)).

### brothers (ULT)

### Fellow believers (UST)

Peter is addressing all of the believers who were present.

### that by my mouth (ULT)

### me from...about (UST)

Here “mouth” refers to Peter. Alternate translation: “from me” or “by me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### the Gentiles should hear (ULT)

### me...the non-Jewish people also (UST)

“the Gentiles would hear”

### the word of the gospel (ULT)

### I might tell...God’s love...that (UST)

Here “word” stands for a message. Alternate translation: “the message about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [God](#)
- [word of the gospel](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [made a choice](#)
- [believe](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [stood up](#)
- [a good while ago](#)
- [know](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> After there was much debate, [Peter stood up](#) and said to them, “Men, [brothers](#), you [know](#) that [a good while ago God made a choice](#) among you, that by my mouth the [Gentiles](#) should hear the [word of the gospel](#), and [believe](#).”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> After they had discussed it for a long time, [Peter stood up and spoke](#) to them. He said, “[Fellow believers](#), you all [know](#) that [a long time ago God chose](#) me from among you other apostles, in order that [I might tell](#) the [non-Jewish people also](#) about [God’s love](#), and [in order that they might believe in him](#).”

## Translation Words - UST

- Fellow believers
- God
- I might...tell...God's love...that
- non-Jewish people also
- I might...God's love
- chose
- in order...they might believe in him
- Peter
- stood up and spoke
- a long time ago
- know

**Acts 15:8****who knows the heart (ULT)  
knows the hearts of all people (UST)**

Here “heart” refers to the “minds” or “inner beings.” Alternate translation: “who knows the people’s minds” or “who knows what people think” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**witnesses to them (ULT)  
He showed me...to them, just (UST)**

“witnesses to the Gentiles”

**giving them the Holy Spirit**

“causing the Holy Spirit to come upon them”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Holy](#)
- [God](#)
- [who knows the heart](#)
- [witnesses](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [just as he...did](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Holy](#)
- [God](#)
- [knows the hearts of all people](#)
- [He showed me](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [like he had...done](#)

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> [God, who knows the heart, witnesses](#) to them, giving them the [Holy Spirit](#), [just as he](#) also [did](#) to us;

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> [God knows the hearts of all people. He showed me](#) and others that he had accepted the non-Jews to be his people by giving the [Holy Spirit](#) to them, just [like he had](#) also [done](#) for us.



## Acts 15:9

**he made no distinction (ULT)**

**God made...no...distinction (UST)**

God did not treat Jewish believers different from Gentile believers.

**making their hearts clean by faith (ULT)**

**made them clean inside simply as a result of their believing in the Lord Jesus. That is exactly how he has forgiven us (UST)**

God's forgiving the Gentile believers' sins is spoken as though he literally cleaned their hearts. Here "heart" stands for the person's inner being. Alternate translation: "forgiving their sins because they believed in Jesus" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hearts](#)
- [making...clean](#)
- [faith](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [inside](#)
- [made them clean...simply as a result of](#)
- [believing in...Lord Jesus. That is exactly how he has forgiven us](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> and he made no distinction also between us and them, [making](#) their [hearts clean](#) by [faith](#).

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> God made no distinction between us and them, because he [made them clean inside simply as a result of](#) their [believing in](#) the [Lord Jesus. That is exactly how he has forgiven us](#).

## Acts 15:10

### General Information:

Peter includes his audience by his use of “our” and “we.” (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Peter finishes speaking to the apostles and elders.

### Now (ULT)

### So then, stop making (UST)

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

**why do you test God, that you should put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear (ULT)**

**Why do you want to force the non-Jewish believers to obey our Jewish rituals and laws? Doing that is like putting a heavy burden on them. It forces them to obey laws that even our ancestors broke and that we Jews today have never been able to keep...God angry by doing that (UST)**

Peter uses a question with a word picture to tell the Jewish believers they should not require the non-Jewish believers to perform circumcision to be saved. Alternate translation: “Do not test God by putting a burden on the non-Jewish believers which we Jews were not able to bear!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### our fathers (ULT)

### our...ancestors broke and that (UST)

This refers to their Jewish ancestors.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- disciples
- do you test
- fathers
- a yoke
- were able
- to bear

### Translation Words - UST

- God angry by doing that
- non-Jewish believers
- Why do you want to force
- ancestors broke and that
- to obey our Jewish rituals and laws...a heavy burden
- we Jews today have...been able to keep

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Now therefore why [do you test God](#), that you should put [a yoke](#) upon the neck of the [disciples](#) which neither our [fathers](#) nor we [were able to bear](#)?

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Why do you want to force](#) the [non-Jewish believers to obey our Jewish rituals and laws](#)? Doing that is like putting [a heavy burden](#) on them. It forces them to obey laws that even our [ancestors broke and that we Jews today have](#) never [been able to keep](#)! So then, stop making [God angry by doing that](#)!

- we Jews today have...been able to keep

## Acts 15:11

**But we believe that we shall be saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus, just as they were (ULT)  
We know that God saves us Jews from our sins because of what the Lord Jesus did for us. God saves us Jews exactly like he saves those non-Jews who believe in the Lord Jesus (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But we believe the Lord Jesus shall save us by his grace, just as he saved the non-Jewish believers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we shall be saved](#)
- [grace](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [we believe that](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We know that God saves us Jews from our sins](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [the Lord...Jesus](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [We know that God saves us Jews from our sins](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But [we believe that we shall be saved](#) through the [grace](#) of the [Lord](#) Jesus, just as they were."

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [We know that God saves us Jews from our sins](#) because of what the Lord Jesus did for us. God saves us Jews exactly like he saves those non-Jews who believe in [the Lord Jesus](#)."

## Acts 15:12

### General Information:

Here the word "them" refers to Paul and Barnabas.

**all the multitude (ULT)**

**All the people there (UST)**

"Everyone" or "The whole group" ([Acts 15:6](#))

**God had worked (ULT)**

**God had enabled...showed that (UST)**

"God had done" or "God had caused"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the signs](#)
- [God](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [to Barnabas](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [report](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [miracles that](#)
- [God had enabled](#)
- [non-Jewish people](#)
- [Paul. The two of them](#)
- [to Barnabas](#)
- [miracles that...God had accepted the non-Jews](#)
- [told](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then all the multitude kept silent while they listened [to Barnabas](#) and [Paul report the signs](#) and [wonders](#) that [God](#) had worked among the [Gentiles](#) through them.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> All the people there became silent after Peter had spoken. Then they all listened [to Barnabas](#) and [Paul. The two of them told](#) about the many great [miracles that God had enabled](#) them to do among the [non-Jewish people](#). The [miracles that](#) showed that [God had accepted the non-Jews](#).

## Acts 15:13

### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to Paul and Barnabas ([Acts 15:12](#)).

### Connecting Statement:

James begins to speak to the apostles and elders ([Acts 15:6](#)).

**brothers, listen (ULT)**

**Fellow believers...listen (UST)**

"Fellow believers, listen." James was probably speaking only to men.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [James](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Fellow believers](#)
- [James](#)

### ULT

**13** After they stopped speaking, [James](#) answered, saying, "Men, [brothers](#), listen to me.

### UST

**13** When Barnabas and Paul had finished speaking, [James](#), the leader of the group of believers in Jerusalem, spoke to them. He said, "[Fellow believers](#), listen to me.

## Acts 15:14

**in order to take from them a people (ULT)  
non-Jews. God did that by...choosing...from among  
them a people who would belong (UST)**

“so that he might choose from among them a people”

**for his name (ULT)  
Peter...to himself (UST)**

“for God’s name.” Here “name” refers to God. Alternate translation:  
“for himself” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [them](#)
- [for...name](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [a people](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [non-Jews. God did that by](#)
- [himself](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [a people who would belong](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> [Simon](#) has told how [God](#) first graciously helped the Gentiles in order to take from [them a people](#) for his [name](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [Simon](#) Peter has told you how [God](#) previously blessed the [non-Jews. God did that by](#) choosing from among them [a people who would belong](#) to [himself](#).

## Acts 15:15

### General Information:

Here “I” refers to God who spoke through the words of his prophet.

### Connecting Statement:

James quotes the prophet Amos from the Old Testament.

**The words of the prophets agree with (ULT)  
agree with that (UST)**

Here “words” stands for a message. Alternate translation: “What the prophets said agrees” or “The prophets agree”  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

**agree with...this (ULT)**

**The words that God spoke long ago, words that were written...agree with that (UST)**

“confirm this truth”

**as it is written (ULT)**

**agree with that (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as they wrote” or “as the prophet Amos wrote long ago”  
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [as](#)
- [it is written](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [agree with that](#)
- [agree with that](#)
- [agree with that](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> The words of the [prophets](#) agree with this, [as it is written](#),

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> The words that God spoke long ago, words that were written by one of the prophets, [agree with that](#):



## Acts 15:16

**I will build again the tent of David, which has fallen down; and I will restore its ruins again and will set it up (ULT)**

**restore the kingdom of David...the descendants of David. It will be like someone who builds a house again...it has been torn down (UST)**

This speaks of God's again choosing one of David's descendants to rule over his people as though he were setting up a tent again after it fell down. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**tent (ULT)**

**the descendants of David. It will be like someone who builds a house again...has been torn down (UST)**

Here "tent" stands for David's family. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [tent](#)
- [of David](#)
- [I will return](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the descendants of David. It will be like someone who builds a house again...has been torn down](#)
- [the descendants of David. It will be like someone who builds a house again...has been torn down](#)
- [Later on I will return...I will](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> 'After these things [I will return](#), and I will build again the [tent of David](#), which has fallen down; and I will restore its ruins again and will set it up,

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [Later on I will return](#) and [I will](#) restore the kingdom of David when I choose a king from [the descendants of David. It will be like someone who builds a house again](#) after it [has been torn down](#).

**Acts 15:17**

**the remnant of men may seek the Lord (ULT)**  
**other people might try to know me, the Lord God. This will include (UST)**

This speaks about people wanting to obey God and learn more about him as if they were literally looking for him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**remnant of men (ULT)**  
**other people...This will include (UST)**

Here "men" includes males and females. Alternate translation: "remnant of people" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**may seek...the Lord (ULT)**  
**might try to know me...the Lord God (UST)**

God is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "may seek me, the Lord" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**including all the Gentiles called by my name (ULT)**  
**all...even the non-Israelites whom I have called to belong to me. You can be certain that this will happen because I the (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "including all the Gentiles who belong to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**called by my name (ULT)**  
**me. You can be certain that (UST)**

Here "my name" stands for God. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- called by my name
- Lord
- the Lord
- Gentiles
- called by my name
- remnant
- may seek

**Translation Words - UST**

- whom I have called
- Lord God
- Lord God
- non-Israelites
- me. You can be certain that
- other people

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> so that the [remnant](#) of men [may seek](#) the [Lord](#), including all the [Gentiles called by my name](#). This is what [the Lord](#) says, who has done these things

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> I will do this in order that all [other people might try to know me](#), the [Lord God](#). This will include even the [non-Israelites whom I have called](#) to belong to [me](#). [You can be certain that](#) this will happen because I the [Lord God](#) have spoken these words.

- [might try to know me](#)

**Acts 15:18****that have been known (ULT)****I have done these things, and I have made my people know about them (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that people have known” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [ancient times](#)
- [that have been known](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [long ago](#)
- [I have done these things, and I have made my people know about them](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> [that have been known](#) from [ancient times](#). <sup>[1]</sup>

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> [I have done these things, and I have made my people know about them since long ago.](#)”

## Acts 15:19

### General Information:

Here “we” includes James, the apostles, and the elders. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### Connecting Statement:

James finishes speaking to the apostles and elders. (See: [Acts 15:2](#) and [Acts 15:13](#))

**we should not trouble those of the Gentiles (ULT)**  
**we should stop bothering the non-jewish people...from their sins (UST)**

You can make explicit in what way James does not want to trouble the Gentiles. Alternate translation: “we should not require the Gentiles to become circumcised and obey the laws of Moses” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**who turn to God (ULT)**  
**who are turning away...and turning to God. That is, we should stop demanding that they obey all our laws and rituals (UST)**

A person who starts obeying God is spoken of as if the person is physically turning towards God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [my opinion is, that](#)
- [who turn](#)
- [we should...trouble](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God. That is, we should stop demanding that they obey all our laws and rituals](#)
- [non-jewish people](#)
- [think that](#)
- [who are turning away](#)
- [we should stop bothering](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Therefore, [my opinion is, that we should](#) not [trouble](#) those of the [Gentiles who turn](#) to [God](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> James continued to speak. He said, “Therefore I [think that we should stop bothering](#) the [non-jewish people who are turning away](#) from their sins and turning to [God. That is, we should stop demanding that they obey all our laws and rituals](#).

**Acts 15:20**

**they must keep away from the pollution of idols...  
sexual immorality...strangled...blood**

Sexual immorality, strangling animals, and consuming blood were often part of ceremonies to worship idols and false gods.

**pollution of idols (ULT)  
offered...to idols...whom they are not married (UST)**

This possibly refers to eating the meat of an animal that someone has sacrificed to an idol or to anything to do with idol worship. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**from the meat of strangled animals, and from blood (ULT)  
they should not eat meat from animals that have been  
killed by being strangled...and they should not eat...  
blood of animals (UST)**

God did not allow Jews to eat meat that still had the blood in it. Also, even earlier in Moses' writings in Genesis, God had forbidden the drinking of blood. Therefore, they could not eat an animal that someone strangled because the blood was not properly drained from the body of the animal. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [from blood](#)
- [of idols](#)
- [from sexual immorality](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [blood](#)
- [to idols](#)
- [they should not sleep with someone to](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> But we will write to them that they must keep away from the pollution [of idols](#), and [from sexual immorality](#), and from the meat of strangled animals, and [from blood](#).

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> Instead, we should write a letter to them requiring only four things: They should not eat meat that people have offered [to idols](#), [they should not sleep with someone to](#) whom they are not married, they should not eat meat from animals that have been killed by being strangled, and they should not eat the [blood](#) of animals.

## Acts 15:21

**For Moses has in every city, from former generations, those who proclaim him in the synagogues, and he is read on every Sabbath (ULT)**

**In many cities for a very long time, people have been proclaiming the laws that Moses wrote, laws prohibiting those things. And every Sabbath those laws are read in the Jewish meeting places. So if the non-Jews want to know more about those laws, they can find out in our meeting houses (UST)**

James is implying that Gentiles know how important these rules are because Jews preach them in every city where there is a synagogue. It also implies the Gentiles can go to the teachers from the synagogues to learn more about these rules. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Moses...those who proclaim (ULT)**

**Moses wrote, laws prohibiting those things. And...proclaiming the laws that (UST)**

Here "Moses" represents the law of Moses. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The law of Moses has been proclaimed" or "Jews have taught the law of Moses" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**in every city (ULT)**

**In many cities (UST)**

The word "every" here is a generalization. Alternate translation: "in many cities" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**and he is read (ULT)**

**are read (UST)**

Here "he" refers to Moses, whose name here represents his law. Alternate translation: "and the law is read" or "and they read the law" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [those who proclaim](#)
- [generations](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish meeting places](#)
- [Sabbath those laws](#)
- [Moses wrote, laws prohibiting those things. And](#)
- [proclaiming the laws that](#)
- [a very long time, people](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For [Moses](#) has in every city, from former [generations](#), [those who proclaim](#) him in the [synagogues](#), and he is read on every [Sabbath](#)."

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> In many cities for [a very long time](#), [people](#) have been [proclaiming the laws that Moses wrote, laws prohibiting those things. And](#) every [Sabbath those laws](#) are read in the [Jewish meeting places](#). So if the non-Jews want to know more about those laws, they can find out in our meeting houses."

## Acts 15:22

### General Information:

Here the word “them” refers to Judas and Silas. The word “They” refers to the apostles, elders, and other believers of the church in Jerusalem.

#### the whole church (ULT)

#### all the other believers in Jerusalem (UST)

Here “church” refers to the people who are a part of the church in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “the church in Jerusalem” or “the whole community of believers in Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### So they sent Judas called Barsabbas (ULT)

#### chose Judas, who was also called Barsabbas (UST)

This is the name of a man. “Barsabbas” is a second name that people called him. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- called
- church
- brothers
- chosen
- apostles
- it seemed good
- Paul
- Antioch
- Barnabas
- Silas
- elders
- to send

### Translation Words - UST

- who was also called
- other believers
- believers at Jerusalem
- choose
- apostles
- accepted what James had said. Then they decided that they should
- Paul
- Antioch, to let the believers there know what the leaders at Jerusalem had decided
- Barnabas
- Silas
- other elders, along
- send them, along

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then [it seemed good](#) to the [apostles](#) and the [elders](#), with the whole [church](#), [to send chosen](#) men from among them to [Antioch](#) with [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#). So they sent Judas [called](#) Barsabbas, and [Silas](#), who were leaders among the [brothers](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The [apostles](#) and the [other elders](#), [along](#) with all the [other believers](#) in Jerusalem, [accepted what James had said](#). [Then they decided that they should choose](#) men from among themselves and that they should [send them, along](#) with [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#), to [Antioch, to let the believers there know what the leaders at Jerusalem had decided](#). So they chose Judas, [who was also called](#) Barsabbas, and [Silas](#). These were both leaders among the [believers at Jerusalem](#).



## Acts 15:23

### From the apostles and elders, your brothers, to the Gentile brothers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia: Greetings!

This is the introduction of the letter. Your language may have a way of introducing the author of the letter and to whom it is written.

Alternate translation: "This letter is from your brothers, the apostles and elders. We are writing to you Gentile believers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia. Greetings to you" or "To our Gentile brothers in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia. Greetings from the apostles and elders, your brothers"

### your brothers, to those in Antioch (ULT) who are your fellow believers send our...in Antioch (UST)

Here the word "brothers" refers to fellow believers. By using these words, the apostles and elders assure the Gentile believers that they accept them as fellow believers.

### Cilicia (ULT)

### Cilicia (UST)

This is the name of a province on the coast in Asia Minor north of the Island of Cyprus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your brothers](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [the Gentiles](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [Syria](#)
- [hand](#)
- [elders](#)
- [Greetings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow believers send our](#)
- [believers](#)
- [non-Jewish believers](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [Syria](#)
- [Then they wrote](#)
- [elders](#)
- [greetings to you as we write this to you](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> They wrote this by their [hand](#): "From the [apostles](#) and the [elders, your brothers](#), to those in [Antioch](#), and [Syria](#), and Cilicia, who are [brothers](#) from among [the Gentiles](#). [Greetings](#)!"

### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Then they wrote](#) the following letter that they asked Judas and Silas to take to the [believers](#) at Antioch: "We [apostles](#) and [elders](#) who are your [fellow believers send our greetings to you as we write this to you non-Jewish believers](#) who live in [Antioch](#) and other places in the provinces of [Syria](#) and Cilicia."

## Acts 15:24

### General Information:

Here all instances of “we,” “our,” and “us” refer to the believers in the church in Jerusalem. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#) and [Acts 15:22](#))

**that certain men (ULT)**

**People have told us that some men (UST)**

“that some men”

**with no orders from us (ULT)**

**we had not sent them...that (UST)**

“even though we gave no orders for them to go”

**and have disturbed you with teachings that upset your souls (ULT)**

**you, although...to you. We...troubled you by telling you things...confused your thinking (UST)**

Here “souls” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “have taught things that have troubled you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [souls](#)
- [and have disturbed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [your thinking](#)
- [troubled you by...you things](#)

### ULT

**24** We have heard that certain men have gone out from us, with no orders from us, [and have disturbed](#) you with teachings that upset your [souls](#).

### UST

**24** People have told us that some men from among us went to you, although we had not sent them to you. We heard that they have [troubled you by](#) telling [you things](#) that confused [your thinking](#).

## Acts 15:25

### to choose men (ULT)

### to choose some men and (UST)

The men they sent were Judas called Barsabbas and Silas ([Acts 15:22](#)).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to choose](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [This being so, it seemed good](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [to send](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to choose](#)
- [love very much](#)
- [So after...decided](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [ask them to go](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [This being so, it seemed good](#) to us to meet together [to choose](#) men [to send](#) to you along with our [beloved Barnabas](#) and [Paul](#),

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [So after](#) we met together here, we [decided to choose](#) some men and [ask them to go](#) to you, along with [Barnabas](#) and [Paul](#), whom we [love very much](#).

## Acts 15:26

### the name of our Lord Jesus Christ (ULT) they serve our Lord Jesus the Messiah (UST)

Here “name” refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: “because they believe in our Lord Jesus Christ” or “because they serve our Lord Jesus Christ” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus Christ](#)
- [of...Lord](#)
- [name](#)
- [lives](#)
- [Christ](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [they serve...Lord](#)
- [they serve...Lord](#)
- [lives in danger](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> men who have risked their [lives](#) for the [name](#) of our [Lord Jesus Christ](#).

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Those two have put their [lives in danger](#) because [they serve](#) our [Lord Jesus the Messiah](#).

## Acts 15:27

### General Information:

Here the words “We” and “us” refer to the leaders and believers in the church in Jerusalem. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#) and [Acts 15:22](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This concludes the letter from the Jerusalem church to the Gentile believers in Antioch.

**who will...tell you the same thing in their own words (ULT)**

**They will tell you the same things that we are writing (UST)**

This phrase emphasizes that Judas and Silas will say the same things that the apostles and elders had written. Alternate translation: “who themselves will tell you the same things about which we have written” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Silas](#)
- [will...tell you](#)
- [we are sending](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Silas to you](#)
- [things that we are writing](#)
- [We have...sent](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Therefore [we are sending](#) Judas and [Silas](#), who will also [tell you](#) the same thing in their own words.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> [We have](#) also [sent](#) Judas and [Silas to you](#). They will tell you the same [things that we are writing](#).

## Acts 15:28

**to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things (ULT)  
not be required to obey a lot of burdensome Jewish laws. Instead, we only require you to obey the following instructions (UST)**

This speaks about laws that people need to obey as if they were objects that people carry on their shoulders. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [it seemed good](#)
- [burden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [It seemed right](#)
- [burdensome Jewish laws](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> For [it seemed good](#) to the [Holy Spirit](#) and to us, to lay upon you no greater [burden](#) than these necessary things:

### UST

<sup>28</sup> [It seemed right](#) to the [Holy Spirit](#) and to us that you should not be required to obey a lot of [burdensome Jewish laws](#). Instead, we only require you to obey the following instructions:

## Acts 15:29

### from things sacrificed to idols (ULT)

#### sacrificed to idols (UST)

This means they are not allowed to eat the meat of an animal that someone sacrifices to an idol.

### from blood (ULT)

#### You should not eat blood from animals (UST)

This refers to drinking blood or eating meat from which the blood has not been drained. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### from things strangled (ULT)

#### you should not eat meat from animals that people have killed by strangling them (UST)

A strangled animal was killed but its blood was not drained.

### Farewell (ULT)

#### Farewell (UST)

This announces the end of the letter. Alternate translation: "Goodbye"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [from blood](#)
- [well](#)
- [from sexual immorality](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You should not eat blood from animals](#)
- [is right](#)
- [you should not sleep with someone to whom](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> that you abstain from things sacrificed to idols, and [from blood](#), and from things strangled, and [from sexual immorality](#). If you keep yourselves from these, you will do [well](#). Farewell."

### UST

<sup>29</sup> You should not eat food that people have sacrificed to idols. [You should not eat blood from animals](#), and you should not eat meat from animals that people have killed by strangling them. Also, [you should not sleep with someone to whom](#) you are not married. If you avoid doing these things, you will be doing what [is right](#). Farewell."

## Acts 15:30

### Connecting Statement:

Paul, Barnabas, Judas, and Silas leave for Antioch.

**So indeed they, when they were dismissed, came down to Antioch (ULT)**

**The four men they selected went down from Jerusalem...to Antioch. When all (UST)**

The word "they" refers to Paul, Barnabas, Judas, and Silas. Alternate translation: "So when the four men were dismissed, they came down to Antioch"

**when they were dismissed (ULT)**  
**went down from Jerusalem (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when the apostles and elders dismissed the four men" or "when the believers in Jerusalem sent them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**came down to Antioch (ULT)**  
**went down from Jerusalem...to Antioch. When all (UST)**

The phrase "came down" is used here because Antioch is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Antioch](#)
- [they gathered...together](#)
- [when they were dismissed](#)
- [they delivered](#)
- [letter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Antioch. When all](#)
- [had assembled together](#)
- [went down from Jerusalem](#)
- [they gave](#)
- [letter to them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> So indeed they, [when they were dismissed](#), came down to [Antioch](#); and after [they gathered](#) the multitude [together](#), [they delivered](#) the [letter](#).

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> The four men they selected [went down from Jerusalem](#) and came to [Antioch. When all](#) the believers there [had assembled together](#), [they gave](#) the [letter to them](#).



## Acts 15:31

**they had read it...they rejoiced (ULT)**  
**read...they rejoiced (UST)**

“the believers in Antioch rejoiced”

**because of the encouragement (ULT)**  
**the letter...because its message encouraged them (UST)**

The abstract noun “encouragement” can be expressed with the verb “encourage.” Alternate translation: “because what the apostles and elders wrote encouraged them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they rejoiced](#)
- [encouragement](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they rejoiced](#)
- [encouraged](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> When they had read it, [they rejoiced](#) because of the [encouragement](#).

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> When the believers there read the letter, [they rejoiced](#) because its message [encouraged](#) them.

## Acts 15:32

### and...prophets (ULT)

### and...Being prophets (UST)

Prophets were teachers authorized by God to speak for him.  
Alternate translation: "because they were prophets" or "who were also prophets"

### the brothers (ULT)

### the believers there (UST)

"the fellow believers"

### strengthened them (ULT)

### helped them to trust more strongly (UST)

Helping someone to depend even more on Jesus is spoken of as if they were making them physically stronger.  
(See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [encouraged](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [strengthened them](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers there](#)
- [Being prophets](#)
- [encouraged](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [helped them to trust more strongly](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Both Judas and [Silas](#), also being [prophets](#) themselves, [encouraged](#) the [brothers](#) with many words and [strengthened them](#).

### UST

<sup>32</sup> [Being prophets](#), Judas and [Silas](#) spoke a lot and [encouraged](#) the [believers there](#) and [helped them to trust more strongly](#) in the Lord Jesus.

## Acts 15:33

### Connecting Statement:

Judas and Silas return to Jerusalem while Paul and Barnabas remain in Antioch.

### After they had spent some time there (ULT) time and were...then they (UST)

This speaks about time as if it were a commodity that a person could spend. The word “they” refers to Judas and Silas. Alternate translation: “After they stayed there for a while” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### they were sent away in peace from the brothers (ULT) After Judas and Silas had stayed there for some... believers at Antioch wished...well, and...left (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the brothers sent Judas and Silas back in peace” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the brothers (ULT) believers at Antioch (UST)

This refers to the believers in Antioch.

### to those who had sent them (ULT) ready to return to Jerusalem, the...them (UST)

“to the believers in Jerusalem who sent Judas and Silas” ([Acts 15:22](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [some time there](#)
- [they were sent away](#)
- [those who had sent](#)
- [peace](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers at Antioch](#)
- [time and were](#)
- [and...left](#)
- [ready to return](#)
- [wished...well](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> After they had spent [some time there](#), [they were sent away](#) in [peace](#) from the [brothers](#) to [those who had sent](#) them.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> After Judas and Silas had stayed there for some [time and were ready to return](#) to Jerusalem, the [believers at Antioch](#) [wished](#) them [well](#), and then they [left](#).

## Acts 15:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**34**<sup>[2]</sup> [But it seemed good to Silas to remain there.]

### UST

**34**<sup>[1]</sup> [But Silas thought it would be best for him to stay there.]

## Acts 15:35

### the word of the Lord (ULT)

### the message about the Lord Jesus (UST)

Here “word” stands for a message. Alternate translation: “the message about the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- word of the Lord
- Paul
- Antioch
- Barnabas
- teaching
- proclaiming

#### Translation Words - UST

- Lord Jesus
- message about the Lord Jesus
- Paul
- Antioch. While they were there, they, along
- Barnabas
- teaching people
- preaching to them

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> But [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) stayed in [Antioch](#), [teaching](#) and [proclaiming](#) (along with many others) the [word of the Lord](#).

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> However, [Paul](#) and [Barnabas](#) continued to stay in [Antioch](#). [While they were there, they, along](#) with many others, were [teaching people](#) and [preaching to them](#) the [message about the Lord Jesus](#).

## Acts 15:36

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and Barnabas go on separate journeys.

**Let us return now (ULT)**

**Let us go back and (UST)**

"I suggest we now return"

**and visit the brothers (ULT)**

**visit the fellow believers (UST)**

"care for the brothers" or "offer to help the believers"

**the word of the Lord (ULT)**

**the message about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here "word" stands for the message. Alternate translation: "the message about the Lord" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**and see how they are (ULT)**

**how well they are continuing to believe in the Lord Jesus (UST)**

"learn how they are doing." They want to learn about the current condition of the brothers and how they are holding on to God's truth.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [word of the Lord](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [which we proclaimed](#)
- [Let us return](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Lord Jesus](#)
- [fellow believers](#)
- [message about the Lord Jesus](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [we previously proclaimed](#)
- [Let us go back](#)
- [time](#)

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> But after some [days](#), [Paul](#) said to [Barnabas](#), "[Let us return](#) now and visit the [brothers](#) in every city in [which we proclaimed](#) the [word of the Lord](#), and see how they are."

### UST

<sup>36</sup> After some [time](#) [Paul](#) said to [Barnabas](#), "[Let us go back](#) and visit the [fellow believers](#) in every city where [we previously proclaimed](#) the [message about the Lord Jesus](#). In that way, we will know how well they are continuing to believe in the Lord Jesus."

## Acts 15:37

**to also take with them John who was called Mark**

“to take John, who was also called Mark”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who was called](#)
- [Barnabas](#)
- [John...who was called Mark](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [other name](#)
- [Barnabas agreed with Paul](#)
- [John...whose other name was Mark](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> [Barnabas](#) wanted to also take with them [John who was called Mark](#).

### UST

<sup>37</sup> [Barnabas agreed with Paul](#), and said that he wanted to take [John](#), [whose other name was Mark](#), along with them again.

## Acts 15:38

**Paul...thought it was...good...did not...to take Mark (ULT)**

**Paul told Barnabas that he...thought...it would not be good...had not...that...to take Mark with them, because Mark (UST)**

The words “not good” are used to say the opposite of good. Alternate translation: “Paul thought that taking Mark would be bad” (See: [Litotes](#))

**Pamphylia (ULT)**

**Pamphylia (UST)**

This was a province in Asia Minor. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:10](#).

**did not go further with them in the work (ULT)**

**the region...had not continued to work with them (UST)**

“did not continue to work with them then” or “did not continue to serve with them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [work](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [work](#)
- [Paul told Barnabas that he](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> But [Paul](#) thought it was not good to take Mark, who had left them in Pamphylia and did not go further with them in the [work](#).

### UST

<sup>38</sup> However, [Paul told Barnabas that he](#) thought that it would not be good to take Mark with them, because Mark had left them when they were previously in the region of Pamphylia, and had not continued to [work](#) with them.



## Acts 15:39

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to Barnabas and Paul.

### Then there arose a sharp disagreement (ULT) Paul and Barnabas strongly disagreed with each other about this matter (UST)

The abstract noun “disagreement” can be stated as the verb “disagree.” Alternate translation: “They strongly disagreed with each other” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and Barnabas](#)
- [Cyprus](#)
- [Mark](#)
- [there arose](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Barnabas](#)
- [Island of Cyprus](#)
- [Mark](#)
- [Paul and Barnabas...with each other about this matter](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> Then [there arose](#) a sharp disagreement, so that they separated from each other, [and Barnabas](#) took [Mark](#) with him and sailed away to [Cyprus](#).

### UST

<sup>39</sup> [Paul and Barnabas](#) strongly disagreed [with each other about this matter](#), so they separated from each other. [Barnabas](#) took [Mark](#) along with him. They got on a ship and went to the [Island of Cyprus](#).

**Acts 15:40**

**after he was entrusted by the brothers to the grace of the Lord (ULT)**

**believers there prayed to the Lord God, asking him to graciously help Paul and Silas...of them (UST)**

To entrust to someone means to place the care and responsibility for someone or something to another person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “after the believers in Antioch entrusted Paul to the grace of the Lord” or “after the believers in Antioch prayed for the Lord to take care of Paul and show kindness to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [grace](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [chose](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [after he was entrusted](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [graciously](#)
- [Lord God...Paul and Silas](#)
- [believers there](#)
- [chose](#)
- [Paul...two](#)
- [Silas, who had returned to Antioch, to work with him. The](#)
- [asking him to...help...them](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> But [Paul chose Silas](#) and left, [after he was entrusted](#) by the [brothers](#) to the [grace](#) of the [Lord](#).

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> [Paul chose Silas, who had returned to Antioch, to work with him. The believers there](#) prayed to the [Lord God, asking him to graciously help Paul and Silas](#). Then the [two](#) of [them](#) departed from Antioch.

## Acts 15:41

### he went through (ULT)

### Paul continued traveling with Silas through (UST)

The previous sentence implies that Silas was with Paul. Alternate translation: “they went” or “Paul and Silas went” or “Paul took Silas and went” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### went through Syria and Cilicia

These are provinces or areas in Asia Minor, near the island of Cyprus.

### strengthening the churches (ULT)

### they were helping the groups of believers to trust strongly in the Lord Jesus (UST)

Encouraging the believers in the churches is spoken of as though Paul and Silas were making the believers physically stronger. The word “churches” refers to the groups of believers in Syria and Cilicia. Alternate translation: “encouraging the believers in the churches” or “helping the community of believers to depend even more in Jesus” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [churches](#)
- [Cilicia](#)
- [Syria](#)
- [strengthening](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [groups of believers](#)
- [provinces...Cilicia. In those places](#)
- [Syria](#)
- [they were helping](#)

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> Then he went through [Syria](#) and [Cilicia](#), [strengthening](#) the [churches](#).

15:18 <sup>[1]</sup> Some older versions read, *This is what the Lord says, to whom are known all his deeds from ancient times*.

15:34 <sup>[2]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 34 (See: Acts 15:40).

### UST

<sup>41</sup> Paul continued traveling with Silas through the [provinces](#) of [Syria](#) and [Cilicia](#). [In those places they were helping](#) the [groups of believers](#) to trust strongly in the Lord Jesus.

15:34 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 34 (See: Acts 15:40).

## **Acts 16**

### **Acts 16 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Timothy's circumcision**

Paul circumcised Timothy because they were telling the message of Jesus to Jews and Gentiles. Paul wanted the Jews to know that he respected the law of Moses even though the church leaders in Jerusalem had decided that Christians did not need to be circumcised..

#### **The woman who had a spirit of divination**

Most people want very much to know the future, but the law of Moses said that speaking with the spirits of dead people to learn about the future is a sin. This woman seems to have been able to tell the future very well. She was a slave, and her masters made much money from her work. Paul wanted her to stop sinning, so he told the spirit to leave her. Luke does not say that she began to follow Jesus or tell us anything more about her.

## Acts 16:1

### General Information:

The first, third, and fourth instances of the word “him” refer to Timothy. The second “him” refers to Paul.

This continues the missionary journeys of Paul with Silas. Timothy is introduced into the story and joins Paul and Silas. Verses 1 and 2 give background information about Timothy. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Paul...came...also (ULT)

### Paul...went...and Silas (UST)

Here “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Derbe (ULT)

### Derbe (UST)

This is the name of a city in Asia Minor. See how you translated it in [Acts 14:6](#).

### behold (ULT)

### And take note of this (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the narrative. Your language may have a way of doing this.

### who believed (ULT)

### believer (UST)

The words “in Christ” are understood. Alternate translation: “who believed in Christ” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jewish](#)
- [the son](#)
- [who believed](#)
- [a...disciple](#)
- [named](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [Lystra](#)
- [was a Greek](#)
- [his father](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish](#)
- [mother](#)
- [believer](#)
- [a believer](#)
- [name](#)
- [Timothy lived](#)
- [Lystra](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Paul also came to Derbe and to [Lystra](#); and behold, a certain [disciple named Timothy](#) was there, [the son](#) of a [Jewish woman who believed](#); but [his father was a Greek](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Paul and Silas went to the cities of Derbe and [Lystra](#) and visited the believers there. And take note of this: [a believer](#) whose [name](#) was [Timothy lived](#) in Lystra. His [mother](#) was a [Jewish believer](#), but his [father was a Greek](#).

- a Greek
- father was

## Acts 16:2

**He was well spoken of by the...who were...brothers (ULT)**

**The...said good things about Timothy...believers (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The brothers spoke well of him" or "Timothy had a good reputation among the brothers" or "The brothers said good things about him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by the...who were...brothers (ULT)**

**The...about Timothy...believers (UST)**

Here "brothers" refers to believers. Alternate translation: "by the believers"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [was well spoken of](#)
- [Lystra](#)
- [Iconium](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers](#)
- [said good things](#)
- [Lystra](#)
- [Iconium](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He [was well spoken of](#) by the [brothers](#) who were at [Lystra](#) and [Iconium](#).

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> The [believers](#) in [Lystra](#) and [Iconium](#) [said good things](#) about Timothy,

## Acts 16:3

### and circumcised him (ULT) he circumcised Timothy (UST)

It is possible that Paul himself circumcised Timothy, but it is more likely that he had someone else circumcise Timothy.

### because of the Jews that were in those places

“because of the Jews living in the areas where Paul and Timothy would be traveling”

### for they all knew that his father was a Greek (ULT) they knew that his non-Jewish father had not circumcised him (UST)

Since Greek men did not have their sons circumcised, the Jews would have known Timothy was not circumcised, and they would have rejected Paul and Timothy before hearing their message about Christ. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [and circumcised](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [a Greek](#)
- [father](#)
- [they...knew](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [he circumcised](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [non-Jewish](#)
- [father had not circumcised him](#)
- [they knew](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> [Paul](#) wanted him to travel with him; so he took him [and circumcised](#) him because of the [Jews](#) that were in those places, for [they](#) all [knew](#) that his [father](#) was [a Greek](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> and [Paul](#) wanted to take Timothy with him when he went to other places, so [he circumcised](#) Timothy. He did that so that the [Jews](#) who lived in those places would accept Timothy, because [they knew](#) that his [non-Jewish father had not circumcised him](#).



## Acts 16:4

### General Information:

The word “they” here refers to Paul, Silas ([Acts 15:40](#)), and Timothy ([Acts 16:3](#)).

**to them...to obey (ULT)**

**they...the rules (UST)**

“for the church members to obey” or “for the believers to obey”

**that had been decided by the apostles and elders who were in Jerusalem (ULT)**

**that had been decided by the apostles and elders in Jerusalem (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the apostles and elders in Jerusalem had written” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [apostles](#)
- [had been decided](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to obey](#)
- [elders](#)
- [they delivered](#)
- [instructions](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [apostles](#)
- [had been decided](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [the rules](#)
- [elders](#)
- [they told the believers](#)
- [the rules](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> As they went through the cities, [they delivered](#) to them the [instructions to obey](#), that [had been decided](#) by the [apostles](#) and [elders](#) who were in [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> So Timothy went with Paul and Silas, and they traveled to many other towns. In each town [they told the believers the rules](#) that [had been decided](#) by the [apostles](#) and [elders](#) in [Jerusalem](#).

## Acts 16:5

**the...churches were strengthened in the faith and increased in number each day (ULT)**

**They...helped the believers in those towns to trust more strongly in the Lord Jesus, and every day more people became believers (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The believers became stronger in their faith, and there were more and more people becoming believers every day" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the...churches were strengthened in the faith (ULT)**  
**They...helped the believers in those towns to trust more strongly in the Lord Jesus (UST)**

This speaks of helping someone to believe more confidently as if it were making them physically stronger. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [churches](#)
- [faith](#)
- [increased](#)
- [were strengthened](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [helped the believers in those towns](#)
- [to trust...in the Lord Jesus](#)
- [more people became believers](#)
- [more strongly](#)
- [day](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So indeed the [churches were strengthened](#) in the [faith](#) and [increased](#) in number each [day](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> They [helped the believers in those towns to trust more strongly in the Lord Jesus](#), and every [day more people became believers](#).

## Acts 16:6

### Phrygia (ULT) of Phrygia (UST)

This is a region in Asia. See how you translated this name in [Acts 2:10](#).

### since they had been forbidden by the Holy Spirit (ULT) Paul and his companions were stopped from...by the Holy Spirit (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit had forbidden them” or “the Holy Spirit did not permit them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the word (ULT) the word (UST)

Here “word” stands for “message.” Alternate translation: “the message about Christ” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [word](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [of Asia](#)
- [Galatia](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [word](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [Galatia](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Paul and his companions went through the regions of Phrygia and [Galatia](#), since they had been forbidden by the [Holy Spirit](#) to proclaim the [word](#) in the province [of Asia](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Paul and his companions were stopped from speaking the [word](#) in [Asia](#) by the [Holy Spirit](#), so they went through the regions of Phrygia and [Galatia](#).

## Acts 16:7

### When they came (ULT)

### They arrived (UST)

Here “came” can be translated as “went” or “arrived.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Mysia...Bithynia (ULT)

### Mysia, and they...the province of Bithynia (UST)

These are two more regions in Asia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the Spirit of Jesus (ULT)

### the Spirit of Jesus kept (UST)

“the Holy Spirit”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Jesus](#)
- [Spirit of Jesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Jesus kept](#)
- [Spirit of Jesus kept](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When they came near Mysia, they attempted to go into Bithynia, but the [Spirit of Jesus](#) prevented them.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> They arrived at the border of the province of Mysia, and they wanted to go north into the province of Bithynia, but again the [Spirit of Jesus kept](#) them from going there.

## Acts 16:8

**they came down to the city of Troas (ULT)**  
**arrived at Troas, a city by the sea (UST)**

The phrase “came down” is used here because Troas is lower in elevation than Mysia.

**they came down (ULT)**  
**arrived (UST)**

Here “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the city of Troas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Troas, a city by the sea](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So passing by Mysia, they came down to [the city of Troas](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> So they went through the province of Mysia and arrived at [Troas, a city by the sea](#).

## Acts 16:9

**A vision...appeared to Paul (ULT)**  
**a vision in which he...Paul...saw (UST)**

“Paul saw a vision from God” or “Paul had a vision from God”

**calling him (ULT)**  
**He...calling to Paul (UST)**

“begging him” or “inviting him”

**Come over into Macedonia (ULT)**  
**Come to Macedonia (UST)**

The phrase “Come over” is used because Macedonia is across the sea from Troas.

### Translation Words - ULT

- to Paul
- of Macedonia
- Macedonia
- calling
- A vision

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- from the province of Macedonia
- Macedonia
- calling to Paul
- a vision in which he

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [A vision](#) appeared [to Paul](#) in the night: A certain man [of Macedonia](#) was standing there, and [calling](#) him and saying, “Come over into [Macedonia](#) to help us.”

### UST

<sup>9</sup> That night God gave [Paul a vision in which he](#) saw a man [from the province of Macedonia](#). He was [calling to Paul](#), saying, “Come to [Macedonia](#) and help us!”

**Acts 16:10**

**we set out to go to Macedonia, concluding that God had called us to proclaim the gospel to them (ULT) we left...for Macedonia, because we believed that God had called us to proclaim the good news with the people there (UST)**

Here the words “we” and “us” refer to Paul and his companions including Luke, the author of Acts.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- had called
- God
- Macedonia
- to proclaim the gospel
- we set out
- vision

**Translation Words - UST**

- had called
- God
- for Macedonia
- to proclaim the good news with
- we left
- vision

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> So when Paul had seen the [vision](#), immediately [we set out](#) to go to [Macedonia](#), concluding that [God had called](#) us [to proclaim the gospel](#) to them.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> After he saw the [vision](#), [we left for Macedonia](#), because we believed that [God had called](#) us [to proclaim the good news with](#) the people there.

## Acts 16:11

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and his companions are now in Philippi on their missionary trip. Verse 13 begins the story of Lydia. This short story happens during Paul's travels.

### Samothrace...Neapolis (ULT)

### Samothrace...Neapolis (UST)

These are coastal cities near Phillipi in Macedonia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### we came to Neapolis (ULT)

### to the city of Neapolis (UST)

Here "came to" can be translated as "went to" or "arrived at." (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Troas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We got on a boat and sailed from Troas](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Setting sail therefore from [Troas](#), we made a straight course to Samothrace, and the next day we came to Neapolis.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [We got on a boat and sailed from Troas](#) to Samothrace, and the next day went to the city of Neapolis.



## Acts 16:12

### **a Roman colony (ULT) in Macedonia, where many Roman citizens (UST)**

This is a city outside of Italy where many people who came from Rome lived. The people there had the same rights and freedoms as people who lived in cities in Italy. They could govern themselves and they did not have to pay taxes. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [of Macedonia](#)
- [Philippi](#)
- [for...days](#)

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- [in Macedonia, where many Roman citizens](#)
- [Philippi](#)
- [days](#)

#### **ULT**

<sup>12</sup> From there we went to [Philippi](#), which is the most important city in the district [of Macedonia](#), a Roman colony, and we stayed in this city for several [days](#).

#### **UST**

<sup>12</sup> Then we left Neapolis and went to [Philippi](#). It was a very important city [in Macedonia, where many Roman citizens](#) lived. We stayed in Philippi for many [days](#).

**Acts 16:13**

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a place of prayer
- Sabbath
- who had come together
- city gate
- day

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jewish people gathered to pray there
- Sabbath
- who had gathered to pray, so
- gate down
- day

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> On the [Sabbath day](#) we went outside the [city gate](#) by the river, where we thought there would be [a place of prayer](#). Then we sat down and spoke to the women [who had come together](#).

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> On the [Sabbath day](#) we went outside the city [gate down](#) to the river. We had heard someone say that [Jewish people gathered to pray there](#). When we arrived, we saw some women [who had gathered to pray, so](#) we sat down and began to tell them about Jesus.

**Acts 16:14****Connecting Statement:**

This ends the story of Lydia.

**A certain...woman named Lydia (ULT)****A woman whose name was Lydia was one of the women (UST)**

Here "A certain woman" introduces a new person in the story.

Alternate translation: "There was a woman named Lydia" (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**a seller of purple (ULT)****sold purple cloth (UST)**

Here "cloth" is understood. Alternate translation: "a merchant who sold purple cloth" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**of Thyatira (ULT)****of Thyatira (UST)**

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**who worshiped God (ULT)****worshiped God (UST)**

A worshiper of God is a Gentile who gives praise to God and follows him, but does not obey all of the Jewish laws.

**The Lord opened her heart to pay attention (ULT)****who was listening...The Lord God caused her to pay attention (UST)**

For the Lord to cause someone to pay attention and believe a message is spoken of as if he were opening a person's heart. Alternate translation: "The Lord caused her to listen well and to believe" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**her...opened...heart (ULT)****who was listening...caused her to pay attention (UST)**

Here "heart" stands for a person's mind. Also, the author speaks about the "heart" or "mind" as if it were a box that a person could open so it is ready for someone to fill it. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**to what was said by Paul (ULT)****to the message that Paul spoke, and she believed it (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what Paul said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- God
- heart
- named

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> A certain woman [named](#) Lydia, [a seller of purple](#) from the city of Thyatira, [who worshiped God](#), listened to us. The [Lord](#) opened her [heart](#) to pay attention to what was said by [Paul](#).

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> A woman [whose name](#) was Lydia was one of the women who was listening to Paul. She was from the city of Thyatira, [sold purple cloth](#), and [worshiped God](#). The [Lord God](#) [caused her to pay attention](#) to the message [that Paul](#) spoke, and she believed it.

- who worshiped
- Paul
- a seller of purple

### **Translation Words - UST**

- Lord God
- God
- caused her to pay attention
- whose name
- worshiped
- that Paul
- sold purple cloth

## Acts 16:15

**When she and her household were baptized (ULT)**  
**After Paul and Silas baptized Lydia and the others**  
**who...her house, she (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When they baptized Lydia and members of her household" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**her household (ULT)**  
**the others who...her house, she (UST)**

Here "house" represents the people who live in her house. Alternate translation: "the members of her household" or "her family and household servants" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [she...were baptized](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [faithful](#)
- [you have judged](#)
- [she urged us](#)
- [household](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [baptized Lydia](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [faithful](#)
- [If you believe](#)
- [said to them](#)
- [house, she](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> When [she](#) and her [household were baptized](#), [she urged us](#), saying, "If [you have judged](#) me to be [faithful](#) to the [Lord](#), come into my [house](#) and stay." So she persuaded us.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> After Paul and Silas [baptized Lydia](#) and the others who lived in her [house](#), [she said to them](#), "[If you believe](#) I have been [faithful](#) to the [Lord](#), come into my [house](#) and stay there." After she said this, we stayed at her house.

## Acts 16:16

### General Information:

Background information is given here to explain that this young fortune teller brought much financial gain to her masters by guessing people's futures. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the first event in another short story during Paul's travels; it is about a young fortune teller.

### It came about that (ULT)

### Another day (UST)

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### a certain young woman (ULT)

### a young woman who was a slave. An (UST)

The phrase "a certain" introduces a new person to the story. Alternate translation: "there was a young woman" (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### a spirit of divination (ULT)

### spirit was giving her power to tell the future about people (UST)

An evil spirit spoke to her often about the immediate future of people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- masters
- a spirit
- place of prayer
- gain
- of divination
- a...young woman

### Translation Words - UST

- owners, in return for her
- spirit
- place where people gathered to pray
- People paid money
- was giving her power to tell the future about people
- a young woman who was a slave

### ULT

**16** It came about that, as we were going to the [place of prayer](#), a certain [young woman](#) who had [a spirit of divination](#) encountered us. She brought her [masters](#) much [gain](#) by fortune-telling.

### UST

**16** Another day, while we were going to the [place where people gathered to pray](#), we met [a young woman who was a slave](#). An evil [spirit was giving her power to tell the future about people](#). [People paid money](#) to the men who were her [owners, in return for her](#) telling them what would happen to them.

## Acts 16:17

### the way of salvation (ULT) how God can save you (UST)

How a person can be saved is spoken of here as if it were a way or path that a person walks on. Alternate translation: "how God can save you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- of salvation
- Most High
- Most High God
- Paul
- proclaim...you
- and shouted
- servants

#### Translation Words - UST

- how God can save you
- greatest of all gods
- the rest of...God...greatest of all gods
- Paul
- are telling
- shouting
- serve the...They

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> This woman followed after [Paul](#) and us [and shouted](#), saying, "These men are [servants](#) of the [Most High God](#). They [proclaim](#) to [you](#) the way [of salvation](#)."

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> This young woman followed [Paul](#) and [the rest of](#) us, [shouting](#), "These men [serve the God](#) who is the [greatest of all gods](#)! [They are telling](#) you [how God can save you](#)."

## Acts 16:18

**But Paul, being greatly annoyed by her, and turning (ULT)**

**Finally, Paul became angry, so he turned toward the young woman and (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But she greatly annoyed Paul so he turned around" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in the name of Jesus Christ (ULT)**

**In the name of Jesus the Messiah (UST)**

Here "name" stands for speaking with the authority or as the representative of Jesus Christ. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**it came out right away (ULT)**

**Right away the evil spirit...left...her (UST)**

"the spirit came out immediately"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus Christ
- I command
- spirit
- the name
- Christ
- Paul
- turning
- right away
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- of Jesus the Messiah
- spoke...He said
- spirit that was in her
- the name
- the Messiah
- Paul
- he turned toward the young woman and
- Right away
- days

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> She did this for many [days](#). But [Paul](#), being greatly annoyed by her, and [turning](#) to the [spirit](#), said, "[I command](#) you in [the name of Jesus Christ](#) to come out of her." Then it came out [right away](#).

### UST

<sup>18</sup> She continued to do this for many [days](#). Finally, [Paul](#) became angry, so [he turned toward the young woman and spoke](#) to the evil [spirit that was in her](#). [He said](#), "In [the name of Jesus the Messiah](#), come out of her!" [Right away](#) the evil spirit left her.



**Acts 16:19****her masters (ULT)****her owners (UST)**

“the owners of the slave girl”

**when...saw...her masters...that their opportunity to make money was now gone (ULT)**  
**realized...her owners...that she could no longer earn money for them because she could no longer predict what would happen...of the city were (UST)**

It can be stated clearly why they no longer hoped to make money. Alternate translation: “When her masters saw that she could no longer earn money for them by telling fortunes” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**into the marketplace (ULT)**  
**to the public square where (UST)**

“into the public square.” This is a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services takes place.

**before the authorities (ULT)**  
**to people, so they were angry...the rulers (UST)**

“into the presence of the authorities” or “so that the authorities could judge them”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [masters](#)
- [opportunity](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [to make money](#)
- [authorities](#)
- [they seized](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [owners](#)
- [no longer](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas and](#)
- [earn money](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [They grabbed](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> But when her [masters](#) saw that their [opportunity to make money](#) was now gone, [they seized Paul](#) and [Silas](#) and dragged them into the marketplace before the [authorities](#).

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> And then her [owners](#) realized that she could [no longer earn money](#) for them because she could no longer predict what would happen to people, so they were angry. [They grabbed Paul](#) and [Silas and](#) took them to the public square where the [rulers](#) of the city were.

## Acts 16:20

**When they had brought them to the magistrates (ULT)**  
**The owners of the young woman brought them to the city rulers and (UST)**

“When they had brought them to the judges”

**magistrates (ULT)**  
**the city rulers (UST)**

rulers, judges

**These men are stirring up our city (ULT)**  
**them, “These men...they are greatly troubling the people in our city (UST)**

Here the word “our” refers to the people of the city and includes the magistrates who ruled it. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [are stirring up](#)
- [magistrates](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews, and](#)
- [they are greatly troubling](#)
- [the city rulers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> When they had brought them to the [magistrates](#), they said, “These men [are stirring up](#) our city. They are [Jews](#).”

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> The owners of the young woman brought them to [the city rulers](#) and told them, “These men are [Jews, and they are greatly troubling](#) the people in our city.”

## Acts 16:21

**to accept or practice (ULT)**  
**should follow...to obey (UST)**

“to believe or to obey” or “to accept or to do”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Romans
- to accept
- They proclaim
- are...lawful

### Translation Words - UST

- Romans
- should follow...to obey
- They are teaching that we
- allow

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> [They proclaim](#) customs that are not [lawful](#) for us [to accept](#) or practice as [Romans](#).”

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> [They are teaching that we should follow](#) rules that our laws do not [allow](#) us [Romans to obey!](#)”

## Acts 16:22

### General Information:

Here the words “their” and “them” refer to Paul and Silas. The word “they” here refers to soldiers.

**and commanded them to be beaten with rods (ULT)**  
**told soldiers to tear...to beat...with rods (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “commanded the soldiers to beat them with rods” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and commanded them](#)
- [magistrates](#)
- [garments](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [told soldiers to tear](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [shirts off](#)

### ULT

**22** Then the crowd rose up together against Paul and Silas, and the [magistrates](#) tore their [garments](#) off them [and commanded them](#) to be beaten with rods.

### UST

**22** Many of the crowd joined those who were accusing Paul and Silas, and they started to beat them. Then the Roman [rulers told soldiers to tear](#) the [shirts off](#) Paul and Silas and to beat them with rods.

## Acts 16:23

**many...they had laid...blows upon them (ULT)**  
**So the soldiers beat Paul and...Silas badly with rods.**  
**After that, they took them (UST)**

"had hit them many times with rods"

**and commanded the jailer to keep them securely (ULT)**  
**them...the prison. They told...the jailer to make sure**  
**they did not get out (UST)**

"told the jailer to make sure they did not get out"

**jailer (ULT)**  
**jailer to make sure they did not get out (UST)**

a person responsible for all the people held in the jail or prison

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and commanded](#)
- [prison](#)
- [jailer](#)
- [securely](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the prison. They told](#)
- [the prison. They told](#)
- [jailer to make sure they did not get out](#)
- [jailer to make sure they did not get out](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> When they had laid many blows upon them, they threw them into [prison and commanded](#) the [jailer](#) to keep them [securely](#).

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> So the soldiers beat Paul and Silas badly with rods. After that, they took them and put them into [the prison](#). [They told](#) the [jailer to make sure they did not get out](#).

## Acts 16:24

**After he got this command (ULT)**

**Because the officials had told him to do that, the jailer (UST)**

"he heard this command"

**into...fastened their feet...the stocks (ULT)**

**into...the floor and stretch out their legs...he fastened their ankles...two large pieces of wood (UST)**

"securely locked their feet in the stocks"

**stocks (ULT)**

**two large pieces of wood (UST)**

a piece of wood with holes for preventing a person's feet from moving

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#)
- [After...got](#)
- [prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had told him to do that](#)
- [had told him to do that](#)
- [the prison. There, he made](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> [After](#) he [got](#) this [command](#), the jailer threw them into the inner [prison](#) and fastened their feet in the stocks.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Because the officials [had told him to do that](#), the jailer put Paul and Silas into the room that was farthest inside [the prison. There, he made](#) them sit down on the floor and stretch out their legs. Then he fastened their ankles in holes between two large pieces of wood, so that Paul and Silas could not move their legs.

## Acts 16:25

### General Information:

The word “them” refers to Paul and Silas.

### Connecting Statement:

This continues Paul and Silas’ time in Philippi in prison and tells what happens to their jailer.

### Translation Words - ULT

- to God
- were praying
- Paul
- Silas
- other prisoners

### Translation Words - UST

- God by singing songs
- were praying and
- Paul
- Silas
- other prisoners

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Around midnight [Paul](#) and [Silas were praying](#) and singing hymns [to God](#), and the [other prisoners](#) were listening to them.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> About midnight, [Paul](#) and [Silas were praying and](#) praising [God by singing songs](#). The [other prisoners](#) were listening to them.

## Acts 16:26

**a...earthquake...so that the foundations of the prison were shaken (ULT)**

**earthquake...that shook the jail. The earthquake caused (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "earthquake which shook the foundations of the prison" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the foundations of the prison (ULT)**  
**the jail. The earthquake caused (UST)**

When the foundations shook, this caused the entire prison to shake. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**were opened...all the doors (ULT)**  
**open...all of the doors of (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all the doors opened" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**everyone's chains were unfastened (ULT)**  
**all of the chains that fastened the prisoners to fall off (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everyone's chains came loose" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prison](#)
- [foundations](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [jail. The earthquake caused](#)
- [jail. The earthquake caused](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the [foundations](#) of the [prison](#) were shaken; and immediately all the doors were opened, and everyone's chains were unfastened.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Suddenly there was a very strong earthquake that shook the [jail. The earthquake caused](#) all of the doors of the jail to open and all of the chains that fastened the prisoners to fall off.



**Acts 16:27****General Information:**

Here the word “we” refers to Paul, Silas, and all of the other prisoners but excludes the jailer. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**awakened from sleep...the jailer was (ULT)  
woke up...The jailer...woke up (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The jailer woke up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**and was about to kill himself (ULT)  
to kill himself, because...that the city rulers would kill him if (UST)**

“was ready to kill himself.” The jailer preferred to commit suicide rather than suffer the consequences of letting the prisoners escape.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [prison](#)
- [prisoners](#)
- [sword](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [jail](#)
- [prisoners](#)
- [his sword](#)

**ULT**

**27** Then the jailer was awakened from sleep and saw the open [prison](#) doors; he drew his [sword](#) and was about to kill himself, because he thought that the [prisoners](#) had escaped.

**UST**

**27** The jailer woke up and saw that the doors of the [jail](#) were open by the earthquake. He thought that the prisoners had left the jail, so he pulled out [his sword](#) to kill himself, because he knew that the city rulers would kill him if the [prisoners](#) became free.

## Acts 16:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- with a...voice
- shouted

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul saw the jailer
- and shouted to him
- and shouted to him

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> But [Paul](#) [shouted with a](#) loud [voice](#), saying, "Do not cause harm to yourself, because we are all here."

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> [Paul saw the jailer and shouted to him](#), "Do not kill yourself! We prisoners are all here!"

## Acts 16:29

**the jailer called for...lights (ULT)**  
**shouted to someone...The jailer...to bring torches so he could see who was still in the prison (UST)**

The reason why the jailer needed light can be made explicit.  
 Alternate translation: “called for someone to bring light so he could see who was still in the prison” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**lights (ULT)**  
**The jailer...to bring torches so he could see who was still in the prison (UST)**

The word “lights” stands for something that makes light. Alternate translation: “for torches” or “for lamps” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**and rushed in (ULT)**  
**He rushed in, shaking (UST)**

“quickly entered the jail”

**fell down before Paul and Silas (ULT)**  
**fell down...in front of Paul and Silas (UST)**

The jailer humbled himself by bowing down at the feet of Paul and Silas. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [before Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [lights](#)
- [trembling for fear](#)
- [fell down](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in front of Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [The jailer...to bring torches so he could see who was still in the prison](#)
- [with fear](#)
- [fell down](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> So the jailer called for [lights](#) and rushed in and, [trembling for fear](#), [fell down before Paul](#) and [Silas](#),

### UST

<sup>29</sup> [The jailer](#) shouted to someone [to bring torches so he could see who was still in the prison](#). He rushed in, shaking [with fear](#), and [fell down in front of Paul](#) and [Silas](#).

## Acts 16:30

**brought them out (ULT)**

**he brought Paul and Silas out of the jail (UST)**

“led them outside the jail”

**what must I do to be saved (ULT)**

**what do I need to do to be saved (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “what must I do for God to save me from my sins” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [be saved](#)
- [Sirs](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to be saved](#)
- [Sirs](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> and brought them out and said, “[Sirs](#), what must I do to [be saved](#)?”

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Then he brought Paul and Silas out of the jail and asked: “[Sirs](#), what do I need to do [to be saved](#)?”

## Acts 16:31

**you will be saved (ULT)**

**will be saved (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will save you” or “God will save you from your sins” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**your household (ULT)**

**your household (UST)**

Here “house” stands for the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: “all the members of your household” or “your family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [you will be saved](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Believe](#)
- [household](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [will be saved](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Trust](#)
- [household](#)

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> They said, “[Believe](#) in the [Lord](#) Jesus, and [you will be saved](#), you and your [household](#).”

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> They answered, “[Trust](#) in the [Lord](#) Jesus, and you and your [household will be saved](#).”

## Acts 16:32

### General Information:

Here the first use of the word “they” as well as the words “their” and “them” refer to Paul and Silas. Compare [Acts 16:25](#). The last use of the word “they” refers to the people in the jailers’ household. The words “him,” “his,” and “he” refer to the jailer.

### They spoke...the word of the Lord to him (ULT) spoke about the Lord Jesus to him (UST)

Here “word” stands for a message. Alternate translation: “They told him the message about the Lord Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [word of the Lord](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Lord Jesus to him](#)
- [spoke...about the Lord Jesus to him](#)
- [household](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> They spoke the [word of the Lord](#) to him, together with everyone in his [house](#).

### UST

<sup>32</sup> Then Paul and Silas [spoke about the Lord Jesus to him](#) and everyone in his [household](#).

## Acts 16:33

**he and those in his entire house were baptized immediately (ULT)**

**Paul and Silas baptized him and everyone in his household (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Paul and Silas baptized the jailer and all the members of his household" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were baptized](#)
- [hour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul and Silas baptized](#)
- [time in the middle](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Then the jailer took them at the same [hour](#) of the night, and washed their wounds, and he and those in his entire house [were baptized](#) immediately.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> Then the jailer washed their wounds, right at that [time in the middle](#) of the night. Then [Paul and Silas baptized](#) him and everyone in his household.

## Acts 16:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- that he had believed in
- he rejoiced greatly
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- in God
- because they had believed
- were all very happy
- house

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Then he both brought Paul and Silas up into his [house](#) and he set food before them, and [he rejoiced greatly](#) with those of his house, [that he had believed in God](#).

### UST

<sup>34</sup> Then the jailer took Paul and Silas into his [house](#) and gave them food to eat. He and all in his household [were all very happy because they had believed in God](#).



## Acts 16:35

### General Information:

This is the last event in the story of Paul and Silas in Philippi ([Acts 16:12](#)).

### Now (ULT)

### The next morning (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke tells the last event in the story that started in [Acts 16:16](#).

### sent word...to the guards (ULT)

### told some soldiers to go...to...jailer (UST)

Here "word" stands for "message" or "command." Alternate translation: "sent a message to the guards" or "sent a command to the guards" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### sent word (ULT)

### told some soldiers to go (UST)

Here "sent" means the magistrates told someone to go tell the guards their message.

### to the...Let those...men...go (ULT)

### to...jailer, "Let those two prisoners go now (UST)

"Release those men" or "Allow those men to leave"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sent word](#)
- [magistrates](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [told some soldiers to go](#)
- [city rulers...to the prison](#)
- [The next morning](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Now when it was [day](#), the [magistrates sent word](#) to the guards, saying, "Let those men go."

### UST

<sup>35</sup> [The next morning](#), the [city rulers told some soldiers to go to the prison](#) to say to the jailer, "Let those two prisoners go now!"

## Acts 16:36

**come out (ULT)**  
**the prison (UST)**

“come outside of the jail”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- reported
- have sent word to me
- peace
- magistrates

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- and told
- let you go
- peace
- city rulers

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> The jailer [reported](#) the words to [Paul](#), saying, “The [magistrates have sent word to me](#) to let you go. Now therefore come out, and go in [peace](#).”

### UST

<sup>36</sup> When the jailer heard this, he went [and told Paul](#), “The [city rulers](#) have told me to [let you go](#). So you two can leave the prison now and go in [peace](#)!”

## Acts 16:37

### General Information:

All of the times the word “they” is used and the first time “them” is used, the words refer to the magistrates. The word “themselves” refers to the magistrates. The second time the word “them” is used, it refers to Paul and Silas. The word “us” refers only to Paul and Silas. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

#### said to them (ULT)

#### said to...jailer (UST)

Probably Paul is speaking to the jailer, but he intends for the jailer to tell the magistrates what he says. Alternate translation: “said to the jailer” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### They have publicly beaten us (ULT)

#### beat us in front of a crowd, even though (UST)

Here “They” refers to the magistrates who commanded their soldiers to beat them. Alternate translation: “The magistrates ordered their soldiers to beat us in public” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### without a trial, even though we are Romans citizens—and they threw us into prison (ULT) we are Roman citizens, and put us in prison...anyone! We will not accept that! Those city rulers must...free (UST)

“men who are Roman citizens, and they had their soldiers put us in jail though they had not proven in court that we were guilty”

#### Do they...want to send us away secretly? No (ULT)

#### send us away without telling (UST)

Paul uses a question to emphasize that he will not allow the magistrates to send them out the city in secret after they had mistreated Paul and Silas. Alternate translation: “I will certainly not let them send us out of the city in secret!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Do they...want to send us away secretly? No (ULT)

#### send us away without telling (UST)

Here “themselves” is used for emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Romans](#)
- [But Paul](#)
- [Do they...want to send...away](#)
- [prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Roman citizens](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> [But Paul](#) said to them, “They have publicly beaten us without a trial, even though we are [Romans](#) citizens—and they threw us into [prison](#). [Do they](#) now [want to send](#) us [away](#) secretly? No indeed! Instead, let them come themselves and lead us out.”

### UST

<sup>37</sup> But [Paul](#) said to the jailer, “The city rulers told men to beat us in front of a crowd, even though we are [Roman citizens](#), and put us in [prison](#). And now they want to [send](#) us [away](#) without telling anyone! We will not accept that! Those city rulers must come themselves and free us from prison.”

- Paul
- send...away
- prison

**Acts 16:38**

**they were afraid...when they heard that Paul and Silas were Romans (ULT)**

**they were afraid because...When...heard that Paul... were Roman citizens (UST)**

To be a Roman meant to be a legal citizens of the Empire. Citizenship provided freedom from torture and the right to a fair trial. The city leaders were afraid that more important Roman authorities might learn how the city leaders had mistreated Paul and Silas. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- they were afraid
- Romans
- reported
- magistrates

**Translation Words - UST**

- they were afraid because
- Roman citizens
- and told
- rulers what Paul

**ULT**

<sup>38</sup> Then the guards [reported](#) these words to the [magistrates](#), and when they heard that Paul and Silas were [Romans](#), [they were afraid](#).

**UST**

<sup>38</sup> So the soldiers went [and told](#) the city [rulers what Paul](#) had said. When the city rulers heard that Paul and Silas were [Roman citizens](#), [they were afraid because](#) they had done the wrong thing.

## Acts 16:39

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and apologized](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [told...they were sorry for what they had done to them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> So the magistrates came [and apologized](#) to them and brought them out, asking them to go away from the city.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> So the city rulers came to Paul and Silas and [told](#) them that [they were sorry for what they had done to them](#). The city rulers brought them out of the prison and asked them to leave the city.

## Acts 16:40

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to Paul and Silas. The word “them” refers to the believers in Philippi.

This is the end of Paul and Silas’ time in Philippi. (See: [End of Story](#))

**and came to the house of Lydia (ULT)**  
**they went to Lydia’s house. There they (UST)**

Here “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

**the house of Lydia (ULT)**  
**Lydia’s house. There they (UST)**

“the home of Lydia”

**Paul and Silas saw the brothers (ULT)**  
**met with her (UST)**

Here “brothers” refers to believers whether male or female. Alternate translation: “saw the believers” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [them](#)
- [they encouraged](#)
- [prison](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers to continue trusting in the Lord Jesus](#)
- [They encouraged](#)
- [prison](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> So Paul and Silas went out of the [prison](#) and came to the house of Lydia. When Paul and Silas saw the brothers, [they encouraged them](#) and then departed from the city.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> After Paul and Silas left the [prison](#), they went to Lydia’s house. There they met with her and the other believers. [They encouraged](#) the [believers to continue trusting in the Lord Jesus](#), and then the two apostles left the city of Philippi.

## Acts 17

### Acts 17 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Misunderstandings about the Messiah

The Jews expected the Christ or Messiah to be a powerful king because the Old Testament says so many times. But it also says many times that the Messiah would suffer, and that was what Paul was telling the Jews. (See: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

#### The religion of Athens

Paul said that the Athenians were “religious,” but they did not worship the true God. They worshiped many different false gods. In the past they had conquered other peoples and begun to worship the gods of the people they had conquered. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

In this chapter Luke describes for the first time how Paul told the message of Christ to people who knew nothing of the Old Testament.



## Acts 17:1

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to Paul and Silas. Compare [Acts 16:40](#).  
The word “them” refers to the Jews at the synagogue in Thessalonica.

### Connecting Statement:

This continues the story of Paul, Silas, and Timothy’s missionary trip. They arrive in Thessalonica, apparently without Luke, since he says “they” and not “we.”

### Now (ULT) and (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke, the author, starts to tell a new part of the story.

### when they had passed through (ULT) They traveled through (UST)

“traveled through”

### the cities of Amphipolis and Apollonia (ULT) the cities of Amphipolis and Apollonia (UST)

These are coastal cities in Macedonia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### they came to the city of Thessalonica (ULT) came to the city of Thessalonica (UST)

Here “came” can be translated as “went” or “arrived.” Alternate translation: “they came to the city” or “they arrived at the city” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a synagogue](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [the city of Thessalonica](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [There was a...meeting place there](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [Thessalonica](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now when they had passed through the cities of Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to [the city of Thessalonica](#), where there was [a synagogue](#) of the [Jews](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> They traveled through the cities of Amphipolis and Apollonia and came to the city of [Thessalonica](#). [There was a Jewish meeting place there](#).

## Acts 17:2

**as...was...his custom (ULT)**

**as he...the meeting place...usually did (UST)**

“as his habit was” or “as his common practice was.” Paul usually went to the synagogue on the Sabbath when Jews would be present.

**for three Sabbath days (ULT)**

**On the sabbath...For...three (UST)**

“on each Sabbath day for three weeks”

**reasoned with them from the scriptures (ULT)**

**He spoke to the people about how the scriptures said that Jesus would be the Messiah (UST)**

Paul explained what the scriptures means in order to prove to the Jews that Jesus is the Messiah. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**reasoned with them (ULT)**

**He spoke to the people about how (UST)**

“gave them reasons” or “debated with them” or “discussed with them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scriptures](#)
- [Sabbath days](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [scriptures](#)
- [On the sabbath](#)
- [Paul](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> [Paul](#), as his custom was, went to them, and for three [Sabbath days](#) reasoned with them from the [scriptures](#).

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> [On the sabbath Paul](#) went to the meeting place as he usually did. For three weeks he went there on each sabbath day. He spoke to the people about how the [scriptures](#) said that Jesus would be the Messiah.

## Acts 17:3

### General Information:

Here the word "He" refers to Paul ([Acts 17:2](#)).

### He was opening the scriptures (ULT)

### He showed from the scriptures (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) to explain the scriptures in a way that people can understand is spoken of as if Paul were opening something so people can see what is inside of it, or 2) Paul was literally opening a book or scroll and reading from it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### it was necessary (ULT)

### would have to die (UST)

"it was part of God's plan"

### to rise again (ULT)

### come alive again. He said (UST)

"to come back to life"

### from the dead (ULT)

### became alive again (UST)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus...Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [proclaim](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [to rise again](#)
- [to suffer](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [man Jesus...Messiah. He died](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [Messiah. He died](#)
- [would](#)
- [became alive again](#)
- [come alive again. He said](#)
- [would have to die](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He was opening the scriptures and explaining that it was necessary for the [Christ to suffer](#) and [to rise again](#) from [the dead](#). He said, "This [Jesus](#) whom I [proclaim](#) to you is the [Christ](#)."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> He showed from the scriptures that the prophets wrote that the [Messiah would have to die](#) and [come alive again](#). [He said](#), "This [man Jesus](#) is the [Messiah](#). [He died](#) and [became alive again](#), just like the prophets said he [would](#)."

## Acts 17:4

**the Jews were persuaded (ULT)**  
**believed what Paul had said...Paul and Silas (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Jews believed” or “the Jews understood” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**joined Paul (ULT)**  
**began to meet with Paul (UST)**

“became associated with Paul”

**of devout Greeks (ULT)**  
**non-Jewish people and...who worshiped God (UST)**

This refers to Greeks who worship God but have not converted to Judaism through circumcision.

**women...not a few of the leading (ULT)**  
**women...important...the message about Jesus (UST)**

This is an understatement to emphasize that many leading women joined them. Alternate translation: “many leading women” (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of devout](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [Greeks](#)
- [were persuaded](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who worshiped God](#)
- [with Paul](#)
- [Silas. There were also](#)
- [non-Jewish people and](#)
- [believed what Paul had said](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Some of the Jews [were persuaded](#) and joined [Paul](#) and [Silas](#), including both a large number [of devout Greeks](#), and not a few of the leading women.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Some of the Jews there [believed what Paul had said](#) and began to meet [with Paul](#) and [Silas](#). [There were also](#) many [non-Jewish people and](#) important women [who worshiped God](#) who also believed the message about Jesus, and they also began to meet with Paul and Silas.

## Acts 17:5

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to the unbelieving Jews and wicked men from the marketplace.

**became jealous (ULT)**  
**became angry because many people believed what Paul taught. So they went (UST)**

The feeling of jealousy is spoken of as if jealousy were actually moving the person. Alternate translation: “feeling very jealous” or “feeling very angry” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**became jealous (ULT)**  
**became angry because many people believed what Paul taught. So they went (UST)**

It can be stated explicitly that these Jews were jealous because some of the Jews and Greeks believed Paul’s message. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**took...certain wicked men (ULT)**  
**to the public square...some evil...men to follow them. In this way, the leaders of (UST)**

Here “took” does not mean the Jews took these people by force. It means the Jews persuaded these wicked men to help them.

**certain wicked men (ULT)**  
**some evil...men to follow them. In this way, the leaders of (UST)**

“some evil men.” The word “men” here refers specifically to males.

**from the marketplace (ULT)**  
**to the public square...men to follow them. In this way, the leaders of (UST)**

“from the public square.” This is a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services take place.

**and set the city in an uproar (ULT)**  
**the Jews gathered a crowd...and others ran (UST)**

Here “the city” stands for the people in the city. Alternate translation: “caused the people of the city to be in an uproar” or “caused the people of the city to riot” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**they assaulted the house (ULT)**  
**the Jews gathered a crowd...and others ran...to the house (UST)**

“Violently attacking the house.” This probably means the people were throwing rocks at the house and trying to break down the door of the house.

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But the [unbelieving Jews became jealous](#), and took certain [wicked](#) men from the marketplace, and gathered a crowd together, and set the city in an uproar. Then they assaulted the [house](#) of Jason, [wanting](#) to bring Paul and Silas out to the [people](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But some leaders of the [Jews became angry because many people believed what Paul taught. So they went](#) to the public square and persuaded some [evil](#) men to follow them. In this way, the leaders of the Jews gathered a crowd and caused them to make a lot of noise. Those Jews and others ran to the [house](#) of a man named Jason where Paul and Silas were staying. [They wanted](#) to bring Paul and Silas outside to where the [crowd of people were](#).

**of Jason (ULT)**

**of a man named Jason where Paul and Silas were staying (UST)**

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**to bring...out to the people (ULT)**

**to bring Paul and Silas outside to where the crowd of people were (UST)**

Possible meanings or "people" are 1) a governmental or legal group of citizens gathered to make a decision or 2) a mob.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [unbelieving Jews](#)
- [became jealous](#)
- [wicked](#)
- [people](#)
- [wanting](#)
- [house](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jews](#)
- [became angry because many people believed what Paul taught. So they went](#)
- [evil](#)
- [crowd of people were](#)
- [They wanted](#)
- [house](#)

**Acts 17:6****certain other brothers (ULT)****some of the other believers who were with him (UST)**

Here “brothers” refers to believers. Alternate translation: “some other believers”

**before the officials of the city (ULT)****to where the city rulers were (UST)**

“in the presence of the officials”

**men who...These...have turned...upside down (ULT)****The men who...They...have caused trouble everywhere in (UST)**

The Jewish leaders were speaking and the phrase, “These men,” refers to Paul and Silas.

**have turned the world upside down (ULT)****have caused trouble everywhere in the world (UST)**

This phrase is another way of saying Paul and Silas were causing trouble everywhere they went. The Jewish leaders were exaggerating the influence Paul and Silas were having with their teaching. Alternate translation: “caused trouble everywhere in the world” or “caused trouble everywhere they have gone” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [brothers](#)
- [world](#)
- [crying](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [believers who were with him](#)
- [world](#)
- [said](#)

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> But when they did not find them, they dragged Jason and certain other [brothers](#) before the officials of the city, [crying](#), “These men who have turned the [world](#) upside down have come here also.

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> They discovered that Paul and Silas were not at the house, but they found Jason and grabbed him. They dragged him and some of the other [believers who were with him](#) to where the city rulers were. They [said](#), “The men who have caused trouble everywhere in the [world](#) have come here also,

## Acts 17:7

**whom...Jason...has welcomed (ULT)**

**Jason has asked them to stay at his house (UST)**

This phrase signals that Jason was in agreement with the apostles' troubling message.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of Caesar](#)
- [whom...has welcomed](#)
- [king](#)
- [decrees](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [are acting...emperor](#)
- [has asked them to stay at his house](#)
- [king](#)
- [are acting...emperor](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> All these men whom Jason [has welcomed](#) act against the [decrees of Caesar](#), saying there is another [king](#)—[Jesus](#)."

### UST

<sup>7</sup> and this fellow Jason [has asked them to stay at his house](#). They [are acting](#) against the [emperor](#). They say that another person, whose name is [Jesus](#), is the real [king](#)!"



## Acts 17:8

### were disturbed (ULT)

### When (UST)

“were worried”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were disturbed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [When](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So the crowd and the officials of the city [were disturbed](#) when they heard these things.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [When](#) the crowd of people that had gathered and the city rulers heard that, they became very angry and excited.

## Acts 17:9

**But after the officials took money as security from Jason...the rest of them (ULT)**

**The city rulers made Jason...the other believers pay a fine and told them that they would give the money back to...other (UST)**

Jason and the others had to pay the money to the city officials as a promise of good behavior; that money might be returned if all went well or it might be used to repair the damages brought on by bad behavior.

**the rest of them (ULT)**

**the other believers...other (UST)**

The words "the rest" refers to other believers that the Jews brought before the officials.

**they let them go (ULT)**

**them if Paul and Silas did not cause any more trouble. Then the city rulers let Jason and the...believers go (UST)**

"the officials let Jason and the other believers go"

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But after the officials took money as security from Jason and the rest of them, they let them go.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> The city rulers made Jason and the other believers pay a fine and told them that they would give the money back to them if Paul and Silas did not cause any more trouble. Then the city rulers let Jason and the other believers go.

## Acts 17:10

### General Information:

Paul and Silas travel on to the town of Berea.

**the...brothers (ULT)**

**the...believers (UST)**

The word “brothers” here refers to men and women believers.

Alternate translation: “the believers” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [both Paul](#)
- [Berea](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [sent](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [meeting place](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [believers](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Berea](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [sent...out of Thessalonica](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So that very night the [brothers sent both Paul](#) and [Silas](#) to [Berea](#). When they arrived there, they went into the [synagogue](#) of the [Jews](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So that same night, the [believers sent Paul](#) and [Silas out of Thessalonica](#) to the town of [Berea](#). When Paul and Silas arrived there, they went to the [Jewish meeting place](#).

## Acts 17:11

### Now (ULT) but the Jews (UST)

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke tells background information about the people in Berea and how they were willing to listen to Paul and examine what he said. (See: [Background Information](#))

### these people...were more noble than (ULT) they...were very...listened closely (UST)

These “well-born” people were willing to think more objectively about new ideas than other people. Alternate translation: “more open minded” or “more willing to listen”

### received the word (ULT) willing to listen...to the message about Jesus (UST)

Here “word” refers to a teaching. Alternate translation: “listened to the teaching” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### with all readiness of mind (ULT) Most...willing to listen...message about Jesus (UST)

These Bereans were prepared to examine earnestly Paul’s teachings about the scripture.

### examining the scriptures daily (ULT) Every day they read the scriptures for themselves to find out (UST)

“carefully reading and evaluating the scriptures every day”

### these things were so (ULT) lived in Berea...so...Jesus was true (UST)

“the things Paul said were true”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [word](#)
- [scriptures](#)
- [Thessalonica](#)
- [received](#)
- [examining](#)
- [more noble than](#)
- [daily](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [message about Jesus](#)
- [scriptures for themselves to find out](#)
- [Thessalonica had not been...to God’s message](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Now these people were [more noble than](#) those in [Thessalonica](#), for they [received](#) the [word](#) with all readiness of mind, [examining](#) the [scriptures daily](#) to see whether these things were so.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Most of the Jews in [Thessalonica](#) [had not been willing to listen to God’s message](#), but the Jews who lived in Berea were very willing to listen, so they [listened closely](#) to the [message about Jesus](#). Every [day they read](#) the [scriptures for themselves to find out](#) if what Paul said about Jesus was true.

- willing to listen
- they read
- listened closely
- day

## Acts 17:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [believed](#)
- [Greek](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believed in Jesus](#)
- [non-Jewish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Therefore indeed many of them [believed](#), including some influential [Greek](#) women and not a few men.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Because of Paul's teaching, many of the Jewish people [believed in Jesus](#), and also some of the important [non-Jewish](#) women and many non-Jewish men believed in him.

## Acts 17:13

### General Information:

Athens is down the coast from Barea which is in Macedonia. Athens was one of the most important cities in Greece. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**they went there and stirred up (ULT)**  
**they went to Berea and said things to...there...made them very angry with (UST)**

This speaks about their agitating people as though it were a person stirring a liquid and causing the things at the bottom of the liquid to rise to the surface. Alternate translation: “went there and agitated” or “went there and disturbed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**troubled the crowds (ULT)**  
**the people...made them very angry with (UST)**

“and worried the crowds” or “caused dread and fear among the people”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [of God](#)
- [word of God](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Berea](#)
- [of Thessalonica](#)
- [was...proclaiming](#)
- [troubled](#)
- [learned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews in](#)
- [God](#)
- [message from God...that...Paul](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Berea](#)
- [But...the...Thessalonica heard](#)
- [was...preaching](#)
- [made them very angry with](#)
- [But...the...Thessalonica heard](#)

### ULT

**13** But when the [Jews of Thessalonica](#) [learned](#) that [Paul](#) was also [proclaiming](#) the [word of God](#) at [Berea](#), they went there and stirred up and [troubled](#) the crowds.

### UST

**13** [But](#) then the [Jews in Thessalonica](#) [heard](#) that [Paul](#) was in [Berea](#) [preaching](#) the [message from God](#) about Jesus. So they went to Berea and said things to the people there that [made them very angry with Paul](#).

## Acts 17:14

### brothers (ULT)

#### Some of the believers in Berea took Paul (UST)

The word “brothers” here refers to men and women believers.  
Alternate translation: “believers” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### to go to the sea (ULT)

#### to the seacoast to go to another city (UST)

“to go to the coast.” From here Paul would probably sail to another city.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [both Silas](#)
- [sea](#)
- [sent...away](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Some of the believers in Berea took Paul](#)
- [Silas and Timothy stayed in Berea](#)
- [Some of the believers in Berea took Paul](#)
- [Silas and Timothy stayed in Berea](#)
- [seacoast](#)
- [Some of the believers in Berea took Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But then immediately, the [brothers sent Paul away](#) to go to the [sea](#), but [both Silas](#) and [Timothy](#) stayed there.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [Some of the believers in Berea took Paul](#) to the [seacoast](#) to go to another city. But [Silas and Timothy stayed in Berea](#).



## Acts 17:15

**who were leading Paul (ULT)**

**Paul and...other men arrived at the coast (UST)**

“who were accompanying Paul” or “who were going along with Paul”

**they received from Paul instructions for Silas and Timothy (ULT)**

**Athens. Then Paul said...to the men who had come with...Silas and Timothy (UST)**

“he told them to instruct Silas and Timothy.” This can also be stated as a direct quotation as in the UST. (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [instructions](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [they received from Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Athens. Then Paul said](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [Paul and](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [Athens. Then Paul said](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Those who were leading [Paul](#) took him as far as the city of Athens. After [they received from Paul instructions](#) for [Silas](#) and [Timothy](#) that they should come to him as quickly as possible, they returned home.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> When [Paul and](#) the other men arrived at the coast, they got on a boat and went to the city of [Athens. Then Paul said](#) to the men who had come with him, “Tell [Silas](#) and [Timothy](#) to come to me here in Athens as soon as they can.” Then those men left Athens and returned to Berea.

## Acts 17:16

### General Information:

This is another part of the story of Paul and Silas' travels. Paul is now in Athens where he is waiting for Silas and Timothy to join him.

### Now (ULT) and (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

**his spirit was provoked within him as he saw the city full of idols (ULT)**

**In...he walked around in the city. He became very distressed because there were many idols in the city (UST)**

Here "spirit" stands for Paul himself. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he became upset because he saw that there were idols everywhere in the city" or "seeing the idols everywhere in the city upset him" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [was provoked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He became very distressed because there](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [He became very distressed because there](#)

### ULT

**16** Now while [Paul](#) was waiting for them in Athens, his [spirit was provoked](#) within him as he saw the city full of idols.

### UST

**16** In Athens, [Paul](#) waited for Silas and Timothy to come. In the meantime, he walked around in the city. [He became very distressed because there](#) were many idols in the city.

## Acts 17:17

### he...reasoned (ULT) talked (UST)

“he debated” or “he discussed.” This means that there is interaction from the listeners rather than only his preaching. They are talking with him as well.

### with the...others who worshiped God (ULT) Jewish...had accepted what the Jews believe (UST)

This refers to Gentiles (non-Jews) who give praise to God and follow him but do not obey all of the Jewish laws.

### in the...marketplace (ULT) the...about Jesus with the Jews, and also...public square (UST)

“in the public square.” This is a public place of business, where buying and selling of goods, cattle, or services take place.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [others who worshiped God](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [meeting place](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [had accepted what the Jews believe](#)
- [day](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> So he indeed reasoned in the [synagogue](#) with the [Jews](#) and [others who worshiped God](#), as well as in the marketplace every [day](#) with those whom he met there.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> So he went to the [Jewish meeting place](#) and talked about Jesus with the Jews, and also with the Greeks who [had accepted what the Jews believe](#). He also went to the public square every [day](#) and talked to the people whom he met there.

## Acts 17:18

### General Information:

Here the words “him,” “He,” “and” “he” refer to Paul.

### **Epicurean and Stoic philosophers (ULT)** **Epicureans...and they called others Stoics. They told Paul what they believed (UST)**

These people believed all things were formed by chance and that the gods were too busy being happy to be bothered with governing the universe. They rejected the resurrection and wanted only simple pleasures. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **Stoic philosophers (ULT)** **Stoics. They told Paul what they believed (UST)**

These people believed freedom comes from resigning oneself to fate. They rejected a personal loving God and the resurrection. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **encountered him (ULT)** **Paul met some teachers who (UST)**

“happened upon him”

### **Some of them...said (ULT)** **Then some of them...said to one another (UST)**

“Some of the philosophers said”

### **What is this babbler trying (ULT)** **liked to talk about...and they asked him what he believed...He is (UST)**

The word “babbler” was used to refer to birds picking up seeds as food. It refers negatively to a person who only knows a little bit of information. The philosophers said Paul had bits of information which were not worth listening to. Alternate translation: “What is this uneducated person” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **others (ULT)** **what people believe (UST)**

“Other philosophers said”

### **He seems...one who proclaims (ULT)** **saying something about some strange gods (UST)**

“He seems to be a proclaimer” or “He seems to be on a mission to add people to his philosophy”

### ULT

**18** But also some of the Epicurean and Stoic philosophers encountered him. Some of them said, “What is this babbler trying to say?” But others said, “He seems to be one who proclaims foreign gods,” because [he was proclaiming the gospel about Jesus](#) and the [resurrection](#).

### UST

**18** Paul met some teachers who liked to talk about what people believe. People called some of them Epicureans, and they called others Stoics. They told Paul what they believed, and they asked him what he believed. Then some of them said to one another, “He is saying something about some strange gods.” They said that because Paul was telling [them that Jesus had died and then had become alive again](#).

**foreign gods (ULT)**

**saying something about some strange gods (UST)**

This is not in the sense of “odd,” but in the sense of “foreign,” that is, gods that Greeks and Romans do not worship or know about.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- resurrection
- about Jesus
- he was proclaiming the gospel

**Translation Words - UST**

- and then had become alive again
- them that Jesus had died
- and then had become alive again

## Acts 17:19

### General Information:

The words “him,” “He” and “you” refer to Paul ([Acts 17:18](#)). Here the words “They” and “we” refer to the Epicurean and Stoic philosophers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### They took...brought him

This does not mean they arrested Paul. The philosophers invited Paul to speak formally to their leaders.

### to the Areopagus (ULT)

### to the place where the city leaders met (UST)

The “Areopagus” was the place where the leaders met. Alternate translation: “to the leaders that met on the Areopagus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the Areopagus...saying (ULT)

### the place where the city leaders met...they said to Paul (UST)

Here the leaders on the Areopagus are speaking. This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “the Areopagus. The leaders said to Paul”

### Areopagus (ULT)

### place where the city leaders met (UST)

This is a prominent rock outcropping or hill in Athens upon which the supreme court of Athens may have met. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [teaching](#)
- [we know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [teaching people](#)
- [what is](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> They took Paul and brought him to the Areopagus, saying, “May [we know](#) what is this new [teaching](#) which you were speaking?”

### UST

<sup>19</sup> So they took him to the place where the city leaders met. When they arrived there, they said to Paul, “Please tell us, [what is](#) this new message that you are [teaching people](#)?”

## Acts 17:20

**For you bring some strange things to our ears (ULT)  
teaching some things...we do not understand...we  
(UST)**

Paul's teachings about Jesus and the resurrection are spoken of as an object that a person can bring to another person. Here "ears" refers to what they hear. Alternate translation: "For you teachings some things that we have never heard before" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to know

### Translation Words - UST

- so...want to know what they mean

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> For you bring some strange things to our ears. Therefore, we want [to know](#) what these things mean."

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> You are teaching some things that we do not understand, [so](#) we [want to know what they mean.](#)"

**Acts 17:21**

**Now all the Athenians and the strangers living there (ULT)**

**The people of Athens and also the people from other regions who lived there loved (UST)**

The word “all” is a generalization referring to many. Alternate translation: “Now many of the Athenians and the strangers living there” or “Now many of the Athenians and the strangers living there” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the Athenians...all (ULT)**

**The people of Athens...also the...who (UST)**

“Athenians” are people from Athens, a city near the coast below Macedonia (present day Greece). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the...strangers (ULT)**

**also the...who...people from other regions (UST)**

“the foreigners”

**spent their time in nothing but either telling about or listening to (ULT)**

**people from other regions...to talk about what was (UST)**

Here “time” is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could spend. Alternate translation: “used their time doing nothing but either telling or listening” or “were always doing nothing but telling or listening” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**spent their time in nothing but either telling about or listening to (ULT)**

**people from other regions...to talk about what was (UST)**

The phrase “spent their time in nothing” is an exaggeration. Alternate translation: “did not do much but tell or listen” or “spent much of their time telling or listening” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**telling or listening about something new**

“discussing new philosophical ideas” or “talking about what was new to them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [spent their time](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to talk about](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> (Now all the Athenians and the strangers living there [spent their time](#) in nothing but either telling about or listening to something new.)

### UST

<sup>21</sup> The people of Athens and also the people from other regions who lived there loved [to talk about](#) what was new to them.



## Acts 17:22

### General Information:

Paul begins his speech to the philosophers on the Areopagus.

**in every way...are very religious (ULT)**

**you are very religious...you are very religious (UST)**

Paul is referring to the Athenians' public display of honoring the gods through prayers, building altars, and offering sacrifices.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So [Paul](#) stood in the middle of the Areopagus and said, "You men of Athens, I see that you are very religious in every way.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Then [Paul](#) stood up in front of the people and said, "People of Athens, I see that you are very religious.

**Acts 17:23****For as I passed along (ULT)****I say that because, while I was walking along (UST)**

“Because as I walked past” or “I walked along”

**To an Unknown God (ULT)****GOD (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) “to a certain unknown god” or 2) “to a god not known.” This was a specific writing or inscription on that altar.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- an altar
- God
- objects of...worship
- you worship
- announce
- in ignorance

**Translation Words - UST**

- an altar that had these words that someone
- GOD
- things that
- you worship but you do not know
- tell...about that God whom
- WE DO NOT KNOW

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> For as I passed along and observed the [objects of](#) your [worship](#), I even found [an altar](#) on which had been inscribed, “To an Unknown [God](#).” What therefore [you worship in ignorance](#), this I [announce](#) to you.

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> I say that because, while I was walking along I saw the [things that](#) you worship, I even saw [an altar that had these words that someone](#) had carved on it: THIS HONORS A [GOD](#) THAT [WE DO NOT KNOW](#). So now I will [tell](#) you [about that God whom you worship but you do not know](#).

## Acts 17:24

### the world (ULT)

### the world (UST)

In the most general sense, the “world” refers to the heavens and the earth and everything in them.

### he...since...is Lord (ULT)

### He...He is the...rules over all beings (UST)

“because he is the Lord.” Here “he” is referring to the unknown god mentioned in [Acts 17:23](#) that Paul is explaining is the Lord God.

### of heaven and earth (ULT)

### in heaven and on...and (UST)

The words “heaven” and “earth” are used together to mean all beings and things in heaven and earth. (See: [Merism](#))

### built with hands (ULT)

### people have built (UST)

Here “hands” stands for people. Alternate translation: “built by the hands of people” or “that people built” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- Lord
- God
- world
- earth
- temples
- since...is

### Translation Words - UST

- in heaven
- rules over all beings
- God
- world
- on...and
- temples
- He is the

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> The [God](#) who made the [world](#) and everything that is in it, [since](#) he [is Lord of heaven](#) and [earth](#), does not live in [temples](#) built with hands.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> [He is the God](#) who made the [world](#) and everything in it. He [rules over all beings in heaven](#) and on earth, [and](#) he does not live in [temples](#) that people have built.

**Acts 17:25****Neither is he served by men's hands (ULT)****He does not...to have...made for...by people (UST)**

Here "served" has the sense of a doctor treating a patient to make the patient well again. Alternate translation: "Neither do men's hands take care of him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by men's hands (ULT)****made...by people (UST)**

Here "hands" stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: "by humans" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**since he himself gives (ULT)****him...because he makes people...he gives them (UST)**

"because he himself." The word "himself" is added for emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [life](#)
- [hands](#)
- [breath](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [live](#)
- [made](#)
- [breath](#)

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> Neither is he served by men's [hands](#), as though he needed anything, since he himself gives to all [life](#) and [breath](#) and everything else.

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> He does not need to have anything [made](#) for him by people because he makes people [live](#) and [breath](#), and he gives them everything they need.

## Acts 17:26

### General Information:

Here the words “he” and “him” refer to the one true God, the creator. The words “their” and “them” refer to every nation of people living on the surface of the earth. In using the word “us,” Paul includes himself, his audience, and every nation. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

#### one man (ULT)

#### one couple, and (UST)

This means Adam, the first person God created. This can be stated to include Eve. It was through Adam and Eve that God made all other people. Alternate translation: “one couple”

#### of the...having determined their appointed seasons

#### and the boundaries...of...their...living areas (ULT)

#### them God produced...the...He put each people group in its place for its time (UST)

This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “And he determined when and where they would live”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [their appointed](#)
- [seasons](#)
- [nation](#)
- [the surface](#)
- [earth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He put each people group in its place for its](#)
- [He put each people group in its place for its](#)
- [people groups](#)
- [live everywhere on](#)
- [earth](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> For from one man he made every [nation](#) of people to live on all [the surface](#) of the [earth](#), having determined [their appointed seasons](#) and the boundaries of their living areas,

### UST

<sup>26</sup> In the beginning, God created one couple, and from them God produced all the [people groups](#) that now [live everywhere on](#) the [earth](#). [He put each people group in its place for its](#) time.

## Acts 17:27

**so that they should search for God and perhaps they may indeed feel their way toward him and find him (ULT)**

**He wanted people to realize that they need him... maybe they would look for him and find him. God (UST)**

Here “search for God” represents desiring to know him, and “feel their way toward him and find him” represents praying and having a relationship with him. Alternate translation: “so that they should want to know God and perhaps pray to him and become one of his people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Yet he is not far from each one of us (ULT)**

**Then...wants us to look for him, although he is very close to each one of us (UST)**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Yet he is very near to everyone of us” (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [so that they should search for](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [him. God](#)
- [He wanted people to realize that they need him](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [so that they should search for God](#) and perhaps they may indeed feel their way toward him and find him. Yet he is not far from each one of us.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> [He wanted people to realize that they need him.](#) Then maybe they would look for him and find [him. God](#) wants us to look for him, although he is very close to each one of us.

## Acts 17:28

### General Information:

Here the words “him” and “his” refer to God ([Acts 17:24](#)). When Paul says “we” here, he includes himself as well as his hearers. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### For in him (ULT)

### It is because of God (UST)

“Because of him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we live](#)
- [offspring](#)
- [just as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that we live](#)
- [children](#)
- [as one of](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> For in him [we live](#) and move and have our being, [just as](#) also one of your own poets has said, ‘For we also are his [offspring](#).’

### UST

<sup>28</sup> It is because of God [that we live](#), move, and exist, [as one of](#) you has said, ‘Because we are his [children](#).’

## Acts 17:29

**offspring...since we are God's (ULT)**  
**Therefore...because we are God's children...that God is (UST)**

Because God created everyone, all people are spoken of as if they were God's literal children. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**that the qualities of deity (ULT)**  
**made into something by man (UST)**

Here "deity" refers to God's nature or attributes. Alternate translation: "that God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**images created by the art and imagination of man (ULT)**  
**made into something by man (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which a man then uses his skill to make it into something that he has designed" or "images that people make by using their art and imagination" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God's
- offspring
- that the qualities of deity
- silver
- gold
- like

### Translation Words - UST

- that God is
- Therefore
- made into something by man
- silver
- like gold
- made into something by man

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Therefore, since we are [God's offspring](#), we ought not to think [that the qualities of deity](#) are [like gold](#), or [silver](#), or stone—images created by the art and imagination of man.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> [Therefore](#), because we are God's children, we should not think [that God is like gold, silver](#), or stone, [made into something by man](#).



## Acts 17:30

### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to God.

### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes his speech to the philosophers in the Areopagus, which he began in [Acts 17:22](#).

### Therefore (ULT) the (UST)

"Because what I have just said is true"

### God...overlooked...times of ignorance (ULT) During...times when people did not know what God wanted them to do, he did not punish them for what (UST)

"God decided not to punish people during the time of ignorance"

### times of ignorance (ULT) During...times when people did not know what (UST)

This refers to the time before God fully revealed himself through Jesus Christ and before people truly knew how to obey God.

### all men (ULT) all people...their (UST)

This means all people whether male or female. Alternate translation: "all people" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he commands](#)
- [God](#)
- [to repent](#)
- [times](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God commands](#)
- [God wanted them to do, he did](#)
- [to turn away from...evil deeds](#)
- [During...times when people did](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Therefore [God](#) indeed overlooked the [times](#) of ignorance, but now [he commands](#) all men everywhere [to repent](#).

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> [During](#) the [times when people did](#) not know what [God wanted them to do](#), [he did](#) not punish them for what they did. But now [God commands](#) all people everywhere [to turn away from](#) their [evil deeds](#).

## Acts 17:31

**when he will judge the world in righteousness by the man he has chosen**

“when the man he has chosen will judge the world in righteousness”

**he will judge the world (ULT)**

**he has chosen he is going to judge all of us...the (UST)**

Here “world” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “he will judge all people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**when...righteousness (ULT)**

**on...justly (UST)**

“justly” or “fairly”

**God has given proof of this man (ULT)**

**making sure we understand this by (UST)**

“God has demonstrated his choice of this man”

**from the dead (ULT)**

**from the dead (UST)**

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To come back from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [proof of this man](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [world](#)
- [has chosen](#)
- [judge](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [by raising](#)
- [a day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [making sure we understand this by](#)
- [justly](#)
- [all of us](#)
- [he has chosen](#)
- [to judge](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [raising](#)
- [day](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> This is because he has set [a day](#) when he will [judge](#) the [world](#) in [righteousness](#) by the man he [has chosen](#). God has given [proof of this man](#) to everyone [by raising](#) him from [the dead](#).”

### UST

<sup>31</sup> He tells us that on a certain [day](#) that he has chosen he is going [to judge all of us justly](#) by the man [he has chosen](#), [making sure we understand this by raising](#) this man from [the dead](#).”

## Acts 17:32

### General Information:

Here the word "We" refers to the men of Athens but not to Paul, so this is exclusive. Though some of them probably did want to hear Paul again, they may only have been being polite. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

This is the end of the part of the story about Paul in Athens. (See: [End of Story](#))

### Now (ULT)

### When the men heard Paul say that (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke shifts from Paul's teachings to the reaction of the people of Athens.

### when they heard of (ULT)

### When the men heard Paul say that (UST)

These are the people who were present at the Areopagus listening to Paul.

### some mocked Paul (ULT)

### after...some of them laughed at him (UST)

"some ridiculed Paul" or "some laughed at Paul." These did not believe it was possible for someone to die and then return to life.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the resurrection](#)
- [of the dead](#)
- [mocked Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [man had become alive](#)
- [he had died](#)
- [of them laughed at him](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Now when they heard of [the resurrection of the dead](#), some [mocked Paul](#); but others said, "We will listen to you again about this matter."

### UST

<sup>32</sup> When the men heard Paul say that a [man had become alive](#) again after [he had died](#), some [of them laughed at him](#). But others asked him to come back and tell them about it another day.

## Acts 17:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> After that, [Paul](#) left them.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> After they said that, [Paul](#) walked away.

## Acts 17:34

### Dionysius the Areopagite (ULT)

### Dionysius who was a member of the council (UST)

Dionysius is a man's name. Areopagite implies that Dionysius was one of the judges at the council of Areopagus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Damaris (ULT)

### Damaris (UST)

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and believed](#)
- [named](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believed the message about Jesus](#)
- [named](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> But certain men joined him [and believed](#), including Dionysius the Areopagite, and a woman [named](#) Damaris, and others with them.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> However, some of the people went with Paul and [believed the message about Jesus](#). Among those who believed in Jesus was a man named Dionysius who was a member of the council. Also, there were a woman [named](#) Damaris and some other people with them who believed.

## Acts 18

### Acts 18 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The baptism of John

Some Jews who lived far away from Jerusalem and Judea had heard of John the Baptist and followed his teachings. They had not yet heard about Jesus. One of these Jews was Apollos. He followed John the Baptist, but he did not know that the Messiah had come. John had baptized people to show that they were sorry for their sins, but this baptism was different from Christian baptism. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [Christ](#), [Messiah](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

## Acts 18:1

### General Information:

Aquila and Priscilla are introduced to the story and verses 2 and 3 give background information about them. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This is another part of the story of Paul's travels as he goes to Corinth.

### After these things (ULT)

### After that (UST)

"After these events took place in Athens"

### Athens (ULT)

### the city of Athens and (UST)

Athens was one of the most important cities in Greece. See how you translated this in [Acts 17:15](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Corinth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Corinth](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> After these things Paul left Athens and went to [Corinth](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After that, Paul left the city of Athens and went to the city of [Corinth](#).

## Acts 18:2

### There he met (ULT)

### There he met (UST)

Possible meanings are that 1) Paul happened to find by chance or 2) Paul intentionally found.

### a certain Jew named Aquila (ULT)

### a Jew whose name was Aquila (UST)

Here the phrase “a certain” indicates this is introducing new person in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

### a native of Pontus (ULT)

### who was from the region of Pontus (UST)

Pontus was a province on the southern coast of the Black Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### who had recently come (ULT)

### had come a short time previously (UST)

This is probably sometime in the past year.

### Italy (ULT)

### Rome, in Italy (UST)

This is the name of land. Rome is the capital city of Italy. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Claudius had commanded (ULT)

### Claudius, the Roman emperor, had ordered that (UST)

Claudius was the current Roman emperor. See how you translated this in [Acts 11:28](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [had commanded](#)
- [Jew](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [named](#)
- [Rome](#)
- [of Pontus](#)
- [Aquila](#)
- [Priscilla](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [had ordered that](#)
- [a Jew](#)
- [all the Jews must leave](#)
- [whose name was](#)
- [Rome](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> There he met a certain [Jew named Aquila](#), a native [of Pontus](#), who had recently come from Italy with his wife [Priscilla](#), because Claudius [had commanded](#) all the [Jews](#) to leave [Rome](#). Paul went to them,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> There he met [a Jew whose name was Aquila, who was from the region of Pontus](#). Aquila and his wife [Priscilla](#) had come a short time previously from the city of Rome, in Italy. They left Rome because Claudius, the Roman emperor, [had ordered that all the Jews must leave Rome](#). Paul went to see Priscilla and Aquila.



- who was from the region of Pontus
- Aquila
- Priscilla

## Acts 18:3

**he worked at the same trade (ULT)  
made tents...Paul also (UST)**

"he did the same kind of work that they did"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [tentmakers](#)
- [worked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [made tents](#)
- [they worked together](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and because he worked at the same trade, he stayed with them and [worked](#), for they were [tentmakers](#) by trade.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Aquila and Priscilla made tents to earn money. Paul also [made tents](#), so he stayed with them, and [they worked together](#).

## Acts 18:4

### General Information:

Silas and Timothy rejoin Paul.

### So Paul reasoned (ULT) he spoke (UST)

“So Paul debated” or “So Paul discussed.” He gave reasons. This means that rather than just preaching, Paul talked and interacted with the people.

### He persuaded both Jews and Greeks (ULT) where...to both Jews and non-Jews. He taught them about Jesus (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “He caused both Jews and Greeks to believe” or 2) “He kept trying to persuade the Jews and the Greeks.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Greeks](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish meeting place](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [Sabbath, Paul went](#)
- [non-Jews. He taught them about Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So Paul reasoned in the [synagogue](#) every [Sabbath](#). He persuaded both [Jews](#) and [Greeks](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Every [Sabbath, Paul went](#) to the [Jewish meeting place](#), where he spoke to both [Jews](#) and [non-Jews. He taught them about Jesus](#).

## Acts 18:5

### Paul devoted himself to the word (ULT)

### Paul was strongly moved by the Spirit (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Spirit compelled Paul” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus...Christ](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [word](#)
- [solemnly testifying...that](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [both Silas](#)
- [Macedonia](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus...Messiah](#)
- [Jews that](#)
- [by the Spirit](#)
- [to tell](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Silas](#)
- [the region of Macedonia](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But when [both Silas](#) and [Timothy](#) came down from [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#) devoted himself to the [word](#), [solemnly testifying](#) to the [Jews that Jesus](#) was the [Christ](#).

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> When [Silas](#) and [Timothy](#) came from [the region of Macedonia](#), [Paul](#) was strongly moved [by the Spirit to tell](#) the [Jews that Jesus](#) was the [Messiah](#).

## Acts 18:6

### Paul shook out his garment (ULT)

### So he shook the dust from his clothes (UST)

This is a symbolic action to indicate that Paul will no longer try to teach the Jews there about Jesus. He is leaving them to God's judgment. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### May your blood be upon your own heads (ULT) and...If God punishes you, it is your responsibility...on (UST)

Here "blood" stands for the guilt of their actions. Here "heads" refers to the whole person. Paul tells the Jews they are solely responsible for the judgment they will face for their stubbornness if they refuse to repent. Alternate translation: "You alone bear the responsibility for your punishment for sin" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Gentiles](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [blood](#)
- [heads](#)
- [insulted him](#)
- [garment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are not Jewish](#)
- [not mine](#)
- [If God punishes you](#)
- [it is...responsibility](#)
- [say evil things about](#)
- [dust from his clothes](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But when the Jews opposed and [insulted him](#), Paul shook out his [garment](#) and said to them, "May your [blood](#) be upon your own [heads](#); I am [innocent](#). From now on I will go to the [Gentiles](#)."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But the Jews began to turn against Paul and to [say evil things about](#) him. So he shook the [dust from his clothes](#) and he said to them, "[If God punishes you, it is](#) your [responsibility, not mine!](#) From now on I will talk to those who [are not Jewish!](#)"

## Acts 18:7

### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Paul. The first word "his" refers to Titius Justus. The second word "his" refers to Crispus.

### Titius Justus (ULT)

### Titius...Justus, the owner of (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### a man who worshiped God (ULT)

### who worshiped God (UST)

A worshiper of God is a Gentile who gives praise to God and follows him but does not necessarily obey all of the Jewish laws.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [God](#)
- [named](#)
- [a man who worshiped](#)
- [the house](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish meeting place](#)
- [God](#)
- [Titius](#)
- [who worshiped](#)
- [a house](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

7 Then he left from there and went to [the house](#) of a certain man [named](#) Titius Justus, [a man who worshiped God](#). His [house](#) was next to the [synagogue](#).

### UST

7 So Paul left the [Jewish meeting place](#) and went into [a house](#) that was next to it, and preached there. [Titius](#) Justus, the owner of the [house](#), was a non-Jewish man [who worshiped God](#).

**Acts 18:8****Crispus (ULT)****After that...whose name was Crispus (UST)**

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**leader of the synagogue (ULT)****ruler of the Jewish meeting place (UST)**

a layperson who sponsored and administered the synagogue, not necessarily the teacher

**all those who lived in his house (ULT)****all...his family (UST)**

Here "house" refers to the people who lived together. Alternate translation: "the people who lived with him in his house" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**were baptized (ULT)****were baptized (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "received baptism" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [were baptized](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [believed](#)
- [believed](#)
- [Corinthians](#)
- [those who lived in...house](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [were baptized](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [believed...also...in Jesus](#)
- [they...believed](#)
- [in Corinth](#)
- [his family](#)

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> Crispus, the leader of the synagogue, [believed](#) in the [Lord](#), together with all [those who lived in](#) his [house](#); and many of the [Corinthians](#) who heard about it [believed](#) and [were baptized](#).

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> After that, the ruler of the Jewish meeting place, whose name was Crispus, and all of [his family](#) [believed](#) in the [Lord](#). Many other people [in Corinth](#) heard about Crispus and his family, [they also believed in Jesus](#) and [were baptized](#).

**Acts 18:9**

**Do not be afraid, but continue speaking and do not be silent (ULT)**

**Do not be afraid of...but keep talking about me (UST)**

The Lord is giving one command in two different ways to emphasize that Paul should certainly continue preaching. Alternate translation: "You must not be afraid and, instead, continue to speak and not become silent" (See: [Parallelism](#))

**continue speaking and do not be silent (ULT)**  
**keep talking about me (UST)**

The Lord gives the same command in two different ways to strongly command Paul to speak. Alternate translation: "you must certainly continue to speak" (See: [Doublet](#))

**do not be silent (ULT)**  
**keep talking about me (UST)**

It can be stated explicitly what the Lord wants Paul to speak. Alternate translation: "do not stop speaking about the gospel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- be afraid
- Lord
- Paul
- a vision

**Translation Words - UST**

- be afraid of
- Lord Jesus
- Paul
- had a vision

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> Then the [Lord](#) said to [Paul](#) in the night in [a vision](#), "Do not [be afraid](#), but continue speaking and do not be silent.

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> One night [Paul had a vision](#) in which the [Lord Jesus](#) said to him, "Do not [be afraid of](#) the people who are against you, but keep talking about me,



## Acts 18:10

**I have many people in this city (ULT)**  
**there are many people in this city who belong to me (UST)**

“there are many people in this city who have put their faith in me” or  
“many people in this city will put their faith in me”

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For I am with you, and no one will attack you to harm you, for I have many people in this city.”

### UST

<sup>10</sup> because I will help you and no one will be able to hurt you here. Keep telling them about me, because there are many people in this city who belong to me.”

**Acts 18:11**

**So Paul remained there for a year and six months, teaching the word of God among them (ULT)**

**So Paul stayed in Corinth for a year and a half, teaching the people the message from God about Jesus (UST)**

This is a concluding statement for this part of the story. "Word of God" here is a synecdoche for the entire scriptures. Alternate translation: "Paul lived there...teaching the scriptures among them" (See: [End of Story](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of God](#)
- [word of God](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [for a year](#)
- [months](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God about Jesus](#)
- [message from God about Jesus](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [a year](#)
- [and a half](#)

**ULT**

<sup>11</sup> So Paul remained there [for a year](#) and six [months](#), [teaching](#) the [word of God](#) among them.

**UST**

<sup>11</sup> So Paul stayed in Corinth for [a year and a half](#), [teaching](#) the people the [message from God about Jesus](#).

## Acts 18:12

### General Information:

Achaia was the Roman province in which Corinth was located. Corinth was the largest city in southern Greece and the capital of the province. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The unbelieving Jews bring Paul to the judgment seat before Gallio.

### Gallio (ULT)

### Gallio became the (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the Jews (ULT)

### the Jewish leaders (UST)

This stands for the Jewish leaders that did not believe in Jesus. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### rose up together against (ULT)

### got together...seized (UST)

"came together" or "joined together"

### brought him before the judgment seat (ULT)

### They took him before the governor and accused him (UST)

The Jews took Paul by force to bring Paul before the court. Here "judgment seat" refers to the place where Gallio sat when he made legal decisions in court. Alternate translation: "took him so that the governor could judge him at the judgment seat" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish leaders](#)
- [Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But when Gallio became governor of Achaia, the [Jews](#) rose up together against [Paul](#) and brought him before the judgment seat;

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When Gallio became the Roman governor of the province of Achaia, the [Jewish leaders](#) got together and seized [Paul](#). They took him before the governor and accused him,

## Acts 18:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- law
- to worship

### Translation Words - UST

- God in ways
- our Jewish laws
- to worship

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> they said, "This man persuades people [to worship God](#) contrary to the [law](#)."

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> saying, "This man is teaching people [to worship God in ways](#) that go against [our Jewish laws](#)."

## Acts 18:14

### Gallio said (ULT)

### Gallio said (UST)

Gallio was the Roman governor of the Province.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [evil](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [an...crime](#)
- [to deal with](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [our Roman laws](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [our Roman laws](#)
- [I would have listened to](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Yet when [Paul](#) was about to open his mouth, Gallio said to the [Jews](#), "You [Jews](#), if indeed it were a matter of some wrong or an [evil crime](#), it would be reasonable [to deal with](#) you.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> When [Paul](#) was about to speak, Gallio said to the [Jews](#), "If this man had broken [our Roman laws](#), [I would have listened to](#) what you [Jews](#) want to tell me.

## Acts 18:15

### your own law (ULT)

### your own Jewish laws (UST)

Here “law” refers to the law of Moses and as well as the Jewish customs of Paul’s time.

### I do not wish to be a judge of these matters (ULT)

### yourselves must talk to him about this...I will not judge

### these things (UST)

“I refuse to make a judgment about these matters”

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- names
- a judge

### Translation Words - UST

- own Jewish laws
- names
- yourselves must talk to him about this

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But since these are questions about words and [names](#) and your own [law](#), settle it yourselves. I do not wish to be [a judge](#) of these matters.”

### UST

<sup>15</sup> However, you are talking about words and [names](#) and your [own Jewish laws](#), so you [yourselves must talk to him about this](#). I will not judge these things!”

## Acts 18:16

### General Information:

Here the word “they” probably refers to the Gentiles at the court. They reacted against the Jews who had brought Paul before the judgment seat ([Acts 18:12](#)).

### Gallio sent them away from the judgment seat (ULT) to take the Jewish leaders away from the court (UST)

“Gallio dismissed them from the judgment seat.” Here “judgment seat” refers to the place where Gallio sits to make legal decisions in court. Alternate translation: “Gallio made them leave his presence in the court” or “Gallio made them leave the court” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

**16** So Gallio sent them away from the judgment seat.

#### UST

**16** After Gallio had said that, he told some soldiers to take the Jewish leaders away from the court.

**Acts 18:17****they...seized...all (ULT)****Then the people grabbed...Then the people grabbed (UST)**

This may be an exaggeration to emphasize the strong feelings the people had. Alternate translation: “many people seized” or “many of them grabbed” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**So they all seized Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue, and beat him in front of the judgment seat (ULT)****Then the people grabbed the leader of the Jews, Sosthenes. They beat him right there in front of the judge’s seat (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) the Gentiles beat Sosthenes in the court in front of the judgment seat because he was the Jewish leader or 2) it is possible that Sosthenes was a believer in Christ, so the Jews beat him in front of the court.

**Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue (ULT)  
the leader of the Jews, Sosthenes (UST)**

“Sosthenes” was the Jewish ruler of the synagogue at Corinth. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**and beat him (ULT)****They beat (UST)**

“repeatedly hit him” or “repeatedly punched him.”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they...seized](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Then the people grabbed](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> So [they](#) all [seized](#) Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue, and beat him in front of the judgment seat. But none of these things mattered to Gallio.

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> [Then the people grabbed](#) the leader of the Jews, Sosthenes. They beat him right there in front of the judge’s seat. But Gallio did nothing about it.



## Acts 18:18

### General Information:

Here the word “he” refers to Paul. Cenchreae was a seaport that was part of the greater Corinth city area. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This continues Paul’s missionary journey as Paul, Priscilla, and Aquila leave Corinth. This seems to indicate that Silas and Timothy remain since it says “he” here and not “we.” The word “they” refers to Paul, Priscilla, and Aquila.

### left the brothers (ULT) with the believers in Corinth...he got on a ship...sailed (UST)

The word “brothers” refers to men and women believers. Alternate translation: “left the fellow believers” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### sailed for Syria with Priscilla and Aquila

Paul got on a ship that sailed for Syria. Priscilla and Aquila went with him.

### He shaved...his head...because he had made a vow (ULT) He got...hair cut off in Cenchrea...He got...hair cut off in Cenchrea...because of a vow that he had made (UST)

This is a symbolic action that indicates the completion of a vow. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he had someone cut off the hair on his head” (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a vow
- brothers
- Now Paul
- Aquila
- Syria
- Priscilla
- head
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- a vow that
- believers in Corinth
- Paul
- Aquila
- for the province of Syria
- Priscilla
- He got...hair cut off in Cenchrea
- days

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> [Now Paul](#), after staying there for many more [days](#), left the [brothers](#) and sailed to [Syria](#), and [Priscilla](#) and [Aquila](#) were with him. He shaved his [head](#) in Cenchrea because he had made [a vow](#).

### UST

<sup>18</sup> [Paul](#) stayed with the [believers in Corinth](#) for many more [days](#). Then he got on a ship with [Priscilla](#) and [Aquila](#) and sailed [for the province of Syria](#). [He got](#) his [hair cut off in Cenchrea](#) because of [a vow that](#) he had made.

## Acts 18:19

### and reasoned with the (ULT) and spoke to the (UST)

“discussed with” or “debated with”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [Ephesus](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish meeting place](#)
- [Jews about Jesus](#)
- [city of Ephesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> When they came to [Ephesus](#), Paul left Priscilla and Aquila there, but he himself went into the [synagogue](#) and reasoned with the [Jews](#).

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> They arrived at the [city of Ephesus](#), and Priscilla and Aquila stayed there. Paul himself entered the [Jewish meeting place](#) and spoke to the [Jews about Jesus](#).

## Acts 18:20

### General Information:

Here the words “they” and “them” refer to the Jews in Ephesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [longer](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> When they asked Paul to stay a longer [time](#), he declined.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> They asked him to stay [longer](#), but he did not agree to stay.

## Acts 18:21

**he took his leave from them (ULT)**  
**as he left (UST)**

“saying good-bye to them”

### Translation Words - ULT

- if God
- Ephesus

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Ephesus

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But he took his leave from them and said, “I will return again to you [if God](#) is willing.” He then set sail from [Ephesus](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> But as he left, he told them, “I will come back, if [God](#) wants me to.” Then he got on a ship and sailed away from [Ephesus](#).

## Acts 18:22

### General Information:

Phrygia is a province in Asia which is now modern day Turkey. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:10](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues his missionary journey.

### Paul had landed at Caesarea (ULT) When the ship came to the city of Caesarea (UST)

“arrived at Caesarea.” The word “landed” is used to show that he arrived by ship.

### he went up (ULT)

### He went up to Jerusalem (UST)

He traveled to the city of Jerusalem. The phrase “went up” is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than Caesarea.

### greeted the Jerusalem church (ULT)

### greeted the believers there (UST)

Here “church” refers to the believers in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “greeted the members of the church of Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### and then went down (ULT)

### Then he went (UST)

The phrase “went down” is used here because Antioch is lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem church](#)
- [Antioch](#)
- [Caesarea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers there](#)
- [the city of Antioch in the region of Syria](#)
- [the city of Caesarea](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> When Paul had landed at [Caesarea](#), he went up and greeted the [Jerusalem church](#) and then went down to [Antioch](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> When the ship came to [the city of Caesarea](#), Paul got off. He went up to Jerusalem and greeted the [believers there](#). Then he went to [the city of Antioch in the region of Syria](#).

## Acts 18:23

**Paul departed (ULT)**

**he left Antioch (UST)**

“Paul went away” or “Paul left”

**After having spent some time there (ULT)**

**Paul spent some time with the believers there (UST)**

This speaks about “time” as if it were a commodity that a person could spend. Alternate translation: After staying there for a while” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [of Galatia](#)
- [time](#)
- [and strengthened](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He urged the believers to believe more and more in the message from God about Jesus](#)
- [of Galatia](#)
- [time with the believers there](#)
- [He urged the believers to believe more and more in the message from God about Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> After having spent some [time](#) there, Paul departed and went through the regions [of Galatia](#) and Phrygia [and strengthened](#) all the [disciples](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Paul spent some [time with the believers there](#). Then he left Antioch and walked to many cities in the regions [of Galatia](#) and Phrygia. [He urged the believers to believe more and more in the message from God about Jesus](#).

## Acts 18:24

### General Information:

Apollos is introduced to the story. Verses 24 and 25 give background information about him. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells what happens in Ephesus with Priscilla and Aquila.

### Now (ULT)

**While Paul was going through Galatia and Phrygia, a Jewish (UST)**

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line.

**a...Jew...certain...named Apollos (ULT)**

**While Paul was going through Galatia and Phrygia, a Jewish...While Paul was going through Galatia and Phrygia, a Jewish...named Apollos (UST)**

The phrase “a certain” indicates that Luke is introducing a new person in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**an Alexandrian by birth (ULT)**

**man...from the city...Alexandria (UST)**

“a man who was born in the city of Alexandria.” This was a city in Egypt on the north coast of Africa. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**eloquent in speech (ULT)**

**and spoke (UST)**

“a good speaker”

**and was mighty in the scriptures (ULT)**

**of...very well about the scriptures (UST)**

“he knew the scriptures thoroughly.” He understood the Old Testament writings well.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a...Jew
- scriptures
- named
- Apollos
- Ephesus
- mighty

### Translation Words - UST

- While Paul was going through Galatia and Phrygia, a Jewish
- scriptures

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Now a certain [Jew named Apollos](#), an Alexandrian by birth, came to [Ephesus](#). This man was eloquent in speech and was [mighty](#) in the [scriptures](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> [While Paul was going through Galatia and Phrygia, a Jewish](#) man [named Apollos](#) came to [Ephesus](#). [He was](#) from the city of Alexandria and spoke [very well about](#) the [scriptures](#).

- named
- Apollos
- Ephesus. He was
- very well about



## Acts 18:25

**Apollos had been instructed in the way of the Lord (ULT)**

**Other believers had taught Apollos how the Lord Jesus wanted people to live...he...those things...However, he was not teaching everything (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Other believers had taught Apollos how the Lord Jesus wanted people to live" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Being fervent in spirit (ULT)**  
**and...enthusiastically taught...to the people (UST)**

Here "spirit" refers to the entire person of Apollos. Alternate translation: "Being very enthusiastic" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**the baptism of John (ULT)**  
**the baptism of John the Baptizer (UST)**

"The baptism that John performed." This is comparing John's baptism which was with water to Jesus' baptism which is with the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [in spirit](#)
- [of John](#)
- [instructed](#)
- [taught](#)
- [but he knew](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [Other believers had taught Apollos how the Lord Jesus wanted people](#)
- [enthusiastically taught...to the people](#)
- [of John the Baptizer](#)
- [not teaching everything](#)
- [enthusiastically taught...to the people](#)
- [because he only knew about](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Apollos had been [instructed](#) in the way of the [Lord](#). Being fervent [in spirit](#), he spoke and [taught](#) accurately the things concerning [Jesus](#), [but he knew](#) only the [baptism of John](#).

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [Other believers had taught Apollos how the Lord Jesus wanted people](#) to live, and he [enthusiastically taught](#) those things [to the people](#). However, he was [not teaching everything](#) about [Jesus](#), [because he only knew about](#) the [baptism of John the Baptizer](#).

## Acts 18:26

### the way of God (ULT)

### about the things...they taught him more (UST)

How God wants people to live is spoken of as if it were a road that a person travels. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### more accurately (ULT)

### they taught him more (UST)

"correctly" or "more fully"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Aquila](#)
- [Priscilla](#)
- [to speak boldly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish meeting place](#)
- [about the things](#)
- [Aquila](#)
- [Priscilla](#)
- [went to...he told the people there](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> So Apollos began [to speak boldly](#) in the [synagogue](#). But when [Priscilla](#) and [Aquila](#) heard him, they took him aside and explained to him the way [of God](#) more accurately.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Apollos [went to](#) the [Jewish meeting place](#), and [he told the people there about the things](#) that he had learned. When [Priscilla](#) and [Aquila](#) heard what he taught, they asked him to come to their home where they taught him more about Jesus.

## Acts 18:27

### General Information:

Here the he words “he” and “him” refer to Apollos ([Acts 18:24](#)).

**to pass over into Achaia (ULT)**  
**would like to go to the region of Achaia (UST)**

“to go to the region of Achaia.” The phrase “pass over” is used here because Apollos had to cross the Aegean Sea to get to Achaia from Ephesus.

**Achaia (ULT)**  
**the region of Achaia (UST)**

Achaia was a Roman Province in the southern section of Greece. See how you translated this in [Acts 18:12](#).

**brothers (ULT)**  
**believers in Ephesus (UST)**

The word “brothers” here refers to men and women believers. You can make explicit that these are believers in Ephesus. Alternate translation: “fellow believers in Ephesus” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**and wrote to the disciples in Achaia (ULT)**  
**So they wrote a letter to the believers in Achaia saying that they should (UST)**

“wrote a letter to the Christians in Achaia”

**to the...those who believed...by grace (ULT)**  
**to the...God had kindly enabled to believe in Jesus (UST)**

“those who had believed in salvation by grace” or “those who by God’s grace believed in Jesus”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [those who believed](#)
- [disciples in Achaia](#)
- [encouraged him](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God had kindly enabled](#)
- [believers in Ephesus](#)
- [to believe in Jesus](#)
- [believers in Achaia saying that they should](#)
- [told him that it would be good](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> When he desired to pass over into Achaia, the [brothers encouraged him](#) and wrote to the [disciples in Achaia](#) to welcome him. When he arrived, he greatly helped [those who believed](#) by [grace](#).

### UST

<sup>27</sup> When Apollos decided that he would like to go to the region of Achaia, the [believers in Ephesus told him that it would be good](#) for him to do that. So they wrote a letter to the [believers in Achaia saying that they should](#) welcome Apollos. After he got there, he helped those whom [God had kindly enabled to believe in Jesus](#).

## Acts 18:28

**powerfully...Apollos...refuted the Jews in public debate (ULT)**

**Apollos was talking very powerfully...with the leaders of the Jews...he was able to show them that (UST)**

“In public debate Apollos powerfully showed that the Jews were wrong”

**showing by the scriptures that Jesus is the Christ (ULT)**  
**while many other people listened. By reading from the scriptures...he was able to show them that...Jesus was the Messiah (UST)**

“as he showed them by the scriptures that Jesus is the Christ”

### Translation Words - ULT

- that Jesus...Christ
- Jews
- scriptures
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus...Messiah
- leaders of the Jews
- while many other people listened. By reading...scriptures
- Messiah

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> For Apollos powerfully refuted the [Jews](#) in public debate, showing by the [scriptures that Jesus](#) is the [Christ](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Apollos was talking very powerfully with the [leaders of the Jews while many other people listened. By reading](#) from the [scriptures](#), he was able to show them that [Jesus](#) was the [Messiah](#).

## **Acts 19**

### **Acts 19 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Baptism**

John baptized people to show that they were sorry for their sins. Jesus' followers baptized people who wanted to follow Jesus.

#### **Temple of Diana**

The temple of Diana was an important place in the city of Ephesus. Many people came to Ephesus to see this temple, and they bought statues of the goddess Diana while they were there. The people who sold statues of Diana were afraid that if people did not believe Diana was a real goddess, they would stop giving the sellers money for statues.

## Acts 19:1

### General Information:

The “upper country” was an area of Asia which today is part of modern-day Turkey to the north of Ephesus. Paul must have traveled by land around the top of the Aegean sea in order to come to Ephesus (also in Turkey today) which is directly east of Corinth by sea.

### Connecting Statement:

Paul travels to Ephesus.

### It came about that (ULT) While (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### passed through (ULT) went through Asia...he came back (UST)

“traveled through”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Apollos](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Corinth](#)
- [the city of Ephesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who said that they were believers](#)
- [Apollos](#)
- [Paul left Phrygia and Galatia and](#)
- [Corinth](#)
- [Ephesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about that while [Apollos](#) was at [Corinth](#), [Paul](#) passed through the upper country and came to [the city of Ephesus](#), and found certain [disciples](#) there.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> While [Apollos](#) was at [Corinth](#), [Paul left Phrygia and Galatia and](#) went through Asia, and he came back to [Ephesus](#). He met some people [who said that they were believers](#).

## Acts 19:2

**Did you receive...the...Holy...Spirit (ULT)**

**Did you receive the Holy Spirit (UST)**

This means to have the Holy Spirit come upon them.

**the Holy Spirit...we did not even hear...there is (ULT)**  
**them...the Holy Spirit...We have not even heard that**  
**there is (UST)**

"we have not even heard about the Holy Spirit"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Holy
- Holy (2)
- the...Holy...Spirit
- a Holy Spirit
- when you believed
- Did you receive

### Translation Words - UST

- Holy
- Holy (2)
- the Holy Spirit
- a Holy Spirit
- when you believed God's message
- Did you receive

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Paul said to them, "[Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed?](#)" But they said to him, "No, we did not even hear if there is [a Holy Spirit.](#)"

### UST

<sup>2</sup> He asked them, "[Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed God's message?](#)" They answered, "No, we did not. We have not even heard that there is [a Holy Spirit.](#)"

## Acts 19:3

### General Information:

Here the words "They," "you," and "they" refer to certain disciples in the city of Ephesus ([Acts 19:1](#)). The word "him" refers to John.

### Into what then were you baptized (ULT)

### So...you were baptized...what did you know (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "What kind of baptism did you receive?" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Into the baptism of John (ULT)

### John the Baptizer taught (UST)

You can translate this as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "We received the kind of baptism about which John taught" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were you baptized](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [of John](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you were baptized](#)
- [Baptizer taught](#)
- [John](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So Paul said, "Into what then [were you baptized?](#)" They said, "Into the [baptism of John.](#)"

### UST

<sup>3</sup> So Paul asked, "So when [you were baptized](#), what did you know?" They replied, "We believed what [John the Baptizer taught.](#)"



**Acts 19:4**

**with the baptism of repentance (ULT)**  
**baptism...were turning...God and away from their evil thoughts and deeds (UST)**

You can translate the abstract noun "repentance" as the verb "repent." Alternate translation: "the baptism that people requested when they wanted to repent" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the one who would come (ULT)**  
**someone else, one who is coming (UST)**

Here "the one" refers to Jesus.

**the one who would come after him (ULT)**  
**someone else, one who is coming after him (UST)**

This means to come after John the Baptist in time and not following after him physically.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jesus](#)
- [baptized](#)
- [with the baptism](#)
- [they should believe](#)
- [of repentance](#)
- [in Jesus](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [John](#)
- [people](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus](#)
- [was a sign that](#)
- [baptism](#)
- [to believe](#)
- [were turning...God and away from their evil thoughts and deeds](#)
- [to...Jesus](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [John's](#)
- [people](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> So [Paul](#) replied, "[John baptized with the baptism of repentance](#). He told the [people](#) that [they should believe](#) in the one who would come after him, that is, [in Jesus](#)."

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> [Paul](#) said, "[John's baptism was a sign that people were turning to God and away from their evil thoughts and deeds](#). He also told them [to believe](#) in someone else, one who is coming after him, and that person is [Jesus](#)."

## Acts 19:5

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues staying in Ephesus.

### When the people heard this (ULT)

### So when those men heard that (UST)

Here “people” refers to the disciples in Ephesus who were talking with Paul ([Acts 19:1](#)),

### they were baptized (ULT)

### they were baptized (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they received baptism” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in the name of the Lord Jesus (ULT)

### in the name of the Lord Jesus (UST)

Here “name” refers to Jesus’ power and authority. Alternate translation: “as believers in the Lord Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [they were baptized](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [name](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [they were baptized](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [name](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When the people heard this, [they were baptized](#) in the [name](#) of the [Lord](#) Jesus.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> So when those men heard that, [they were baptized](#) in the [name](#) of the [Lord](#) Jesus.

## Acts 19:6

**when Paul had laid his hands on them (ULT)**

**After that, Paul placed his hands on their heads one by one (UST)**

“placed his hands on them.” He probably placed his hands on their shoulders or heads. Alternate translation: “placed his hands on their heads as he prayed”

**Then...and they both spoke in other languages... prophesied (ULT)**

**and...The Holy Spirit gave them power to speak in languages that they had not learned...they also spoke messages that the Holy Spirit told them (UST)**

Unlike in [Acts 2:3-4](#), there are no details of who understood their messages.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [prophesied](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [spoke in other languages](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [messages that the Holy Spirit told them](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [After that, Paul](#)
- [his hands on](#)
- [The Holy Spirit gave them power to speak in languages that they had not learned](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then when [Paul](#) had laid [his hands](#) on them, the [Holy Spirit](#) came on them and they both [spoke in other languages](#) and [prophesied](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> [After that, Paul](#) placed [his hands on](#) their heads one by one, and the power of the [Holy Spirit](#) came upon each of them. [The Holy Spirit gave them power to speak in languages that they had not learned](#), and they also spoke [messages that the Holy Spirit told them](#).

## Acts 19:7

**They were about twelve men in all (ULT)**

**There were about twelve men whom Paul baptized and who received the Holy Spirit (UST)**

This tells how many men were baptized. (See: [Background Information](#))

**men...twelve (ULT)**

**men whom Paul baptized...twelve (UST)**

"12 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> They were about twelve men in all.

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> There were about twelve men whom Paul baptized and who received the Holy Spirit.

## Acts 19:8

**Paul went...into the synagogue and spoke boldly for three months (ULT)  
entered the Jewish meeting place in Ephesus on each Sabbath and taught...For three months after...entered the Jewish meeting place in Ephesus on each Sabbath and taught (UST)**

“Paul regularly attended the synagogue meetings for three months and spoke there boldly”

**reasoning and persuading them (ULT)  
and persuaded people (UST)**

“convincing people with convincing arguments and with clear teaching”

**about the kingdom of God (ULT)  
that, Paul...about Jesus and how God would show himself as king (UST)**

Here “kingdom” stands for God’s rule as king. Alternate translation: “about God’s rule as king” or “about how God would show himself as king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [of God](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)
- [and spoke boldly](#)
- [months](#)
- [kingdom](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [entered the Jewish meeting place in Ephesus on each Sabbath and taught](#)
- [God](#)
- [that, Paul...God...would show himself as king](#)
- [entered the Jewish meeting place in Ephesus on each Sabbath and taught](#)
- [months after](#)
- [would show himself as king](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then Paul went into the [synagogue](#) [and spoke boldly](#) for three [months](#), reasoning and persuading them about the [kingdom of God](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> For three [months after that](#), [Paul entered the Jewish meeting place in Ephesus on each Sabbath and taught](#) and persuaded people about Jesus and how [God would show himself as king](#).

**Acts 19:9**

**some Jews were hardened and disobedient (ULT)**  
**some of the Jews would...believe...and did not want to**  
**to hear it any more (UST)**

To stubbornly refuse to believe is spoken of as though the people were becoming hard and unable to move. Alternate translation: "some Jews were stubborn and did not believe" or "some Jews stubbornly refused to accept and obey the message" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they began to speak evil of the Way before the crowd (ULT)**  
**the message...They said many bad things about what**  
**Paul was teaching (UST)**

What Christ wants people to believe is spoken of as though it were a road that a person travels. The phrase, "the Way," seems to have been a title for Christianity at the time. Alternate translation: "to speak evil about Christianity to the crowd" or "to speak to the crowd evil things about those who follow Christ and who obey his teaching about God" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Acts 9:2](#))

**they began to speak evil (ULT)**  
**They said many bad things (UST)**

"to speak bad things about"

**in the lecture hall of Tyrannus (ULT)**  
**in the meeting place of Tyrannus (UST)**

"in the large room where Tyrannus had taught people"

**of Tyrannus (ULT)**  
**of Tyrannus (UST)**

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [disciples](#)
- [they began to speak evil](#)
- [disobedient](#)
- [day](#)
- [were hardened](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [believers](#)
- [They said many bad things](#)
- [did not want to to hear it any more](#)
- [to meet](#)
- [of the Jews would...believe](#)

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> But when some Jews [were hardened](#) and [disobedient](#), [they began to speak evil](#) of the Way before the crowd. So Paul left them and took the [disciples](#) with him, reasoning with them every [day](#) in the lecture hall of Tyrannus.

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> But some [of the Jews would](#) not [believe](#) the message and [did not want to to hear it any more](#). [They said many bad things](#) about what Paul was teaching. So Paul left them and took the [believers](#) with him [to meet](#) in the meeting place of Tyrannus.

## Acts 19:10

**all those who lived in Asia heard the word of the Lord (ULT)**

**Paul taught people there...most of the...who lived in the region of Asia heard the message about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here “all” is a generalization that means very many people throughout Asia heard the gospel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**the word of the Lord (ULT)**

**the message about the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here “word” stands for a message. Alternate translation: “the message about the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [word of the Lord](#)
- [in Asia](#)
- [Greeks](#)
- [years](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [message about the Lord Jesus](#)
- [of Asia](#)
- [non-Jews](#)
- [years](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> This continued for two [years](#), so that all those who lived [in Asia](#) heard the [word of the Lord](#), both [Jews](#) and [Greeks](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> For two [years](#) Paul taught people there. In this way, most of the [Jews](#) and [non-Jews](#) who lived in the region [of Asia](#) heard the [message about the Lord Jesus](#).

## Acts 19:11

### General Information:

Here the words “them” and “they” refer to those who were sick.

### God was doing unusual miracles by the hands of Paul (ULT)

### God also gave Paul the power to do miracles (UST)

Here “hands” stands for Paul’s whole person. Alternate translation: “God was causing Paul to do miracles” or “God was doing miracles through Paul” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [miracles](#)
- [God](#)
- [of Paul](#)
- [hands](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the power](#)
- [God](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [to do](#)

### ULT

11 [God](#) was doing unusual [miracles](#) by the [hands of Paul](#),

### UST

11 [God](#) also gave [Paul the power to do](#) miracles.



**Acts 19:12**

**even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched him were taken to the sick and**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when they took to sick people even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched Paul”

**even...handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched him (ULT)**  
**and...could not come...pieces of cloth that Paul touched would be taken (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) these were cloth items that Paul had touched or 2) these were cloth items that Paul had worn or used.

**handkerchiefs (ULT)**  
**pieces of cloth (UST)**

cloths worn around the head

**aprons (ULT)**  
**pieces of cloth (UST)**

clothing worn on the front of the body to protect the clothes of people

**the sick (ULT)**  
**If those who were sick (UST)**

This refers to sick people. Alternate translation: “sick people” or “those who were sick” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**their illnesses left them (ULT)**  
**placed on the sick people...the sick people would become well...them (UST)**

“those who were sick became healthy”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evil spirits](#)
- [evil](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [evil...spirits](#)
- [evil](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> so that even handkerchiefs and aprons that had touched him were taken to the sick and their illnesses left them and the [evil](#) spirits came out of them.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> If those who were sick could not come to Paul, pieces of cloth that Paul touched would be taken and placed on the sick people. As a result, the sick people would become well, and the [evil spirits](#) would leave them.

## Acts 19:13

### General Information:

This is the beginning of another event that happened while Paul was in Ephesus. It is about Jewish exorcists.

**exorcists (ULT)**  
**and they commanded...evil spirits in those places to depart from people (UST)**

people who send evil spirits away from people or places

**the name of the Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**to come out by...power of the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here "name" refers to Jesus' power and authority. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**By the Jesus whom Paul proclaims (ULT)**  
**the...the man whom Paul teaches about (UST)**

"Jesus" was a common name at the time, so these exorcists wanted people to know of whom they spoke.

**By the Jesus (ULT)**  
**the...the man (UST)**

This stands for the power and authority of Jesus. Alternate translation: "by the authority of Jesus" or "by the power of Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [to call on](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jewish](#)
- [name](#)
- [evil...spirits](#)
- [evil](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [proclaims](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [the man](#)
- [and they commanded...evil spirits in those places to depart from people](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [to come out by...power of the](#)
- [evil spirits to come out of people](#)
- [evil...to come out of people](#)

### ULT

**13** But there were also some [Jewish](#) exorcists traveling through the area. They tried [to call on](#) the [name](#) of the [Lord](#) Jesus over those who had [evil spirits](#). They said, "By the [Jesus](#) whom [Paul proclaims](#), I command you to come out."

### UST

**13** There were also some [Jews](#) who walked from town to town, [and they commanded](#) the [evil spirits in those places to depart from people](#). Some of those Jews told the [evil](#) spirits [to come out of people](#) by saying "I command you [to come out by](#) the [power of the Lord](#) Jesus, [the man](#) whom [Paul teaches about](#)!"

- Paul
- teaches about

## Acts 19:14

### family of Sceva (ULT) of a man named Sceva (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [a Jewish](#)
- [of his sons](#)
- [high priest](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [a Jew, who called himself](#)
- [They were sons](#)
- [a chief priest](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Some were family of Sceva, [a Jewish high priest](#)—seven [of his sons](#) were doing this.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> There were seven men who were doing this. [They were sons](#) of a man named Sceva, [a Jew, who called himself a chief priest](#).

## Acts 19:15

### Jesus I know, and Paul I know

"I know Jesus and Paul" or "I know Jesus, and I know Paul"

**but who are you (ULT)**  
**but no one has given you power to do anything to me (UST)**

The spirit asked this question to emphasize that the exorcists had no authority over evil spirits. Alternate translation: "but I do not know you!" or "but you have no authority over me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [an...evil...spirit](#)
- [evil](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [I know](#)
- [I know](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [evil spirit](#)
- [evil](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [I know](#)
- [I know](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> But an [evil spirit](#) answered them, saying, "[Jesus I know](#), and [Paul I know](#); but who are you?"

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> But one day as they were doing that, the [evil](#) spirit did not come out of that person. Instead, the evil spirit said to them, "[I know Jesus](#), and [I know Paul](#), but no one has given you power to do anything to me!"

## Acts 19:16

### The evil spirit in the man leaped

This means that the evil spirit caused the man whom it was controlling to leap on the exorcists.

#### the exorcists (ULT) of them (UST)

This refers to people who send evil spirits from people or places. See how you translated this in [Acts 19:13](#).

#### naked...they fled (ULT) He tore off their clothes...They became frightened and ran (UST)

The exorcists fled with their clothes ripped off them.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- evil spirit
- evil
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- evil spirit
- evil
- house

#### ULT

**16** Then the man in whom was the [evil](#) spirit leaped on the exorcists and overpowered them all and beat them up. Then they fled out of that [house](#) naked and wounded.

#### UST

**16** After saying that, suddenly the man who had the [evil](#) spirit jumped on the sons of Sceva. He knocked all of them down and hurt each of them. He tore off their clothes and wounded them. They became frightened and ran out of the [house](#).

## Acts 19:17

**the name of the Lord Jesus was honored (ULT)**  
**they honored the name of the Lord Jesus (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they honored the name of the Lord Jesus” or “they considered the name of the Lord Jesus to be great” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the name (ULT)**  
**the name (UST)**

This stands for the power and authority of Jesus. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [fear](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [name](#)
- [at Ephesus](#)
- [Greeks](#)
- [known](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [became afraid](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [name](#)
- [in Ephesus](#)
- [non-Jews](#)
- [what had happened](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> So this became [known](#) to all, both [Jews](#) and [Greeks](#), of those who lived [at Ephesus](#). Then [fear](#) fell upon them all, and the [name](#) of the [Lord](#) Jesus was honored.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> All the people who lived [in Ephesus](#), both [Jews](#) and [non-Jews](#), heard [what had happened](#). They [became afraid](#) because they saw that the man with the evil spirit was very strong. At the same time, they honored the [name](#) of the [Lord](#) Jesus.

## Acts 19:18

This ends the story about the Jewish exorcists. (See: [End of Story](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and confessed](#)
- [believers](#)
- [admitted](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [told about](#)
- [believers](#)
- [told about](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Also, many of the [believers](#) came [and confessed](#) and [admitted](#) the evil things they had done.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> At that time, while other believers were listening, many [believers told about](#) the evil things that they had been doing.



## Acts 19:19

**brought their books together (ULT)**  
**who were sorcerers took...scrolls that told how...to work magic (UST)**

"collected their books." The word "books" refers to scrolls on which magical incantations and formulas were written.

**in the sight of everyone (ULT)**  
**in a place where everyone could see them (UST)**

"in front of everyone"

**their...value of them (ULT)**  
**who were sorcerers took...their...to work magic...scrolls cost (UST)**

"the value of the books" or "the value of the scrolls"

**fifty thousand (ULT)**  
**fifty thousand (UST)**

"50,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

**pieces of silver (ULT)**  
**silver coins (UST)**

A "piece of silver" was the approximate daily wage for a common laborer. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [pieces of silver](#)
- [magical arts](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [silver coins](#)
- [who were sorcerers took...to work magic](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Many of those who practiced [magical arts](#) brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. Then they counted the value of them, and found it to be fifty thousand [pieces of silver](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Some of the people [who were sorcerers took](#) their scrolls that told how [to work magic](#) and burned them in a place where everyone could see them. When people added up how much the scrolls cost, it came to fifty thousand [silver coins](#).

## Acts 19:20

**So the word of the Lord was spreading and prevailing with power (ULT)**

**In this way, many people heard the message about the Lord Jesus and believed in him (UST)**

“So because of these powerful deeds, more and more people heard the message about the Lord Jesus” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [word](#)
- [power](#)
- [prevailing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [message](#)
- [In this way](#)
- [believed in him](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So the [word](#) of the [Lord](#) was spreading and [prevailing](#) with [power](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> [In this way](#), many people heard the [message](#) about the [Lord Jesus](#) and [believed in him](#).

## Acts 19:21

### Connecting Statement:

Paul talks about going Jerusalem but does not leave Ephesus yet.

### Now (ULT)

### After Paul completed his work (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

### completed his ministry in Ephesus...Paul (ULT)

### After Paul completed his work...After Paul completed his work (UST)

"Paul completed the work that God had for him to do in Ephesus"

### he decided...in the Spirit (ULT)

### After Paul completed his work...in Ephesus, the Spirit (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Paul decided with the help of the Holy Spirit or 2) Paul decided within his own spirit, which means he made up his mind.

### Achaia (ULT)

### Achaia (UST)

Achaia was the Roman province in which Corinth was located. It was the largest city in southern Greece and the capital of the province. See how you translated this in [Acts 18:12](#).

### and...I...must...see Rome (ULT)

### but first he planned...see the believers in...and...I have been to Jerusalem...go to Rome (UST)

"I must also travel to Rome"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- completed
- Rome
- Paul
- Macedonia
- Jerusalem

### Translation Words - UST

- Spirit
- After Paul completed his work
- go to Rome
- After Paul completed his work
- regions of Macedonia
- Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Now after [Paul completed](#) his ministry in Ephesus, he decided in the [Spirit](#) to pass through [Macedonia](#) and Achaia on his way to [Jerusalem](#); he said, "After I have been there, I must also see [Rome](#)."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [After Paul completed his work](#) in Ephesus, the [Spirit](#) led him to decide to go to [Jerusalem](#), but first he planned to go see the believers in the [regions of Macedonia](#) and Achaia. Paul said, "After I have been to Jerusalem, I will also [go to Rome](#)."

## Acts 19:22

### Erastus (ULT)

### Erastus (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### But he himself stayed in Asia for a while (ULT) Paul stayed in the city of Ephesus, in the province of Asia (UST)

It is made explicit in the next few verses that Paul remains in Ephesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### But he himself (ULT)

### Paul (UST)

This is repeated for emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of those helping
- Timothy
- Asia
- Macedonia
- for a while
- Paul sent

### Translation Words - UST

- his helpers
- Timothy
- the province of Asia
- Macedonia
- the city of Ephesus
- He sent

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then [Paul sent](#) to [Macedonia](#) two [of those helping](#) him, [Timothy](#) and Erastus. But he himself stayed in [Asia for a while](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [He sent](#) two of [his helpers](#), [Timothy](#) and Erastus, to [Macedonia](#). But Paul stayed in [the city of Ephesus](#), in [the province of Asia](#).

## Acts 19:23

### General Information:

Demetrius is introduced to the story. Verse 24 introduces background information about Demetrius. Ephesus had a large temple dedicated to the goddess Artemis, sometimes translated as "Diana." She was a false goddess of fertility. (See: [Background Information](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells about a riot that broke out while Paul was in Ephesus.

**there was...in Ephesus...no small disturbance...  
concerning the Way (ULT)**

**Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble...and...Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble...because of Jesus... and...the teaching about him (UST)**

This is a summary opening statement.

**there was...in Ephesus...no small disturbance (ULT)**

**Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble...and...Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble...and (UST)**

"the people became very upset" See how you translated this in [Acts 12:18](#)

**the Way (ULT)**

**the teaching about him (UST)**

This was a term used to refer to Christianity. See how you translated this title in [Acts 9:1](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [time](#)
- [there was...in Ephesus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble...and](#)
- [Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble...and](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> At about that [time there was](#) no small disturbance [in Ephesus](#) concerning the Way.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Soon after that, people in Ephesus began to make a great amount of trouble](#) because of Jesus [and](#) the teaching about him.

**Acts 19:24**

**Demetrius...a certain silversmith named (ULT)**  
**There was a man there...Demetrius...There was a man there...whose name was...Demetrius...He made...of...out of silver (UST)**

The use of the words “a certain” introduces a new person in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**silversmith (ULT)**  
**He made...of...out of silver (UST)**

a craftsman who works with silver metal to make statues and jewelry

**Demetrius...named (ULT)**  
**There was a man there...Demetrius...whose name was (UST)**

This is the name of a man. Demetrius was a silversmith in Ephesus who was against Paul and the local church. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**brought in...much business (ULT)**  
**as...Demetrius made a lot of money for all the men who made and sold these idols...as...Demetrius made a lot of money for all the men who made and sold these idols (UST)**

“made a lot of money for those who made the idols”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [named](#)
- [silver](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [whose name was](#)
- [He made...of...out of silver](#)

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> For a certain silversmith [named](#) Demetrius, who made [silver](#) statues of Artemis, brought in much business for the craftsmen.

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> There was a man there [whose name was](#) Demetrius. [He made](#) statues of the goddess Artemis (who is also known as Diana) [out of silver](#). Demetrius made a lot of money for all the men who made and sold these idols.

## Acts 19:25

**the workmen of that occupation (ULT)**

**Demetrius called together the workmen...made the idols (UST)**

An occupation is a profession or job. Alternate translation: "others who did that kind of work"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [workmen](#)
- [you know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Demetrius called together the workmen...made the idols](#)
- [you know](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> So he gathered together the [workmen](#) of that occupation and said, "Sirs, [you know](#) that in this business we make much money.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> [Demetrius called together the workmen](#) who [made the idols](#). He said to them, "Men, [you know](#) that we make a lot of money doing our work.

## Acts 19:26

### Connecting Statement:

Demetrius continues to speak to the craftsmen.

### You see...hear that (ULT) know that Paul...even (UST)

“You have come to know and understand that”

### and turned away many people (ULT) no longer want to buy what we make (UST)

Paul's stopping people from worshiping idols is spoken of as though Paul were literally turning the people in a different direction.  
Alternate translation: “caused many people to stop worshiping the local gods” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### He is saying that the things that are being made with hands are not gods (ULT) the people...that the gods...we worship are not gods and that we should not worship them (UST)

Here the word “hands” can refer to the whole person. Alternate translation: “He is saying that the idols that people make are not real gods” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gods](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [at Ephesus](#)
- [hands](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gods](#)
- [from many other towns in our province](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [who live in Ephesus to no longer buy the statues that we make](#)
- [we worship...and that we should not worship them](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> You see and hear that, not only [at Ephesus](#), but almost throughout all [Asia](#), this [Paul](#) has persuaded and turned away many people. He is saying that the things that are being made with [hands](#) are not [gods](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> You know that Paul has taught many people [who live in Ephesus to no longer buy the statues that we make](#). Now even the people [from many other towns in our province](#) no longer want to buy what we make. [Paul](#) tells people that the gods that [we worship](#) are not [gods](#) and that we should not worship them.



## Acts 19:27

**is there danger for us that this trade will be slandered (ULT)**

**If people listen to him...they will stop...our business... that they should come any longer to (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the people will no longer want to buy idols from us" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the temple of the great goddess Artemis may be considered worthless (ULT)**  
**the temple of Artemis...known as Diana) to worship her...is great (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people will think there is no benefit in going to the temple to worship the great goddess Artemis" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**also that...of the...So she...is...about to lose her... greatness (ULT)**  
**of...also...People will no longer think that Artemis...even...her (UST)**

Artemis's greatness only comes from what people think of her.

**whom all Asia and the world worships (ULT)**  
**Yet all the province of Asia and...the whole world worship...her (UST)**

This was an exaggeration to show how popular the goddess Artemis was. Here the words "Asia" and "the world" refer to the people in Asia and the known world. Alternate translation: "whom many people in Asia and in other parts of the world worship" (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [world](#)
- [goddess](#)
- [greatness](#)
- [worships](#)
- [Asia](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [whole world](#)
- [Artemis...known as Diana](#)
- [People will no longer think that Artemis](#)
- [worship](#)
- [the province of Asia](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> So not only is there danger for us that this trade will be slandered, but also that the temple of the great [goddess](#) Artemis may be considered worthless. So she whom all [Asia](#) and the [world worships](#) is indeed about to lose her [greatness](#)."

### UST

<sup>27</sup> If people listen to him, they will stop our business. People will not think that they should come any longer to the temple of [Artemis](#) (also [known as Diana](#)) to worship her. [People will no longer think that Artemis](#) is great. Yet all [the province of Asia](#) and even the [whole world worship](#) her!"

## Acts 19:28

### General Information:

Here “they” refers to the craftsmen who made the idols ([Acts 19:24-25](#)).

**became filled with anger (ULT)**

**All the men...became angry at Paul (UST)**

This speaks of the craftsmen as though they were containers. Here “anger” is spoken of as if it were the contents that fill a container.

Alternate translation: “they became very angry” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they cried out (ULT)**

**They began to shout (UST)**

“shouted aloud” or “shouted loudly”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Ephesians](#)
- [they cried out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of the Ephesians](#)
- [They began to shout](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> When they heard this and became filled with anger, [they cried out](#), saying, “Great is Artemis [of the Ephesians](#).”

### UST

<sup>28</sup> All the men there became angry at Paul when they heard what Demetrius said. [They began to shout](#), “The goddess Artemis [of the Ephesians](#) is great!”

## Acts 19:29

**the whole city was filled with confusion (ULT)**  
**Many of the people in the city became angry at Paul (UST)**

Here “city” refers to the people. The city is spoken of as if it were a container. And, “confusion” is spoken of as if it were the contents that filled the container. Alternate translation: “Then people all over the city became upset and started shouting” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**and the people rushed together (ULT)**  
**Some of the people took hold of...Then the whole crowd of people ran (UST)**

This was a mob or near riot situation.

**into the theater (ULT)**  
**to the city theater (UST)**

The Ephesus theater was used for public meetings and for entertainment such as plays and music. It was an outdoor semi-circular area with bench seats that could hold thousands of people.

**Paul's travel companions (ULT)**  
**who traveled with Paul (UST)**

The men who had been with Paul.

**Gaius and Aristarchus (ULT)**  
**Gaius and Aristarchus (UST)**

These are names of men. Gaius and Aristarchus came from Macedonia but were working with Paul in Ephesus at this time. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul's
- who came from Macedonia
- They had seized

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- two men from Macedonia
- dragging those men along with them

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then the whole city was filled with confusion, and the people rushed together into the theater. [They had seized Paul's](#) travel companions, Gaius and Aristarchus, [who came from Macedonia](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Many of the people in the city became angry at Paul and began shouting. Some of the people took hold of Gaius and Aristarchus, [two men from Macedonia](#) who traveled with [Paul](#). Then the whole crowd of people ran, [dragging those men along with them](#), to the city theater.

## Acts 19:30

### General Information:

Ephesus was part of the Roman empire and in the province of Asia.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers](#)
- [Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> [Paul](#) wanted to enter in among the people, but the [disciples](#) prevented him.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> [Paul](#) wanted to go into theater to talk to the people, but the other [believers](#) would not let him go there.

**Acts 19:31****to enter...into the theater (ULT)****to go...into...the theater (UST)**

The Ephesus theater was used for public meetings and for entertainment such as plays and music. It was an outdoor semi-circular area with bench seats that could hold thousands of people. See how you translated "theater" in [Acts 19:29](#).

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [strongly requesting him](#)
- [sent a message](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [tell](#)
- [They sent someone](#)

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> Also, some of the officials of the province of Asia who were his friends [sent a message](#) to him [strongly requesting him](#) not to enter into the theater himself.

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> Some city rulers who were friends of Paul heard what was happening. [They sent someone](#) to [tell](#) Paul not to go into the theater.

## Acts 19:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- crowd
- they had come together
- were shouting
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- The crowd of people in the theater
- they were meeting
- shouted
- did...even know

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Now indeed some people were shouting one thing, and some another, for the crowd was in confusion. Most of them did not even know for what reason they had come together.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> The crowd of people in the theater kept shouting. Some shouted one thing, and some shouted something else. But most of them did not even know why they were meeting!

## Acts 19:33

### Alexander (ULT)

**One of the Jews there was named Alexander...to tell them (UST)**

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**motioned with his hand (ULT)**

**put his hands up trying (UST)**

You can make explicit that Alexander was showing the crowd that he wanted them to be quiet. Alternate translation: "gestured to the crowd to be quiet" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to give a defense (ULT)**

**that the Jews did not cause the trouble (UST)**

It is not clear whom or what Alexander wanted to defend. If your language requires this information, it might be best to use a general phrase like "to explain what was going on."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [his hands](#)

### ULT

**33** Then out of the crowd came Alexander, whom the [Jews](#) had pushed forward. So Alexander motioned with his [hand](#), wanting to give a defense to the assembly.

### UST

**33** One of the Jews there was named Alexander. Some of the [Jews](#) pushed him to the front of the crowd so that he could speak to the people. Alexander put [his hands](#) up trying to get the crowd to stop shouting. He wanted to tell them that the Jews did not cause the trouble.

## Acts 19:34

### a...cry...single (ULT)

### shouted...and knew that the Jews did (UST)

The shouting together of the people at the same time is spoken of as though they were speaking with one voice. Alternate translation: “in unison” or “together” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [a Jew](#)
- [of the Ephesians](#)
- [a...cry](#)
- [hours](#)
- [they cried out](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [a Jew](#)
- [of the Ephesians](#)
- [shouted](#)
- [hours](#)
- [So the non-Jews](#)

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> But when they became aware that he was [a Jew](#), there was a single [cry](#) from all of them. Continuing for about two [hours they cried out](#), “Great is Artemis [of the Ephesians](#).”

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> But many of the non-Jewish people knew that Alexander was [a Jew](#) and knew that the Jews did not worship the goddess Artemis. [So the non-Jews shouted](#) for two [hours](#), “Great is the goddess Artemis [of the Ephesians!](#)”



## Acts 19:35

### General Information:

The words “You” and “you” refer to all the men present who were from Ephesus. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The clerk of Ephesus speaks to quiet the crowd.

**the town clerk (ULT)**

**the city rulers made (UST)**

This refers to the town “writer” or “secretary.”

**what man is there who does not know that the city of the Ephesians is temple keeper...heaven?**

The clerk asked this question to assure the crowd they were right and to comfort them. Alternate translation: “every man knows that the city of the Ephesians is temple keeper...heaven.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**who does not know that (ULT)**

**the world knows that (UST)**

The town clerk uses “not” to emphasize that all of the people knew this. (See: [Litotes](#))

**temple keeper (ULT)**

**the sacred image of our (UST)**

The Ephesian people maintained and guarded the temple of Artemis.

**of the image which fell down from heaven (ULT)**

**fell down from heaven (UST)**

Within the temple of Artemis was an image of the goddess. It had been fashioned from a meteorite which fell from the sky. People thought that his rock had come directly from Zeus, the ruler of the Greek gods (idols).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [town clerk](#)
- [of Ephesus](#)
- [of the Ephesians](#)
- [know that](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [city rulers made](#)
- [My fellow citizens](#)
- [the world knows that](#)
- [the world knows that](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> When the [town clerk](#) had quieted the crowd, he said, “You men [of Ephesus](#), what man indeed is there who does not [know that](#) the city [of the Ephesians](#) is temple keeper of the great Artemis and of the image which fell down from heaven?”

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Then one of the [city rulers made](#) the crowd stop shouting. He said to them, “[My fellow citizens](#), everyone in [the world knows that](#) the sacred image of our goddess Artemis fell down from heaven!”

## Acts 19:36

**Seeing then that these things are undeniable (ULT)**  
**Everyone knows that...these things are not true. So (UST)**

"Since you know these things"

**to do nothing rash (ULT)**  
**Do not do anything stupid (UST)**

"do not do anything before you have had time to think about it"

**rash (ULT)**  
**Do...anything stupid (UST)**

without careful thought

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Seeing then that these things are undeniable, it is necessary for you to be calm and to do nothing rash.

### UST

<sup>36</sup> Everyone knows that, and no one can say that these things are not true. So you should be quiet now. Do not do anything stupid.

## Acts 19:37

**these men (ULT)**

**these two men here (UST)**

The words “these men” refer to Gaius and Aristarchus, Paul’s traveling companions ([Acts 19:29](#)).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...goddess](#)
- [blasphemers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [goddess](#)
- [spoken evil](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> For you have brought these men to this court who are neither robbers of temples nor [blasphemers](#) of our [goddess](#).

### UST

<sup>37</sup> You should not have brought these two men here, because they have not done anything evil. They have not gone into our temples and taken things from there, and they have not [spoken evil](#) of our [goddess](#).

## Acts 19:38

### Connecting Statement:

The town clerk finishes speaking to the crowd.

### Therefore (ULT)

### Therefore (UST)

“Because what I have just said is true.” The town clerk had said in [Acts 19:37](#) that Gaius and Aristarchus were not robbers or blasphemers.

### have an accusation against anyone (ULT)

### want to accuse anyone of doing anything bad...to if they want to (UST)

The word “accusation” can be stated as the verb “accuse.” Alternate translation: “want to accuse someone” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### proconsuls (ULT)

### there are judges who have been chosen by the government (UST)

the Roman governor’s representatives who made legal decisions in court (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Let them accuse one another (ULT)

### You can accuse anyone there (UST)

This does not mean Demetrius and those with him will accuse each other. It means this is a place where people in general can speak their accusation. Alternate translation: “There people can accuse one another”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Let them accuse](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You can](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> Therefore, if indeed Demetrius and the craftsmen who are with him have an accusation against anyone, the courts are open and there are proconsuls. [Let them accuse](#) one another.

### UST

<sup>38</sup> Therefore, if Demetrius and his fellow workmen want to accuse anyone of doing anything bad, they should do it in the right way. There are courts that they can go to if they want to, and there are judges who have been chosen by the government. [You can](#) accuse anyone there.

## Acts 19:39

**But if you seek anything about other matters (ULT)**  
**But if you want to ask about anything else, you should ask for your rulers (UST)**

“But if you have other matters to discuss”

**it shall be settled in the regular assembly (ULT)**  
**to take care of it when those rulers come together (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “let us settle it in the regular assembly” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the regular assembly (ULT)**  
**it when those rulers come together (UST)**

This refers to a public gathering of citizens over which the county clerk presided.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [assembly](#)
- [you seek](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [come together](#)
- [you want to ask](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> But if [you seek](#) anything about other matters, it shall be settled in the regular [assembly](#).

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> But if [you want to ask](#) about anything else, you should ask for your rulers to take care of it when those rulers [come together](#).

## Acts 19:40

**we are in danger of being accused of rioting for what happened this day (ULT)**

**This is not a good meeting! Take care of this trouble the right way (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “in danger of the Roman authorities accusing us of starting this riot today” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of being accused](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [This is not a good meeting](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> For indeed we are in danger [of being accused](#) of rioting for what happened this day. There is no reason that we will be able to give as the cause of this disorder.” <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>40</sup> [This is not a good meeting!](#) Take care of this trouble the right way because we do not want to go against the government. If the rulers asked me what you were all shouting about, I would not be able to give them a good answer.”

## Acts 19:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [assembly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [crowd](#)

#### ULT

**41** When he had said this, he dismissed the [assembly](#). <sup>[2]</sup>

19:40 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient copies add, *When he had said this, he dismissed the assembly.* . here instead of in verse 41.

19:41 <sup>[2]</sup> Some ancient copies place this text at the end of verse 40.

#### UST

**41** That is what the city ruler said to the [crowd](#). Then he told them all to go home, and they did go to their homes.

## **Acts 20**

### **Acts 20 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

In this chapter Luke describes Paul's last visits to believers in the provinces of Macedonia and Asia before he went to Jerusalem.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Race**

Paul spoke of living for Jesus as if he were running in a race. By this he meant that he needed to keep working hard even when things were difficult and he wanted to quit. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [discipline, self-discipline](#))

#### **“Compelled by the Spirit”**

Paul thought that the Holy Spirit wanted him to go to Jerusalem even if Paul did not want to go there. The same Holy Spirit told other people that when Paul arrived in Jerusalem, people would try to harm him.



## Acts 20:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul leaves Ephesus and continues his travels.

### After...had ended (ULT)

### After...people at Ephesus had stopped (UST)

"After the riot" or "Following the riot"

### he said farewell (ULT)

### Soon after that, he told them "Goodbye (UST)

"he said goodbye"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Macedonia](#)
- [after he encouraged them](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [the region of Macedonia](#)
- [He urged them to continue to trust in the Lord Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> After the uproar had ended, [Paul](#) sent for the [disciples](#) and [after he encouraged them](#), he said farewell and left to go to [Macedonia](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After the people at Ephesus had stopped rioting, [Paul](#) called the [believers](#) together. [He urged them to continue to trust in the Lord Jesus](#). Soon after that, he told them "Goodbye" and left to go to [the region of Macedonia](#).

## Acts 20:2

**had spoken many words of encouragement to them (ULT)**

**he urged...them to continue to trust in the Lord Jesus (UST)**

“had greatly encouraged the believers” or “had said many things to encourage the believers”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [had spoken](#)
- [Greece](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he urged](#)
- [Greece](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> When he had gone through those regions and [had spoken](#) many words of encouragement to them, he came to [Greece](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> After he arrived there, [he urged](#) them to continue to trust in the Lord Jesus. Then he went to [Greece](#).

**Acts 20:3**

**After he had spent three months there (ULT)**  
**He stayed in Greece for three months...and (UST)**

“After he had stayed there three months.” This speaks about time as if it were something a person could spend. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a plot was formed against him by the Jews (ULT)**  
**of the Jews there were planning to kill him as he traveled (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Jews formed a plot against him” or “the Jews formed a secret plan to harm him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**by the Jews (ULT)**  
**of the Jews there (UST)**

This means only some of the Jews. Alternate translation: “by some of the Jews” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**as he was about to sail for Syria (ULT)**  
**Then he planned...to Syria by ship...So he decided to go (UST)**

“as he was ready to sail for Syria”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [Macedonia](#)
- [Syria](#)
- [months](#)
- [to return](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jews there](#)
- [through Macedonia](#)
- [Syria by ship](#)
- [months](#)
- [return](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> After he had spent three [months](#) there, a plot was formed against him by the [Jews](#) as he was about to sail for [Syria](#), so he decided [to return](#) through [Macedonia](#).

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> He stayed in Greece for three [months](#). Then he planned to [return](#) to [Syria by ship](#), but he heard that some of the [Jews there](#) were planning to kill him as he traveled. So he decided to go by land, and he went again [through Macedonia](#).

## Acts 20:4

### General Information:

Here the word “him” refers to Paul ([Acts 20:1](#)). All instances of “us” and “we” in the verses that follow refer to the writer and Paul and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Accompanying him (ULT)

**The men who were going to travel with him to Jerusalem were (UST)**

“Traveling with him”

**were Sopater...son of Pyrrhus...Secundus...Tychicus...Trophimus (ULT)**

**Sopater, the son...of Pyrrhus...Secundus, who were...Tychicus...Trophimus, who were from (UST)**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**from Berea...of Derbe (ULT)**

**from...town of Berea...the city of Derbe (UST)**

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Aristarchus...Gaius (ULT)**

**Aristarchus...Gaius, who was from (UST)**

These are names of men. See how you translated these names in [Acts 19:29](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Timothy
- Tychicus
- from Berea
- a Thessalonian

### Translation Words - UST

- Timothy, who was from
- Tychicus
- from...town of Berea
- from the city of Thessalonica

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Accompanying him were Sopater son of Pyrrhus [from Berea](#), and Aristarchus and Secundus, [a Thessalonian](#), and Gaius of Derbe, and [Timothy](#), and [Tychicus](#) and Trophimus from Asia.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The men who were going to travel with him to Jerusalem were Sopater, the son of Pyrrhus, from the [town of Berea](#); Aristarchus and Secundus, who were [from the city of Thessalonica](#); Gaius, who was from the city of Derbe; [Timothy, who was from](#) the region of Galatia; and [Tychicus](#) and Trophimus, who were from the province of Asia.

## Acts 20:5

### Troas (ULT)

#### to the city of Troas before we did (UST)

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### these men...had gone before us (ULT)

#### Those seven men...went ahead of Paul and me, Luke, by ship from Macedonia (UST)

"these men had traveled ahead of us"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Troas](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to the city of Troas before we did](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But these men had gone before us and were waiting for us at [Troas](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Those seven men went ahead of Paul and me, Luke, by ship from Macedonia, so they got [to the city of Troas before we did](#) and waited for the two of us there.

## Acts 20:6

### the days of unleavened bread (ULT)

### the Jewish Festival of Bread made without Yeast (UST)

This refers to a time of Jewish religious feast time during the Passover season. See how you translated this in [Acts 12:3](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- of unleavened bread
- Philippi
- Troas
- days
- days
- for...days (2)

#### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish Festival of Bread made without Yeast
- the city of Philippi
- the city of Troas
- Jewish Festival of Bread made without Yeast
- days
- days (2)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then we sailed away from [Philippi](#) after the [days of unleavened bread](#), and in five [days](#) we came to them in [Troas](#). There we stayed for seven [days](#).

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> But Paul and I traveled by land as far as [the city of Philippi](#). After the [Jewish Festival of Bread made without Yeast](#), we got on a ship that was going to [the city of Troas](#). After five [days](#) we arrived at Troas and met the other men who had traveled ahead of us. Then we all stayed in Troas for seven [days](#).

## Acts 20:7

### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to the writer, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#) and [Acts 20:4-6](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Luke tells about Paul's preaching in Troas and about what happened to Eutychus.

### to break bread (ULT) would share a meal together with the other believers (UST)

Bread was part of their meals. Possible meanings are 1) this refers simply to eating a meal together. Alternate translation: "eat a meal" or 2) this refers to the meal they would eat together in order to remember Christ's death and resurrection. Alternate translation: "to eat the Lord's Supper" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### so he continued his talk (ULT) and...so he continued speaking (UST)

"he continued to speak"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- bread
- when...were gathered together

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- would share a meal together with the other believers
- we would gather together

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then on the first day of the week, [when](#) we [were gathered together](#) to break [bread](#), [Paul](#) spoke to the believers. He was planning to leave the next day, so he continued his talk until midnight.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> On the first day of the week, [we would gather together](#) and we [would share a meal together with the other believers](#). [Paul](#) spoke to the believers until midnight. He was planning to leave Troas the next day, so he continued speaking.

## Acts 20:8

**upper room (ULT)**

**upstairs room (UST)**

This may have been the third floor house.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lamps](#)
- [meeting together](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [oil lamps](#)
- [gathered](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> There were many [lamps](#) in the upper room where we were [meeting together](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Many [oil lamps](#) were burning in the upstairs room in which we had [gathered](#).



## Acts 20:9

### General Information:

Here the word "himself" refers to Paul. The first word "he" refers to Paul; the second word "he" refers to the young man, Eutychus. The word "him" refers to Eutychus.

### By the window (ULT) on the sill of an open window (UST)

This was an opening in the wall with a ledge that was wide enough on which a person could sit.

### Eutychus (ULT) was Eutychus was there (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### who fell into a deep sleep (ULT) Eutychus became sleepier and sleepier. Finally, he fell sound asleep (UST)

This speaks about sleep as if it were a deep hole into which a person could fall. Alternate translation: "who slept soundly" or "who became more and more tired until finally he was sleeping soundly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### third story...and was picked up dead (ULT) third story of the house...and picked him up...he was dead (UST)

When they went down to check his condition, they saw he was dead. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "third story; and when they went to pick him up, they found that he was dead" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### third story (ULT) third story of the house (UST)

This means two floors above the ground floor. If your culture does not count the ground floor, you may state this as the "second story."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [named](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [dead](#)
- [sleep](#)
- [sleep](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [whose name](#)
- [As Paul](#)
- [he was dead](#)
- [asleep](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> By the window was sitting a certain young man [named](#) Eutychus, who fell into a deep [sleep](#). As [Paul](#) spoke even longer, this young man, overcome by [sleep](#), fell down from the third story and was picked up [dead](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> A young man [whose name](#) was Eutychus was there. He was seated on the sill of an open window on the third story of the house. [As Paul](#) continued talking for a long time, Eutychus became sleepier and sleepier. Finally, he fell sound [asleep](#). He fell out of the [window](#) down to the ground. Some of the believers went down immediately and picked him up. But [he was dead](#).

- [window](#)

## Acts 20:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for...life](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [alive again](#)
- [Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But [Paul](#) went down, stretched himself out on him, and embraced him. Then he said, "Do not be upset any more, for his [life](#) is in him."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Paul](#) also went down. He lay down and stretched out on top of the young man and put his arms around him. Then he said to the people who were standing around, "Do not worry; he is [alive again!](#)"

## Acts 20:11

### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to Paul.

### Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Paul's preaching at Troas and about Eutychus.

### broke bread (ULT)

### he prepared a meal and he ate it...the believers (UST)

Bread was a common food during meals. Here "break bread" probably means they shared a meal with more kinds of food than just bread. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### he left (ULT)

### he left (UST)

"he went away"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and he ate it](#)

### ULT

**11** Then he went upstairs again and broke [bread](#) and ate. After talking with them much longer until dawn, he left.

### UST

**11** Paul went upstairs again and he prepared a meal [and he ate it](#). Afterwards he talked with the believers until the sun came up. Then he left.

**Acts 20:12****the boy (ULT)****the young man home (UST)**

This refers to Eutychus ([Acts 20:9](#)). Possible meanings are 1) he was a young man over 14 years old or 2) he was a boy between 9 and 14 years old or 3) the word “boy” implies that he was a servant or a slave.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [alive](#)
- [were...comforted](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [he was alive again](#)
- [were...comforted because](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> So they brought back the boy [alive](#) and were greatly [comforted](#).

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> The other people took the young man home, and were greatly [comforted because he was alive again](#).

## Acts 20:13

### General Information:

The words “he,” “himself,” and “him” refer to Paul. Here the word “we” refers to the writer and those traveling with him, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The writer Luke, Paul, and his other companions continue their travels; however, Paul goes separately for part of the trip.

### **we ourselves...went ahead of Paul (ULT)**

### **We...then went (UST)**

The word “ourselves” adds emphasis and separates Luke and his traveling companions from Paul, who did not travel by boat. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### **and sailed away to Assos (ULT)**

### **The rest of us got on the ship and sailed for Assos (UST)**

Assos is a town located directly below present day Behram in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **he himself had arranged to do (ULT)**

### **because he wanted to go more quickly overland to the town of Assos (UST)**

Himself is used to emphasize that this is what Paul wanted. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

### **to go on foot (ULT)**

### **because he wanted to go more quickly overland to the town of Assos (UST)**

“to travel on land”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul did not get on the ship with us in Troas](#)

### ULT

**13** But we ourselves went ahead of Paul to the ship and sailed away to Assos, where we planned to take [Paul](#) on board. This is what he himself had arranged to do, because he planned to go on foot.

### UST

**13** We then went to the ship. But [Paul did not get on the ship with us in Troas](#), because he wanted to go more quickly overland to the town of Assos. The rest of us got on the ship and sailed for Assos.

## Acts 20:14

**and went to Mitylene (ULT)**

**He got on the ship with...to the city of Mitylene (UST)**

Mitylene is a town located in present day Mitilini in Turkey on the coast of the Aegean sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> When he met us at Assos, we took him onto the ship and went to Mitylene.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> We met Paul in Assos. He got on the ship with us, and we sailed to the city of Mitylene.

## Acts 20:15

### General Information:

Here the word “we” refers to Paul, the writer, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**opposite the island of Chios (ULT)**  
**at a place near the Island of Chios (UST)**

“near the island” or “across from the island”

**the island of Chios (ULT)**  
**the Island of Chios (UST)**

Chios is an island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the Aegean Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**we touched at the island of Samos (ULT)**  
**and arrived...we sailed to the Island of Samos. The next day we left Samos and (UST)**

“we arrived at the island of Samos”

**the island of Samos (ULT)**  
**The next day we left Samos and (UST)**

Samos is an island south of Chios in the Aegean Sea off the coast of modern day Turkey. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the city of Miletus (ULT)**  
**the city of Miletus (UST)**

Miletus was a port city in western Asia Minor near the mouth of the Meander River. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

**15** Then we sailed from there and arrived the next day opposite the island of Chios. The following day we touched at the island of Samos, and the day after we came to the city of Miletus.

### UST

**15** The day after we reached Mitylene, we sailed from there and arrived at a place near the Island of Chios. The day after that, we sailed to the Island of Samos. The next day we left Samos and sailed to the city of Miletus.



## Acts 20:16

**For Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus (ULT)  
Miletus was just south of the city of Ephesus. Paul (UST)**

Paul sailed south past the port city of Ephesus, further south in order to land at Miletus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**so that he would not spend any time (ULT)  
did not want to stop at Ephesus...he did not want to  
spend time (UST)**

This speaks about “time” as if it were a commodity that a person could spend or use up. Alternate translation: “so that he would not have to remain for a time” or “so that he would not have a delay” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Pentecost](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Ephesus](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [spend any time](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Pentecost festival](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [Miletus was just south of the city of Ephesus. Paul](#)
- [Miletus was just south of the city of Ephesus. Paul](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [did not want to spend time](#)
- [time](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> For [Paul](#) had decided to sail past [Ephesus](#), so that he would not [spend any time](#) in [Asia](#); for he was hurrying to be, if it was possible for him, in [Jerusalem](#) for the [day of Pentecost](#).

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [Miletus was just south of the city of Ephesus. Paul](#) did not want to stop at Ephesus because he [did not want to spend time](#) in [Asia](#). If possible, he wanted to arrive in [Jerusalem](#) by the [time](#) of the [Pentecost festival](#), and the time of that festival was near.

## Acts 20:17

### General Information:

Here the word “he” refers to Paul. The word “our” refers to Paul and the elders to whom he is speaking. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#) )

### Connecting Statement:

Paul calls the elders of the church of Ephesus and begins to speak to them.

### Miletus (ULT)

### the ship arrived at Miletus, Paul (UST)

Miletus was a port city in western Asia Minor near the mouth of the Meander River. See how you translated this in [Acts 20:15](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and summoned](#)
- [church](#)
- [Ephesus](#)
- [elders](#)
- [he sent men](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to ask...to come to talk with him](#)
- [group of believers there](#)
- [Ephesus](#)
- [elders](#)
- [sent a messenger](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> So from Miletus [he sent men](#) to [Ephesus and summoned](#) the [elders](#) of the [church](#).

### UST

<sup>17</sup> When the ship arrived at Miletus, Paul [sent a messenger](#) to [Ephesus to ask](#) the [elders](#) of the [group of believers there to come to talk with him](#).

**Acts 20:18****You yourselves (ULT)  
you (UST)**

Here “yourselves” is used for emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**I arrived in Asia (ULT)  
I arrived here in the province of Asia until the day I left (UST)**

Here “foot” stands for the entire person. Alternate translation: “I entered Asia” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**how I was with you the whole time (ULT)  
how I acted among you the entire time that I was with you (UST)**

This speaks about time as if it were something that a person could spend. Alternate translation: “how I always conducted myself when I was with you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Asia](#)
- [time](#)
- [day](#)
- [know](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [the province of Asia until the day I left](#)
- [time that](#)
- [From the first day](#)
- [know](#)

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> When they had come to him, he said to them, “You yourselves [know](#), from the first [day](#) that I arrived in [Asia](#), how I was with you the whole [time](#).”

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> When the elders came to him, Paul said to them, “[From the first day](#) when I arrived here in [the province of Asia until the day I left](#), you [know](#) how I acted among you the entire [time that](#) I was with you.”

**Acts 20:19****lowliness of mind (ULT)****humbly (UST)**

This speaks about something humble as if it were low to the ground. The word “mind” stands for a person’s inner attitude. Alternate translation: “humility” or “humbleness” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**with tears (ULT)****how I sometimes wept (UST)**

Here “tears” stands for feeling sad and crying. Alternate translation: “I crying as I served the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**in sufferings that happened to me (ULT)****I suffered because the...often tried to harm me (UST)**

“Sufferings” is an abstract noun. The meaning can be expressed as a verb. Alternate Translation: “while I suffered” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**of the Jews (ULT)****Jews who were not believers (UST)**

This does not mean every Jew. This lets us know who plotted. Alternate translation: “of some of the Jews” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Lord](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [lowliness of mind](#)
- [in sufferings](#)
- [I kept serving](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Jews who were not believers](#)
- [humbly](#)
- [I suffered because](#)
- [You know how I kept serving](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> [I kept serving](#) the [Lord](#) with all [lowliness of mind](#) and with tears, and [in sufferings](#) that happened to me because of the plots of the [Jews](#).

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> [You know how I kept serving](#) the [Lord Jesus](#) very [humbly](#) and how I sometimes wept. You also know how [I suffered because](#) the [Jews who were not believers](#) often tried to harm me.

## Acts 20:20

**You know how I did not keep back...from declaring to you (ULT)**

**You also know that, when...I never left out anything that would help you...I preached God's message to you...I never left out anything that would help you (UST)**

"You know how I was never silent, but I always declared to you"

**from house to house (ULT)**

**I also went to your homes and (UST)**

Paul taught people in various private homes. The words "I taught" are understood. Alternate translation: "I also taught when I was in your homes" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [how I taught](#)
- [anything that was useful](#)
- [from declaring](#)
- [from house to house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [taught](#)
- [I never left out anything that would help you](#)
- [I preached God's message](#)
- [your homes and](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> You know how I did not keep back [from declaring](#) to you [anything that was useful](#), and [how I taught](#) you in public and [from house to house](#),

### UST

<sup>20</sup> You also know that, when [I preached God's message](#) to you, [I never left out anything that would help you](#). You know that I taught you God's message when many people were present, and I also went to [your homes and taught](#) you there.

## Acts 20:21

**about repentance toward God and of faith in our Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**telling them all that they must turn toward God and away from their sinful behavior and believe in our Lord Jesus (UST)**

The abstract nouns “repentance” and “faith” can be stated as verbs.  
 Alternate translation: “that they need to repent before God and believe in our Lord Jesus Christ” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [to...Jews](#)
- [about repentance toward God](#)
- [about repentance toward God](#)
- [of faith](#)
- [Greeks](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [to Jews](#)
- [God](#)
- [they must turn...and away from their sinful behavior](#)
- [believe](#)
- [to non-Jews](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> testifying to both [Jews](#) and [Greeks about repentance toward God](#) and [of faith](#) in our [Lord Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> I preached both [to Jews](#) and [to non-Jews](#), telling them all that [they must turn](#) toward [God and away from their sinful behavior](#) and [believe](#) in our [Lord Jesus](#).”

## Acts 20:22

### General Information:

Here the word "I" refers to Paul.

**compelled...by the Spirit (ULT)**  
**has clearly shown me...because the Holy Spirit (UST)**

They can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because the Spirit compels me to go there" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**not knowing what will happen to me there (ULT)**  
**that I must go there, and I must obey him. I do not know what will happen to me there (UST)**

"and I do not know what will happen to me there"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [compelled](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [knowing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [has clearly shown me](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [know](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Now look, I am going to [Jerusalem](#), [compelled](#) by the [Spirit](#), not [knowing](#) what will happen to me there,

### UST

<sup>22</sup> "And now I am going to [Jerusalem](#), because the [Holy Spirit has clearly shown me](#) that I must go there, and I must obey him. I do not [know](#) what will happen to me there.

**Acts 20:23**

**chains and sufferings await me (ULT)**  
**people will put me in prison and will cause me to suffer (UST)**

Here “chains” refers to Paul’s being arrested and put in prison.  
Alternate translation: “people will put me in prison and cause me to suffer” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [chains](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [sufferings](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [people will put me in prison](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [will cause me to suffer](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> except that the [Holy Spirit](#) testifies to me in every city, saying that [chains](#) and [sufferings](#) await me.

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> But I do know that in each city I have visited, the [Holy Spirit](#) has told me that in Jerusalem [people will put me in prison](#) and [will cause me to suffer](#).



## Acts 20:24

**so as to finish my race and the ministry that I received from the Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**even if...if first I am able to finish the work that the Lord Jesus...me to do. He called me to (UST)**

This speaks about Paul's "race" and "ministry" as if they are objects that Jesus gives and Paul receives. Here "race" and "ministry" mean basically the same thing. Paul repeats this for emphasis. Alternate translation: "so that I may complete the work that the Lord Jesus has commanded me to do" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Doublet](#))

**to finish...race (ULT)**  
**I am able to finish the work that (UST)**

Paul speaks about completing the work that Jesus has commanded him to do as if he were running a race. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the...to solemnly testify to the gospel of the grace...of God (ULT)**  
**the...has told...tell people the good message that...God saves us by doing for us...what we do not deserve (UST)**

"to tell people the good news about God's grace." This is the ministry that Paul received from Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [grace](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [of God](#)
- [to solemnly testify](#)
- [ministry](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [I received](#)
- [to finish](#)
- [valuable](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people kill me](#)
- [we do not deserve](#)
- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [God saves us by doing for us](#)
- [has told](#)
- [to do. He called me](#)
- [tell people...good message that](#)
- [to do. He called me](#)
- [I am able to finish](#)
- [people kill me](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But I do not consider my [life valuable](#) to myself, so as [to finish](#) my race and the [ministry](#) that [I received](#) from the [Lord Jesus](#), [to solemnly testify](#) to the [gospel](#) of the [grace of God](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> But I do not care even if [people kill me](#), if first [I am able to finish](#) the work that the [Lord Jesus](#) [has told](#) me [to do](#). [He called me](#) to [tell people](#) the [good message that God saves us by doing for us](#) what [we do not deserve](#).

**Acts 20:25****Connecting Statement:**

Paul continues to talk to the Ephesian elders ([Acts 20:17](#)).

**Now look, I know (ULT)**

**But now I know...today is (UST)**

“Now, pay careful attention, because I know”

**I know that...you all (ULT)**

**I know that...you fellow believers (UST)**

“I know that all of you”

**among whom I went about proclaiming the kingdom (ULT)**

**I have preached to you the message about how God will show himself as king (UST)**

Here “kingdom” stands for God’s rule as king. Alternate translation: “to whom I preached the message about God’s reign as king” or “to whom I preached about how God will show himself as king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**will see my face no more (ULT)**

**the last time that...will see me (UST)**

The word “face” here represents Paul’s physical body. Alternate translation: “will not see me anymore on this earth” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [kingdom](#)
- [proclaiming](#)
- [face](#)
- [know](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [about how God will show himself as king](#)
- [I have preached to you](#)
- [me](#)
- [know](#)

**ULT**

<sup>25</sup> Now look, I [know](#) that you all, among whom I went about [proclaiming](#) the [kingdom](#), will see my [face](#) no more.

**UST**

<sup>25</sup> [I have preached to you](#) the message [about how God will show himself as king](#). But now I [know](#) that today is the last time that you fellow believers will see [me](#).

**Acts 20:26****I am innocent of the blood of any man (ULT)****I...all...if anyone who has heard me preach dies without trusting in Jesus...not my fault (UST)**

Here "blood" stands for a person's death, which, in this case, is not physical death but spiritual death when God declares a person guilty of sin. Paul had told them God's truth. Alternate translation: "I am not responsible for anyone whom God judges guilty of sin because they did not trust in Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of any man (ULT)****all (UST)**

Here this means any person whether male or female. Alternate translation: "any person" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [innocent](#)
- [I testify](#)
- [blood](#)
- [day](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [my fault](#)
- [want you...to understand...it is](#)
- [if anyone...dies without trusting in Jesus](#)
- [want you...to understand...it is](#)

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> Therefore [I testify](#) to you this [day](#), that I am [innocent](#) of the [blood](#) of any man.

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> So I [want you](#) all [to understand](#) that [if anyone](#) who has heard me preach [dies without trusting in Jesus](#), [it is](#) not [my fault](#),

**Acts 20:27****For I did not hold back from declaring...to you (ULT)  
because I told you...for us (UST)**

“For I did not keep silent and not tell you.” This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “For I certainly declared to you” (See: [Litotes](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of God](#)
- [will](#)
- [declaring](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [has planned](#)
- [I told](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> For I did not hold back from [declaring](#) to you the whole [will of God](#).

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> because [I told](#) you everything that [God has planned](#) for us.

## Acts 20:28

**the flock of which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers. Be careful to shepherd the church of God (ULT)**

**You leaders must continue to believe and obey God's message...the other believers for whom the Holy Spirit has given you to care for...the group of the Lord's believers as a shepherd watches over his sheep (UST)**

Believers are likened to a "flock" of sheep here. Church leaders are entrusted by God with the care of the community of believers just as a shepherd would care for his flock of sheep and protect them from wolves. Alternate translation: "the group of believers the Holy spirit has entrusted to you. Be sure to take care of the church of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the church of God, which he purchased with his own blood (ULT)**

**the group of the Lord's believers...God bought them with the blood that flowed from his Son's body on the cross (UST)**

The shedding of the "blood" of Christ here is likened to a payment to God for our sins. Alternate translation: "the people Christ saved from their sins by shedding his blood on the cross" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**his own blood (ULT)**

**the blood...on the cross (UST)**

Here "blood" stands for Christ's death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [church](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [blood](#)
- [has made](#)
- [Be careful to shepherd](#)
- [flock](#)
- [overseers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [group...believers](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [Lord's](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [blood](#)
- [has given](#)
- [as a shepherd watches over his sheep](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Guard yourselves, and all the [flock](#) of which the [Holy Spirit has made](#) you [overseers](#). [Be careful to shepherd](#) the [church of God](#), which he purchased with his own [blood](#). <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>28</sup> [You leaders must continue to believe and obey God's message](#). You must also help all the [other believers](#) for whom the [Holy Spirit has given](#) you to care for. Watch over yourselves and the [group](#) of the [Lord's believers as a shepherd watches over his sheep](#). God bought them with the [blood](#) that flowed from his Son's body on the cross.

- other believers
- You leaders must continue to believe and obey God's message

**Acts 20:29**

**will come in...vicious wolves...among you and will not spare the flock (ULT)**

**will come...among you and will do great harm to...They will be like fierce wolves that kill the sheep (UST)**

This is a picture of people who teach false doctrine and who harm the community of believers as though they were wolves that eat the sheep of the flock. Alternate translation: “many enemies will come among you and try to harm the community of believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [flock](#)
- [wolves](#)
- [know](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [sheep](#)
- [wolves](#)
- [know very well](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> I [know](#) that after my departure, vicious [wolves](#) will come in among you and will not spare the [flock](#).

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> I [know very well](#) that after I leave, people who teach lies will come among you and will do great harm to the believers. They will be like fierce [wolves](#) that kill the [sheep](#).

**Acts 20:30****in order to draw away the disciples after them**

A false teacher convincing believers to start believing his false teaching is spoken of as if he were leading sheep away from the flock to follow him. Alternate translation: “in order to convince people who are disciples of Christ to become his disciples instead” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [disciples](#)
- [perverse things](#)
- [will come](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [will become their followers](#)
- [some who will lie to other believers by teaching them the wrong things](#)
- [there will be](#)

**ULT**

<sup>30</sup> I know that from even among you yourselves, some men [will come](#) speaking [perverse things](#) which will draw away the [disciples](#) after them.

**UST**

<sup>30</sup> Even in your own group of leaders [there will be some who will lie to other believers by teaching them the wrong things](#). They will teach those messages so that some people will believe them and [will become their followers](#).



**Acts 20:31****be on guard. Remember (ULT)****watch out that none of you stops believing the true message about our Lord Jesus! Remember (UST)**

“be on guard and remember” or “be on guard as you remember”

**be on guard (ULT)****watch out that none of you stops believing the true message about our Lord Jesus (UST)**

“be awake and alert” or “watch out.” Christian leaders being alert about anyone that may harm the community of believers is spoken of as if they were guards in an army watching out for the enemy army. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Remember that (ULT)****Remember that (UST)**

“Continue to remember that” or “Do not forget that”

**for three years I did not stop...night and day...instructing (ULT)****day and night for three years...I taught you that message and warned you (UST)**Paul did not teach them continuously for three years, but over the space of three years. (See: [Hyperbole](#))**I did not stop...instructing (ULT)****day and night...I taught you that message and warned you (UST)**

“I did not stop warning”

**with tears (ULT)****with tears to be faithful to the Lord (UST)**

Here “tears” refers to Paul’s crying because of the strong emotion of concern he felt while he was warning the people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [be on guard](#)
- [instructing](#)
- [day](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [watch out that none of you stops believing the true message about our Lord Jesus](#)
- [I taught you that message and warned you](#)
- [day and night](#)

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> So [be on guard](#). Remember that for three years I did not stop [instructing](#) every one of you with tears night and [day](#).

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> So [watch out that none of you stops believing the true message about our Lord Jesus](#)! Remember that [day and night](#) for three years [I taught you that message and warned you](#) with tears to be faithful to the Lord.”

**Acts 20:32**

**I entrust you to God and to the word of his grace (ULT)**  
**you I ask God to protect you and to keep you believing**  
**the message that he saves us by doing for us what we**  
**do not deserve (UST)**

Here “word” stands for a message. Alternate translation: “I ask God to take care of you and that he will help you to keep believing the message I spoke to you about his grace” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**I entrust (ULT)**  
**I ask...to protect you (UST)**

to give someone else the responsibility of taking care of someone or something

**to the...is able to build you up (ULT)**  
**to...the message that I told you, you will become**  
**strong (UST)**

A person's faith becoming stronger is spoken of as if the person were a wall and someone were building him higher and stronger. Alternate translation: “which is able to make become stronger and stronger in your faith” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to give you the inheritance (ULT)**  
**If you continue believing...God will give...good things that he has promised to give to (UST)**

This speaks about the “word of his grace” as if it were God himself that would give the inheritance to believers. Alternate translation: “God will give you the inheritance” (See: [Personification](#))

**the inheritance (ULT)**  
**If you continue believing...good things that he has promised to give to (UST)**

The blessings that God gives believers is spoken of as if they were money or property that a child inherits from his father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of...grace](#)
- [inheritance](#)
- [to God](#)
- [word of his grace](#)
- [is able](#)
- [those who are being sanctified](#)
- [I entrust](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [we do not deserve](#)
- [good things that he has promised to give to](#)
- [God](#)

**ULT**

<sup>32</sup> Now [I entrust](#) you [to God](#) and to the [word of his grace](#), which [is able](#) to build you up and to give you the [inheritance](#) among all [those who are being sanctified](#).

**UST**

<sup>32</sup> “Now as I leave you [I ask God to protect you](#) and to [keep you believing](#) the [message that he saves us by doing for us what we do not deserve](#). If you continue believing [the message that I told you, you will become strong](#), and God will give you forever the [good things that he has promised to give to](#) all of [those who belong to him](#).

- keep you believing...message that he saves us by doing for us what we do not deserve
- the message that I told you, you will become strong
- those who belong to him
- I ask...to protect you

## Acts 20:33

### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes speaking to the elders of the church of Ephesus; he began to speak them in [Acts 20:18](#).

**silver...I coveted no man's (ULT)**  
**anyone's money or...As for myself, I never wanted (UST)**

"I did not desire someone's silver" or "I did not want for myself anyone's silver"

### man's silver, gold, or clothing

Clothing was considered a treasure; the more you had, the richer you were.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [I coveted](#)
- [gold](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [anyone's money or](#)
- [As for myself, I...wanted](#)
- [anyone's money or](#)

#### ULT

33 [I coveted](#) no man's [silver](#) or [gold](#) or clothing.

#### UST

33 [As for myself, I](#) never [wanted anyone's money or](#) fine clothing.

**Acts 20:34****You yourselves (ULT)  
yourselves (UST)**

The word “yourselves” is used here to add emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**my own needs...these hands served (ULT)  
my...needed...with...hands...the money that my  
friends...I (UST)**

The word “hands” here represents the entire person. Alternate translation: “I worked to earn money and pay for my own expenses” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [served](#)
- [hands](#)
- [know](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [with...hands...the money that my friends...I](#)
- [with...hands...the money that my friends...I](#)
- [You...know](#)

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> You yourselves [know](#) that these [hands served](#) my own needs and the needs of those who were with me.

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> You yourselves [know](#) that I have worked with my [hands](#) to earn [the money that my friends](#) and [I](#) needed.

**Acts 20:35**

**we should work hard to help those who are weak (ULT)**  
**we should work hard in order to have enough money to**  
**give some to...who are needy (UST)**

"you should work so as to have money to help people who cannot earn it for themselves"

**those who are weak (ULT)**  
**who are needy (UST)**

You can state this nominal adjective as an adjective. Alternate translation: "weak persons" or "those who are weak" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**those who are weak (ULT)**  
**who are needy (UST)**

"sick"

**the words of the Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**those...We should remember...our Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here "words" refers to what Jesus has said. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**It is more blessed to give than to receive (ULT)**  
**A person is happier when he gives to others than when he receives from them (UST)**

This means a person receives the favor of God and experiences more joy when he gives to other people rather than always receiving from other people.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [blessed](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [to receive](#)
- [work hard](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [our Lord Jesus](#)
- [A person...happier](#)
- [our Lord](#)
- [than when he receives from them](#)
- [we should work hard](#)

**ULT**

<sup>35</sup> In all things, I showed you that in this way we should [work hard](#) to help those who are weak, and to also remember the words of the [Lord](#) Jesus, that he himself said: "It is more [blessed](#) to give than [to receive](#)."

**UST**

<sup>35</sup> In everything that I did, I showed you that [we should work hard](#) in order to have enough money to give some to those who are needy. We should remember that [our Lord](#) Jesus himself said, '[A person](#) is [happier](#) when he gives to others [than when he receives from them](#).'

**Acts 20:36****Connecting Statement:**

Paul ends his time with the elders of the church of Ephesus by praying with them.

**he bowed his knees...and prayed (ULT)**  
**had finished speaking...he knelt down with...the...and prayed (UST)**

It was a common custom to kneel down while praying. It was a sign of humility before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [and prayed](#)
- [he bowed](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [and prayed](#)
- [had finished speaking](#)

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> After he had said these things, [he bowed](#) his knees [and prayed](#) with them all.

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> When Paul [had finished speaking](#), he knelt down with all of the elders [and prayed](#).

## Acts 20:37

**they embraced Paul (ULT)**

**they hugged Paul (UST)**

“hugged him closely” or “put their arms around him”

**and kissed him (ULT)**

**kissed him (UST)**

Kissing someone on the cheek is an expression of brotherly or friendly love in the Middle East.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- of weeping
- and kissed

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- They...cried
- kissed

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Then there was a lot [of weeping](#) among them all, and they embraced [Paul and kissed](#) him.

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> [They](#) all [cried](#) a lot, and they hugged [Paul](#) and [kissed](#) him.



## Acts 20:38

**they were never going to see his face again (ULT)**  
**they would never see him again (UST)**

The word “face” here represents Paul’s physical body. Alternate translation: “will not see me anymore on this earth” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they would...see him](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> They were sad most of all because of the statement which he had spoken, that they were never going to see his [face](#) again. Then they escorted him to the ship.

20:28 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *with his own blood* , this could be translated as, *with the blood of his own Son* .

### UST

<sup>38</sup> They were very sad because he had said that [they would](#) never [see him](#) again. Then they all went with him to the ship.

## Acts 21

### Acts 21 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Acts 21:1-19 describes Paul's journey to Jerusalem. After he arrived in Jerusalem, the believers there told him that the Jews wanted to harm him and what he should do so they would not harm him (verses 20-26). Even though Paul did what the believers told him to do, the Jews tried to kill him. The Romans rescued him and gave him a chance to speak to the Jews.

The last verse of the chapter ends with an incomplete sentence. Most translations leave the sentence incomplete, as the ULT does.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### “They are all determined to keep the law”

The Jews in Jerusalem were following the law of Moses. Even those who were following Jesus still kept the law. Both groups thought that Paul had been telling Jews in Greece not to keep the law. But it was only the Gentiles to whom Paul was saying that.

#### Nazarite vow

The vow that Paul and his three friends made was probably a Nazarite vow, because they shaved their heads (Acts 21:23).

#### Gentiles in the temple

The Jews accused Paul of bringing a Gentile man into a part of the temple into which God only allowed Jews to go. They thought that God wanted them to punish Paul by killing him. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

#### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens.

## Acts 21:1

### General Information:

Here the word “we” refers to Luke, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The writer Luke, Paul, and his companions continue their travels.

**we took a straight course and came to the city of Cos (ULT)**  
**traveled on the water to the Island of Cos, where the ship stopped for the night...we went in the ship from Cos (UST)**

“we went straight to the city of Cos” or “we went directly to the city of Cos”

**city of Cos (ULT)**  
**the Island of Cos, where the ship stopped for the night (UST)**

Cos is a Greek island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the South Aegean Sea region. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**city of Rhodes (ULT)**  
**the Island of Rhodes, where the ship stopped again (UST)**

Rhodes is a Greek island off the coast of modern day Turkey in the South Aegean Sea region south of Cos and northeast of Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the city of Patara (ULT)**  
**Patara, where the ship stopped (UST)**

Patara is a city on the southwest coast of modern day Turkey south of the Aegean Sea in the Mediterranean Sea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When we had gone away from them and were sailing, we took a straight course and came to the city of Cos, and the next day to the city of Rhodes, and from there to the city of Patara.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After we said goodbye to the elders from Ephesus, we got on the ship and traveled on the water to the Island of Cos, where the ship stopped for the night. The next day we went in the ship from Cos to the Island of Rhodes, where the ship stopped again. The day after that we went to the town of Patara, where the ship stopped.

## Acts 21:2

**When we found a ship crossing over to Phoenicia (ULT)  
At Patara we left that ship, and someone told us that  
there was a ship that would be going to the region of  
Phoenicia (UST)**

Here “a ship crossing over” stands for the crew that would sail the ship. Alternate translation: “When we found a ship with a crew sailing over to Phoenicia” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a ship crossing over (ULT)  
a ship that would be going (UST)**

Here “crossing” does not mean it was presently crossing but that it would be crossing to Phoenicia soon. Alternate translation: “a ship that would be going across the water” or “a ship that would be going”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Phoenicia](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the region of Phoenicia](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> When we found a ship crossing over to [Phoenicia](#), we went aboard and set sail.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> At Patara we left that ship, and someone told us that there was a ship that would be going to [the region of Phoenicia](#). So we got on that ship, and it left.

## Acts 21:3

### General Information:

Here the word “we” refers to Luke, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**leaving it on the left (ULT)**

**passed...to the south of the island (UST)**

“passed the island on the left” the left is the “port” side of a boat.

**there...the ship was to unload its cargo (ULT)**

**there several days...The ship was going to stay...had to unload the cargo (UST)**

Here “ship” stands for the crew that was sailing the ship. Alternate translation: “the crew would unload the cargo from the ship” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Cyprus](#)
- [Syria](#)
- [Tyre](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Island of Cyprus](#)
- [the region of Phoenicia, in the province of Syria](#)
- [the city of Tyre](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> After sighting [Cyprus](#) and leaving it on the left, we sailed on to [Syria](#) and landed at [Tyre](#), for the ship was to unload its cargo there.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> We traveled over the sea until we could see [the Island of Cyprus](#). We passed to the south of the island and continued sailing until we arrived at [the region of Phoenicia, in the province of Syria](#), at [the city of Tyre](#). The ship was going to stay there several days because its workers had to unload the cargo.

## Acts 21:4

**Through the Spirit they kept urging Paul (ULT)**  
**Because God's Spirit revealed to them that people**  
**would cause Paul...they told Paul (UST)**

"These believers told Paul what the Holy Spirit had revealed to them."  
 They "urged him over and over."

### Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- disciples
- Paul
- Jerusalem
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- God's Spirit revealed
- Someone told us where the believers in Tyre lived
- Paul
- Jerusalem
- days

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then after we found the [disciples](#), we stayed there seven [days](#). Through the [Spirit](#) they kept urging [Paul](#) not to go to [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> [Someone told us where the believers in Tyre lived](#), so we went and stayed with them for seven [days](#). Because [God's Spirit revealed](#) to them that people would cause Paul to suffer in [Jerusalem](#), they told [Paul](#) that he should not go there.

## Acts 21:5

### General Information:

Here the word "They" refers to the believers from Tyre.

**when...our days there were over (ULT)**  
**when...it was time for the ship to leave again, we prepared to continue on our way to Jerusalem (UST)**

This speaks about days as if they were something that a person could spend. Alternate translation: "When the seven days were over" or "When it was time to leave" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**we knelt down on the shore, and prayed (ULT)**  
**knelt down there...on the sand and prayed (UST)**

It was a common custom to kneel down while praying. This was a sign of humility before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)
- [and prayed](#)
- [days there](#)
- [we knelt down](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [children went](#)
- [and prayed](#)
- [time for the ship to leave again, we prepared to continue on our way to Jerusalem](#)
- [knelt down there](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But when our [days there](#) were over, we left and went on our way, and they all, with their wives and [children](#), accompanied us as far as the edge of the city. Then [we knelt down](#) on the shore, [and prayed](#),

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But when it was [time for the ship to leave again, we prepared to continue on our way to Jerusalem](#). When we left Tyre, all the men and their wives and [children went](#) with us to the edge of the sea. We all [knelt down there](#) on the sand [and prayed](#).

## Acts 21:6

**and said farewell to each other (ULT)**

**After we all said goodbye (UST)**

“said goodbye to one another”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [returned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [returned](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> and said farewell to each other. Then we went on board the ship, and they [returned](#) home.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> After we all said goodbye, Paul and we his companions got on the ship, and the other believers [returned](#) to their own homes.



## Acts 21:7

### General Information:

Here the word “we” refers to Luke, Paul and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This begins Paul’s time in Caesarea.

**we arrived at Ptolemais (ULT)**

**we continued on that ship to...Ptolemais (UST)**

Ptolemaic was a city south of Tyre, Lebanon. Ptolemaic is modern day Acre, Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the brothers (ULT)**

**There were believers there...them (UST)**

“fellow believers”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Tyre](#)
- [for...day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [There were believers there](#)
- [Tyre](#)
- [night](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When we had finished the voyage from [Tyre](#), we arrived at Ptolemais. We greeted the [brothers](#) and stayed with them for one [day](#).

### UST

<sup>7</sup> After we left [Tyre](#), we continued on that ship to the city of Ptolemais. [There were believers there](#), and we greeted them and stayed with them that [night](#).

## Acts 21:8

**one of the seven (ULT)**

**the city of...of the seven men (UST)**

The “seven” refers to the men chosen to distribute food and aid to the widows in [Acts 6:5](#).

**evangelist (ULT)**

**who spent his time telling others how to become followers of Jesus (UST)**

a person who tells people good news

### Translation Words - ULT

- [evangelist](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [of Philip, the evangelist](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who spent his time telling others how to become followers of Jesus](#)
- [Caesarea, where](#)
- [of Philip, who spent his time telling others how to become followers of Jesus...whom the believers in Jerusalem had chosen to care for the widows](#)
- [in the home](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then on the next day we left and went to [Caesarea](#). We entered into the [house of Philip, the evangelist](#), who was one of the seven, and we stayed with him.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> The next day we left Ptolemais and sailed to the city of [Caesarea, where](#) we stayed [in the home of Philip, who spent his time telling others how to become followers of Jesus](#). He was one of the seven men [whom the believers in Jerusalem had chosen to care for the widows](#).

## Acts 21:9

**this man (ULT)**

**that (UST)**

“Philip” from verse 8.

**Now (ULT)**

**the Holy Spirit had told them (UST)**

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke tells background information about Philip and his daughters. (See: [Background Information](#))

**four virgin daughters who prophesied (ULT)**

**He had four daughters...not married. Each of them frequently spoke messages (UST)**

“four virgin daughters who regularly received and passed along messages from God”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who prophesied](#)
- [virgin](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Each of them frequently spoke messages](#)
- [not married](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Now this man had four [virgin](#) daughters [who prophesied](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> He had four daughters who were [not married](#). [Each of them frequently spoke messages](#) that the Holy Spirit had told them.

## Acts 21:10

### General Information:

Here the words “we” and “us” refers to Luke, Paul, and those with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This tells about a prophecy made about Paul in Caesarea by the prophet Agabus.

**a certain...prophet named Agabus (ULT)**  
**a believer...from the district of...whose name was Agabus...He frequently spoke messages that the Holy Spirit had told him (UST)**

This introduces a new person in the story. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

**named Agabus (ULT)**  
**whose name was Agabus (UST)**

Agabus was a man from Judea. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#)
- [named](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [for...days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He frequently spoke messages that the Holy Spirit had told him](#)
- [whose name](#)
- [Judea and arrived in Caesarea](#)
- [for several days](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> As we stayed there for many [days](#), a certain [prophet named](#) Agabus came down from [Judea](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> After we had been in Philip's house [for several days](#), a believer [whose name](#) was Agabus came down from the district of [Judea and arrived in Caesarea](#). [He frequently spoke messages that the Holy Spirit had told him](#).

## Acts 21:11

**took Paul's belt (ULT)**

**he took off...Paul's belt...of (UST)**

"removed Paul's belt from Paul's waist"

**Thus says the Holy Spirit, 'So shall the Jews in Jerusalem tie up the man who owns this belt, and they will hand him over into the hands of the Gentiles (ULT) where...it...The Holy Spirit says, 'The Jewish leaders in Jerusalem will tie up the hands...the owner of this belt, like this, and they will put him in the hands of non-Jewish people as a prisoner (UST)**

This is a quotation within a quotation. The inner quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "'The Holy Spirit says that this will be how the Jews in Jerusalem will tie up...of the Gentiles.'" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**the Jews (ULT)**

**The Jewish leaders (UST)**

This does not mean all the Jews, but that these were the people who would do that. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" or "some of the Jews" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**they will hand him over (ULT)**

**they will put him (UST)**

"deliver him"

**into the hands of the Gentiles (ULT)**

**in the hands of non-Jewish people as a prisoner (UST)**

The word "hands" here represents control. Alternate translation: "into the legal custody of the Gentiles" or "to the Gentiles" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of the Gentiles (ULT)**

**of non-Jewish people as a prisoner (UST)**

This stands for the authorities among the Gentiles. Alternate translation: "the Gentile authorities" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- With it he tied
- shall...tie up
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- of the Gentiles

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> He came to us and took [Paul's](#) belt. [With it he tied](#) his own feet and [hands](#) and said, "Thus says the [Holy Spirit](#), 'So shall the [Jews](#) in [Jerusalem](#) [tie up](#) the man who owns this belt, and [they will hand him over](#) into [the hands of the Gentiles](#).'"

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Coming over to where we were, he took off [Paul's](#) belt. [Then he tied](#) his own feet and [hands with](#) it and said, "The [Holy Spirit](#) says, 'The [Jewish leaders](#) in [Jerusalem](#) [will tie up the hands](#) and [feet](#) of the owner of this belt, like this, and [they will put him](#) in [the hands of non-Jewish people as a prisoner](#).'"

- Paul's
- Jerusalem
- hands
- the hands (2)
- they will hand him over

### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish leaders
- Then he tied
- will tie up the hands
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- of non-Jewish people as a prisoner
- Paul's
- Jerusalem
- hands with...and...feet
- the hands (2)
- they will put him

## Acts 21:12

### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Luke and the other believers but does not include the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [begged](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [asked](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> When we heard these things, both we and the people who lived in that place [begged](#) Paul not to go up to [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When the rest of us heard that, we and the other believers there [asked](#) Paul, "Please do not go up to [Jerusalem!](#)"

## Acts 21:13

**What are you doing, weeping and breaking my heart (ULT)**

**Please stop crying and trying to discourage me from going (UST)**

Paul asks this question to show the believers they should stop trying to persuade him. Alternate translation: "Stop what you are doing. Your weeping is breaking my heart" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**breaking my heart (ULT)**  
**trying to discourage me from going (UST)**

To make someone sad or to discourage someone is spoken of as if it were a heart being broken. Here "heart" stands for a person's emotions. Alternate translation: "discouraging me" or "making me very sad" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**not only to be tied up (ULT)**  
**I am...to prison...because (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "not only for them to tie me up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**for the name of the Lord Jesus (ULT)**  
**I serve the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here "name" refers to the person of Jesus. Alternate translation: "for the sake of the Lord Jesus" or "because I believe in the Lord Jesus" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [to be tied up](#)
- [heart](#)
- [name](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to die](#)
- [weeping](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [to prison](#)
- [trying to discourage me from going](#)
- [I serve](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [to die](#)
- [crying](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then [Paul](#) answered, "What are you doing, [weeping](#) and breaking my [heart](#)? For I am ready, not only [to be tied up](#), but also [to die](#) in [Jerusalem](#) for the [name](#) of the [Lord](#) Jesus."

### UST

<sup>13</sup> But [Paul](#) replied, "Please stop [crying](#) and [trying to discourage me from going](#)! I am willing to go [to prison](#) and also [to die](#) in [Jerusalem](#) because [I serve](#) the [Lord](#) Jesus."



## Acts 21:14

**would not be persuaded...Paul (ULT)**  
**would go to Jerusalem...that he (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Paul would not allow us to persuade him" or "We were unable to persuade Paul" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**would...be persuaded (ULT)**  
**would go to Jerusalem (UST)**

You may need to make explicit what they could not persuade Paul not to do. Alternate translation: "persuaded not to go up to Jerusalem" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**May the will of the Lord be done (ULT)**  
**May the Lord's will be done (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May everything happen as the Lord has planned it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- the will...Lord

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord's
- Lord's will

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Since Paul would not be persuaded, we remained silent and then we said, "May [the will](#) of the [Lord](#) be done."

### UST

<sup>14</sup> When we realized that he would go to Jerusalem, we did not try any longer to stop him. We said, "May the [Lord's will](#) be done!"

## Acts 21:15

### General Information:

Here the word “we” refers to Luke, Paul, and those traveling with them, and not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### General Information:

The word “They” refers to some of the disciples from Caesarea.

### Connecting Statement:

This ends Paul’s time in Caesarea.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [days in Caesarea](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> After these [days](#), we picked up our bags and went up to [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> After those [days in Caesarea](#), we prepared our possessions and left to go by land up to [Jerusalem](#).

## Acts 21:16

**They brought with them...a certain man (ULT)**  
**They took us...He was from...in the house of a man (UST)**

"Among them was a man"

**a certain man named Mnason...from Cyprus (ULT)**  
**in the house of a man...name was Mnason...the Island of Cyprus (UST)**

Mnason is a man from the island of Cyprus. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**an early disciple (ULT)**  
**when people were first beginning to hear the message about him (UST)**

This means Mnason was one of the first to believe in Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [disciple](#)
- [from Cyprus](#)
- [Caesarea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believed in Jesus](#)
- [when people were first beginning to hear the message about him](#)
- [the Island of Cyprus](#)
- [Caesarea also](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Some of the [disciples](#) from [Caesarea](#) also went with us. They brought with them a certain man named Mnason, an early [disciple from Cyprus](#), with whom we would stay.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Some of the believers from [Caesarea](#) [also](#) went with us. They took us to stay in the house of a man whose name was Mnason. He was from [the Island of Cyprus](#), and he had [believed in Jesus when people were first beginning to hear the message about him](#).

## Acts 21:17

### General Information:

Here the words “he” and “his” refers to Paul. The word “them” refers to the elders.

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and his companions arrive in Jerusalem.

**the brothers welcomed us (ULT)**  
**a group of the believers greeted us (UST)**

Here “brothers” refers to the believers in Jerusalem whether male or female. Alternate translation: “the fellow believers welcomed us” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [welcomed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [greeted](#)

#### ULT

**17** When we had arrived in [Jerusalem](#), the [brothers welcomed](#) us gladly.

#### UST

**17** When we arrived in [Jerusalem](#), a group of the [believers greeted](#) us happily.

## Acts 21:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- James
- elders

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- James, who was the leader of the church there
- leaders

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> The next day [Paul](#) went with us to [James](#), and all the [elders](#) were present.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> The next day [Paul](#) and the rest of us went to speak with [James, who was the leader of the church there](#). All of the other [leaders](#) of the church in Jerusalem were also there.

## Acts 21:19

**he reported one by one (ULT)**

**he told them all of the things (UST)**

“he gave a detailed account of all”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [ministry](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God had enabled...to do among the non-Jewish people](#)
- [God had enabled...to do among the non-Jewish people](#)
- [God had enabled...to do among the non-Jewish people](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> When he had greeted them, he reported one by one the things that [God](#) had done among the [Gentiles](#) through his [ministry](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Paul greeted them, and then he told them all of the things that [God had enabled](#) him [to do among the non-Jewish people](#).

## Acts 21:20

### Connecting Statement:

The elders in Jerusalem begin their response to Paul.

**they...heard it...they praised...and they said to him (ULT)**

**the other elders...When they heard that, James... thanked...Then one of them said to Paul...Also, you know that we (UST)**

Here the word "they" refers to James and the elders. The word "him" refers to Paul.

**brother (ULT)**

**Brother (UST)**

Here "brother" means "fellow believer."

**They are (ULT)**

**that Moses gave us (UST)**

The word "they" refers to Jewish believers who wanted all believing Jews to keep the Jewish laws and customs.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [law](#)
- [zealous](#)
- [they praised](#)
- [who have believed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish people here](#)
- [Brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [laws](#)
- [continue very carefully to obey](#)
- [thanked](#)
- [have believed...the Lord Jesus](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> When they heard it, [they praised God](#), and they said to him, "You see, [brother](#), how many thousands there are [who have believed](#) among the [Jews](#). They are all [zealous](#) for the [law](#)."

### UST

<sup>20</sup> When they heard that, James and the other elders [thanked God](#). Then one of them said to Paul, "[Brother](#), you know that there are very many thousands of us [Jewish people here](#) who [have believed](#) in [the Lord Jesus](#). Also, you know that we all [continue very carefully to obey](#) the [laws](#) that Moses gave us."

## Acts 21:21

**They have been told about you, that you teach all the Jews who live among the Gentiles to abandon Moses, and that you tell them not to circumcise their children, nor to follow the old customs (ULT)**

**But our fellow Jewish believers have been told that when you are among non-Jews, you tell the Jewish believers who live there that they should stop obeying the laws of Moses. People say that you tell those Jewish believers not to circumcise their sons and not to practice our other customs. We do not believe that they are telling the truth about you (UST)**

Apparently here there are some Jews that are distorting what Paul is teaching. He does not discourage the Jews from obeying the law of Moses. His message is that circumcision and the other customs are not necessary for Jesus to save them. You can make explicit that the leaders of the Jewish believers in Jerusalem knew that Paul was teaching God's true message. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**They have been told (ULT)  
our fellow Jewish believers (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People have told the Jewish believers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**to abandon...Moses (ULT)  
when...But...who live there that they should stop obeying the laws of Moses (UST)**

Here "Moses" stands for the law of Moses. Alternate translation: "to stop obeying the laws that Moses gave us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**nor to follow the old customs (ULT)  
not to practice our other customs. We do not believe that they are telling the truth about you (UST)**

To obey the old customs is spoken of as if the customs were leading them and the people follow behind. Alternate translation: "not to obey the old customs" or "not to practice the old customs" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the old customs (ULT)  
our other customs. We do not believe that they are telling the truth about you (UST)**

"the customs that Jews normally do"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jews](#)
- [to circumcise](#)
- [Gentiles](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> They have been told about you, that [you teach](#) all [the Jews](#) who live among the [Gentiles](#) to abandon [Moses](#), and that you tell them not [to circumcise](#) their [children](#), nor [to follow](#) the old customs.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> But our fellow Jewish believers [have been told](#) that when you are among [non-Jews, you tell the Jewish believers who live there that they should stop obeying the laws of Moses](#). People say that you tell those Jewish believers not [to circumcise](#) their [sons and](#) not to practice our other [customs. We do not believe that they are telling the truth about you](#).



- children
- Moses
- you teach
- to follow

### Translation Words - UST

- you tell the Jewish believers
- to circumcise
- non-Jews
- sons and
- who live there that they should stop obeying the laws of Moses
- have been told
- customs. We do not believe that they are telling the truth about you

## Acts 21:22

### General Information:

Here the word “we” refers to James and the elders ([Acts 21:18](#)). The word “They” refers to the Jewish believers in Jerusalem who wanted to teach Jewish believers that they could still follow the laws of Moses ([Acts 21:20-21](#)). The words “them,” “their,” and the first “they” refer to the four men who made a vow. The second words “they” and “They” refer to the Jewish believers in Jerusalem who wanted to teach Jewish believers that they could still follow the laws of Moses. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

#### ULT

**22** What therefore should we do? They will certainly hear that you have come.

#### UST

**22** But our fellow Jewish believers will hear that you have come, and they will be angry with you. So you need to do something to show them that what they heard about you is not true.

## Acts 21:23

**four men...who made...a vow (ULT)**

**four men...who have made a vow to God (UST)**

“four men who made a promise to God.” This was the kind of vow where a person would not drink alcohol or cut his hair until the end of a set period of time.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a vow](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who have made a vow to God](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So do this that we say to you. There are four men with us who made themselves [a vow](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> So please do what we suggest to you. There are four men among us [who have made a vow to God](#).

**Acts 21:24**

**Take these men and purify yourself with them (ULT)**  
**Go with these men to the temple...them to be able to worship in the temple (UST)**

They had to make themselves ritually pure so they could worship in the temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**pay their expenses for them (ULT)**  
**Then, when it is time for them to offer...pay (UST)**

“pay for what they will need.” The expenses would go toward buying a male and female lamb, a ram, and grain and drink offerings. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they may shave their heads (ULT)**  
**the sacrifices...they can shave their heads to show that they have done (UST)**

This was a sign that the person had completed what they promised God they would do. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**the things they have been told about you (ULT)**  
**what they have been told about you (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the things that people are saying about you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**and obey the law (ULT)**  
**for what they offer...our Jewish laws (UST)**

This speaks of obeying the law as if the law were a leader and the people follow behind it. Alternate translation: “obey the law” or “live a life that conforms to the law of Moses and other Jewish customs” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- law
- and purify yourself
- heads
- you...walk orderly
- will know

**Translation Words - UST**

- our Jewish laws
- these men to the temple
- their heads to show that they have done
- for what they offer
- what they said they would do. When people see you in the courts of the temple

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> Take these men [and purify yourself](#) with them, and pay their expenses for them, so that they may shave their [heads](#). Then everyone [will know](#) that the things they have been told about you are false, and that you yourself also [walk orderly](#) and obey the [law](#).

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> Go with [these men to the temple](#) and do the ceremonies there necessary for you and them to be able to worship in the temple. Then, when it is time for them to offer the sacrifices, pay [for what they offer](#). After that, they can shave [their heads to show that they have done what they said they would do](#). When people see you in the courts of the temple with those men, they will know that what they have been told about you is not true. Instead, all of them will know that you obey all [our Jewish laws](#).

## Acts 21:25

### General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to James and the elders. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

James and the elders in Jerusalem finish their request to Paul ([Acts 21:18](#)).

**they should keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols, and from blood, and from what is strangled (ULT) have talked about which of our laws they should obey, and we wrote...them...a letter...telling them what we decided. We wrote that they should not eat meat that people have offered as a sacrifice to any idol, that they should not eat blood from animals, and that they should not eat meat from animals that people have killed by strangling them (UST)**

All of these are rules about what they can eat. They are forbidden to eat meat of animals sacrificed to an idol, meat with blood still in it, and meat from a strangled animal because it would still have blood in the meat. See how you translated similar phrases in [Acts 15:20](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**they should keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols (ULT) have talked about which of our laws they should obey, and we wrote...them...a letter...telling them what we decided. We wrote that they should not eat meat that people have offered as a sacrifice to any idol (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they stay away from the meat of an animal that someone sacrificed to an idol" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**from what is strangled (ULT)  
that people have killed by strangling them (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. You can also state explicitly the assumed information about strangled animals. Alternate translation: "from animals that a person has strangled" or "from animals that a person killed for food but did not drain its blood" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Gentiles](#)
- [from blood](#)
- [who have believed](#)
- [and gave the instructions that](#)
- [wrote](#)
- [from sexual immorality](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But concerning the [Gentiles who have believed](#), we [wrote and gave the instructions that](#) they should keep themselves from things sacrificed to idols, and [from blood](#), and from what is strangled, and [from sexual immorality](#)."

### UST

<sup>25</sup> As for the [non-Jewish believers](#), we elders here in Jerusalem [have talked about which of our laws they should obey, and we wrote](#) them [a letter](#), telling them what we decided. We wrote that they should not eat meat that people have offered as a sacrifice to any idol, [that they should not eat blood from animals](#), and that they should not eat meat from animals that people have killed by strangling them. We also [told them that they should not sleep with someone to whom they are not married](#)."

## Translation Words - UST

- non-Jewish believers
- that they should not eat blood from animals
- non-Jewish believers
- have talked about which of our laws they should obey, and we wrote...a letter
- have talked about which of our laws they should obey, and we wrote...a letter
- told them that they should not sleep with someone to whom they are not married

**Acts 21:26****took the men (ULT)****he took the four men (UST)**

These are the 4 men who made a vow.

**purifying himself with them (ULT)****and together they purified themselves (UST)**

Before entering the temple area the Jews were required to be ceremonially or ritually clean. This cleansing had to do with Jews having contact with Gentiles.

**went into the temple (ULT)****went to the temple courts and (UST)**

They did not go into the temple itself where only the high priest was allowed to enter. They entered the temple courtyard. Alternate translation: "went into the temple courtyard" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**of the days of purification (ULT)****what day...purifying themselves (UST)**

This is a separate purification process from the purification process which they were required to fulfill in order to enter the temple area.

**until...was offered...the offering (ULT)****to...After that, Paul...and when they would offer...the animals as sacrifices (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "until they presented the animals for an offering" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [purifying himself](#)
- [of purification](#)
- [period](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [offering](#)
- [day](#)
- [days](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [purified themselves](#)
- [purifying themselves](#)
- [priest...they would finish](#)
- [temple courts and](#)
- [Paul agreed](#)
- [animals as sacrifices](#)
- [day](#)

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> Then [Paul](#) took the men, and the next [day](#), [purifying himself](#) with them, went into the [temple](#), announcing the [period](#) of the [days of purification](#), until the [offering](#) was offered for every one of them.

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> So [Paul agreed](#) to do what they asked, and the next [day](#) he took the four men, and together they [purified themselves](#). After that, Paul went to the [temple courts and](#) told the [priest what day they would finish purifying themselves](#) and when they would offer the [animals as sacrifices](#) for each of them.

- [what day](#)



## Acts 21:27

### General Information:

Verse 29 gives background information about the Jews from Asia.

### Connecting Statement:

This begins the story of Paul's arrest.

### the seven days (ULT)

### the seven days (UST)

These are the seven days for purification.

### in the temple (ULT)

### Paul returned to the temple courtyard...in (UST)

Paul was not in the temple itself. He was in the temple courtyard.

Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### stirred up the whole crowd (ULT)

### They called out to many...Jews who were...the temple courtyard (UST)

Inciting people to become very angry at Paul is spoken of as if they stirred up the crowd's emotions. Alternate translation: "caused a large number of people to be very angry at Paul" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### laid hands on him (ULT)

### they were very angry at him...other...to help them take hold of Paul (UST)

Here "laid hands on" means to "seize" or to "grab." See how you translated "laid hands on" in [Acts 5:18](#). Alternate translation: "grabbed Paul" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [hands](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Some Jews](#)
- [temple courtyard](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [to help them](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But when the seven [days](#) were almost finished, some [Jews](#) from [Asia](#), seeing Paul in the [temple](#), stirred up the whole crowd, and laid [hands](#) on him.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> When the seven [days](#) for purifying themselves were nearly finished, Paul returned to the [temple courtyard](#). [Some Jews](#) from [Asia](#) saw him there, and they were very angry at him. They called out to many other Jews who were in the temple courtyard [to help them](#) take hold of Paul.

## Acts 21:28

### the people, the law, and this place

“the people of Israel, the law of Moses, and the temple”

**Besides, he has also brought Greeks into the temple (ULT)**

**He has even brought non-Jews here into the court of our temple (UST)**

Only Jewish males were allowed in certain areas of the courtyard of the Jerusalem temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- holy
- law
- holy...place
- of Israel
- temple
- Greeks
- teaches
- people
- They were shouting
- has defiled

### Translation Words - UST

- holy temple
- laws
- holy temple...place
- Israelites
- court of our temple
- non-Jews
- He teaches people
- Jewish people
- They shouted
- causing...to become polluted

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> [They were shouting](#), “Men [of Israel](#), help us. This is the man who [teaches](#) all men everywhere things that are against the [people](#), and the [law](#), and this place. Besides, he has also brought [Greeks](#) into the [temple](#) and [has defiled](#) this [holy place](#).”

### UST

<sup>28</sup> [They shouted](#), “Fellow [Israelites](#), come and help us to punish this man! This is the one who is teaching people wherever he goes that they should despise the [Jewish people](#). [He teaches people](#) that they should no longer obey the [laws](#) of Moses nor respect this [holy temple](#). He has even brought [non-Jews](#) here into the [court of our temple](#), [causing](#) this [place to become polluted](#)!”

## Acts 21:29

**For they had previously seen Trophimus the Ephesian with him in the city, whom they thought that Paul had brought into the temple (ULT)**

**They said these because they had seen Paul walking around in Jerusalem with Trophimus, who was a non-Jew, from Ephesus. Their laws did not permit non-Jews to be in the temple, and they thought that Paul had brought Trophimus into the temple courtyard that day (UST)**

This is background information. Luke is explaining why the Jews from Asia thought Paul brought a Greek into the temple. (See: [Background Information](#))

**Trophimus (ULT)**

**Trophimus (UST)**

This was a Greek man that they accused Paul of having brought into the inner temple area that was only for Jews. See how you translated his name in [Acts 20:4](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Ephesian](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [temple courtyard that](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [from Ephesus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> For they had previously seen Trophimus the [Ephesian](#) with him in the city, whom they thought that [Paul](#) had brought into the [temple](#).

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> They said these because they had seen Paul walking around in Jerusalem with Trophimus, who was a non-Jew, [from Ephesus](#). Their laws did not permit non-Jews to be in the temple, and they thought that [Paul](#) had brought Trophimus into the [temple courtyard that](#) day.

## Acts 21:30

### **The whole city was excited (ULT) all over the city...there was trouble (UST)**

The word "All" here is an exaggeration for emphasis. The word "city" represents the people in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "Many people in the city became angry at Paul" (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### **the...laid hold of...Paul (ULT) heard that...at the temple courtyard...They caught... Paul (UST)**

"seized Paul" or "grabbed Paul"

### **the doors were immediately shut (ULT) The gates to the temple courtyard were shut (UST)**

They shut the doors so that there would not be rioting in the temple area. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Some of the Jews immediately shut the temple doors" or "The temple guards immediately shut the doors" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [temple](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [people](#)
- [laid hold of](#)

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- [temple area](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [People](#)
- [They caught](#)

#### **ULT**

<sup>30</sup> The whole city was excited, and the [people](#) ran together and [laid hold of Paul](#). They dragged him out of the [temple](#), and the doors were immediately shut.

#### **UST**

<sup>30</sup> [People](#) all over the city heard that there was trouble at the temple courtyard, and they came running there. [They caught Paul](#) and dragged him outside of the [temple area](#). The gates to the temple courtyard were shut, so that the people would not riot inside the temple area.

## Acts 21:31

**news came up to the chief captain of the guard (ULT)  
someone ran to the fortress near the temple...told the  
Roman commander (UST)**

Here “news” refers to the messenger who went to speak the news.  
Alternate translation: “someone gave news to the chief captain of the guard” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**news came up to the chief captain (ULT)  
someone ran to the fortress near the temple...told the  
Roman (UST)**

The phrase “came up to” is used because the chief captain was in a fortress connected to the temple that was higher in elevation than the temple courtyard.

**to the chief captain (ULT)  
to the fortress near the temple...Roman (UST)**

a Roman military officer or leader of about 600 soldiers

**all Jerusalem was in an uproar (ULT)  
many people in Jerusalem were rioting at the temple (UST)**

The word “Jerusalem” here represents the people of Jerusalem. The word “all” is an exaggeration to show a large crowd was upset. Alternate translation: “a lot of people in Jerusalem were in an uproar” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [news](#)
- [chief captain](#)
- [As they were trying](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [told the](#)
- [Roman](#)
- [While they were trying](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> [As they were trying](#) to kill him, [news](#) came up to the [chief captain](#) of the guard that all [Jerusalem](#) was in an uproar.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> [While they were trying](#) to kill Paul, someone ran to the fortress near the temple and [told the Roman](#) commander that many people [in Jerusalem](#) were rioting at the temple.

## Acts 21:32

### General Information:

The first word “he” and the word “He” refer to the chief captain of the guard mentioned in [Acts 21:31](#).

**and ran down (ULT)**

**and ran (UST)**

From the fortress, there are stairs going down into the court.

**the chief captain (ULT)**

**the commander (UST)**

a Roman military officer or leader of about 600 soldiers

### Translation Words - ULT

- [centurions](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [soldiers](#) (2)
- [chief captain](#)
- [and ran down](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [some officers](#)
- [yelling and beating Paul](#)
- [a large group of soldiers](#)
- [soldiers coming](#) (2)
- [commander](#)
- [and ran](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Right away he took [soldiers](#) and [centurions and ran down](#) to the crowd. When the people saw the [chief captain](#) and the [soldiers](#), they stopped beating [Paul](#).

### UST

<sup>32</sup> The commander quickly took [some officers](#) and [a large group of soldiers and ran](#) to the temple area where the crowd was. When the crowd of people who were [yelling and beating Paul](#) saw the [commander](#) and the [soldiers coming](#), they stopped beating him.

## Acts 21:33

**and laid hold of Paul (ULT)**

**took hold of him (UST)**

“took hold of Paul” or “arrested Paul”

**commanded him to be bound (ULT)**

**He commanded soldiers to fasten (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “commanded his soldiers to bind him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**with two chains (ULT)**

**a chain to each of Paul’s arms (UST)**

This means they bound Paul to two Roman soldiers, one on each side of him.

**he asked who he was and what he had done (ULT)**

**he asked the people in the crowd, “Who is this man, and what has he done (UST)**

This can be stated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: “He asked, ‘Who is this man? What has he done?’” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**he asked who he was (ULT)**

**he asked the people in the crowd, “Who is this man (UST)**

The chief captain is speaking to the crowd, not to Paul.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [commanded him](#)
- [to be bound](#)
- [chief captain](#)
- [and laid hold of](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He commanded soldiers](#)
- [to fasten](#)
- [commander](#)
- [took hold](#)

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Then the [chief captain](#) approached [and laid hold of](#) Paul, and [commanded him to be bound](#) with two chains. Then he asked who he was and what he had done.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> The [commander](#) came to where Paul was and [took hold](#) of him. [He commanded soldiers to fasten](#) a chain to each of Paul’s arms. Then he asked the people in the crowd, “Who is this man, and what has he done?”

**Acts 21:34****and others another (ULT)  
one thing (UST)**

The words “were shouting” are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “and others were shouting another” or “and others in the crowd were shouting something else” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**the captain (ULT)  
that he (UST)**

This was a military officer or leader of about 600 soldiers.

**he ordered that Paul be brought (ULT)  
he commanded that Paul be taken...could question him there (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he ordered his soldiers to bring Paul” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**into the fortress (ULT)  
into the fortress so (UST)**

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [he ordered that](#)
- [were shouting](#)
- [fortress](#)
- [to find out anything](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [he commanded that Paul](#)
- [some were shouting](#)
- [fortress so](#)
- [understand...So](#)

**ULT**

<sup>34</sup> But some in the crowd [were shouting](#) one thing and others another. Since the captain was not able [to find out anything](#) for certain because of all the noise, [he ordered that](#) Paul be brought into the [fortress](#).

**UST**

<sup>34</sup> Some of the many people there were shouting one thing, and [some were shouting](#) something else. Because they continued shouting so loudly, the commander could not [understand](#) what they were saying. [So he commanded that Paul](#) be taken into the [fortress so](#) that he could question him there.



## Acts 21:35

**When he came to the steps, he was carried (ULT)**  
**The soldiers led Paul to the steps of the fortress, but...**  
**to carry Paul up the steps into the fortress (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When Paul came to the steps of the fortress, the soldiers carried him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [soldiers](#)
- [was carried](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [soldiers](#)
- [to carry](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> When he came to the steps, he [was carried](#) by the [soldiers](#) because of the violence of the crowd.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> The soldiers led Paul to the steps of the fortress, but many people continued to follow them, trying to kill Paul. So the commander told the [soldiers to carry](#) Paul up the steps into the fortress.

**Acts 21:36****Away with him (ULT)****Kill him! Kill him (UST)**

The crowd is using somewhat milder and less exact language to ask for Paul's death. Alternate translation: "Put him to death" or "Kill him" (See: [Euphemism](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of people](#)
- [and kept shouting out](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [crowd that](#)
- [kept shouting](#)

**ULT**

<sup>36</sup> For the crowd [of people](#) followed after [and kept shouting out](#), "Away with him!"

**UST**

<sup>36</sup> The [crowd that](#) followed [kept shouting](#), "Kill him! Kill him!"

## Acts 21:37

### As Paul was about to be brought (ULT) was about to be taken (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "As the soldiers were ready to bring Paul" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the fortress (ULT) the fortress (UST)

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in [Acts 21:34](#).

### to the chief captain (ULT) to the commander (UST)

a Roman military officer of about 600 soldiers

### Do you speak Greek (ULT) commander said...I am surprised that you can speak Greek (UST)

The chief captain uses this questions to express surprise that Paul is not who he thought he was. Alternate translation: "So you speak Greek." or "I didn't know you spoke Greek." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he](#)
- [Greek](#)
- [allowed](#)
- [chief captain](#)
- [fortress](#)
- [Do you speak](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [As Paul](#)
- [commander said...I am surprised that you can speak Greek](#)
- [May](#)
- [commander](#)
- [fortress](#)
- [commander said...I am surprised that you can speak Greek](#)

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> As Paul was about to be brought into the [fortress](#), [he](#) said to the [chief captain](#), "Am I [allowed](#) to say something to you?" The captain replied, "[Do you speak Greek?](#)"

### UST

<sup>37</sup> [As Paul](#) was about to be taken into the [fortress](#), he said in Greek to the [commander](#), "[May](#) I speak to you?" The [commander said](#), "[I am surprised that you can speak Greek!](#)"

**Acts 21:38**

**Are you not then the Egyptian who some time ago started a rebellion and led the four thousand men of the 'Assassins' out into the wilderness (ULT)**  
**I thought that you were that fellow from Egypt who wanted to rebel against the government not long ago, and who took four thousand violent men with him out into the desert, so that we could not catch him (UST)**

The chief captain uses this question and the question "Do you speak Greek?" (verse 37) to express surprise that Paul is not who he thought he was. Possible meanings are 1) as in ULT, the chief captain believes that even though Paul speaks Greek, Paul is the Egyptian. "Even though you speak Greek, I still think you are the Egyptian... wilderness." 2) Because Paul speaks Greek, the chief captain thinks that perhaps Paul is not the Egyptian. "So you speak Greek. Perhaps I was wrong to think you were that Egyptian...wilderness." It is best to retain the questions if the reader can infer one of the two meanings from them. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**ULT**

<sup>38</sup> Are you not then the [Egyptian](#) who [some time ago](#) started a rebellion and led the four thousand men of the 'Assassins' out into the [wilderness](#)?"

**UST**

<sup>38</sup> I thought that you were that [fellow from Egypt](#) who [wanted to rebel against the government](#) not [long ago](#), and who took four thousand violent men with him out into the [desert](#), so that we could not catch him."

**Are you not then the Egyptian (ULT)**  
**I thought that you were that fellow from Egypt...not (UST)**

Shortly before Paul's visit, an unnamed man from Egypt had launched a revolt against Rome in Jerusalem. Later he escaped into the wilderness and the commander wonders if Paul might be the same man. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**started a rebellion (ULT)**  
**wanted to rebel against the government...long ago (UST)**

This word "rebellion" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "caused people to rebel against the Roman government" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the four thousand men (ULT)**  
**four thousand violent men with him (UST)**

"the 4,000 terrorists" (See: [Numbers](#))

**Assassins (ULT)**  
**so that we could not catch him (UST)**

This refers to a group of Jewish rebels who killed Romans and anyone who supported Romans.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Egyptian](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [some time ago](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [fellow from Egypt](#)

- [desert](#)
- [wanted to rebel against the government...long ago](#)

## Acts 21:39

### Connecting Statement:

Paul begins to defend what he did.

**I ask...you (ULT)**

**I request that...you (UST)**

"I beg you" or "I plead with you"

**allow me (ULT)**

**let me (UST)**

"please allow me" or please permit me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jewish
- from the city of Tarsus
- Paul
- in Cilicia
- people
- I am a citizen

### Translation Words - UST

- I am a Jew
- I was born in Tarsus
- Paul
- in the province of Cilicia
- people
- which is an important city

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> But [Paul](#) said, "I am indeed a [Jewish](#) man [from the city of Tarsus in Cilicia](#). [I am a citizen](#) of that important city. Therefore, I ask you, allow me to speak to the [people](#)."

### UST

<sup>39</sup> [Paul](#) answered, "No, I am not! [I am a Jew](#). [I was born in Tarsus, which is an important city in the province of Cilicia](#). I request that you let me speak to the [people](#)."

**Acts 21:40****had given him permission...the captain (ULT)  
permitted...commander (UST)**

The word “permission” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “the captain permitted Paul to speak” or “the captain allowed Paul to speak” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Paul stood on the steps (ULT)  
Paul to speak. So Paul stood on the steps (UST)**

The word “steps” here refers to the steps on the stairway to the fortress.

**and motioned with the hand to the people (ULT)  
and motioned with his hand for the crowd to be quiet...  
in the crowd (UST)**

It can be stated explicitly why Paul motioned with the hand.

Alternate translation: “motioned with his hand for the people to be quiet” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**When...there was a deep silence (ULT)  
Then the...for the crowd to be quiet...became quiet, Paul (UST)**

“When the people were completely silent”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Hebrew](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Hebrew](#)
- [Paul to speak](#)
- [hand](#)
- [for the crowd to be quiet](#)

**ULT**

<sup>40</sup> When the captain had given him permission, [Paul](#) stood on the steps and motioned with the [hand](#) to the [people](#). When there was a deep silence, he spoke to them in the [Hebrew](#) language. He said,

**UST**

<sup>40</sup> Then the commander permitted [Paul to speak](#). So Paul stood on the steps and motioned with his [hand for the crowd to be quiet](#). And after the people in the crowd became quiet, Paul spoke to them in their own [Hebrew](#) language.

## Acts 22

### Acts 22 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This is the second account of Paul's conversion in the book of Acts. Because this is such an important event in the early church, there are three accounts of Paul's conversion. (See: [Acts 9](#) and [Acts 26](#))

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### "In the Hebrew language"

Most Jews at this time spoke Aramaic and Greek. Most of the people who spoke Hebrew were educated Jewish scholars. This is why the people paid attention when Paul started speaking in Hebrew.

#### "The Way"

No one knows for sure who first started calling believers "followers of the Way." This is probably what the believers called themselves, because the Bible often speaks of a person living his life as if that person were walking on a path or "way." If this is true, the believers were "following the way of the Lord" by living in a way that pleased God.

#### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens. The "chief captain" could have been punished for treating a Roman citizen the same way he would treat a non-citizen.



## Acts 22:1

### General Information:

Verse 2 gives background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Paul speaks to the Jewish crowd in Jerusalem.

**brothers, and fathers (ULT)**

**Paul said, "Jewish elders and...fellow (UST)**

This is a polite way of addressing men who are Paul's age as well as the older men in the audience.

**my defense I now make to you (ULT)**

**my...to me now...to those who are accusing me (UST)**

"I will now explain to you" or "I will now present to you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [fathers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow](#)
- [Paul said, "Jewish elders](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> "Men, [brothers](#), and [fathers](#), listen to my defense I now make to you."

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Paul said, "Jewish elders](#) and my [fellow](#) Jews, listen to me now while I speak to those who are accusing me!"

## Acts 22:2

**in the Hebrew language (ULT)**  
**the crowd of people...in their own...Hebrew language,**  
**they (UST)**

The Hebrew language was the language of the Jews.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Hebrew](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Hebrew](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> When the crowd heard that Paul was speak to them in the [Hebrew](#) language, they became even more quiet. Then he said,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> When the crowd of people heard Paul speaking to them in their own [Hebrew](#) language, they became quiet and listened. Then Paul said to them,

**Acts 22:3**

**but educated in this city at the feet of Gamaliel (ULT)**  
**the city of...but I grew up here in Jerusalem. When I**  
**was young, I learned the...gave...Gamaliel was my**  
**teacher. I obeyed (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but I was a student of rabbi Gamaliel here in Jerusalem" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**at the feet of Gamaliel (ULT)**  
**When I was young, I learned the...gave...Gamaliel was**  
**my teacher. I obeyed (UST)**

Here "feet" stands for the place where a student would sit while learning from a teacher. Alternate translation: "by Gamaliel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**of Gamaliel (ULT)**  
**Gamaliel was my teacher. I obeyed (UST)**

Gamaliel was one of the most prominent teachers of the Jewish law. See how you translated this name in [Acts 5:34](#).

**I was instructed according to the strict ways of the law of our fathers (ULT)**  
**laws that Moses...to our ancestors...those laws (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He instructed me how to carefully obey every law of our forefathers" or "The instruction I received followed the exact details of the law of our forefathers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**law of our fathers (ULT)**  
**our ancestors (UST)**

"law of our ancestors." This refers to the law that God gave to the people of Israel through Moses.

**of the...I am zealous...for God (ULT)**  
**those laws because I have wanted to obey God, and I am sure (UST)**

"I am completely dedicated to obeying God" or "I am passionate about my service to God"

**just as all of you are today (ULT)**  
**as...all of you also obey those laws (UST)**

"in the same way all of you are today." Paul compares himself with the crowd.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jewish](#)
- [for God](#)
- [law](#)
- [zealous](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> "I am a [Jewish](#) man, born in [Tarsus of Cilicia](#), but educated in this city at the feet of Gamaliel. [I was instructed](#) according to the strict ways of the [law of our fathers](#). I am [zealous for God](#), [just as](#) all of you are today.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> "I am [a Jew](#), [as](#) are all of you. I was born in the city of [Tarsus](#), [in the province of Cilicia](#), but I grew up here in Jerusalem. When I was young, I learned the [laws that Moses](#) gave [to our ancestors](#). Gamaliel was my teacher. I obeyed those laws [because I have wanted to obey God](#), and I am sure that all of you also obey those laws.

- Tarsus
- of Cilicia
- of our fathers
- I was instructed
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- a Jew
- God
- our ancestors
- because I have wanted to obey
- Tarsus
- in the province of Cilicia
- our ancestors
- laws that Moses...to
- as

**Acts 22:4****I persecuted this Way (ULT)**

**That is why I tried to arrest those who believed the message of God about Jesus...who believed the message (UST)**

Here "this Way" represents the people who belonged to the group called "the Way." Alternate translation: "I persecuted the people who belonged to this Way" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**this Way (ULT)**

**is why...those who believed the message of God about Jesus...who believed the message (UST)**

This was a term used to refer to Christianity. See how you translated "the Way" in [Acts 9:2](#).

**to the death (ULT)**

**I looked for ways to kill them (UST)**

The word "death" can be translated with the verb "kill" or "die." Alternate translation: "and I looked for ways to kill them" or "and I even caused them to die" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**binding up and delivering them to prison both men and women**

"tying up both men and women and taking them to prison"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [binding up](#)
- [prison](#)
- [persecuted](#)
- [the death](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Whenever I found...I had them thrown](#)
- [jail](#)
- [I tried to arrest](#)
- [to kill them](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> I [persecuted](#) this Way to [the death](#), [binding up](#) and delivering them to [prison](#), both men and women,

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> That is why [I tried to arrest](#) those who believed the message of God about Jesus. I looked for ways [to kill them](#). [Whenever I found](#) men or women who believed the message, [I had them thrown](#) into [jail](#).

**Acts 22:5****can bear witness (ULT)****knows this (UST)**

“can testify” or “can tell you”

**from them...I...received letters (ULT)****They gave...me letters to take...them (UST)**

“The high priests and elders gave me letters”

**for the brothers in Damascus (ULT)****to their fellow Jews in the city of Damascus (UST)**

Here “brothers” refers to “fellow Jews.”

**to bring back...the...in...in bonds...Jerusalem...those who were there (ULT)****arrest people...in the...gave me power to go there...as prisoners...Jerusalem (UST)**

“They ordered me to bind with chains those of the Way and bring them back to Jerusalem”

**in order for them to be punished (ULT)****so that they would be punished here (UST)**This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “in order that they may receive punishment” or “in order that the Jewish authorities could punish them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))**Translation Words - ULT**

- [in bonds](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [can bear witness](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [I...received](#)
- [elders](#)
- [letters](#)
- [them to be punished](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [prisoners](#)
- [their fellow Jews](#)
- [knows this](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [city of Damascus](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> as also the [high priest](#) and all the [elders can bear witness](#) for me. I also [received letters](#) from them for the [brothers](#) in [Damascus](#), and went there indeed to bring back [in bonds](#) to [Jerusalem](#) those who were there in order for [them to be punished](#).

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> The [high priest knows this](#), and so do the other men who belong to [our Jewish council](#). They gave [me letters to take](#) to [their fellow Jews](#) in the [city of Damascus](#). Those letters gave me power to go there and arrest people who believed in Jesus. I was then to take [them](#) as [prisoners](#) to [Jerusalem](#), so that [they would be punished here](#).

- them
- our Jewish council
- me letters to take
- they would be punished here

**Acts 22:6****Connecting Statement:**

Paul describes his encounter with Jesus.

**It happened that (ULT)  
I went to Damascus (UST)**

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heaven](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- a...light

**Translation Words - UST**

- [sky](#)
- [to Damascus](#)
- a...light

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> It happened that as I was traveling and nearing [Damascus](#), about noon suddenly a great [light](#) from [heaven](#) began to shine around me.

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> So I went to Damascus. About noon, as I got near [to Damascus](#), suddenly a bright [light](#) from the [sky](#) flashed all around me.



**Acts 22:7****heard a voice say to me (ULT)****I heard the voice of someone speaking to me from up in the sky, saying (UST)**

Here “voice” stands for the person speaking. Alternate translation: “I heard someone say to me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [a voice](#)
- [are you persecuting](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [the voice of someone speaking](#)
- [do you do things to hurt](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> So I fell to the ground and heard [a voice](#) say to me, ‘[Saul, Saul](#), why [are you persecuting](#) me?’

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> The light was so bright that I fell to the ground. Then I heard [the voice of someone speaking](#) to me from up in the sky, saying, ‘[Saul! Saul!](#) Why [do you do things to hurt](#) me?’

## Acts 22:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus of Nazareth](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [of Nazareth](#)
- [are persecuting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus of Nazareth the](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [of Nazareth](#)
- [are hurting](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So I answered, 'Who are you, [Lord](#)?'  
Then he said to me, 'I am [Jesus of Nazareth](#), whom you [are persecuting](#).'

### UST

<sup>8</sup> I answered, 'Who are you, [Lord](#)?' He replied, 'I am [Jesus of Nazareth](#) the one whom you [are hurting](#).'

## Acts 22:9

**the...they did not understand...voice of him who spoke to me (ULT)**

**the...not understand what...voice said (UST)**

Here "voice" stands for the person speaking. Alternate translation: "they did not understand what the one who spoke to me was saying" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [voice](#)
- [light](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [voice](#)
- [bright light](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But those who were with me indeed saw the [light](#), but they did not understand the [voice](#) of him who spoke to me.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> The men who were traveling with me saw the [bright light](#), but they did not understand what the [voice](#) said.

## Acts 22:10

**and there you will be told (ULT)**

**A man there will tell you (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “there someone will tell you” or “there you will find out” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [has been appointed](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Arise](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [I have planned](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Get up and](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then I said, ‘What should I do, [Lord](#)?’ The [Lord](#) said to me, ‘[Arise](#) and go into [Damascus](#), and there you will be told about everything that [has been appointed](#) for you to do.’

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then I asked, ‘[Lord](#), what do you want me to do?’ The [Lord](#) told me, ‘[Get up and](#) go into [Damascus](#). A man there will tell you all that [I have planned](#) for you to do.’

## Acts 22:11

**I could not see because of the brightness of that light (ULT)**

**that, I could not see, because the bright light had caused me to become blind...the (UST)**

"I was left blind because of that light's brightness"

**being led by the hands of those who were with me, I came into Damascus (ULT)**

**men who were with me took me by the hand and led me to Damascus (UST)**

Here "hands" stands for those leading Paul. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those with me guided me into Damascus" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brightness](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [of...light](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bright](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [light had caused me to become blind](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Since I could not see because of the [brightness](#) of that [light](#), being led by the hands of those who were with me, I came into [Damascus](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> After that, I could not see, because the [bright light had caused me to become blind](#). So the men who were with me took me by the hand and led me to [Damascus](#).

## Acts 22:12

### General Information:

The words “He” and “him” refer to Ananias.

### Ananias (ULT)

### name was Ananias came to see me (UST)

Though this is not the same Ananias who died earlier in Acts [Acts 5:3](#), you may translate it the same way though as you did in [Acts 5:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### a devout man according to the law (ULT)

### A man whose...He was a man who honored God and obeyed the Jewish laws...in (UST)

Ananias was very serious about following God's law.

### and well spoken of by all the Jews who lived there (ULT)

### All the Jews living...Damascus said good things about him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Jews who lived there spoke well of him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [law](#)
- [and well spoken of](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [Jewish laws](#)
- [said good things](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> There I met a certain Ananias, a devout man according to the [law and well spoken of](#) by all the [Jews](#) who lived there.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> A man whose name was Ananias came to see me. He was a man who honored God and obeyed the [Jewish laws](#). All the [Jews](#) living in Damascus [said good things](#) about him.

**Acts 22:13****Brother Saul (ULT)****My friend Saul (UST)**

Here “Brother” is a polite way to address someone. Alternate translation: “My friend Saul”

**receive your sight (ULT)****see again (UST)**

The word “sight” can be translated with the verb “see.” Alternate translation: “see again” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**In that very hour (ULT)****Instantly (UST)**

This was a customary way of saying something happened immediately. Alternate translation: “At that instant” or “Instantly” or “Immediately” (See: [Idiom](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Brother](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [hour](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [friend](#)
- [My...Saul](#)
- [Instantly](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> He came to me and stood by me, saying to me, ‘[Brother Saul](#), receive your sight.’ In that very [hour](#) I saw him.

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> He came and stood beside me and said to me, ‘My [friend Saul](#), see again!’ [Instantly](#) I could see and I saw him standing beside me.

## Acts 22:14

### General Information:

The word “he” refers to Ananias ([Acts 22:12](#)).

### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes telling what had happened to him in Damascus. He quotes what Ananias said to him. This is still part of his speech to the crowd in Jerusalem.

### his will (ULT)

### will show you what he wants you to do...He (UST)

“what God is planning and will cause to happen”

### to hear the voice coming from his own mouth (ULT)

### you have heard him speak to you himself (UST)

Both “voice” and “mouth” refer to the one speaking. Alternate translation: “to hear him speak directly to you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Righteous One](#)
- [God](#)
- [has chosen](#)
- [his...will](#)
- [of...fathers](#)
- [the voice](#)
- [to know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [righteous one, Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [God whom we worship and whom](#)
- [has chosen](#)
- [will show you what he wants you to do...He](#)
- [ancestors worshiped](#)
- [speak](#)
- [will show you what he wants you to do](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Then he said, ‘The [God](#) of our [fathers](#) [has chosen](#) you [to know his will](#), and to see the [Righteous One](#), and to hear [the voice](#) coming from his own mouth.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Then he said: ‘The [God whom we worship and whom](#) our [ancestors worshiped](#) [has chosen](#) you and [will show you what he wants you to do](#). [He](#) has shown you the [righteous one, Jesus the Messiah](#), and you have heard him [speak](#) to you himself.



## Acts 22:15

### to all men (ULT)

### to...people everywhere (UST)

Here “men” means all people whether male or female. Alternate translation: “to all people” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a witness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [tell](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> For you will be [a witness](#) for him to all men about what you have seen and heard.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> He wants you to [tell](#) people everywhere what you have seen and heard from him.

**Acts 22:16****Now (ULT)****now (UST)**

Here “now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

**why are you waiting (ULT)****do not delay (UST)**

This question was asked to exhort Paul to be baptized. Alternate translation: “Do not wait!” or “Do not delay!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**be baptized (ULT)****let me baptize you (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “let me baptize you” or “receive baptism” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**wash away your sins (ULT)****and ask God to forgive you for your sins (UST)**

As washing one’s body removes dirt, calling on the name of Jesus for forgiveness cleanses one’s inner being from sin. Alternate translation: “ask forgiveness for your sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**calling on his name (ULT)****pray to the Lord Jesus (UST)**

Here “name” refers to the Lord. Alternate translation: “calling on the Lord” or “trusting in the Lord”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [calling on](#)
- [be baptized](#)
- [sins](#)
- [name](#)
- [Arise](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [pray to](#)
- [let me baptize you](#)
- [sins](#)
- [the Lord Jesus](#)
- [Stand up](#)

**ULT**

<sup>16</sup> Now why are you waiting? [Arise](#), [be baptized](#), and wash away your [sins](#), [calling on](#) his [name](#).'

**UST**

<sup>16</sup> So now do not delay! [Stand up](#), [let me baptize you](#), and [pray to the Lord Jesus](#) and ask God to forgive you for your [sins](#)!'"

**Acts 22:17****Connecting Statement:**

Paul begins to tell the crowd about his vision of Jesus.

**It happened (ULT)****Later (UST)**

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**I fell into a trance (ULT)****there, I saw a vision (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I had a vision" or "God gave me a vision" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [while...was praying](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [that after I had returned](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [while...was praying](#)
- [temple courtyard](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [returned](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> It happened to me [that after I had returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#), and [while](#) I [was praying](#) in the [temple](#), I fell into a trance.

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> "Later, I [returned](#) to [Jerusalem](#). One day I went to the [temple courtyard](#) and [while](#) I [was praying](#) there, I saw a vision.

## Acts 22:18

**I saw...him saying to me (ULT)**

**The Lord spoke to me...saying...Do not stay here (UST)**

"I saw Jesus as he said to me"

**they will not accept your testimony about me (ULT)**

**not believe what you tell them about me (UST)**

"those who live in Jerusalem will not believe what you tell them about me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [testimony](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [they will...accept](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [tell them](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [believe what](#)

### ULT

**18** I saw him saying to me, 'Hurry and go away from [Jerusalem](#) quickly, because [they will](#) not [accept](#) your [testimony](#) about me.'

### UST

**18** The Lord spoke to me, saying, 'Do not stay here! Leave [Jerusalem](#) now, because the people here will not [believe what](#) you [tell them](#) about me!'

## Acts 22:19

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to the non-believing Jews in Jerusalem.

### Connecting Statement:

This ends what Paul was able to say to the crowd of Jewish people by the fortress.

**they themselves know (ULT)**

**they know (UST)**

The word “themselves” is used for emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

**in every synagogue (ULT)**

**to many of our synagogues looking for people...I was even beating them (UST)**

Paul went to synagogues to find Jews who believed in Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [synagogue](#)
- [those who believed](#)
- [know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [many of our synagogues looking for people](#)
- [who believe](#)
- [know](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> I said, ‘[Lord](#), they themselves [know](#) that I was imprisoning and beating [those who believed](#) in you in every [synagogue](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> But I said to him, ‘[Lord](#), they [know](#) that I went to [many of our synagogues looking for people who believe](#) in you. I was putting in jail those whom I found who believed in you, and I was even beating them.

## Acts 22:20

### the blood of Stephen your witness was spilled (ULT) Stephen was killed...told people about you (UST)

Here “blood” stands for Stephen’s life. To spill blood means to kill. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they killed Stephen who testified about you” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [witness](#)
- [blood](#)
- [of Stephen](#)
- [I was guarding](#)
- [cloaks](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [told people](#)
- [was killed](#)
- [Stephen](#)
- [I...guarded](#)
- [outer clothes that those](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> When the [blood of Stephen](#) your [witness](#) was spilled, I myself also was standing by and agreeing, and [I was guarding](#) the [cloaks](#) of those who killed him.'

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> They remember that when [Stephen was killed](#) because he [told people](#) about you, I stood there watching and approving of what they were doing. I even [guarded](#) the [outer clothes that those](#) who were murdering him had thrown aside!

## Acts 22:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Gentiles
- will send

### Translation Words - UST

- non-Jews
- going to send

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> But he said to me, 'Go, because I will send you far away to the Gentiles.'

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> But the Lord said to me, 'No, do not stay here! Leave Jerusalem, because I am going to send you far away from here to other people groups, the non-Jews!'

## Acts 22:22

### General Information:

Here the words “him” and the first two words “he” refer to Paul. The word “He” and the last “he” refer to the chief captain.

### Away with such a fellow from the earth

The phrase “from the earth” adds emphasis to “Away with such a fellow.” Alternate translation: “Kill him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [should live](#)
- [voice](#)
- [earth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to live any longer](#)
- [shouting, “Kill him](#)
- [He does not deserve](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> They listened to him until this statement. Then they lifted up their [voice](#), saying, “Away with such a man from the [earth](#), for it is not right that he [should live](#).”

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The people listened to what Paul was saying until he talked about the Lord sending him to other people groups. Then they began [shouting, “Kill him! He does not deserve to live any longer!”](#)



## Acts 22:23

### As...were shouting (ULT)

### While they were shouting (UST)

“While they were.” The phrase “As they were” is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time.

### throwing off their cloaks, and throwing dust into the air (ULT)

### outer garments and threw dust into the air, which showed how angry they were (UST)

These actions show that the Jews there are outraged because they feel Paul has spoken against God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [dust](#)
- [cloaks](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [outer garments and threw dust](#)
- [outer garments and threw dust](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> As they were shouting and throwing off their [cloaks](#), and throwing [dust](#) into the air,

### UST

<sup>23</sup> While they were shouting, they took off their [outer garments and threw dust](#) into the air, which showed how angry they were.

**Acts 22:24****chief captain (ULT)****leader (UST)**

a Roman military officer or leader of about 600 soldiers

**commanded...Paul to be brought (ULT)****commanded...that Paul be taken (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "ordered his soldiers to bring Paul" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the fortress (ULT)****the prison (UST)**

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in [Acts 21:34](#).

**He ordered that he should be questioned by flogging (ULT)****He told the soldiers that they should whip Paul...him tell (UST)**

The commander wants Paul tortured by whipping him to ensure he tells the truth. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He ordered his soldiers to whip Paul to force him to tell the truth" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [commanded](#)
- [chief captain](#)
- [they were shouting](#)
- [fortress](#)
- [he might know](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [commanded](#)
- [leader](#)
- [angry](#)
- [prison](#)
- [make](#)

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> the [chief captain commanded](#) Paul to be brought into the [fortress](#). He ordered that he should be questioned by flogging, so that [he might know](#) for what reason [they were shouting](#) against him like that.

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> So the [leader commanded](#) that Paul be taken into the [prison](#). He told the soldiers that they should whip Paul in order to [make](#) him tell what he had done that made the Jews so [angry](#).

## Acts 22:25

### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the soldiers.

**to whip him (ULT)**

**tied them so that (UST)**

These were strips of leather or animal hide.

**Is it lawful for you to flog a man who is a Roman and not condemned (ULT)**

**You will be acting unlawfully if you whip me, a Roman citizen whom no one has put on trial and condemned (UST)**

Paul uses this question to make the centurion check the validity of having his soldiers whip Paul. Alternate translation: "It is not lawful for you to whip a man who is a Roman and who was not given his legal right to a trial!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [centurion](#)
- [who is a Roman](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [lawful](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [soldier](#)
- [a Roman citizen whom no one has put on trial](#)
- [But Paul](#)
- [condemned](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But when they had stretched him out to whip him, [Paul](#) said to the [centurion](#) who was standing by, "Is it [lawful](#) for you to flog a man [who is a Roman](#) and not condemned?"

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then they stretched his arms out and tied them so that they could whip him on his back. [But Paul](#) said to the [soldier](#) near him, "You will be acting unlawfully if you whip me, [a Roman citizen whom no one has put on trial](#) and [condemned!](#)"

## Acts 22:26

**What are you about to do (ULT)  
the commander...Surely you would not command us to  
whip him (UST)**

This question is used to urge the commander to reconsider his plan to whip Paul. Alternate translation: "You should not do this!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [centurion](#)
- [a Roman citizen](#)
- [and told him](#)
- [chief captain](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [officer](#)
- [a Roman citizen](#)
- [and reported it to him](#)
- [commander](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> When the [centurion](#) heard this, he went to the [chief captain and told him](#), saying, "What are you about to do? For this man is [a Roman citizen](#)."

### UST

<sup>26</sup> When the [officer](#) heard that, he went to the [commander and reported it to him](#). He said to the commander, "This man is [a Roman citizen](#)! Surely you would not command us to whip him!"

## Acts 22:27

### General Information:

Here the word "him" refers to Paul.

**came...the chief captain (ULT)**

**He himself went into...The commander (UST)**

Here "came" can be translated as "went." (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a Roman citizen](#)
- [chief captain](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [really a Roman citizen](#)
- [commander](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> So the [chief captain](#) came and said to him, "Tell me, are you [a Roman citizen](#)?" Paul said, "Yes."

### UST

<sup>27</sup> The [commander](#) was surprised when he heard that. He himself went into the prison and said to Paul, "Tell me, are you [really a Roman citizen](#)?" Paul answered, "Yes, I am."

**Acts 22:28**

**I bought my citizenship with a large amount of money (ULT)**

**I paid a lot of money to become a Roman citizen (UST)**

"It was only after I paid a lot of money to the Roman authorities." The captain makes this statement because he knows how hard it is to become a Roman citizen, and he suspects Paul is not telling truth.

**I...citizenship...bought (ULT)**

**I...to become a Roman citizen...paid (UST)**

"I got citizenship." The word "citizenship" is an abstract noun.

Alternate translation: "I became a citizen" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Then...I...was...born a Roman citizen (ULT)**

**Then...I...born a Roman citizen (UST)**

If the father is a Roman citizen, then his children become Roman citizens automatically when they are born.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [But Paul](#)
- [chief captain](#)
- [citizenship](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Paul](#)
- [commander](#)
- [to become a Roman citizen](#)

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> Then the [chief captain](#) answered, "I bought my [citizenship](#) with a large amount of money." [But Paul](#) said, "I, however, was indeed born a Roman citizen."

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> Then the [commander](#) said, "I am also a Roman citizen. I paid a lot of money [to become a Roman citizen](#)." [Paul](#) said, "But I was born a Roman citizen."

## Acts 22:29

**the men who were going...to question (ULT)**

**The soldiers were about...to whip Paul and to ask him questions about what he had done (UST)**

“the men who planned to question” or “the men who were preparing to question”

### Translation Words - ULT

- was afraid
- tied...up
- a Roman citizen
- chief captain
- when he learned

### Translation Words - UST

- became afraid
- he had broken the law when he commanded...to tie up
- was a Roman citizen
- commander
- because he knew

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then the men who were going to question him left him immediately. The [chief captain](#) also [was afraid](#), [when he learned](#) that Paul was [a Roman citizen](#), and because he had [tied](#) him [up](#).

### UST

<sup>29</sup> The soldiers were about to whip Paul and to ask him questions about what he had done. But when they heard what Paul said, they left him. The [commander](#) also [became afraid](#), [because he knew](#) that Paul [was a Roman citizen](#) and that [he had broken the law when he commanded](#) the soldiers [to tie up](#) Paul's hands.

## Acts 22:30

### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers to the chief captain.

### So he untied him (ULT) told him (UST)

Possibly the "chief officer" stands for the chief officers' soldiers.  
Alternate translation: "So the chief captain ordered his soldiers to untie Paul's bonds" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he brought Paul down (ULT) Then he took Paul to where the council was meeting (UST)

From the fortress, there is a stairway going down to the temple courts.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ordered](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [to meet](#)
- [accusations against Paul](#)
- [council](#)
- [to know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [called the](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [called the](#)
- [to know why...were accusing Paul. So the](#)
- [council members to meet](#)
- [to know why...were accusing Paul. So the](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> On the next day, he wanted [to know](#) the truth about the [accusations against Paul](#) by the [Jews](#). So he untied him and [ordered](#) the [chief priests](#) and all the [council to meet](#). Then he brought [Paul](#) down and placed him among them.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> The commander still wanted [to know why](#) the [Jews were accusing Paul](#). So the next day he told the soldiers to take the chains off Paul. He also [called the chief priests](#) and the other [council members to meet](#). Then he took [Paul](#) to where the council was meeting and told him to stand before them.



## Acts 23

### Acts 23 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted material in 23:5.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Resurrection of the dead

The Pharisees believed that after people died, they would become alive again and God would either reward them or punish them. The Sadducees believed that once people died, they stayed dead and would never become alive again. (See: [raise](#), [raised](#), [risen](#), [arise](#), [arose](#), [got up](#), [stir up](#), [stirred up](#) and [reward](#), [prize](#), [deserve](#).)

#### “Called a curse”

Some Jews promised God that they would not eat or drink until they killed Paul, and they asked God to punish them if they did not do what they had promised to do.

#### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens. The “chief captain” could have been punished for treating a Roman citizen the same way he would treat a non-citizen.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Whitewash

This is a common metaphor in Scripture for appearing to be good or clean or righteous when one is evil or unclean or unrighteous. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Acts 23:1

### Connecting Statement:

Paul stands before the chief priests and the council members ([Acts 22:30](#)).

**brothers (ULT)**

**My fellow (UST)**

Here this means "Fellow Jews."

**the...I have lived as a citizen...God in all good conscience until this day (ULT)**  
**at the...all my life I have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done that I knew was wrong (UST)**

"I know that even to this day I have done what God has wanted me to do"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [God](#)
- [conscience](#)
- [good](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [have lived as a citizen](#)
- [day](#)
- [council members](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [My fellow](#)
- [have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done](#)
- [have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done](#)
- [have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [have lived respecting our God, and I do not know of anything that I have done](#)
- [that I knew was wrong](#)
- [Jewish council members](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then [Paul](#) looked directly at the [council members](#) and said, "Men, [brothers](#), I [have lived as a citizen](#) before [God](#) in all [good conscience](#) until this [day](#)."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Paul](#) looked at the [Jewish council members](#) and said: "[My fellow](#) Jews, all my life I [have lived respecting our God](#), and I do not know of anything that I [have done that I knew was wrong](#)."

**Acts 23:2****Ananias (ULT)****Ananias (UST)**

This is the name of a man. Though this is the same name, this not the same Ananias as in [Acts 5:1](#) nor the same Ananias as in [Acts 9:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [commanded](#)
- [high priest](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [told the men](#)
- [high priest heard what Paul said](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> Then the [high priest](#) Ananias [commanded](#) those who stood by him to strike him on the mouth.

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> When Ananias the [high priest heard what Paul said](#), he [told the men](#) who were standing near Paul to hit him on the mouth.

**Acts 23:3****you whitewashed wall (ULT)  
hypocrite (UST)**

This refers to a wall that was painted white to make it look clean. Paul told Ananias that just as a wall can be painted to look clean so Ananias appeared to look morally clean, but he was really full of evil intent. Alternate translation: "whitepainted wall" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Do...you...sit judging me by the law, yet order me to be struck, against the law (ULT)**  
**You sit there...judge me, using the laws that God gave Moses. But you yourself disobey those laws, because you commanded me to be struck without having proved that I have done anything that is wrong (UST)**

Paul uses a question to point out Ananias' hypocrisy. Alternate translation: "You sit there to judge...against the law." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**order me to be struck (ULT)**  
**you commanded me to be struck without having proved that I have done anything that is wrong (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. You can use the same word for "strike" as you did in the phrase "God will strike you." Alternate translation: "command people to strike me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [order](#)
- [God](#)
- [law](#)
- [judging](#)
- [Paul](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [you commanded](#)
- [God](#)
- [laws](#)
- [judge](#)
- [Paul](#)

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> Then [Paul](#) said to him, "[God](#) is about to strike you, you whitewashed wall. Do you sit [judging](#) me by the [law](#), yet [order](#) me to be struck, against the law?"

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> Then [Paul](#) said to Ananias, "[God](#) will punish you for that, you hypocrite! You sit there and [judge](#) me, using the laws that God gave Moses. But you yourself disobey those [laws](#), because [you](#) [commanded](#) me to be struck without having proved that I have done anything that is wrong!"

## Acts 23:4

**Are you insulting the high priest of God (ULT)  
to him, "You should not speak badly to God's servant,  
our high priest (UST)**

The men use this question to scold Paul for what he has said in [Acts 23:3](#). Alternate translation: "Do not insult God's high priest!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [high priest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's servant](#)
- [our high priest](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But those who stood by said, "Are you insulting the [high priest](#) of [God](#)?"

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The men who were standing near Paul said to him, "You should not speak badly to [God's servant](#), [our high priest](#)!"

## Acts 23:5

### For it is written (ULT)

### because I know...it is written in our Jewish law (UST)

Paul is about to quote what Moses wrote in the law. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For Moses wrote in the law" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [a high priest](#)
- [evil](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [of...people](#)
- [of a ruler](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [I was...aware](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [My fellow Jews, I am sorry that I said that](#)
- [the high priest. If I had known that, I would not have talked badly](#)
- [evil of any of](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [your](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [it is written in our Jewish law](#)
- [I did...know](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So [Paul](#) said, "[I was](#) not [aware](#), [brothers](#), that he was [a high priest](#). For [it is written](#), You shall not speak [evil of a ruler](#) of your [people](#)."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Paul](#) replied, "[My fellow Jews, I am sorry that I said that. I did](#) not [know](#) that the man who told one of you to hit me is [the high priest. If I had known that, I would not have talked badly](#) about our high priest, because I know that [it is written in our Jewish law](#), 'Do not speak [evil of any of your rulers](#)!'"

**Acts 23:6****brothers (ULT)****My fellow (UST)**

Here "Brothers" means "Fellow Jews"

**Pharisees...a son (ULT)****Pharisees...all in my family were Pharisees, as well (UST)**

Here "son" means he is the literal son of a Pharisee and also the descendant of Pharisees. Alternate translation: "and my father and forefathers were Pharisees"

**of the resurrection...of the dead (ULT)****I am sure that one day God will cause those who have died to become alive again (UST)**

The word "resurrection" can be stated as "come back to life." The word "dead" can be stated as "those who have died." Alternate translation: "those who have died will come back to life, I" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**I am being judged (ULT)****I have been put on trial here because (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you are judging me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of the resurrection
- brothers
- a son
- am being
- Pharisees
- a Pharisee
- of Pharisees (2)
- Sadducees
- the certain hope
- Paul
- of the dead
- he spoke loudly
- council
- saw

**Translation Words - UST**

- I am sure that one day God will cause...to become alive again
- My fellow
- all in my family were Pharisees, as well
- have been put on trial here because
- Pharisees

**ULT**

<sup>6</sup> When [Paul saw](#) that the one part of the council were [Sadducees](#) and the other [Pharisees](#), [he spoke loudly](#) in the [council](#), "Men, [brothers](#), I am [a Pharisee](#), [a son of Pharisees](#). I [am being](#) judged concerning [the certain hope of the resurrection of the dead](#)."

**UST**

<sup>6</sup> [Paul knew](#) that some of the council members were [Sadducees](#) and others were [Pharisees](#). [So he called out](#) in the [council](#) hall, "[My fellow](#) Jews, I am [a Pharisee](#), and [all in my family were Pharisees, as well](#). I [have been put on trial here because I am sure that one day God will cause those who have died to become alive again](#)."

- a Pharisee
- all in my family were Pharisees, as well (2)
- Sadducees
- all in my family were Pharisees, as well
- Paul
- those who have died
- So he called out
- council
- knew



## Acts 23:7

**the crowd was divided (ULT)  
started to argue with one another about whether or  
not people who have died will become alive again...the  
other (UST)**

“the people in the crowd strongly disagreed with one another”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When he said this, an argument began between the [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#), and the crowd was divided.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> When he said that, the [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#) started to argue with one another about whether or not people who have died will become alive again, and each of them were arguing with the other.

## Acts 23:8

**the Sadducees...For...but the Pharisees (ULT)**  
**The Sadducees...after people die, they will...But...**  
**Pharisees (UST)**

This is background information about the Sadducees and Pharisees.  
 (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)
- [angels](#)
- [acknowledge](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [the Pharisees](#)
- [the Sadducees](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [alive again](#)
- [They also believe that there are no angels and](#)
- [believe](#)
- [other kinds of spirits](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [The Sadducees](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For indeed [the Sadducees](#) say there is no [resurrection](#), nor [angels](#), nor [spirits](#), but [the Pharisees acknowledge](#) all of them.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [The Sadducees](#) believe that after people die, they will not become [alive again](#). [They also believe that there are no angels and](#) no [other kinds of spirits](#). But the [Pharisees believe](#) all these things.

**Acts 23:9**

**So a large uproar occurred (ULT)  
began shouting at one another as they argued...were (UST)**

"So they began shouting loudly at one another." The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened previously. In this case, the previous event is Paul's stating his belief in the resurrection.

**what if...a spirit has spoken to him, or an angel (ULT)  
this...Maybe an angel or some other spirit spoke to him (UST)**

The Pharisees are rebuking the Sadducees by affirming that spirits and angels do exist and can speak to people. Alternate translation: "Maybe a spirit or an angel has spoken with him!" (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [scribes](#)
- [an angel](#)
- [a spirit](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [stood up](#)
- [evil](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [teachers of the laws](#)
- [Maybe an angel](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [stood up](#)
- [wrong](#)

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> So a large uproar occurred, and some of the [scribes](#) of the party of the [Pharisees stood up](#) and argued, saying, "We find nothing [evil](#) in this man. But what if [a spirit](#) has spoken to him, or [an angel](#)?"

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> They began shouting at one another as they argued. Some of the [teachers of the laws](#) who were [Pharisees stood up](#). One of them said, "We think that this man has done nothing [wrong](#). [Maybe an angel](#) or some other [spirit](#) spoke to him and what he says is true."

## Acts 23:10

**When there arose a great argument (ULT)**  
**Then the Pharisees and Sadducees became violent with one another (UST)**

The words “a great argument” can be re-stated as “argue violently.”  
 Alternate translation: “When they began to argue violently” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**chief captain (ULT)**  
**commander (UST)**

a Roman military officer or leader of about 600 soldiers

**that...Paul...would be torn to pieces...by them (ULT)**  
**they would...tear...Paul...to pieces (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. The phrase “be torn to pieces” might be an exaggeration of how the people might harm Paul.  
 Alternate translation: “they might tear Paul to pieces” or “they would cause Paul great physical harm” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

**and take him by force (ULT)**  
**take Paul away...him up (UST)**

“use physical force to take him away”

**into the fortress (ULT)**  
**into the barracks (UST)**

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in [Acts 21:34](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [feared](#)
- [so he commanded](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [chief captain](#)
- [there arose](#)
- [fortress](#)
- [and take...by force](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [was afraid that](#)
- [He told](#)
- [would...Paul](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [commander](#)
- [became](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> When [there arose](#) a great argument, the [chief captain feared](#) that [Paul](#) would be torn to pieces by them, [so he commanded](#) the [soldiers](#) to go down [and take](#) him [by force](#) from among the council members, and bring him into the [fortress](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then the Pharisees and Sadducees [became](#) violent with one another. So the [commander was afraid that](#) they would tear [Paul](#) to pieces. [He told soldiers](#) to go down from the prison and [take Paul away](#) from the council members and bring him up into the [barracks](#).

- barracks
- take Paul away

## Acts 23:11

### the...following night (ULT)

### That...night (UST)

This means the night after the day Paul went before the council.  
Alternate translation: "That night"

### testify in Rome (ULT)

### tell people in Rome...me too (UST)

The words "about me" are understood. Alternate translation: "bear witness about me in Rome" or "testify about me in Rome" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [you have testified](#)
- [testify](#)
- [Rome](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Take courage](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [told people here](#)
- [tell people...me too](#)
- [Rome](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Have courage](#)

### ULT

**11** But the following night the [Lord](#) stood beside him and said, "[Take courage](#), for as [you have testified](#) about me in [Jerusalem](#), so you must also [testify](#) in [Rome](#)."

### UST

**11** That night, Paul saw the Lord Jesus come and stand near him. The [Lord](#) said to him, "[Have courage](#)! You have [told people here](#) in [Jerusalem](#) about me, and you must [tell people](#) in [Rome](#) about [me too](#)."

## Acts 23:12

### Connecting Statement:

While Paul was in the prison at the fortress, the disbelieving religious Jews vow to kill him.

**formed a conspiracy (ULT)**  
**next morning...some of (UST)**

“organized a group with a shared purpose” here, to kill Paul.

**putting themselves under an oath (ULT)**  
**who hated...They told themselves that they would (UST)**

The noun “curse” can be translated as a verb. It can also be made explicit what would cause them to be cursed. Alternate translation: “asked God to curse them if they did not do what they promised” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [some of the Jews](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [day](#)
- [and promising](#)
- [putting...under an oath](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [next morning](#)
- [met and talked about how](#)
- [who hated](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> When it became [day](#), [some of the Jews](#) formed a conspiracy, [putting](#) themselves [under an oath](#), [and promising](#) neither to eat nor drink until they had killed [Paul](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> The [next morning](#) some of the [Jews who hated Paul met and talked about how](#) to kill him. They told themselves that they would not eat or drink anything until he was dead. They asked God to curse them if they did not do what they promised.

## Acts 23:13

**forty men (ULT)**

**forty men who (UST)**

“40 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

**who formed this conspiracy (ULT)**

**wanted to kill Paul (UST)**

“who made this plan” or “who planned to kill Paul”

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> There were more than forty men who formed this conspiracy.

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> There were more than forty men who wanted to kill Paul.



## Acts 23:14

### General Information:

Here the word "They" refers to the forty Jews in [Acts 23:13](#). Here "you" is plural and refers to the chief priests and elders. Both "us" and "we" refer to the forty Jews who planned to kill Paul. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**We have put ourselves under a great curse, to eat nothing until we have killed Paul (ULT)**  
**God has heard us promise that we will not eat or drink anything until we have killed Paul (UST)**

To make a vow and to ask God to curse them if they do not fulfill their vow is spoken of as if the curse were an object that they carry on their shoulders. Alternate translation: "We have sworn to eat nothing until we have killed Paul. We asked God to curse us if we do not do what we promised to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [We have put...under](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [elders](#)
- [a great curse](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God has heard us promise that](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Jewish elders](#)
- [God has heard us promise that](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> They went to the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#) and said, "[We have put](#) ourselves [under a great curse](#), to eat nothing until we have killed [Paul](#)."

### UST

<sup>14</sup> They went to the [chief priests](#) and [Jewish elders](#) and told them, "[God has heard us promise that](#) we will not eat or drink anything until we have killed [Paul](#)."

## Acts 23:15

### Now, therefore (ULT)

#### So we request that (UST)

“Because what we have just said is true” or “Because we have put ourselves under this curse”

### Now (ULT)

#### So we request that (UST)

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

### he will bring him down to you (ULT)

#### him...bring Paul down to us (UST)

“bring Paul from the fortress to meet with you”

### as if you are going to examine more seriously the things concerning Paul (ULT)

#### on behalf of...Tell the commander...you want to talk to Paul some more...he (UST)

“as though you want to learn more about what Paul has done”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [report](#)
- [chief captain](#)
- [as if](#)
- [council](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to the commander and ask...the whole Jewish council](#)
- [to the commander and ask...the whole Jewish council](#)
- [you want to talk to Paul some more](#)
- [to the commander and ask...the whole Jewish council](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Now, therefore, you along with the [council report](#) to the [chief captain as if](#) you are going to examine more seriously the things concerning Paul, so that he will bring him down to you. As for us, we are ready to kill him before he comes here.”

### UST

<sup>15</sup> So we request that you go [to the commander and ask](#) him, on behalf of [the whole Jewish council](#), to bring Paul down to us. Tell the commander that [you want to talk to Paul some more](#). We will be waiting to kill Paul while he is on the way here.”

## Acts 23:16

### General Information:

Here the word “he” refers to Paul’s nephew. The word “him” refers to the chief captain.

**son of the sister of Paul (ULT)**

**son of Paul’s sister (UST)**

“the son of Paul’s sister” or “Paul’s nephew”

**the ambush (ULT)**

**what they were planning to do (UST)**

“they were ready to ambush Paul” or “they were waiting to kill Paul”

**the...fortress (ULT)**

**what they were planning to do...fortress (UST)**

This fortress was connected to the outer temple court. See how you translated this in [Acts 21:34](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [of Paul](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [and told](#)
- [sister](#)
- [fortress](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [of Paul’s](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [told](#)
- [sister](#)
- [fortress](#)

### ULT

**16** But the [son](#) of the [sister of Paul](#) heard of the ambush, so he went and entered the [fortress and told Paul](#).

### UST

**16** But the [son of Paul’s sister](#) heard what they were planning to do, so he went into the [fortress](#) and [told Paul](#).

**Acts 23:17**

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**Translation Words - ULT**

- called
- centurions
- Paul
- to tell
- chief captain

**Translation Words - UST**

- heard that, he called
- officers
- Paul
- to tell
- commander

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> So [Paul](#) [called](#) one of the [centurions](#) and said, "Take this young man to the [chief captain](#), for he has something [to tell](#) him."

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> When [Paul](#) [heard that, he called](#) one of the [officers](#) and said to him, "Please take this young man to the [commander](#), because he needs [to tell](#) him something."

## Acts 23:18

**the centurion...Paul...prisoner called for me (ULT)**  
**So...prisoner Paul called me (UST)**

"Paul the prisoner asked me to come talk with him"

**the...this...young man (ULT)**  
**the...this...young man (UST)**

Since the chief captain calls him a young man, this suggests Paul's nephew may have been 12 to 15 years old.

### Translation Words - ULT

- called for
- Paul
- prisoner
- chief captain

### Translation Words - UST

- called
- Paul
- prisoner
- commander

### ULT

**18** So indeed the centurion took the young man and brought him to the [chief captain](#) and said, "[Paul](#) the [prisoner called for](#) me, and asked me to bring this young man to you. He has something to say to you."

### UST

**18** So the officer took the young man to the [commander](#). The officer said to the commander, "The [prisoner Paul called](#) me and said, 'Please take this young man to the commander, because he needs to tell him something.'"

**Acts 23:19**

**took hold of...the chief captain...his hand (ULT)  
took the young man...The commander...by the hand...  
him (UST)**

Since the chief captain took the young man by the hand and calls him a young man (verse 18), this suggests Paul's nephew may have been 12 to 15 years old.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [hand](#)
- [to tell](#)
- [chief captain](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [hand](#)
- [to tell](#)
- [commander](#)

**ULT**

<sup>19</sup> So the [chief captain](#) took hold of his [hand](#) and withdrew to a private place and asked him, "What is it that you have [to tell](#) me?"

**UST**

<sup>19</sup> The [commander](#) took the young man by the [hand](#), led him off by himself, and asked him, "What do you need [to tell](#) me?"

## Acts 23:20

### The...Jews have agreed (ULT)

### There are some Jews who (UST)

This does not mean all Jews, but all of the group that was there.  
Alternate translation: "Some of the Jews have agreed" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### you might bring...Paul...down (ULT)

### bring...Paul (UST)

"to bring Paul down from the fortress"

### they were going to ask more seriously about something concerning him (ULT)

### want to ask him some more questions (UST)

"they want to learn more about what Paul has done"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [as if](#)
- [council](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [There are some Jews](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [that is not true](#)
- [their council](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then the young man said, "The [Jews](#) have agreed to ask you that tomorrow you might bring [Paul](#) down to the [council](#), [as if](#) they were going to ask more seriously about something concerning him.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> He said, "[There are some Jews](#) who want to bring [Paul](#) before [their council](#) tomorrow. They will say that they want to ask him some more questions. But [that is not true](#).

## Acts 23:21

**men...forty (ULT)**

**men...forty Jewish (UST)**

"40 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

**lie in wait...for him (ULT)**

**will be hiding and waiting to kill Paul when...he passes by on (UST)**

"ready to ambush Paul" or "ready to kill Paul"

**They have called a curse down on themselves, neither to eat nor to drink until they have killed him**

"They have sworn to eat or drink nothing until they have killed Paul. And they asked God to curse them if they do not do what they promised to do"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [promise](#)
- [have put...under an oath](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to agree to do](#)
- [They even promised to God that they will](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Therefore you should not be persuaded by them, because more than forty of these men lie in wait for him. They [have put](#) themselves [under an oath](#), neither to eat nor to drink until they have killed him. Even now they are ready, waiting for the [promise](#) from you."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Do not do what they ask you to do, because there are more than forty Jewish men who will be hiding and waiting to kill Paul when he passes by on the way to the council. [They even promised to God that they will](#) not eat or drink anything until they have killed Paul. They are ready to do it, and right now they are waiting for you [to agree to do](#) what they are asking you to do."



## Acts 23:22

### General Information:

Here the word "he" refers the chief captain.

### General Information:

Felix, who resided at Caesarea, was the roman governor of the area.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [after instructing him](#)
- [you have said](#)
- [chief captain](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Do not tell anyone](#)
- [you have told](#)
- [commander said](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So indeed the [chief captain](#) dismissed the young man, [after instructing him](#), "Tell no one that [you have said](#) these things to me."

### UST

<sup>22</sup> The [commander said](#) to the young man, "[Do not tell anyone](#) that [you have told](#) me about their plan." Then he sent the young man away.

**Acts 23:23**

**he summoned (ULT)**  
**called (UST)**

"he called to himself"

**two of the centurions (ULT)**  
**the commander...two of his...officers (UST)**

"2 of the centurions" (See: [Numbers](#))

**seventy horsemen (ULT)**  
**Take along seventy soldiers riding horses (UST)**

"70 horsemen" (See: [Numbers](#))

**two hundred spearmen (ULT)**  
**two hundred other soldiers carrying spears. All of you must be ready to (UST)**

"200 soldiers that are armed with spears" (See: [Numbers](#))

**the third hour of the night (ULT)**  
**leave at nine o'clock tonight (UST)**

This was about 9:00 p.m. at night.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [he summoned](#)
- [centurions](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [hour](#)
- [seventy](#)
- [soldiers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [called](#)
- [officers](#)
- [the city of Caesarea](#)
- [leave at nine o'clock tonight](#)
- [soldiers riding horses](#)
- [soldiers](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> Then [he summoned](#) a certain two of the [centurions](#) and said, "Prepare two hundred [soldiers](#) so that they might go as far as [Caesarea](#), and [seventy](#) horsemen, and two hundred spearmen. They will leave at the third [hour](#) of the night."

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> Then the commander [called](#) two of his [officers](#) and told them, "Get a group of two hundred [soldiers](#) ready to travel. Take along seventy [soldiers riding horses](#), and two hundred other soldiers carrying spears. All of you must be ready to [leave at nine o'clock tonight](#), to go down to [the city of Caesarea](#)."

## Acts 23:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- animals to ride
- governor

### Translation Words - UST

- for Paul
- horses
- palace of Governor

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> He also ordered them to provide [animals to ride](#) so they might set [Paul](#) on them and take him safely to Felix the [governor](#).

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> And take along [horses for Paul](#) to ride, and escort him to the [palace of Governor](#) Felix."

## Acts 23:25

### General Information:

The chief captain writes a letter to Governor Felix about the arrest of Paul.

### General Information:

Claudius Lysias is the name of the chief captain. Governor Felix was the Roman governor over the whole region. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a letter](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a letter](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then he wrote [a letter](#), having this form:

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Then the commander wrote [a letter](#) to send to the governor. This is what he wrote:

## Acts 23:26

**Claudius Lysias to the most excellent Governor Felix, greetings (ULT)**

**I am Claudius Lysias writing to you. You, Felix, are our governor whom we honor, and I send you my greetings (UST)**

This is a formal introduction to the letter. The chief captain begins by referring to himself. You can translate it in the first person. The words "am writing" are understood. Alternate translation: "I, Claudius Lysias, am writing to you, the most excellent Governor Felix. Greetings to you" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

**to the most excellent Governor Felix (ULT)**

**writing to you. You, Felix, are our governor whom we honor, and I send you my (UST)**

"to Governor Felix who deserves greatest honors"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Governor](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are...governor](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> "Claudius Lysias to the most excellent [Governor](#) Felix, greetings.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> "I am Claudius Lysias writing to you. You, Felix, are our [governor](#) whom we honor, and I send you my greetings.

## Acts 23:27

**This man was arrested by the Jews (ULT)**  
**I have sent you this man, Paul, because certain Jews seized (UST)**

Here "Jews" means "some of the Jews." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Some of the Jews arrested this man" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**was about to be killed (ULT)**  
**and were about to kill him (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they were ready to kill Paul" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**when I came upon them with soldiers (ULT)**  
**so I and my soldiers went and (UST)**

"I with my soldiers arrived at the place where Paul and these Jews were"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [a Roman citizen](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [and rescued him](#)
- [was arrested](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [a Roman citizen](#)
- [so I and my soldiers went and](#)
- [rescued him](#)
- [seized](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> This man [was arrested](#) by the [Jews](#) and was about to be killed by them, when I came upon them with [soldiers and rescued him](#), since I learned that he was [a Roman citizen](#).

### UST

<sup>27</sup> I have sent you this man, Paul, because certain [Jews seized](#) him and were about to kill him. But I heard someone tell me that he is [a Roman citizen, so I and my soldiers went and rescued him](#).

## Acts 23:28

### General Information:

Here the word "I" refers to Claudius Lysias, the chief captain.

### General Information:

The word "they" refers to the group of Jews who accused Paul.

### General Information:

The word "you" is singular and refers to Governor Felix. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The chief captain ends his letter to Governor Felix.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they accused](#)
- [council](#)
- [to know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he had done wrong](#)
- [Jewish council](#)
- [to know](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Then I wanted [to know](#) the charge with which [they accused](#) him, so I took him down to their [council](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> I wanted [to know](#) what those Jews were saying that [he had done wrong](#), so I took him to their [Jewish council](#).

## Acts 23:29

**I learned that he was being accused about questions concerning (ULT)**

**I listened while they asked this man questions and he answered them. The things they accused him about had to do with (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that they were accusing him of questions about” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**but that there was no accusation against him that deserved death or imprisonment (ULT)**

**But Paul has not disobeyed any of our Roman laws. So our officials should not execute him or even put him in prison (UST)**

The abstract nouns “accusation,” “death,” and “imprisonment” can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: “but nobody accused him of anything that should cause Roman authorities to kill him or to send him to prison” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [that deserved](#)
- [imprisonment](#)
- [law](#)
- [death](#)
- [was being accused](#)
- [accusation against him](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [So our officials should not execute him](#)
- [prison](#)
- [Jewish laws](#)
- [So our officials should not execute him](#)
- [things they accused him](#)
- [even put him in](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> I learned that he [was being accused](#) about questions concerning their own [law](#), but that there was no [accusation against him that deserved death](#) or [imprisonment](#).

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> I listened while they asked this man questions and he answered them. The [things they accused him](#) about had to do with their [Jewish laws](#). But Paul has not disobeyed any of our Roman laws. [So our officials should not execute him](#) or [even put him in prison](#).



## Acts 23:30

### Then it was made known to me (ULT)

### Someone told me...so (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Later I learned" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- it was made known
- and...instructed
- I sent him
- accusers

### Translation Words - UST

- Someone told
- commanded
- I sent him
- what they are accusing

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Then [it was made known](#) to me that a plot was to be carried out against the man, so immediately [I sent him](#) to you, and also [instructed](#) his [accusers](#) to speak against him in your presence."

### UST

<sup>30</sup> [Someone told](#) me that some Jews were planning to kill this man, so [I sent him](#) to you, so that you may give him a fair trial there. I have also [commanded](#) the Jews who have accused him to go there to Caesarea and tell you [what they are accusing](#) him about. Goodbye."

## Acts 23:31

### General Information:

Here the first word “him” refers to Paul; the second use of the word “him” refers to Governor Felix. Antipatris was a city built by Herod in honor of his father, Antipater. It stood at a site located today in central Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Connecting Statement:

This ends Paul’s time under arrest in Jerusalem and begins his time of arrest in Caesarea with Governor Felix.

**the...So...soldiers...according to what they had been ordered (ULT)**

**the...So...soldiers did what the commander told them (UST)**

The word “so” marks an event that happened because of something else that happened previously. In this case, the previous event is the chief captain’s commanding the soldiers to escort Paul.

**took Paul and brought him by night (ULT)**

**They got Paul and took him with them during the night down (UST)**

Here “brought” can be translated as “took.” Alternate translation: “They got Paul and took him at night”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- soldiers

### Translation Words - UST

- They...Paul
- soldiers did

#### ULT

<sup>31</sup> So the [soldiers](#) indeed, according to what they had been ordered, took [Paul](#) and brought him by night to Antipatris.

#### UST

<sup>31</sup> So the [soldiers did](#) what the commander told them. [They](#) got [Paul](#) and took him with them during the night down to Antipatris.

## Acts 23:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [horsemen](#)
- [fortress](#)
- [most of the soldiers returned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and the soldiers who rode](#)
- [the foot soldiers returned to Jerusalem](#)
- [the foot soldiers returned to Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> On the next day, [most of the soldiers returned](#) to the [fortress](#), but they allowed the [horsemen](#) to continue on with Paul.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> The next day, [the foot soldiers returned to Jerusalem, and the soldiers who rode](#) horses went on with Paul.

## Acts 23:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- Caesarea
- letter
- governor

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- the city of Caesarea
- letter
- governor

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> When the horsemen entered into [Caesarea](#) and delivered the [letter](#) to the [governor](#), they also presented [Paul](#) to him.

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> When they arrived in [the city of Caesarea](#), they gave the [letter](#) to the [governor](#), and they placed [Paul](#) before him.

## Acts 23:34

### General Information:

Here the first and second words “he” refer to Governor Felix, the third word “he” and the word “him” refer to Paul, and the last word “he” refers to Governor Felix. The words “you” and “your” refer to Paul.

**asked what province Paul was from. When (ULT)  
and...he said to Paul...What province are you from?”  
Paul (UST)**

This can be stated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: “he asked Paul, ‘What province are you from?’ When” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Cilicia](#)
- [province](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Cilicia](#)
- [province](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Then the governor read the letter and asked what [province](#) Paul was from. When he learned that he was from [Cilicia](#),

### UST

<sup>34</sup> The governor read the letter and then he said to Paul, “What [province](#) are you from?” Paul answered, “I am from [Cilicia](#).”

## Acts 23:35

### he said (ULT)

### Then the governor said (UST)

This sentence, which begins with the words “When he learned” in verse 43, can be stated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: “Paul said, ‘I am from Cilicia.’ Then the governor said” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### I will hear you fully (ULT)

### you...I will listen to what each of you says (UST)

“I will listen to all you have to say”

### Then he commanded...him to be kept (ULT)

### Then he commanded...Paul be guarded (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he commanded soldiers to keep him” or “commanded soldiers to restrain him”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Then he commanded](#)
- [of Herod](#)
- [palace](#)
- [accusers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Then he commanded](#)
- [that King Herod the Great had built](#)
- [palace](#)
- [people who have accused](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> he said, “I will hear you fully when your [accusers](#) also come here.” [Then he commanded](#) him to be kept in the [palace of Herod](#).

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Then the governor said, “When the [people who have accused](#) you arrive, I will listen to what each of you says and then I will judge your case.” [Then he commanded](#) that Paul be guarded in the [palace that King Herod the Great had built](#).

## **Acts 24**

### **Acts 24 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

Paul told the governor that he had not done what the Jews were accusing him of doing and that the governor should not punish him for what he did do.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Respect**

Both the Jewish leaders ([Acts 24:2-4](#)) and Paul (Acts 24:10) began their speeches with words that show respect to the governor.

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

##### **Governmental leaders**

The words "governor," "commander," and "centurion" may be difficult to translate into some languages. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

## Acts 24:1

### General Information:

Here the word “you” refers to Felix, the governor. Here “we” refers to the citizens under Felix. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Paul is on trial in Caesarea. Tertullus presents Governor Felix with the charges against Paul.

### After five days (ULT)

### Five days later (UST)

“five days after the Roman soldiers took Paul to Caesarea”

### Ananias (ULT)

### Ananias (UST)

This is the name of a man. This is not the same Ananias as in [Acts 5:1](#) nor the same Ananias as in [Acts 9:10](#). See how you translated this in [Acts 23:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### a...orator (ULT)

### a speechmaker whose name was Tertullus (UST)

“a lawyer.” Tertullus was an expert in Roman law who was there to accuse Paul in court.

### named Tertullus (ULT)

### a speechmaker whose name was Tertullus (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### went there (ULT)

### went down there from Jerusalem, along (UST)

“went to Caesarea where Paul was”

### before the governor (ULT)

### There they told the governor (UST)

“in the presence of the governor who was judge in the court”

### brought charges...against Paul (ULT)

### had done that they thought was wrong...what Paul (UST)

“began to argue the case before the governor that Paul had broken the law.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priest](#)
- [Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> After five [days](#), Ananias the [chief priest](#), with certain [elders](#), and a certain orator named Tertullus went there. These men brought charges against [Paul](#) before the [governor](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Five [days](#) later Ananias the [high priest](#) went down there from Jerusalem, along with [some other Jewish elders](#) and a speechmaker whose name was Tertullus. There they told the [governor](#) what [Paul](#) had done that they thought was wrong.



- elders
- governor
- days

### **Translation Words - UST**

- high priest
- Paul
- some other Jewish elders
- governor
- days

## Acts 24:2

**we have great peace (ULT)**

**many years that...we have lived well (UST)**

Here “we” refers to the citizens under Felix. Alternate translation: “we, the people that you govern, have great peace” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**Because...and...your...foresight brings good reform to our nation (ULT)**

**during the...you have ruled us...By planning wisely, you have improved many things in this province (UST)**

“and your planning has greatly improved our nation”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [nation](#)
- [to accuse him](#)
- [peace](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you have ruled us...By planning wisely, you have improved many things in this province](#)
- [to accuse](#)
- [we have lived well](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> When Paul stood before the governor, Tertullus began [to accuse him](#), saying to the governor, “Because of you we have great [peace](#), and your foresight brings good reform to our [nation](#);

### UST

<sup>2</sup> The governor commanded Paul to be brought in. When Paul arrived, Tertullus began [to accuse](#) him. He said to the governor, “Honorable Governor Felix, during the many years that [you have ruled us, we have lived well. By planning wisely, you have improved many things in this province.](#)

**Acts 24:3****with all thankfulness (ULT)****we always thank you (UST)**

The word “thankfulness” is an abstract noun. It can be stated as an adjective or verb. Alternate translation: “so we are very thankful and we welcome everything that you do” or “so we thank you very much and welcome everything that you do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**most excellent Felix (ULT)****Therefore, Governor Felix...that you have done for all of us (UST)**

“Governor Felix who deserves greatest honor” Felix was the roman governor over the whole region. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Acts 23:25](#).

**ULT**

<sup>3</sup> both in every way and everywhere we acknowledge this, most excellent Felix, with all thankfulness.

**UST**

<sup>3</sup> Therefore, Governor Felix, we always thank you for everything that you have done for all of us, wherever you have done those things.

## Acts 24:4

### General Information:

The word “we” refers to Ananias, certain elders, and Tertullus. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**However, so as not to detain you any longer (ULT)**  
**But, so that I will not take up too much of your time... to what (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) “so that I will not take up too much of your time” or 2) “so that I will not tire you”

**to...listen...briefly...to us in your kindness (ULT)**  
**that you...listen...I have to say...that you...kindly...listen...I have to say (UST)**

“kindly listen to my short speech”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I ask](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I ask](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> However, so as not to detain you any longer, [I ask](#) you to briefly listen to us in your kindness.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> But, so that I will not take up too much of your time, [I ask](#) that you kindly listen to what I have to say.

## Acts 24:5

**this man...a pest (ULT)**

**this man...causes trouble (UST)**

This speaks of Paul as if he were a plague that spreads from one person to another. Alternate translation: “this man to be a trouble maker” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**among all the Jews who are throughout the world (ULT)**  
**wherever he goes...with the Jews...the entire...whom (UST)**

The word “all” here is probably an exaggeration used to strengthen their accusation against Paul. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**he is a leader...of the sect of the Nazarenes (ULT)**  
**He also leads...group...people call...the...followers of the Nazarene (UST)**

The phrase “Nazarene sect” is another name for the Christians. Alternate translation: “He also leads the entire group whom people call the followers of the Nazarene” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**sect (ULT)**  
**group (UST)**

This is a smaller group of people within a larger group. Tertullus considers the Christians to be a small group within Judaism.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [world](#)
- [Nazarenes](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [wherever he goes](#)
- [people call...followers...Nazarene](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For we have found this man to be a pest and one who causes rebellion among all the [Jews](#) who are throughout the [world](#). Also, he is a leader of the sect of the [Nazarenes](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> We have observed that this man, [wherever he goes](#), causes trouble with the [Jews](#). He also leads the entire group whom [people call](#) the [followers](#) of the [Nazarene](#).

## Acts 24:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [to desecrate](#)
- [we arrested](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [temple in Jerusalem](#)
- [pollute it](#)
- [arrested](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He even tried [to desecrate](#) the [temple](#), so [we arrested](#) him. <sup>[1]</sup> [We wanted to judge him according to our law.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> He even tried to do things in the [temple in Jerusalem](#) that would [pollute it](#), so we [arrested](#) him. <sup>[1]</sup> [And we wanted to judge him according to our law.

## Acts 24:7

### General Information:

Here the word “you” is singular and refers to Governor Felix. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Tertullus finishes presenting the charges against Paul before Governor Felix.

#### ULT

<sup>7[2]</sup> But Lysias, the officer, came and took him by force out of our hands,

#### UST

<sup>7[2]</sup> But Lysias, the commander of the Roman fortress, came with his soldiers and took him away from us.

## Acts 24:8

**to learn about the things of which we are accusing him (ULT)**

**learn that...which we are accusing him are true (UST)**

“to learn whether or not these charges that we bring against him are true” or “to learn whether or not he is guilty of the things we accuse him of”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [are accusing](#)
- [to learn](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are accusing](#)
- [learn that](#)

### ULT

<sup>8[3]</sup> commanding his accusers to come to you.] You can question him yourself about all these matters [to learn](#) about the things of which we [are accusing](#) him.”

### UST

<sup>8[3]</sup> sending us to you.] If you question him yourself, you will be able to [learn](#) [that](#) all these things about which we [are accusing](#) him are true.



## Acts 24:9

### the Jews (ULT)

### the...Jewish leaders (UST)

This refers to the Jewish leaders who were there at Paul's trial. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [affirming that](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish leaders](#)
- [was true](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then the [Jews](#) also agreed, [affirming that](#) these charges were true.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then the [Jewish leaders](#) there told the governor that what Tertullus had said [was true](#).

## Acts 24:10

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to the Jews who were accusing Paul.

### Connecting Statement:

Paul responds to Governor Felix about the charges brought against him.

**After...motioned...the governor (ULT)**  
**motioned with his hand...Then the governor (UST)**

“the governor gestured”

**a judge to this nation (ULT)**  
**have judged this Jewish province...I know that you will listen to me and will judge me fairly (UST)**

Here “nation” refers to the people of the Jewish nation. Alternate translation: “a judge for the people of the Jewish nation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**make my defense...me (ULT)**  
**I...defend...myself (UST)**

“explain my situation”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- years
- to...nation
- a judge
- governor
- I understand that

### Translation Words - UST

- So Paul
- years
- Jewish
- have judged
- governor
- Governor Felix, I know that

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> After the [governor](#) motioned for Paul to speak, [Paul](#) then answered, “[I understand that](#) for many [years](#) you have been [a judge](#) to this [nation](#), so I gladly make my defense about the things concerning me.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then the [governor](#) motioned with his hand to Paul that he should speak. [So Paul](#) replied, and said, “[Governor Felix, I know that](#) you [have judged](#) this [Jewish](#) province for many [years](#). Therefore I gladly defend myself. I know that you will listen to me and will judge me fairly.

## Acts 24:11

**twelve days since (ULT)**

**twelve days since...went up (UST)**

"12 days since" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to worship](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [days](#)
- [to find out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to worship God](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [days](#)
- [You know](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> You will be able [to find out](#) that it has not been more than twelve [days](#) since I went up [to worship](#) in [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [You know](#) that it has not been more than twelve [days](#) since I went up to [Jerusalem to worship God](#).

**Acts 24:12****nor was I stirring up a crowd (ULT)****No one can say that they saw me causing people to riot (UST)**

“Stir up” here is a metaphor for agitating people into unrest, just as stirring a liquid agitates it. Alternate translation: “I did not provoke the crowd” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [synagogues](#)
- [temple](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [any Jewish synagogue](#)
- [temple courts](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> They neither found me in the [temple](#) arguing with anyone, nor was I stirring up a crowd, neither in the [synagogues](#), nor in the city.

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> No one can say that they saw me arguing with anyone in the [temple courts](#) because I did not do that. No one can say that they saw me causing people to riot in [any Jewish synagogue](#) or causing trouble anywhere else in Jerusalem, because I did not do that.

## Acts 24:13

**they are...accusing (ULT)**

**they are...accusing (UST)**

“the blames for wrongdoings” or “the charges for crimes”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they are...accusing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they are...accusing](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> They are not able to prove to you about the things which [they are](#) now [accusing](#) me.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> So they cannot prove to you the things about which [they are](#) now [accusing](#) me.

## Acts 24:14

**I confess...this to you (ULT)**

**I admit...to you...this (UST)**

"I acknowledge this to you"

**that according to the Way (ULT)**

**that...is true...the way that Jesus (UST)**

The phrase "the Way" was a title used for Christianity during Paul's time.

**they call a sect (ULT)**

**It is true...taught us (UST)**

This is a smaller group of people within a larger group. Tertullus considers the Christians to be a small group within Judaism. See how you translated "sect" in [Acts 24:5](#).

**in that same way I serve the God of our fathers (ULT)**

**I do worship the God...ancestors worshiped...that I follow (UST)**

Paul uses the phrase "in that same way" to mean that he, as a believer in Jesus, serves God the same way as their Jewish ancestors did. He is not leading a "sect" or teaching something new that is opposed to their ancient religion.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they call](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [God](#)
- [law](#)
- [I confess](#)
- [I am faithful](#)
- [of our fathers](#)
- [has been written](#)
- [I serve](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [taught us](#)
- [other prophets](#)
- [God](#)
- [laws that God gave him](#)
- [I admit](#)
- [I also believe](#)
- [ancestors worshiped](#)
- [wrote](#)
- [I do worship](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But [I confess](#) this to you, that according to the Way that [they call](#) a sect, in that same way [I serve](#) the [God of our fathers](#). [I am faithful](#) to all that is according to the [law](#) and that [has been written](#) in the [prophets](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> But [I admit](#) to you that this is true: [I do worship](#) the [God](#) that our [ancestors worshiped](#). It is true that I follow the way that Jesus [taught us](#). [I also believe](#) everything that Moses wrote in the [laws that God gave him](#) and everything that the [other prophets wrote](#) in their books.

## Acts 24:15

**also these men (ULT)**

**men also (UST)**

“as these men have.” Here “these men” refers to the Jews who are accusing Paul in court.

**that there is about to be a resurrection of both the righteous and the wicked (ULT)**  
**alive again, both those who were good and those who were wicked (UST)**

The abstract noun “resurrection” can be stated with the verb “resurrect.” Alternate translation: “that God will resurrect all who have died, both the righteous and the unrighteous” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the righteous...and the wicked (ULT)**  
**who were good...and those who were wicked (UST)**

These nominal adjectives refer to righteous people and wicked people. AT “righteous people and wicked people” or “those who have done what is right and those who have done what is evil” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a resurrection](#)
- [the righteous](#)
- [the wicked](#)
- [God](#)
- [the same confident hope](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [alive again](#)
- [who were good](#)
- [those who were wicked](#)
- [God will cause everyone who has died](#)
- [I believe, just like](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> I have [the same confident hope](#) in [God](#) which also these men themselves await, that there is about to be [a resurrection](#) of both [the righteous](#) and [the wicked](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [I believe, just like](#) these men also believe, that some day [God will cause everyone who has died](#) to become [alive again](#), both those [who were good](#) and [those who were wicked](#).

## Acts 24:16

**I myself...strive...always...in everything (ULT)**

**I always try...think is right (UST)**

"I always work hard" or "I do my best"

**to have a clear conscience before God (ULT)**

**day will come...to do what pleases God (UST)**

Here "conscience" refers to a person's inner morality that chooses between right and wrong. Alternate translation: "to be blameless" or "to always do what is right" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**before God (ULT)**

**day will come...to do what pleases...God (UST)**

"in the presence of God"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [a clear](#)
- [conscience](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [day will come...to do what pleases](#)
- [day will come...to do what pleases](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> So in this also I myself always strive in everything to have [a clear conscience](#) before [God](#) and human beings.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> Because I believe that [day will come](#), I always try [to do what pleases God](#) and what other people think is right.



## Acts 24:17

### Now (ULT)

#### for several years, I returned to Jerusalem (UST)

This word marks a shift in Paul's argument. Here he explains the situation in Jerusalem when some of the Jews arrested him.

### after...years...many (ULT)

#### After I had been in other places for several years, I returned to Jerusalem...for several years, I returned to Jerusalem (UST)

"after many years away from Jerusalem"

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Now after many [years](#) I came to bring [gifts of money to the poor](#) of my [nation](#), and [offerings](#).

### UST

<sup>17</sup> After I had been in other places [for several years, I returned to Jerusalem to bring some money to my fellow Jews who are poor](#).

#### I came to bring gifts of money to the poor of my nation, and offerings (ULT) to bring some money to my fellow Jews who are poor (UST)

Here "I came" can be translated as "I went." Alternate translation: "I went to help my people by bringing them money as a gift" (See: [Go and Come](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gifts of money to the poor](#)
- [years](#)
- [nation](#)
- [offerings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to bring some money to my fellow Jews who are poor](#)
- [for several years, I returned to Jerusalem](#)
- [to bring some money to my fellow Jews who are poor](#)
- [to bring some money to my fellow Jews who are poor](#)

## Acts 24:18

**doing this, purified...the temple (ULT)**

**Some Jews from Asia saw...the temple courts after I had completed the ritual that allows one to worship God (UST)**

"in the temple after I had finished a ceremony to purify myself"

**not with a crowd nor with an uproar (ULT)**

**There was no crowd with me, and I was not causing people to riot (UST)**

This can be stated as a separate new sentence. Alternate translation: "I had not gathered a crowd nor was I trying to start a riot" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- purified
- temple

### Translation Words - UST

- after I had completed the ritual that allows one to worship God
- temple courts

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> They found me doing this, [purified](#) in the [temple](#), not with a crowd nor with an uproar.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> Some Jews from Asia saw me in the [temple courts after I had completed the ritual that allows one to worship God](#). There was no crowd with me, and I was not causing people to riot.

## Acts 24:19

**there are certain (ULT)**

**But it was those...the people to riot (UST)**

“The Jews from Asia”

**if they have anything (ULT)**

**if they think that I did something wrong (UST)**

“if they have anything to say”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [Asia](#)
- [make accusations](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [But it was those...the people to riot](#)
- [to accuse](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But there are certain [Jews](#) from [Asia](#), who ought to be present before you and [make accusations](#), if they have anything against me.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> [But it was those Jews](#) who caused [the people to riot](#). They should be here in front of you [to accuse](#) me, if they think that I did something wrong.

## Acts 24:20

### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes responding to Governor Felix about the charges brought against him.

**these same men (ULT)**

**Jewish men who are here (UST)**

This refers to the members of the council who were present in Jerusalem at Paul's trial.

**should say what wrong they found...in me (ULT)**

**should tell you what they think...wrong...I did (UST)**

"should say the wrong thing I did that they were able to prove"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jewish council](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [council](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Or else, these same men should say what wrong they found in me when I stood before the [Jewish council](#),

### UST

<sup>20</sup> But if they do not want to do that, these Jewish men who are here should tell you what they think I did that was wrong when I defended myself in their [council](#).

## Acts 24:21

**concerning...the resurrection of the dead (ULT)**  
**God will cause all people who have died...become alive again (UST)**

The abstract noun "resurrection" can be stated as "God brings back to life." Alternate translation: "It is because I believe that God will bring back to life those who have died" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**I am on trial before you today (ULT)**  
**You are judging me today...I believe that...to (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you are judging me today" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the resurrection
- am on trial
- thing
- of the dead
- I shouted out

### Translation Words - UST

- become alive again
- are judging me
- when I shouted
- God will cause all people who have died
- when I shouted

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> other than about this one [thing](#) that [I shouted out](#) when I stood among them, 'I [am on trial](#) before you today concerning [the resurrection of the dead](#).'

### UST

<sup>21</sup> They might say that I did something wrong [when I shouted](#), 'You [are judging me](#) today because I believe that [God will cause all people who have died](#) to [become alive again](#).'

## Acts 24:22

### General Information:

Felix is the Roman governor of the area who resides at Caesarea. See how you translated this name in [Acts 23:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the Way (ULT)

### what people called the Way (UST)

This is a title for Christianity. See how you translated this in [Acts 9:2](#).

### Felix...When Lysias...commander comes down from Jerusalem (ULT)

### Felix...Later, when...Commander...Lysias comes down here (UST)

“when Lysias the commander comes down” or “at the time Lysias the commander comes down”

### Lysias (ULT)

### Lysias (UST)

This is the name of the chief captain. See how you translated this name in [Acts 23:26](#).

### comes down from Jerusalem (ULT)

### comes down here (UST)

Jerusalem was higher than Caesarea so it was normal for them to speak of coming down from Jerusalem.

### the things...I will decide...concerning you (ULT)

### about...I will decide...case (UST)

“I will make a decision concerning these accusations against you” or “I will judge whether you are guilty”

### Translation Words - ULT

- commander
- knowledge about

### Translation Words - UST

- Commander
- knew much

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then Felix, who had a more accurate [knowledge about](#) the things concerning the Way, delayed them. He said, “When Lysias the [commander](#) comes down from Jerusalem, I will decide the things concerning you.”

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Felix already [knew much](#) about what people called the Way, and so he stopped the trial. He said to them, “Later, when [Commander](#) Lysias comes down here, I will decide this case.”

**Acts 24:23**

**to let him have...some freedom (ULT)  
all the time...and make sure that Paul was guarded (UST)**

“grant Paul some freedom not otherwise granted to prisoners”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Then he commanded](#)
- [centurion](#)
- [to minister](#)
- [some freedom](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Then he told the](#)
- [officer who was](#)
- [to help Paul](#)
- [and make sure that Paul was guarded](#)

**ULT**

<sup>23</sup> [Then he commanded](#) the [centurion](#) to keep Paul in custody, but to let him have [some freedom](#), and not to forbid his own friends [to minister](#) to him.

**UST**

<sup>23</sup> [Then he told the officer who was](#) guarding Paul to take Paul back to the prison [and make sure that Paul was guarded](#) all the time. But he said that Paul was not to be chained, and if his friends came to visit him, the officer should allow them [to help Paul](#) in any way that they wanted to.

## Acts 24:24

**After some days (ULT)**

**Several days later (UST)**

“After several days”

**Drusilla his...wife (ULT)**

**wife Drusilla, who...wife (UST)**

Drusilla is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**a Jewess (ULT)**

**a Jew (UST)**

This means a female Jew. Alternate translation: “who was a Jew”  
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [a Jewess](#)
- [faith](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [in Christ Jesus](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [and he sent for](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [a Jew](#)
- [trusting](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [in Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [Paul...Paul said to him](#)
- [called for](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> After some [days](#), Felix returned with Drusilla his own wife, who was [a Jewess](#), [and he sent for Paul](#) and he heard from him about the [faith in Christ Jesus](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Several [days](#) later Felix came back with his wife Drusilla, who was [a Jew](#), and [called for Paul](#) to speak with him. Felix listened to what [Paul said to him](#) about [trusting in Jesus the Messiah](#).



## Acts 24:25

### Felix became frightened (ULT)

### Felix became afraid after hearing those things (UST)

Felix may have felt conviction of his sins.

### for now (ULT)

### That is all I want to hear now...I have (UST)

"for the present time"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [righteousness](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [an opportunity](#)
- [I will send for](#)
- [self-control](#)
- [frightened](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [what God wants people to do in order to please him](#)
- [there would be a time when God will judge all people](#)
- [time](#)
- [I will ask...to me again](#)
- [control how they act](#)
- [afraid after hearing](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But when Paul reasoned with him about [righteousness](#), and [self-control](#), and the [judgment](#) that is coming, Felix became [frightened](#) and said, "Go away for now. But when I find [an opportunity](#), [I will send for](#) you."

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Paul talked to him about [what God wants people to do in order to please him](#). He also explained how people should [control how they act](#) and that [there would be a time when God will judge all people](#). Felix became [afraid after hearing](#) those things, so he said to Paul, "That is all I want to hear now. When I have [time](#), [I will ask](#) you to come [to me again](#)."

## Acts 24:26

**he would be given money by Paul (ULT)**  
**Paul would give him some money (UST)**

Felix was hoping Paul would offer him a bribe to set him free.

**also...he...therefore he often sent for him and spoke (ULT)**

**Felix was hoping...would give him...so he sent for Paul to come to...many times. Paul talked with Felix many times, but he did not give Felix any money (UST)**

"so Felix often sent for Paul and spoke with Paul"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he...hoped](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [he...sent for](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Felix was hoping](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [he sent for Paul to come to](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> At the same time [he](#) also [hoped](#) that he would be given money by [Paul](#), and therefore [he](#) often [sent for](#) him and spoke with him.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> [Felix was hoping](#) that [Paul](#) would give him some money, so [he sent for Paul to come to](#) him many times. Paul talked with Felix many times, but he did not give Felix any money, and Felix did not tell his soldiers to release Paul from prison.

## Acts 24:27

### Felix...Porcius Festus (ULT)

### became governor...Felix...Porcius Festus (UST)

This was the new roman Governor who replaced Felix. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Felix wanted...to gain favor with the Jews (ULT)

### wanted...to please...the Jewish leaders (UST)

Here “the Jews” refers to the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: “wanted the Jewish leaders to like him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Felix...so...left Paul to continue under guard (ULT)

### became governor...Felix...let Paul remain in prison because he (UST)

“he left Paul in prison”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [favor](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [became](#)
- [to continue under guard](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish leaders](#)
- [to please](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [had passed](#)
- [in prison](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But when two years passed, Porcius Festus [became](#) the governor after Felix, but Felix wanted to gain [favor](#) with the [Jews](#), so he left [Paul to continue under guard](#).

24:6 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include the end of verse 6, verse 7, and the first part of verse 8.

24:7 <sup>[2]</sup> See the note on the previous verse.

24:8 <sup>[3]</sup> See the note on verse 6.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> When two years [had passed](#), Porcius Festus became governor in place of Felix. Felix let [Paul](#) remain [in prison](#) because he wanted [to please](#) the [Jewish leaders](#).

24:6 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include the end of verse 6, verse 7, and the first part of verse 8.

24:7 <sup>[2]</sup> See the note on the previous verse.

24:8 <sup>[3]</sup> See the note on verse 6.

## Acts 25

### Acts 25 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Favor

This word is used in two different ways in this chapter. When the Jewish leaders asked Festus for a favor, they were asking him to do something special for them on that day. They wanted him to do for them something that he would not usually do. When Festus “wanted to gain the favor of the Jews,” he wanted them to like him and be willing to obey him in the months and years to come. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

#### Roman citizenship

The Romans thought that they needed to treat only Roman citizens justly. They could do as they desired with people who were not Roman citizens, but they had to obey the law with other Romans. Some people were born Roman citizens, and others gave money to the Roman government so they could become Roman citizens. Roman officials could have been punished for treating a Roman citizen the same way they would treat a non-citizen.

## Acts 25:1

### General Information:

Festus becomes the governor of Caesarea. See how you translated this name in [Acts 24:27](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to be a prisoner in Caesarea.

### Now (ULT)

### began to rule as governor of (UST)

This word marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

### Festus...entered the province (ULT)

### Festus...began to rule as governor of...the province (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Festus arrived in the area to begin his rule or 2) Festus simply arrived in the area.

### he went from Caesarea up to Jerusalem (ULT)

### he left the city of Caesarea and went up to Jerusalem (UST)

The phrase “went up” is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than Caesarea.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Caesarea](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [province](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Caesarea and](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [province](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now, Festus entered the [province](#), and after three [days](#), he went from [Caesarea](#) up to [Jerusalem](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Festus began to rule as governor of the [province](#). Three [days](#) later, he left the city of [Caesarea and](#) went up to [Jerusalem](#).

**Acts 25:2**

**brought accusations...the chief priests and the prominent men of the Jews...against Paul (ULT)  
stood before Festus...There, the chief priests and... Jewish leaders...and said that Paul (UST)**

This speaks about accusations as if they were an object that a person could bring to someone else. Alternate translation: "The chief priest and the important Jews accused Paul to Festus" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they urged him (ULT)  
had done things that were very wrong (UST)**

Here the word "him" refers to Festus.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [they urged](#)
- [prominent men](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jewish](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [and said that Paul](#)
- [had done things that were very wrong](#)
- [leaders](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> Both the [chief priests](#) and the [prominent men](#) of the [Jews](#) brought accusations to Festus against [Paul](#), and [they urged](#) him

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> There, the [chief priests](#) and other [Jewish leaders](#) stood before Festus [and said that Paul had done things that were very wrong](#).

## Acts 25:3

**and asked for a favor (ULT)**

**They urgently asked Festus (UST)**

Here the word “him” refers to Festus.

**that Festus might summon Paul to Jerusalem (ULT)**  
**to bring Paul to trial in Jerusalem...him (UST)**

This means that Festus would order his soldiers to bring Paul to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “that he might order his soldiers to bring Paul to Jerusalem”

**Paul...to kill...along the way (ULT)**

**Paul...to attack...on the road and kill him (UST)**

They were going to ambush Paul.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Festus might summon
- a favor
- Jerusalem

### Translation Words - UST

- bring
- They urgently asked Festus
- Jerusalem

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> and asked for [a favor](#) against Paul—that [Festus might summon](#) Paul to [Jerusalem](#)—for an ambush was forming to kill him along the way.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [They urgently asked Festus](#) to [bring](#) Paul to trial in [Jerusalem](#). But they were really planning to attack him on the road and kill him.

## Acts 25:4

### General Information:

Here the word “us” refers to Festus and the Romans traveling with him, but not to his audience. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**So indeed Festus...answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea, and that he himself was about to go there soon (ULT)**

**Festus...replied, “Paul is under guard in Caesarea, let him stay there. I myself will go down to Caesarea very soon (UST)**

This can be stated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: “But Festus said, ‘Paul is being held prisoner in Caesarea, and I myself will soon return there.’” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)
- [Caesarea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul](#)
- [Caesarea](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So indeed Festus answered that [Paul](#) was being held at [Caesarea](#), and that he himself was about to go there soon.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Festus replied, “[Paul](#) is under guard in [Caesarea](#), let him stay there. I myself will go down to Caesarea very soon.”



**Acts 25:5**

**Therefore, those...He said...who are leaders should go there with us (ULT)**

**So...those...who...he said...should go...are able to (UST)**

The phrase "he said" can be moved to the beginning of the sentence. Alternate translation: "Then he said, 'Therefore, those who are able to go to Caesarea should go there with us' (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

**among...If there is something wrong...the man (ULT)**  
**of you...If you have anything to accuse Paul...do it (UST)**

"If Paul has done something wrong"

**let them accuse him (ULT)**  
**accuse Paul...there (UST)**

"you should accuse him of violating laws" or "you should bring charges against him"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [who are leaders](#)
- [wrong](#)
- [let them accuse](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [are able to](#)
- [accuse Paul](#)
- [accuse Paul](#)

**ULT**

<sup>5</sup> He said, "Therefore, those among you [who are leaders](#) should go there with us. If there is something [wrong](#) with the man, [let them accuse](#) him."

**UST**

<sup>5</sup> "So," he said, "you should go there with me, those of you who [are able to](#). If you have anything to [accuse Paul](#) of, you can do it there."

## Acts 25:6

### General Information:

Here the first three times the word “he” is used as well as the word “him,” the words refer to Festus. The fourth word “he” refers to Paul. The word “they” refers to the Jews who came from Jerusalem.

### and then he went down to Caesarea (ULT) he went back down to the city of Caesarea (UST)

Jerusalem is higher geographically than Caesarea. It was common to speak of coming down from Jerusalem.

### he sat in the judgment seat (ULT) to him, where he sat in the judge’s seat (UST)

Here “judgment seat” refers to Festus’ ruling as judge over Paul’s trial. Alternate translation: “sat upon the seat where he acted as judge” or “he sat down as judge” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Paul to be brought to him (ULT) Paul be brought (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “his soldiers bring Paul to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and commanded](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Caesarea](#)
- [judgment seat](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Festus commanded that](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [the city of Caesarea](#)
- [judge’s seat](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Festus stayed with them not more than eight or ten [days](#), and then he went down to [Caesarea](#). On the next day he sat in the [judgment seat and commanded Paul](#) to be brought to him.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Festus remained in Jerusalem with the temple leaders eight or ten more [days](#). Then he went back down to [the city of Caesarea](#). The next day [Festus commanded that Paul](#) be brought to him, where he sat in the [judge’s seat](#).

## Acts 25:7

### When Paul came (ULT)

**After Paul was brought before the judge's seat...but (UST)**

"When he came and stood before Festus"

**many...bringing...serious charges (ULT)**

**many...serious charges (UST)**

Charging a person with a crime is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could bring to court. Alternate translation: "they spoke against Paul many serious things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jewish leaders](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When Paul came, the [Jews](#) who had come down from [Jerusalem](#) stood around him, bringing many and serious charges which they could not prove.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> After Paul was brought before the judge's seat, the [Jewish leaders](#) who had come down from [Jerusalem](#) gathered around him to accuse him of many serious charges, but they were not able to prove any of them.

## Acts 25:8

### against the temple (ULT)

### against the temple (UST)

Paul says he did not break any rules about who could enter the Jerusalem temple. Alternate translation: “against the entry rules of the temple” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [I have done...wrong](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [law of the Jews](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Caesar](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [against the emperor](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [law of the Jews](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [against the emperor](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [Paul](#) spoke in his defense, “[I have done](#) nothing [wrong](#), neither against the [law of the Jews](#), nor against the [temple](#), nor against [Caesar](#).”

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then [Paul](#) spoke for himself. He said, “I have done nothing against the [law of the Jews](#), nor against the [temple](#), nor [against the emperor](#).”

## Acts 25:9

### Connecting Statement:

Paul asks to be taken before Caesar for judgment.

**wanting to do a favor for the Jews (ULT)**  
**wanted to please the Jewish leaders (UST)**

Here “the Jews” means the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: “wanted to please the Jewish leaders” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**to go up to Jerusalem (ULT)**  
**to go up to Jerusalem (UST)**

Jerusalem was higher geographically than Caesarea. It was common to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

**and to be judged there by me about these things (ULT)**  
**so I can judge you there about these things (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “where I will judge you with regard to these charges” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [a favor](#)
- [and to be judged](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to please the Jewish leaders](#)
- [to please the Jewish leaders](#)
- [judge](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But Festus, wanting to do [a favor](#) for the [Jews](#), answered [Paul](#) and said, “Are you willing to go up to [Jerusalem](#) and to [be judged](#) there by me about these things?”

### UST

<sup>9</sup> But Festus wanted [to please the Jewish leaders](#), so he asked [Paul](#), “Are you willing to go up to [Jerusalem](#) so I can [judge](#) you there about these things?”

## Acts 25:10

**I am standing before the judgment seat of Caesar where I should be judged (ULT)**

**No, I am...standing before you, who represent the Emperor. This is where I ought to be judged (UST)**

The “judgment seat” refers to Caesar’s authority to judge Paul. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I ask to go before Caesar, so he can judge me” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to the Jews](#)
- [be judged](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [of Caesar](#)
- [judgment seat](#)
- [just as](#)
- [I have done...wrong](#)
- [know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to the Jewish people](#)
- [to be judged](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [the Emperor](#)
- [represent](#)
- [as](#)
- [I have done...wrong](#)
- [know](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> But [Paul](#) said, “I am standing before the [judgment seat of Caesar](#) where I should [be judged](#). [I have done](#) nothing [wrong to the Jews](#), [just as](#) you also very well [know](#).”

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Paul](#) replied, “No, I am now standing before you, who [represent the Emperor](#). This is where I ought [to be judged](#). [I have done](#) nothing [wrong to the Jewish people](#), [as](#) you [know](#) very well.”

## Acts 25:11

**Though...I have done wrong and have done anything worthy of death, I do not refuse to die. But if there is nothing of which they can accuse me, no one can hand me over to them (ULT)**

**I had done anything deserving of death...I would not refuse to to die; but there is nothing that they accuse me of that deserves such a punishment. No one can condemn me just to satisfy them. I ask that (UST)**

Paul is stating a hypothetical situation. If he were guilty, he would accept the punishment, but he knows that he is not guilty. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

**if...have done anything worthy of death (ULT)**

**If...I had done anything deserving of death (UST)**

“if I have done some wrong that deserves the death penalty”

**there is nothing of which they can accuse (ULT)**

**there is nothing that they accuse (UST)**

“if the charges against me are not true”

**no one can hand me over to them (ULT)**

**No one can condemn me just to satisfy them. I ask that (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) Festus does not have the legal authority to hand Paul over to these false accusers or 2) Paul was saying that if he has done nothing wrong, the governor should not give into the request of the Jews.

**I appeal to Caesar (ULT)**

**Caesar himself judge me (UST)**

“I ask that I go before Caesar so he can judge me”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [I appeal](#)
- [to Caesar](#)
- [of death](#)
- [to die](#)
- [can accuse](#)
- [I have done wrong](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I had done anything deserving of death](#)
- [judge me](#)
- [Caesar himself](#)
- [I had done anything deserving of death](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Though if indeed [I have done wrong](#) and have done anything [worthy of death](#), I do not refuse [to die](#). But if there is nothing of which they [can accuse](#) me, no one can hand me over to them. [I appeal to Caesar](#).”

### UST

<sup>11</sup> If [I had done anything deserving of death](#), I would not refuse to [to die](#); but there is nothing that they [accuse](#) me of that deserves such a punishment. No one can condemn me just to satisfy them. I ask that [Caesar himself judge me](#).”

- to die
- accuse
- I had done anything deserving of death



**Acts 25:12****with the council (ULT)****with his advisors (UST)**

This is not the Sanhedrin that is referred to as “council” throughout Acts. This is a political council in the Roman government. Alternate translation: “with his own government advisors”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [You have appealed](#)
- [Caesar](#) (2)
- [council](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [You have appealed to](#)
- [Caesar](#) (2)
- [advisors](#)

**ULT**

<sup>12</sup> Then, after Festus talked with the [council](#), he answered, “[You have appealed](#) to Caesar. To [Caesar](#) you will go!”

**UST**

<sup>12</sup> After Festus conferred with his [advisors](#), he said, “[You have appealed to](#) Caesar, and so to [Caesar](#) you shall go!”

## Acts 25:13

### General Information:

King Agrippa and Bernice are new people in the story. Though he ruled over only a few territories, King Agrippa is the current reigning king in Palestine. Bernice is Agrippa's sister. (See: [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Festus explains Paul's case to King Agrippa.

**Now (ULT)**

**days (UST)**

This word marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

**to pay their respects to Festus (ULT)**

**They had come to pay their respects to Festus (UST)**

"to visit Festus concerning official matters"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Caesarea](#)
- [King](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Caesarea](#)
- [King Herod](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Now after some [days](#) had passed, [King](#) Agrippa and Bernice came down to [Caesarea](#) to pay their respects to Festus.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> After several [days](#), [King Herod](#) Agrippa arrived at [Caesarea](#), along with his sister Bernice. They had come to pay their respects to Festus.

## Acts 25:14

**There is a certain man who was left here as a prisoner by Felix (ULT)**

**There is a man here whom Felix kept in prison (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When Felix left office, he left a man in prison here" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Felix (ULT)**

**here whom Felix kept in prison (UST)**

Felix was the Roman governor of the area who resided in Caesarea. See how you translated this name in [Acts 23:24](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- as a prisoner
- king
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- here whom Felix kept in prison
- King Agrippa
- days

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> After they had been there for many [days](#), Festus presented to the [king](#) the things concerning [Paul](#). He said, "There is a certain man who was left here [as a prisoner](#) by Felix.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> [King Agrippa](#) and Bernice stayed many [days](#) in Caesarea. After some time had passed, Festus told Agrippa about [Paul](#). He said, "There is a man [here](#) [whom Felix kept in prison](#).

**Acts 25:15****against this man...brought charges (ULT)****When I went...came before me and (UST)**

To charge someone in court is spoken of as if it were an object that a person brings to court. Alternate translation: “spoke to me against this man” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**asking for a sentence of condemnation against him (ULT)****asked me to condemn him to death (UST)**

The abstract nouns “sentence” and “condemnation” can be expressed as verbs. The phrase “a sentence of condemnation” implies that they were requesting that Paul be executed. Alternate translation: “they asked me to sentence him to death” or “they asked me to condemn him to death” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [a sentence of condemnation](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [elders](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jewish](#)
- [to death](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [elders](#)

**ULT**

<sup>15</sup> When I was in [Jerusalem](#), the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#) of the [Jews](#) brought charges against this man, asking for [a sentence of condemnation](#) against him.

**UST**

<sup>15</sup> When I went to [Jerusalem](#), the [chief priests](#) and the [Jewish elders](#) came before me and asked me to condemn him [to death](#).

## Acts 25:16

### to hand over any person (ULT) a person...Instead, we allow (UST)

Here “hand over” represents sending someone to people who will punish or kill him. Alternate translation: “let someone punish anyone” or “to condemn anyone to death” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### before the one who is accused...to face...his accusers (ULT)

### immediately...the accused man to stand face to face...them...with his accusers (UST)

Here “faced his accusers” is an idiom that means to meet with the people who accuse him. Alternate translation: “before the person whom others have accused of a crime had met directly with those who accused him” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Romans](#)
- [may make](#)
- [face](#)
- [one who is accused](#)
- [accusers](#)
- [charges](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [for Romans](#)
- [defend himself](#)
- [face to face](#)
- [accused man to stand](#)
- [with his accusers](#)
- [they say about him](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> I answered them that it is not the custom [of the Romans](#) to hand over any person before the [one who is accused](#) may have the opportunity to [face](#) his [accusers](#), and [may make](#) a defense concerning the [charges](#).

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> But I told them that when someone has been accused of a serious crime, it is not a custom [for Romans](#) to condemn a person immediately. Instead, we allow the [accused man to stand face to face with his accusers](#) and [defend himself](#) against what [they say about him](#).

**Acts 25:17****Therefore (ULT)****So (UST)**

“Because what I have just said is true.” Festus had just said that an accused man should be able to face his accusers and make his defense.

**when they came together...here (ULT)****came here...when those Jews...to Caesarea (UST)**

“when the Jewish leaders came to meet with me here”

**I sat in the judgment seat (ULT)****I sat in the judge’s seat (UST)**

Here “judgment seat” refers to Festus ruling over Paul’s trial as judge. Alternate translation: “I sat upon the seat to act as judge” or “I sat down as judge” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**and I ordered the man to be brought in (ULT)****and ordered the guard to bring in the prisoner (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I ordered the soldiers to bring Paul before me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [and I ordered](#)
- [when they came together](#)
- [judgment seat](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [and ordered the guard](#)
- [came here](#)
- [judge’s seat](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> Therefore, [when they came together](#) here, I did not wait, but the next day I sat in the [judgment seat and I ordered](#) the man to be brought in.

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> So when those Jews [came here](#) to Caesarea, I did not delay the trial at all. The day after they arrived, I sat in the [judge’s seat and ordered the guard](#) to bring in the prisoner.

## Acts 25:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of any crime
- accusers

### Translation Words - UST

- was serious
- had done wrong

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> When the [accusers](#) stood up, they brought no charge concerning him [of any crime](#) which I expected.

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> But when the Jewish leaders told me what the prisoner [had done wrong](#), I did not think that anything they said [was serious](#).

## Acts 25:19

### their own religion (ULT)

### Instead, what...were things in their own religion (UST)

Here “religion” means the belief system people have toward life and the supernatural.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- to be alive
- Jesus
- Paul
- who was dead

#### Translation Words - UST

- was alive
- name was Jesus
- Paul
- had died

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Instead, they had certain disputes with him about their own religion and about a certain [Jesus who was dead](#), whom [Paul](#) claims [to be alive](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Instead, what they argued with him about were things in their own religion and about a man whose [name was Jesus](#) who [had died](#), but whom [Paul](#) said [was alive](#).



## Acts 25:20

### and there to be judged concerning these charges (ULT) so I can judge you there about these things (UST)

To “stand trial” is an idiom meaning to speak to a judge so the judge can decide if a person is right or wrong. Alternate translation: “to go to trial about these charges” or “for a judge to decide if these charges against him are true or not” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [to be judged](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [judge you](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> So I am uncertain about how to investigate this matter. I asked if he was willing to go to [Jerusalem](#) and there [to be judged](#) concerning these charges.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> I did not understand these matters, or how to find out the truth. So I asked Paul, ‘Are you willing to go to [Jerusalem](#), so I can [judge you](#) there about these things?’

## Acts 25:21

### Connecting Statement:

Festus finishes explaining Paul's case to King Agrippa.

**But when Paul appealed to be kept in custody while awaiting the decision of the emperor (ULT)  
But Paul asked for Caesar himself to judge his case...to be kept (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But when Paul insisted that he stay under Roman guard until the time when the emperor could decide his case" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**I ordered him to be held in custody (ULT)  
so I ordered him...under guard (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I ordered the soldiers to keep him in custody" or "I told the soldiers to guard him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [when...appealed](#)
- [I ordered](#)
- [But...Paul](#)
- [emperor](#)
- [Caesar](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [asked for Caesar himself](#)
- [so I ordered](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [case](#)
- [Casear](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> [But when Paul appealed](#) to be kept in custody while awaiting the decision of the [emperor, I ordered](#) him to be held in custody until I could send him to [Caesar](#)."

### UST

<sup>21</sup> But [Paul asked for Caesar himself](#) to judge his [case, so I ordered](#) him to be kept under guard until I could send him to [Casear](#)."

## Acts 25:22

**Tomorrow," Festus said, "you will hear him (ULT)  
Festus answered, "I will arrange...you to hear him  
tomorrow (UST)**

The phrase "Festus said" can be moved to the beginning of the sentence. Alternate translation: "Festus said, 'I will arrange for you to listen to Paul tomorrow.'" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#))

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then Agrippa replied to Festus, "I, myself, have also been wanting to hear this man." "Tomorrow," Festus said, "you will hear him."

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Then Agrippa said to Festus, "I myself would like to hear what this man has to say." Festus answered, "I will arrange for you to hear him tomorrow."

## Acts 25:23

### General Information:

Though he ruled over only a few territories, Agrippa was the current reigning king in Palestine. Bernice was his sister. See how you translated these names in [Acts 25:13](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Festus again gives information about Paul's case to King Agrippa.

**with much ceremony (ULT)**  
**were honoring them...with them (UST)**

"with a great ceremony to honor them"

**the hall (ULT)**  
**the...hall of judgment (UST)**

This was a large room where people gathered for ceremonies, trials, and other events.

**Paul was brought in (ULT)**  
**should bring Paul in (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the soldiers brought Paul to appear before them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [spoke the command](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [the military officers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commanded that the guards](#)
- [Paul in](#)
- [Some Roman commanders](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So on the next day, Agrippa and Bernice came with much ceremony, and entered into the hall with both [the military officers](#) and with men who were prominent in the city. When Festus [spoke the command](#), [Paul](#) was brought in.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> The next day Agrippa and Bernice entered the hall of judgment, and all the other people were honoring them. [Some Roman commanders](#) and important men in Caesarea came with them. Then Festus [commanded that the guards](#) should bring [Paul in](#).

## Acts 25:24

**all the multitude of the Jews (ULT)**  
**you see this man! Many leaders...of the Jews (UST)**

The word “all” is an exaggeration used to emphasize that a great number of Jews wanted Paul to die. Alternate translation: “a great number of the Jews” or “many of the Jewish leaders” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**shouting that (ULT)**  
**not...let (UST)**

“they spoke very strongly to me”

**he should not live any longer (ULT)**  
**not...to...let...him live any longer (UST)**

This statement is made in the negative to emphasize the positive equivalent. Alternate translation: “he should die immediately” (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- live
- Jews
- Jerusalem
- petitioned
- shouting that
- King

### Translation Words - UST

- to...live
- Jews
- Jerusalem
- asked
- not...let
- King

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then Festus said, “[King](#) Agrippa, and all you men who are here with us, you see this man, concerning whom all the multitude of the [Jews petitioned](#) me both in [Jerusalem](#) and here also, [shouting that](#) he should not [live](#) any longer.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> After Paul entered, Festus said, “[King](#) Agrippa and all the rest of you who are here, you see this man! Many leaders of the [Jews](#), both in [Jerusalem](#) and here, [asked](#) me not to [let](#) him [live](#) any longer.

## Acts 25:25

### General Information:

Here the first “you” is plural; the second “you” is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**But...himself appealed to the emperor (ULT)**

**But...that...Even so, he has asked Caesar to judge his case (UST)**

“because he said that he wanted the emperor to judge him”

**to the emperor (ULT)**

**to judge his case (UST)**

The emperor was the ruler of the Roman empire. He ruled over many countries and provinces.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [appealed](#)
- [emperor](#)
- [of death](#)
- [to send him](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to deserve](#)
- [Even so, he has asked Caesar](#)
- [to judge his case](#)
- [death](#)
- [to send...to Rome](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But I learned that he had done nothing [worthy of death](#); but because he himself [appealed](#) to the [emperor](#), I decided [to send him](#).

### UST

<sup>25</sup> But I found nothing that he had done [to deserve death](#). [Even so, he has asked Caesar to judge his case](#), so I have decided [to send](#) him [to Rome](#).

## Acts 25:26

**I have brought him before you, and especially before you, King Agrippa (ULT)**

**I have brought him here to speak to you all, and especially to you, King Agrippa (UST)**

"I have brought Paul to all of you, but especially to you, King Agrippa."

**so that...anything...I might have...to write (ULT)**

**I have done this so that you may question him...I should write...Then I may know what to write to (UST)**

"so that I will have something else to write" or "so that I will know what I should write"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the emperor](#)
- [King](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [emperor](#)
- [King](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But concerning him, I do not have anything definite to write to [the emperor](#). For this reason, I have brought him before you, and especially before you, [King](#) Agrippa, so that after this examination happens, I might have something to write.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> But I do not know what exactly I should write to the [emperor](#) about him. That is why I have brought him here to speak to you all, and especially to you, [King](#) Agrippa! I have done this so that you may question him. Then I may know what to write to the emperor.

**Acts 25:27**

**unreasonable...it seems...to me to send a prisoner  
and...not...to...state (ULT)  
that it would be unreasonable...I think...to send a  
prisoner to the emperor in Rome without...the...telling  
exactly what were...wrong things people say that he  
has done (UST)**

The negative words “unreasonable” and “to not” can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “it seems reasonable to me that if I send a prisoner then I should also state” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**the charges against him (ULT)  
telling exactly what were...the...wrong things people  
say that he has done (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) the accusations that the Jewish leaders have brought against him or 2) the charges under Roman law that apply to Paul's case.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [a prisoner](#)
- [to send](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [a prisoner to the emperor in Rome](#)
- [to send](#)

**ULT**

<sup>27</sup> For it seems unreasonable to me [to send a prisoner](#) and to not state the charges against him.”

**UST**

<sup>27</sup> I think that it would be unreasonable [to send a prisoner to the emperor in Rome](#) without telling exactly what were the wrong things people say that he has done.”



## Acts 26

### Acts 26 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This is the third account of Paul's conversion in the book of Acts. Because this is such an important event in the early church, there are three accounts of Paul's conversion. (See: [Acts 9](#) and [Acts 22](#))

Paul told the King Agrippa why he had done what he had done and that the governor should not punish him for that.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

**Acts 26:1****Connecting Statement:**

Festus has brought Paul before King Agrippa. In verse 2, Paul gives his defense to King Agrippa.

**Agrippa (ULT)****Agrippa (UST)**

Agrippa was the current reigning king in Palestine, though he ruled over only a few territories. See how you translated this name in [Acts 25:13](#).

**stretched out his hand (ULT)****stretched out his hand...to (UST)**

“held out his hand” or “gestured with his hand”

**and made his defense (ULT)****to show that he was about...speak. He said (UST)**

The abstract noun “defense” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “began to defend himself against those who were accusing him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Paul](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [hand](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Paul](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [his hand](#)

**ULT**

<sup>1</sup> So Agrippa said to [Paul](#), “You may speak for yourself.” Then [Paul](#) stretched out his [hand](#) and made his defense.

**UST**

<sup>1</sup> Then Agrippa said to [Paul](#), “We will now allow you to speak on your own behalf.” Then [Paul](#) stretched out [his hand](#) to show that he was about to speak. He said,

**Acts 26:2****I consider myself fortunate (ULT)****I consider myself fortunate that today (UST)**

Paul was happy because he considered his appearance before Agrippa to be an opportunity to speak about the gospel.

**making my defense (ULT)****that I can explain (UST)**

This phrase means to describe one's situation, so that those in court can discuss and make a decision about it. Alternate translation: "to defend myself"

**Concerning all the things of which I am accused by the Jews (ULT)****why the Jewish leaders are wrong when they say I have done evil things (UST)**

The abstract noun "accusations" can be stated as the verb "accuse." Alternate translation: "against all the Jews who are accusing me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**the Jews (ULT)****the Jewish leaders (UST)**

This does not mean all the Jews. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [fortunate](#)
- [the Jews](#)
- [King](#)
- [I am accused](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [fortunate that today](#)
- [the Jewish leaders](#)
- [King](#)
- [why...are wrong when they say I have done evil things](#)

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> "Concerning all the things of which [I am accused](#) by [the Jews](#), [King](#) Agrippa, I consider myself [fortunate](#) that I will be making my defense before you today;

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> "[King](#) Agrippa, I consider myself [fortunate that today](#) that I can explain to you [why the Jewish leaders are wrong when they say I have done evil things](#)."

## Acts 26:3

### their controversies (ULT) the questions (UST)

You can make explicit what kinds of questions this means. Alternate translation: "questions about religious matters" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jewish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [us Jews](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> especially since you are familiar with all the [Jewish](#) customs and also their controversies. So I ask you to hear me patiently.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> I am especially fortunate because you know all about the customs of [us Jews](#) and the questions that we argue about. So I ask you to listen patiently to me."

**Acts 26:4****all the Jews (ULT)****All...fellow Jews...the (UST)**

This is a generalization. Possible meanings are 1) this refers to Jews in general who knew about Paul. Alternate translation: “the Jews” or 2) this refers to Pharisees who knew Paul. Alternate translation: “the Jewish leaders” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

**I...among...nation (ULT)****about how I have conducted my life...They know how I lived in (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) among his own people, not necessarily in the geographical land of Israel or 2) in the land of Israel.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Jews](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [nation](#)
- [know](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [fellow Jews](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [They know how I lived](#)
- [know](#)

**ULT**

<sup>4</sup> Indeed then, the way I have lived from my youth, which from the beginning has been among my [nation](#) and also in [Jerusalem](#), all the [Jews](#) [know](#).

**UST**

<sup>4</sup> “All my [fellow Jews](#) [know](#) about how I have conducted my life from the time I was a child. [They know how I lived](#) in the city where I was born and also later in [Jerusalem](#).

## Acts 26:5

**the strictest party of our religion (ULT)**  
**the...most rigid customs of our religion very carefully (UST)**

“a group within Judaism who live by very strict rules”

### Translation Words - ULT

- I lived
- they can testify
- as a Pharisee
- Knowing

### Translation Words - UST

- I lived just like the other
- since I was very young I obeyed
- Pharisees
- They have known

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [Knowing](#) me from the beginning, [they can testify](#), if they were willing, that [I lived as a Pharisee](#), according to the strictest party of our religion.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [They have known](#) me from my very beginning, and they could tell you, if they wanted to, that [since I was very young I obeyed](#) the most rigid customs of our religion very carefully. [I lived just like the other Pharisees](#).

## Acts 26:6

### General Information:

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people who were listening to Paul. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### Now (ULT)

### Today I am (UST)

This word marks a shift from Paul discussing his past to talking about himself in the present.

### I stand here being judged (ULT) on trial (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I am here, where they are putting me on trial” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### because of my certain hope in the promise that was made to our fathers by God (ULT) because I am confidently expecting that God will do what he promised to our ancestors (UST)

This speaks about a promise as if it were something a person could look for and see. Alternate translation: “I am waiting expectantly for God to do what he promised our forefathers he would do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [being judged](#)
- [promise](#)
- [my certain hope](#)
- [fathers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [trial](#)
- [he promised](#)
- [I am confidently expecting](#)
- [ancestors](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now I stand here [being judged](#) because of [my certain hope](#) in the [promise](#) that was made to our [fathers](#) by [God](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Today I am on [trial](#) because [I am confidently expecting](#) that [God](#) will do what [he promised](#) to our [ancestors](#).

**Acts 26:7**

**For this is the promise that our twelve tribes...sought to receive (ULT)**

**Our twelve Jewish tribes...to do for us what he promised...I confidently expect that God will do what he promised...are also confidently waiting for God...and they also believe that! But it is (UST)**

The phrase "our twelve tribes" stands for the people in those tribes. Alternate translation: "This is also what our fellow Jews in the twelve tribes were waiting for" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**For this is the promise that...sought to receive (ULT)  
to do for us...I confidently expect that God will do what he promised...are also confidently waiting for God...and they also believe that! But it is (UST)**

This speaks about a promise as if it were an object that can be received. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**as they...worshiped God night and day (ULT)  
and worship him, day and night (UST)**

The extremes "night" and "day" mean they "worshiped God continually." (See: [Merism](#))

**by the Jews (ULT)  
that...they...say I have done wrong (UST)**

This does not mean all the Jews. Alternate translation: "that the leaders of the Jews" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [the Jews](#)
- [sought](#)
- [certain hope](#)
- [King Agrippa](#)
- [that I am being accused](#)
- [day](#)
- [twelve tribes](#)
- [as they...worshiped God](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [they](#)
- [are also confidently waiting for God](#)
- [what I expect God to do](#)
- [Honored king](#)
- [that...say I have done wrong](#)
- [day](#)
- [twelve Jewish tribes](#)
- [and worship him](#)

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> For this is the promise that our [twelve tribes sought](#) to receive [as they earnestly worshiped God](#) night and [day](#). It is because of this [certain hope that I am being accused](#) by [the Jews, King Agrippa](#).

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> Our [twelve Jewish tribes are also confidently waiting for God](#) to do for us what he promised, as they honor him [and worship him, day](#) and night. [Honored king](#), I confidently expect that God will do what he promised, and they also believe that! But it is for [what I expect God to do](#) that [they say I have done wrong](#).



**Acts 26:8**

**Why should you considered it unbelievable that God raises the dead (ULT)**

**Why would any of you think that God could not raise the dead (UST)**

Paul uses a question to challenge the Jews present. They believe God can raise the dead but do not think God brought Jesus back to life. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of you think it is unbelievable that God raises the dead." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**raises the dead (ULT)**

**raise the dead (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "makes dead people come alive again"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [God](#)
- [should...considered it](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [raises](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [God](#)
- [think that](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [raise](#)

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> Why should you [considered it](#) unbelievable that [God raises the dead](#)?

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> Why would any of you [think that God](#) could not [raise the dead](#)?

**Acts 26:9****Now indeed (ULT)****too, was sure that I should (UST)**

Paul uses this phrase to mark another shift in his defense. He is now beginning to describe how he formerly persecuted Jesus' people.

**the name of Jesus...against (ULT)****There was a time in the past when...to...from believing in Jesus...stop people (UST)**

The word "name" here stands for the teaching about the person.  
Alternate translation: "to stop people from teaching about Jesus"  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [of Jesus of Nazareth](#)
- [name](#)
- [of Nazareth](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus from Nazareth town](#)
- [from believing in](#)
- [from Nazareth town](#)

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> Now indeed, I myself thought that I should do many things against the [name of Jesus of Nazareth](#).

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> There was a time in the past when I, too, was sure that I should do everything that I could to stop people [from believing in Jesus from Nazareth town](#).

**Acts 26:10**

**when...were being put to death...I...cast my vote  
against them...they (ULT)**

**And when their people killed believers...And when their  
people killed believers...I voted in favor of that (UST)**

The phrase “were killed” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I voted in agreement with the other Jewish leaders to condemn believers to die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [saints](#)
- [authority](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [and having received](#)
- [prison](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [believers](#)
- [chief priests there had given me power](#)
- [chief priests there had given me power](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [chief priests there had given me power](#)
- [prison, as](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> I did these things in [Jerusalem](#). I even locked up many of the [saints](#) in [prison](#), [and having received](#) the [authority](#) from the [chief priests](#), I also cast my vote against them when they were being put to death.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> So that is what I did when I lived in [Jerusalem](#). I shut up many of the [believers](#) in [prison, as](#) the [chief priests there had given me power](#) to do. And when their people killed believers, I voted in favor of that.

## Acts 26:11

### Often punishing them (ULT)

### I punished those Jewish people...where I could find them (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Paul punished some believers many times or 2) Paul punished many different believers.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [to blaspheme](#)
- [that I persecuted them](#)
- [foreign cities](#)
- [punishing](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [synagogue](#)
- [to make them insult God](#)
- [against them](#)
- [foreign cities to find them so I could do everything in my power](#)
- [I punished those Jewish people...where I could find](#)

#### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Often [punishing](#) them in all the [synagogues](#), I tried to force them [to blaspheme](#). I was so very enraged against them [that I persecuted them](#) even as far as to [foreign cities](#).

#### UST

<sup>11</sup> [I punished those Jewish people](#) in every [synagogue where I could find](#) them. I would force them, with all my anger [against them, to make them insult God](#) and curse his name. I even went off to [foreign cities to find them so I could do everything in my power](#) to stop them.

## Acts 26:12

### Connecting Statement:

While talking to King Agrippa, Paul tells about when the Lord spoke with him.

### While I was doing this (ULT) in...that is where (UST)

Paul uses this phrase to mark another shift in his defense. He is now telling about when he saw Jesus and became his disciple.

### While I was doing this (ULT) in...that is where (UST)

This word is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time. In this case, Paul went to Damascus during the time when he persecuted Christians.

### with...authority and orders (ULT) gave me power...arrest...and (UST)

Paul had written letters from the Jewish leaders, granting him authority to persecute the Jewish believers.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Damascus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gave me power](#)
- [The chief priests](#)
- [Damascus](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> While I was doing this, I went to [Damascus](#) with the [authority](#) and orders from the [chief priests](#);

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> "The [chief priests](#) gave me power to arrest believers in [Damascus](#), and that is where I went. But while I was on my way,

## Acts 26:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- from heaven
- a light
- King
- at midday

### Translation Words - UST

- in the sky
- a bright light
- O King
- at about noon

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> and on the way there, [at midday](#), [King](#), I saw [a light from heaven](#) that was brighter than the sun and it shone around both me and the men who were traveling with me.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [at about noon](#), [O King](#), I saw on the road [a bright light in the sky](#). It was even brighter than the sun! It shone all around me, and also around those who were traveling with me.

**Acts 26:14****I heard a voice speaking to me (ULT)****Then I heard the voice of someone speaking to me (UST)**

Here “voice” stands for the person speaking. Alternate translation: “I heard someone speaking to me who said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**me...Saul, Saul, why do you persecute (ULT)****me...He said, ‘Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting (UST)**

This is a rhetorical question. The speaker is alerting Saul to what Saul is doing to him, and implying that Saul should not do that. Alternate translation: “Saul, Saul, you are persecuting me.” or “Saul, Saul, stop persecuting me.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**It is hard for you to kick against a goad (ULT)****It is hard for you to kick against the goads (UST)**

For Paul to resist Jesus and to persecute believers is spoken of as if he were an ox kicking at the sharp stick that a person uses to prod (or “goad”) the animal. It means that Paul is only harming himself. Alternate translation: “You will only harm yourself like an ox kicking a goad” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**ULT**

<sup>14</sup> When we all fell to the ground, I heard [a voice](#) speaking to me in the [Hebrew](#) language, ‘[Saul, Saul](#), why [do you persecute](#) me? [It is hard](#) for you to kick against a goad.’

**UST**

<sup>14</sup> We all fell to the ground. Then I heard [the voice](#) of someone speaking to me in the [Hebrew](#) language. [He said](#), ‘[Saul, Saul](#), why [are you persecuting](#) me? [It is hard](#) for you to kick against the goads.’

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Hebrew](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [a voice](#)
- [do you persecute](#)
- [It is hard](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [Hebrew](#)
- [He said](#), ‘[Saul](#)
- [Saul](#)
- [the voice](#)
- [are you persecuting](#)
- [It is hard](#)

## Acts 26:15

### Connecting Statement:

Paul continues giving his defense to King Agrippa. In these verses he continues quoting his conversation with the Lord.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [you, Lord](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [are persecuting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus! I am](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [are fighting against](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Then I said, 'Who are [you, Lord?](#)' [The Lord](#) replied, 'I am [Jesus](#) whom you [are persecuting](#).'

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Then I said, 'Who are you, [Lord?](#)' And [the Lord](#) said, 'I am [Jesus! I am](#) the one you [are fighting against](#).'



**Acts 26:16**

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a witness
- to appoint
- get up
- as a servant

**Translation Words - UST**

- a witness
- in order to make
- get up
- a servant

**ULT**

<sup>16</sup> Now [get up](#) and stand on your feet; because for this purpose I appeared to you, [to appoint](#) you [as a servant](#) and [a witness](#) concerning both the things that you have seen about me and the things that I will show to you;

**UST**

<sup>16</sup> But [get up](#) and stand on your feet! I have appeared to you [in order to make](#) you into [a servant](#) and [a witness](#) both of what you have seen of what you know about me now and what I will show you later.

## Acts 26:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Gentiles
- people
- am sending
- and I will rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- non-Jews
- people
- will send
- I will protect

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> [and I will rescue](#) you from the [people](#) and from the [Gentiles](#) to whom I [am sending](#) you,

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> [I will protect](#) you from the [people](#) and the [non-Jews](#) to whom I [will send](#) you,

**Acts 26:18****to open their eyes (ULT)****in order to open their eyes (UST)**

Helping people to understand the truth is spoken of as if a person were literally helping someone to open his eyes. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they may turn from darkness to light (ULT)****to turn them...from darkness to light (UST)**

Helping someone to stop doing what is evil and to start trusting and obeying God is spoken of as if the person is literally leading someone out of a dark place into a place of light. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they may turn from...from the power of Satan (ULT)****to turn them...from...from the power of the enemy (UST)**

Helping someone to stop obeying Satan and to start obeying God is spoken of as if a person were literally turning a person and taking them from the place where Satan rules and leading him to the place where God rules. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**that they may receive forgiveness of sins (ULT)****God will forgive their sins...give to them...that all my people will have forever (UST)**

The abstract noun "forgiveness" can be stated as the verb "forgive." Alternate translation: "God may forgive their sins" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**an inheritance (ULT)****people (UST)**

The blessings that Jesus gives to those who believe in him are spoken of as if they were an inheritance that children receive from their father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**those who have been sanctified by faith that is in me (ULT)****the things...the...who belong to me by faith (UST)**

Jesus choosing some people to belong to him is spoken of as if he literally set them apart from other people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to...by faith that is...me (ULT)****to...the...me by faith (UST)**

"because they believe in me." Here Paul finishes quoting the Lord.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of sins
- an inheritance
- God
- forgiveness

**ULT**

<sup>18</sup> to open their eyes that [they may turn](#) from [darkness](#) to [light](#), and from the [power of Satan](#) to [God](#), that they [may receive forgiveness of sins](#) and [an inheritance](#) among [those who have been sanctified by faith](#) that is in me.'

**UST**

<sup>18</sup> in order to open their eyes, [to turn them](#) from [darkness](#) to [light](#), and from the [power](#) of the [enemy](#) to [God](#). In this way [God will forgive their sins](#) and [give to](#) them the things that all my people will have forever, the [people who belong](#) to me [by faith](#).

- power
- of Satan
- those who have been sanctified
- by faith
- may receive
- darkness
- light
- they may turn

### Translation Words - UST

- their sins
- people
- God
- God will forgive
- power
- enemy
- who belong
- by faith
- give to
- darkness
- light
- to turn them

## Acts 26:19

### Therefore (ULT)

### So (UST)

“Because what I have just said is true.” Paul had just explained what the Lord had commanded him in his vision.

### I was not (ULT)

### I did what...to do (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “I obeyed” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### to the heavenly vision (ULT)

### I did what...God told me in a vision...to do (UST)

This refers to what the person in the vision told Paul. Alternate translation: “what the person from heaven told me in the vision” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavenly](#)
- [disobedient](#)
- [King](#)
- [vision](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God told me](#)
- [I did what...to do](#)
- [King](#)
- [in a vision](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Therefore, [King](#) Agrippa, I was not [disobedient](#) to the [heavenly vision](#);

### UST

<sup>19</sup> “So, [King](#) Agrippa, [I did what God told me in a vision to do](#).

## Acts 26:20

### turn to God (ULT)

### ask God for help (UST)

To start trusting God is spoken of as if a person turns to start walking toward God. Alternate translation: “trust in God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### doing deeds worthy of repentance (ULT)

### I told them also that they should do those things that show that they have stopped sinning (UST)

The abstract noun “repentance” can be stated as the verb “repented.” Alternate translation: “and start doing good deeds to show they truly have repented” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [God](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [deeds](#)
- [that they should repent](#)
- [of repentance](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [turn](#)
- [I declared](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [show that they have stopped sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [non-Jews there also](#)
- [those things that](#)
- [that they should stop sinning](#)
- [show that they have stopped sinning](#)
- [in Damascus](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [ask](#)
- [I told them](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> but, to those in [Damascus](#) first, and then [in Jerusalem](#), and in all the region [of Judea](#), and also to the [Gentiles](#), [I declared that they should repent](#) and [turn to God](#), doing [deeds worthy of repentance](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> First, I spoke to the Jews [in Damascus](#) and those [in Jerusalem](#), and in all the countryside [of Judea](#), and to the [non-Jews there also](#). [I told them that they should stop sinning](#) and [ask God](#) for help. I told them also that they should do [those things that show that they have stopped sinning](#).

## Acts 26:21

### the Jews (ULT)

### some Jews (UST)

This does not mean all of the Jews. Alternate translation: “some Jews” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jews](#)
- [temple](#)
- [arrested](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [some Jews](#)
- [temple courtyard](#)
- [seized](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> For this cause [the Jews arrested](#) me in the [temple](#) and tried to kill me.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> It is because I preached this message that [some Jews seized](#) me when I was in the [temple courtyard](#) and tried to kill me.

## Acts 26:22

### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes giving his defense to King Agrippa.

**to both small and great...nothing (ULT)**  
**so I have continued...both ordinary people and important people (UST)**

Here “common people” and “great ones” are used together to mean “all people.” Alternate translation: “to all people, whether common or great, about nothing” (See: [Merism](#))

**nothing other than...what (ULT)**  
**so I have continued...exactly what (UST)**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “about the exact thing that”

**both...what...the prophets (ULT)**  
**both...exactly what the prophets (UST)**

Paul is referring to the collective writings of the Old Testament prophets.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [God](#)
- [and testified](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prophets](#)
- [God](#)
- [to tell](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [very day](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Therefore having received help which is from [God](#) until this [day](#), I have stood [and testified](#) to both small and great, saying nothing other than what both the [prophets](#) and [Moses](#) said would happen—

### UST

<sup>22</sup> However, [God](#) has been helping me, so I have continued to proclaim these things to this [very day](#). I have continued [to tell](#) both ordinary people and important people exactly what the [prophets](#) and [Moses](#) said would happen.



## Acts 26:23

**that the Christ would suffer (ULT)**

**They said that the Messiah would suffer and die (UST)**

You can make explicit that Christ must also die. Alternate translation: "that Christ must suffer and die" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**to rise from (ULT)**

**to rise from (UST)**

to come back to life

**the dead (ULT)**

**the dead (UST)**

The phrase "the dead" refers to the spirits of people who have died. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

**he would proclaim light (ULT)**

**They also said that he would proclaim (UST)**

"he would proclaim the message about the light." To tell people about how God saves people is spoken of as if a person were speaking about the light. Alternate translation: "he would proclaim the message about how God saves people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to rise from](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [both to our own people](#)
- [proclaim](#)
- [light](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [would suffer](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to rise](#)
- [non-Jewish people, that God is truly able to save them](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [his own people](#)
- [proclaim](#)
- [They also said that he would](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [would suffer and die](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> that the [Christ would suffer](#) and being the first [to rise from the dead](#), he would [proclaim light both to our own people](#) and to the [Gentiles](#)."

### UST

<sup>23</sup> They said that the [Messiah would suffer and die](#), that he would be the first [to rise](#) from [the dead](#). [They also said that he would proclaim](#), both to [his own people](#) and to the [non-Jewish people, that God is truly able to save them](#)."

## Acts 26:24

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and King Agrippa continue to talk together.

**you are insane (ULT)**

**crazy (UST)**

“you are speaking nonsense” or “you are crazy”

**your great learning makes you insane (ULT)**

**in...you are...You have studied too much...has made you insane (UST)**

“you have learned so much that you are now crazy”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)
- [with a...voice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul](#)
- [a...voice](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> After Paul said these things in his defense, Festus said [with a](#) loud [voice](#), “[Paul](#), you are insane; your great learning makes you insane.”

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Before Paul could say anything further, Festus shouted out in a loud [voice](#): “[Paul](#), you are crazy! You have studied too much, and it has made you insane!”

## Acts 26:25

### I am not insane...but (ULT)

### I am not insane...On the contrary (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “I am sane...and” or “I am able to think well...and” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### most excellent Festus (ULT)

### Your Excellency Festus (UST)

“Festus, who deserves highest honors”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [true](#)
- [But Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [true](#)
- [Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [But Paul](#) said, “I am not insane, most excellent Festus, but I am speaking [true](#) and sane words.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> But [Paul](#) answered, “Your Excellency Festus, I am not insane! On the contrary, what I am saying is [true](#) and quite sane!

**Acts 26:26****For...the king...to him...from him (ULT)****For...King Agrippa...the things that...to...him about them (UST)**

Paul is still speaking to King Agrippa, but he is referring to him in the third person. Alternate translation: "For you...to you...from you" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

**so I...speak boldly (ULT)****I have been talking...I can speak freely (UST)**

Paul was not afraid to speak to the king about Christ. Alternate translation: "I speak boldly"

**I am persuaded that (ULT)****I am sure...none of...in (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am sure" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**are hidden...none of these things...from him (ULT)****could have escaped his notice...him about them. I am sure...none of these things...in (UST)**

This can be stated in active and positive form. Alternate translation: "that he is aware of this" or "that you are aware of this" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Litotes](#))

**not...this was...done in a corner (ULT)****I am sure...none of...in...I am sure...that...none of...happened...in...secret (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "has not happened in a corner" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**in a corner (ULT)****I am sure...none of...in...secret (UST)**

This means doing something in secret as if a person went and did something in the corner of a room where no one can see him. Alternate translation: "in a dark place" or "in secret" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [boldly](#)
- [king](#)
- [knows](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [I can speak freely](#)
- [King Agrippa](#)
- [knows](#)

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> For the [king knows](#) about these things, so I also speak [boldly](#) to him, for I am persuaded that none of these things are hidden from him; for this was not done in a corner.

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> For [King Agrippa knows](#) the things that I have been talking about, and [I can speak freely](#) to him about them. I am sure that none of these things could have escaped his notice, because none of these things happened in secret."

## Acts 26:27

### Do you believe the prophets, King Agrippa (ULT) King Agrippa, do you believe what the prophets wrote (UST)

Paul asks this question to remind Agrippa that Agrippa already believes what the prophets said about Jesus. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You already believe what the Jewish prophets said, King Agrippa." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [Do you believe](#)
- [you believe](#) (2)
- [King](#)
- [I know](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [prophets wrote](#)
- [do you believe](#)
- [you believe those things](#) (2)
- [King](#)
- [I know](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [Do you believe](#) the [prophets](#), [King](#) Agrippa? [I know](#) that [you believe](#)."

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> "[King](#) Agrippa, [do you believe](#) what the [prophets wrote](#)? [I know](#) that [you believe those things](#)."

**Acts 26:28**

**In a short time would you persuade me to become a Christian (ULT)**

**In just a short time you have almost persuaded me to become a Christian (UST)**

Agrippa asks this question to show Paul that he cannot convince Agrippa so easily without more proof. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you do not think you can convince me so easily to believe in Jesus!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [a Christian](#)
- [Paul](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [a Christian](#)
- [Paul](#)

**ULT**

<sup>28</sup> Then Agrippa said to [Paul](#), "In a short time would you persuade me to become [a Christian](#)?"

**UST**

<sup>28</sup> Then Agrippa answered [Paul](#), "In just a short time you have almost persuaded me to become [a Christian](#)!"

**Acts 26:29****but without these prison chains (ULT)  
except for these chains (UST)**

Here “prison chains” stands for being a prisoner. Alternate translation: “but, of course, I do not want you to be a prisoner like I am” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [prison chains](#)
- [to God](#)
- [But Paul replied](#)
- [just](#)
- [as](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [chains](#)
- [to God](#)
- [Paul replied](#)
- [will...become like me](#)
- [will...become like me](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> [But Paul replied](#), “I pray [to God](#), that somehow, whether in a short time or in a long time, not you only, but also all those who hear me today would become [just as](#) I also am, but without these [prison chains](#).”

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> [Paul replied](#), “Whether it takes a short time or a long time, it does not matter. I pray [to God](#) that you and also all of the others who are listening to me today will also [become like me](#), except for these [chains](#)!”

## Acts 26:30

### General Information:

Bernice was the sister of King Agrippa ([Acts 25:13](#)).

### Connecting Statement:

This ends Paul's time before King Agrippa.

### Then the king stood up, and the governor

"Then King Agrippa stood up, and Governor Festus"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [king](#)
- [stood up](#)
- [governor](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [king stood](#)
- [got up](#)
- [governor](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Then the [king stood up](#), and the [governor](#), and Bernice, and those who were sitting with them;

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Then the [king stood](#). The [governor](#), Bernice, and all the others also [got up](#)



## Acts 26:31

**This man is doing...nothing...worthy of death or of chains (ULT)**

**This man has done...nothing deserving death or his chains (UST)**

The abstract noun "death" can be stated as the verb "die." Here "bonds" stands for being in prison. Alternate translation: "This man does not deserve to die or to be in prison" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [of chains](#)
- [of death](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [nothing deserving death or his chains](#)
- [nothing deserving death or his chains](#)
- [nothing deserving death or his chains](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> when they left, they talked to one another, saying, "This man is doing nothing [worthy of death](#) or [of chains](#)."

### UST

<sup>31</sup> and left the room. After they left, they said to each other, "This man has done [nothing deserving death or his chains](#)."

**Acts 26:32****This man could have been freed**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This man could have gone free" or "I could have freed this man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [he had...appealed](#)
- [to Caesar](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [had...appealed to](#)
- [Caesar](#)

**ULT**

<sup>32</sup> So Agrippa said to Festus, "This man might have been freed if [he had](#) not [appealed to Caesar](#)."

**UST**

<sup>32</sup> Agrippa said to Festus, "If this man had not [appealed to Caesar](#), he could have been released."

## **Acts 27**

### **Acts 27 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Sailing**

People who lived near the sea traveled by boat powered by the wind. During some months of the year, the wind would blow in the wrong direction or so hard that sailing was impossible.

#### **Trust**

Paul trusted God to bring him safely to land. He told the sailors and soldiers to trust that God would also keep them alive. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

#### **Paul breaks bread**

Luke uses almost the same words here to describe Paul taking bread, thanking God, breaking it, and eating it that he used to describe the last supper Jesus ate with his disciples. However, your translation should not make your reader think that Paul was leading a religious celebration here.

## Acts 27:1

### General Information:

Adramyttium was a city possibly located on the west coast of modern-day Turkey. The word “we” includes the author of Acts, Paul, and the others traveling with Paul, but not the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Paul, as a prisoner, begins his journey to Rome.

**when...it was decided (ULT)**

**When...the Governor decided (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When the king and the governor decided” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**should sail...for Italy (ULT)**

**should sail...for Italy (UST)**

Italy is the name of the province Rome was in. See how you translated “Italy” in [Acts 18:2](#).

**they handed over both Paul and some other prisoners to a centurion named Julius of the regiment of Augustus (ULT)**

**he put Paul and some other prisoners into the control of an army captain whose name was Julius. He held the rank of centurion and was part of a large number of soldiers who were under the direct command of the emperor (UST)**

“they put a centurion named Julius, of the Imperial Regiment, in charge of Paul and some other prisoners”

**they handed over both Paul and some other prisoners to a (ULT)**

**he put Paul and some other prisoners...the (UST)**

Possible meanings are that 1) “they” refers to the governor and the king or 2) “they” refers to other Roman officials.

**centurion named Julius (ULT)**

**into the control of an army captain whose name was Julius. He held...rank of centurion and was part of (UST)**

Julius is a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**of the regiment of Augustus (ULT)**

**a large number of soldiers who were under the direct command of the emperor (UST)**

This was the name of the battalion or army from which the centurion came. Some versions translate this as “the Augustan Regiment.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [centurion](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> So when it was decided that we should sail for Italy, [they handed over](#) both [Paul](#) and some other [prisoners](#) to a [centurion named](#) Julius of the regiment of Augustus.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> When the Governor decided that we should sail for Italy, [he put Paul](#) and some other [prisoners into the control of an army captain whose name](#) was Julius. He held the rank of centurion and was part of a large number of soldiers who were under the direct command of the emperor.

- named
- Paul
- prisoners
- they handed over

### Translation Words - UST

- into the control of an army captain
- whose name
- Paul
- prisoners
- he put

## Acts 27:2

**we boarded...a ship...which was about to sail (ULT)**

**We boarded...a ship from...about to sail (UST)**

Here “ship...which was about to sail” stands for the crew that will sail the ship. Alternate translation: “We boarded a ship...which a crew was about to sail” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a ship from Adramyttium (ULT)**

**a ship from...city of Adramyttium in Asia (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) a ship that had come from Adramyttium or 2) a ship that was registered or licensed in Adramyttium.

**which was about to sail (ULT)**

**about to sail (UST)**

“soon going to sail” or “would depart soon”

**So we set sail (ULT)**

**In this way we went to sea (UST)**

“began our journey on the sea”

**Aristarchus (ULT)**

**Aristarchus (UST)**

Aristarchus came from Macedonia but had been working with Paul in Ephesus. See how you translated his name in [Acts 19:29](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the coast of Asia](#)
- [a Macedonian](#)
- [from Thessalonica](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [of Asia](#)
- [in Macedonia](#)
- [from Thessalonica](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then we boarded a ship from Adramyttium, which was about to sail to places along [the coast of Asia](#). So we set sail. Aristarchus, [a Macedonian from Thessalonica](#), was with us.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> We boarded a ship from the city of Adramyttium in Asia. The ship was about to sail to places on the coast [of Asia](#). In this way we went to sea. Aristarchus, [from Thessalonica in Macedonia](#), went with us.

## Acts 27:3

### General Information:

Here the word “we” refers to the writer, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**kindly...Julius treated Paul (ULT)**

**kindly...Julius treated Paul (UST)**

“Julius treated Paul with a friendly concern.” See how you translated “Julius” in [Acts 27:1](#).

**to go to his friends to receive their care (ULT)**

**to go see his friends, who would care for him (UST)**

The abstract noun “care” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “go to his friends so they could care for him” or “go to his friends so they could help him with whatever he needed” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)
- [the city of Sidon](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul](#)
- [Sidon](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The next day, we landed at [the city of Sidon](#), where Julius treated [Paul](#) kindly and allowed him to go to his friends to receive their care.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> The next day we arrived at [Sidon](#). Julius treated [Paul](#) kindly and gave him permission to go see his friends, who would care for him.

## Acts 27:4

**we went to sea and sailed under (ULT)**  
**Then the ship set sail...We went...which was sheltered**  
**from the wind (UST)**

"we started sailing and went"

**and sailed under the lee of Cyprus (ULT)**  
**We went along the coast of Cyprus, which was**  
**sheltered from the wind (UST)**

"the lee of Cyprus" is the side of that island that blocks the strong wind, so sailing vessels are not forced off their course.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lee of Cyprus](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [along the coast of Cyprus](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> From there we went to sea and sailed under the [lee of Cyprus](#), because of the winds that were against us.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then the ship set sail from there. We went [along the coast of Cyprus](#), which was sheltered from the wind, because the wind was against us.



## Acts 27:5

### Pamphylia (ULT)

### Pamphylia (UST)

This was a province in Asia Minor. See how you translated this in [Acts 2:10](#).

**we came to Myra, a city of Lycia (ULT)**  
**arrived at Myra, which is in Lycia. We got off the ship there (UST)**

You can make explicit that they got off of the ship in Myra. Alternate translation: "came to Myra, a city of Lycia, where we got off the ship" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**we came to Myra (ULT)**  
**arrived at Myra (UST)**

Myra is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**a city of Lycia (ULT)**  
**which is in Lycia. We got off the ship there (UST)**

Lycia was a Roman province, located on the southwestern coast of modern-day Turkey. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Cilicia](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [coast of Cilicia](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When we had sailed across the sea past [Cilicia](#) and Pamphylia, we came to Myra, a city of Lycia.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> After that, we crossed over the sea close to the [coast of Cilicia](#) and Pamphylia. The ship arrived at Myra, which is in Lycia. We got off the ship there.

## Acts 27:6

**having found...a ship from Alexandria that was sailing to Italy (ULT)**

**found...a ship...had come from Alexandria and would soon sail to Italy (UST)**

It is implied that a crew would sail the ship to Italy. Alternate translation: "found a ship that a crew had sailed from Alexandria and was about to sail to Italy" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**from Alexandria (ULT)**

**had come from Alexandria (UST)**

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [centurion](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Julius](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> There, having found a ship from Alexandria that was sailing to Italy, the [centurion](#) put us on it.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> In Myra, [Julius](#) found a ship that had come from Alexandria and would soon sail to Italy. So he arranged for us to go aboard that ship, and we left.

**Acts 27:7**

**When...we had sailed slowly...and had finally arrived with difficulty (ULT)**

**but...We sailed slowly...and came...we got there with difficulty (UST)**

You can make explicit that the reason they were sailing slowly and with difficulty was because the wind was blowing against them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**near Cnidus (ULT)**

**near to Cnidus (UST)**

This is an ancient settlement located in modern-day Turkey. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the wind no longer allowed us to go that way (ULT)**

**because the winds were against us. After that, the wind was very strong and did not allow (UST)**

“we could no longer go that way because of the strong wind”

**Cnidus...so we sailed along...of Crete (ULT)**

**Cnidus...the ship to move straight ahead westward...Instead, we sailed along the coast of the Island of Crete (UST)**

“so we sailed along the side of Crete where there was less wind”

**opposite Salmone (ULT)**

**where the wind was not blowing strongly, and we passed near Salmone, a piece of land sticking out into the water (UST)**

This is a coastal city in Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of Crete
- days

**Translation Words - UST**

- Instead, we sailed along the coast of the Island of Crete
- days

**ULT**

<sup>7</sup> When we had sailed slowly for many [days](#) and had finally arrived with difficulty near Cnidus, the wind no longer allowed us to go that way, so we sailed along the sheltered side [of Crete](#), opposite Salmone.

**UST**

<sup>7</sup> We sailed slowly for many [days](#) and came near to Cnidus, but we got there with difficulty, because the winds were against us. After that, the wind was very strong and did not allow the ship to move straight ahead westward. [Instead, we sailed along the coast of the Island of Crete](#), where the wind was not blowing strongly, and we passed near Salmone, a piece of land sticking out into the water.

## Acts 27:8

**with difficulty...we sailed along the coast (ULT)**  
**The wind was still strong...it...So we moved slowly**  
**along the coast of Crete (UST)**

You can make explicit that even though the winds were not as strong as before, they were still strong enough to make sailing difficult.  
 (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Fair Havens (ULT)**

**Fair Havens (UST)**

This was a port near Lasea, located on the south coast of Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**near the city of Lasea (ULT)**  
**a town...near Lasea (UST)**

This is a coastal city in Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- called
- Fair

### Translation Words - UST

- was called
- Fair

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So we sailed along the coast with difficulty, until we came to a certain place [called Fair](#) Havens, which is near the city of Lasea.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> The wind was still strong, and it prevented the ship from moving ahead fast. So we moved slowly along the coast of Crete, and we arrived at a town that [was called Fair](#) Havens, near Lasea.

## Acts 27:9

### **much...time had passed (ULT)**

### **Much...time passed (UST)**

Because of the direction the wind was blowing, the journey from Caesarea to Fair Havens had taken more time than planned.

### **had passed (ULT)**

### **passed (UST)**

The writer includes himself, Paul, and those who were traveling with them, but not the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### **the time of the Jewish fast also had passed, and it had now become dangerous to sail**

This fast took place on the Day of Atonement, which was usually either in the last part of September or the first part of October according to Western calendars. After this time, there was a higher risk of seasonal storms.

### **ULT**

<sup>9</sup> But much [time](#) had passed, and the voyage was already dangerous because even the [Jewish fast](#) had [already](#) passed. [So Paul warned them,](#)

### **UST**

<sup>9</sup> Much [time](#) passed, and it had now become dangerous to sail, because the [Jewish fasting period had already passed](#) and the sea would become very stormy. [So Paul said to the men on the ship,](#)

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [So...warned them](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [time](#)
- [already](#) (2)
- [Jewish fast](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [Jewish fasting period had already passed](#)
- [So Paul said to the men on the ship](#)
- [time](#)
- [Jewish fasting period had already passed](#) (2)
- [Jewish fasting period had already passed](#)

## Acts 27:10

**I see that...with injury and much loss...the voyage is about to be (ULT)**

**I see that...with much injury and loss...if we sail now, it will be disastrous for us (UST)**

"if we travel now, we will suffer much injury and loss"

**loss, not only of the cargo and the ship, but also of our lives**

Here "loss" means destruction when referring to things and death when referring to people.

**not only of the cargo and the ship**

Cargo is something that a person transports from one place to another by boat. Alternate translation: "not only the ship and the goods on the ship"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...lives

### Translation Words - UST

- lives

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> saying to them, "Men, I see that the voyage is about to be with injury and much loss, not only of the cargo and the ship, but also of our [lives](#)."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> and said to them, "Men, I see that if we sail now, it will be disastrous for us with much injury and loss, not only of the cargo and the ship, but also of our [lives](#)."

## Acts 27:11

**that were spoken by Paul (ULT)**

**Paul...what the...they advised (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that Paul said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [centurion](#)
- [Paul](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Roman captain](#)
- [Paul](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But the [centurion](#) paid more attention to the master and to the owner of the ship than to those things that were spoken by [Paul](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> But the [Roman captain](#) did not believe [Paul](#). Instead, he believed what the pilot and the owner of the ship said, and he decided to do what they advised.

**Acts 27:12**

**not adequate...the harbor was...to spend the winter in (ULT)**

**not a good place...The harbor was...to remain during the winter (UST)**

You can make explicit why it was not easy to stay in the harbor. Alternate translation: "harbor did not sufficiently protect docked ships during winter storms" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**harbor (ULT)**

**harbor (UST)**

a place near land that is usually safe for ships

**the city of Phoenix (ULT)**

**Phoenix (UST)**

Phoenix is a city port on the south coast of Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**to spend the winter there (ULT)**

**and spend the winter there (UST)**

This speaks about the season of winter as if it were a commodity that someone can spend. Alternate translation: "to stay there for the cold season" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**facing both southwest and northwest**

Here "faces northwest and southwest" means the opening of the harbor was toward those directions. Alternate translation: "it opened to the northwest and southwest"

**the southwest and...the northwest (ULT)**

**southwest and...northwest (UST)**

These directions are based on the rising and setting sun. Northeast is a little to the left of the rising sun. Southeast is a little to the right of the rising sun. Some versions say "northeast and southeast."

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in Crete](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Crete](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Because the harbor was not adequate to spend the winter in, the majority of the sailors made a decision to sail from there, if somehow they might be able to reach the city of Phoenix, to spend the winter there—a harbor [in Crete](#), facing toward the southwest and toward the northwest.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> The harbor was not a good place to remain during the winter, so most of the sailors advised going to sea from there. They hoped that they could reach Phoenix and spend the winter there. Phoenix is a town in [Crete](#). On it blow winds both from the southwest and northwest.



**Acts 27:13****So they weighed anchor (ULT)  
they lifted the anchor up out of the sea (UST)**

Here “weighed” means to pull out of the water. An anchor is a heavy object attached to a rope that is secured to the boat. The anchor is tossed into the water and sinks to the bottom of the sea keeping the ship from drifting about.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [Crete](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [along the coastline of the island of Crete](#)

**ULT**

<sup>13</sup> When a south wind began to blow gently, the sailors thought that they had what they needed. So they weighed anchor and sailed close to the shore along [Crete](#).

**UST**

<sup>13</sup> Because there was only a gentle wind blowing from the south, the ship’s crew thought that they could travel like they wanted to. So they lifted the anchor up out of the sea, and the ship sailed close [along the coastline of the island of Crete](#).

## Acts 27:14

### Connecting Statement:

Paul and those traveling on the boat encounter a fierce storm.

**not long after (ULT)**

**After a short time (UST)**

“after a little while”

**a wind of hurricane force (ULT)**

**a stormy wind...from the north side and hit the ship (UST)**

“a very strong, dangerous wind”

**was called the northeaster (ULT)**

**is called Euroclydon, “the Northeast Wind (UST)**

“called ‘a strong wind from the northeast.’” The word for “the northeaster” in the original language is “Euroclydon.” You can transliterate this word for your language. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

**blew down from the island (ULT)**

**blew down from the shore. It blew across the island (UST)**

“came in from the island of Crete, and it blew strongly against our ship”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [was called](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [is called](#)

#### ULT

**14** But not long after, a wind of hurricane force, which [was called](#) the northeaster, blew down from the island.

#### UST

**14** After a short time, however, a stormy wind blew down from the shore. It blew across the island from the north side and hit the ship. That wind [is called](#) Euroclydon, “the Northeast Wind.”

## Acts 27:15

**When the ship was caught by the storm and could no longer head into the wind (ULT)**

**It blew strongly against the front of the ship, and we could not sail against it. So the sailors let the wind move the ship in the direction that the wind was blowing (UST)**

“When the wind blew so strongly against the front of the ship that we could not sail against it”

**we gave way to the storm and were driven along by the wind (ULT)**

**in the direction that the wind was blowing (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “we stopped trying to sail forward, and we let the wind push us whichever way it blew” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> When the ship was caught by the storm and could no longer head into the wind, we gave way to the storm and were driven along by the wind.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> It blew strongly against the front of the ship, and we could not sail against it. So the sailors let the wind move the ship in the direction that the wind was blowing.

**Acts 27:16**

**of a...island...we sailed along the lee...certain (ULT)**  
**a small island...sailed along the coast line of (UST)**

"We sailed on the side of the island where the wind was not so strong"

**of a...island...we sailed along the lee...certain (ULT)**  
**a small island...sailed along the coast line of (UST)**

This island was located on the south coast of Crete. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**lifeboat (ULT)**  
**ship (UST)**

This is a smaller boat that is sometimes pulled behind the ship, and sometimes it was brought onto the ship and tied down. The smaller boat was used for various reasons, including escaping from a sinking ship.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [called](#)
- [we sailed along the lee](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [named](#)
- [sailed along the coast line of](#)

**ULT**

<sup>16</sup> So [we sailed along the lee](#) of a certain island [called](#) Cauda, and with difficulty were able to gain control of the lifeboat.

**UST**

<sup>16</sup> The ship then [sailed along the coast line of](#) a small island [named](#) Cauda. We were able, with difficulty, to fasten the lifeboat securely to the ship.

## Acts 27:17

**When they had hoisted the lifeboat up (ULT)**

**When they had hoisted the lifeboat up (UST)**

“they had lifted up the lifeboat” or “they had pulled the lifeboat aboard the ship”

**they used its ropes to bind the hull of the ship (ULT)**

**they used its ropes to bind the hull of the ship (UST)**

The “hull” is the body of the ship. They tied ropes around it so that the ship would not come apart during the storm.

**the sandbars of Syrtis (ULT)**

**run aground on the sandbars of Syrtis (UST)**

Sandbars are very shallow areas in the sea where ships can get stuck in the sand. Syrtis is located on the coast of Libya, northern Africa. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the hull of the ship...so they lowered...sea anchor (ULT)**

**the...so they lowered the sea anchor (UST)**

They put the ship's anchor in the water in order to slow down where the wind would blow them.

**sea anchor (ULT)**

**so they lowered the sea anchor (UST)**

An anchor is a heavy object attached to a rope that is secured to the boat. The anchor is tossed into the water and sinks to the bottom of the sea keeping the ship from drifting about. See how you translated this in [Acts 27:13](#).

**were driven along (ULT)**

**and the wind drove them along (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “had to go in whatever direction the wind blew us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [They were afraid that](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [And they were afraid that they might](#)

**ULT**

<sup>17</sup> When they had hoisted the lifeboat up, they used its ropes to bind the hull of the ship. [They were afraid that](#) they might run aground on the sandbars of Syrtis, so they lowered the sea anchor and were driven along.

**UST**

<sup>17</sup> When they had hoisted the lifeboat up, they used its ropes to bind the hull of the ship. [And they were afraid that they might](#) run aground on the sandbars of Syrtis, so they lowered the sea anchor and the wind drove them along.

## Acts 27:18

**so violently...were...battered by the storm that (ULT)  
roughly...The wind and the waves continued to toss  
(UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The wind blew us roughly back and forth that all of us were badly battered and bruised by the storm" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they began throwing the cargo overboard (ULT)  
the sailors began to throw overboard the things that  
the ship was carrying (UST)**

"they" is the sailors. This is done to lighten the weight of the ship in an effort to prevent the ship from sinking.

**throwing the cargo overboard (ULT)  
the sailors began to throw overboard the things that the ship was carrying (UST)**

Cargo is something that a person transports from one place to another by boat. See how you translated this in [Acts 27:10](#). Alternate translation: "goods on the ship"

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> But we were so violently battered by the storm that the next day they began throwing the cargo overboard.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> The wind and the waves continued to toss the ship about roughly. So on the next day the sailors began to throw overboard the things that the ship was carrying.

## Acts 27:19

**the sailors threw overboard the equipment of the ship with their own hands (ULT)**

**the storm, the sailors threw overboard most of the sails, ropes...poles, in order to make the ship lighter.**

**They did this with their own hands (UST)**

Here “equipment” refers to the sailors’ equipment needed to sail the ship: tackle, hoists, beams of wood, block and tackle, ropes, lines, sails, and the like. This indicates how desperate the situation was.

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> On the third day the sailors threw overboard the equipment of the ship with their own hands.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> On the third day of the storm, the sailors threw overboard most of the sails, ropes, and poles, in order to make the ship lighter. They did this with their own hands.

**Acts 27:20****When the sun and stars did not shine on us for many days**

They could not see the sun and stars because of the dark storm clouds. Sailors needed to see the sun and stars in order to know where they were and what direction they were headed.

**the...storm...great...remained upon us (ULT)**  
**and the sky was full of dark clouds day and night...and the sky was full of dark clouds day and night...We had lost (UST)**

“the terrible storm still blew us roughly back and forth”

**all hope that we would be saved was abandoned (ULT)**  
**We had lost...all hope that we would survive (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “everyone stopped hoping we would survive” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [would be saved](#)
- [hope](#)
- [days](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [would survive](#)
- [hope](#)
- [days](#)

**ULT**

<sup>20</sup> When neither sun nor stars appeared for many [days](#), and the great storm remained upon us, from then on all [hope](#) that we [would be saved](#) was abandoned.

**UST**

<sup>20</sup> The wind continued to blow very strongly for many [days](#), and the sky was full of dark clouds day and night so that we could not see the sun or the stars. We had lost all [hope](#) that we [would survive](#).



## Acts 27:21

### Connecting Statement:

Paul speaks to the sailors on the ship.

### When they had gone a long time without food (ULT) None of us on the ship had eaten for many days (UST)

Here “they” refers to the sailors. It is implied that Luke, Paul, and those with them had not eaten either. Alternate translation: “When we had gone a long time without food” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the midst of the sailors (ULT) front of us (UST)

“among the men”

### so as to get this injury and loss

“and as a result suffer this harm and loss”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Paul](#)
- [Crete](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Paul](#)
- [Crete](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> When they had gone a long time without food, then [Paul](#) stood up in the midst of the sailors and said, “You men, you should indeed have listened to me, and not have set sail from [Crete](#), and suffered this injury and loss.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> None of us on the ship had eaten for many days. Then one day, [Paul](#) stood up in front of us and said, “Friends, you should have listened to me when I said that we should not set sail from [Crete](#). Then, we would not have suffered this injury and loss.

## Acts 27:22

**loss...there will be no...of life among you (ULT)**  
**do not be afraid...none of us will die...not us (UST)**

Paul is speaking to the sailors. It is implied that Paul also means that he and those with him will not die either. Alternate translation: “none of us will die” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**but only the loss of the ship (ULT)**  
**storm will destroy the ship but (UST)**

Here “loss” is used in the sense of destroy. Alternate translation: “but the storm will destroy only the ship”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of life](#)
- [I urge](#)
- [to take courage](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [die](#)
- [I urge](#)
- [do not be afraid](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But now [I urge](#) you [to take courage](#), for there will be no loss [of life](#) among you, but only the loss of the ship.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> But now, [I urge](#) you, [do not be afraid](#), because none of us will [die](#). The storm will destroy the ship but not us.

## Acts 27:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- an angel
- God
- I worship

### Translation Words - UST

- an angel who came and
- God, the one
- I serve, sent

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> For last night [an angel](#) of the [God](#) to whom I belong, whom also [I worship](#), stood beside me

### UST

<sup>23</sup> I know this, because last night [God](#), [the one](#) to whom I belong and whom [I serve, sent an angel who came and](#) stood by me.

**Acts 27:24****You must stand before Caesar (ULT)****You must go to Rome...stand before the emperor there so that he can judge you (UST)**

The phrase “stand before Caesar” refers to Paul’s going to court and letting Caesar judge him. Alternate translation: “You must stand before Caesar so he can judge you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**in his kindness has given to you...all those who are sailing with you (ULT)****I want you to know that...has granted...to you...that all those who are traveling by ship with you will also survive (UST)**

“has decided to allow all those who are sailing with you to live”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [be afraid](#)
- [God](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Caesar](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [do...be afraid](#)
- [God](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [the emperor there](#)

**ULT**

<sup>24</sup> saying, ‘Do not [be afraid](#), [Paul](#). You must stand before [Caesar](#), and see, [God](#) in his kindness has given to you all those who are sailing with you.’

**UST**

<sup>24</sup> The angel said to me, ‘[Paul](#), do not [be afraid](#). You must go to Rome and stand before [the emperor there](#) so that he can judge you. I want you to know that [God](#) has granted to you that all those who are traveling by ship with you will also survive.’

## Acts 27:25

### exactly the way it was told to me (ULT) as the angel told me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “just as the angel told me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [I trust](#)
- [be cheerful](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [I believe](#)
- [cheer up](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Therefore [be cheerful](#), men! For [I trust God](#) that thus it will be, exactly the way it was told to me.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> So [cheer up](#), my friends, because [I believe](#) that [God](#) will make this happen, exactly as the angel told me.

## Acts 27:26

**upon...island...we must run aground...some (ULT)**  
**on...island, and...However, the ship will crash...some...**  
**we will go ashore there (UST)**

"we must steer our boat so that it wrecks on some island"

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> But we must run aground upon some island."

### UST

<sup>26</sup> However, the ship will crash on some island, and we will go ashore there."

## Acts 27:27

### Connecting Statement:

The fierce storm continues.

### When the fourteenth night had come (ULT) the fourteenth night after the storm had (UST)

The ordinal number “fourteenth” can be translated as “fourteen” or “14.” Alternate translation: “After 14 days since the storm started, that night” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))

### as we were driven this way and that (ULT) On...begun, the ship was still being blown across the (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as the wind blew us back and forth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the Adriatic Sea (ULT) On...begun, the ship was still being blown across the...Adriatic sea (UST)

This is the sea between Italy and Greece. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> When the fourteenth night had come, as we were driven this way and that in the Adriatic Sea, about the middle of the night the sailors thought that they were approaching some land.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> On the fourteenth night after the storm had begun, the ship was still being blown across the Adriatic sea. About midnight, the sailors thought that the ship was getting close to land.

## Acts 27:28

**they took soundings (ULT)**

**they lowered a rope (UST)**

“They measured the depth of the sea water.” They measured the depth of water by dropping a line with a weight tied to the end of it into the water.

**and found twenty fathoms (ULT)**

**to measure how deep the water was (UST)**

“found 20 fathoms.” A “fathom” is a unit of measurement for measuring the depth of water. One fathom is about two meters. Alternate translation: “found 40 meters” (See: [Numbers](#))

**they found fifteen fathoms (ULT)**

**saw...forty meters...thirty meters (UST)**

“found 15 fathoms.” A “fathom” is a unit of measurement for measuring the depth of water. One fathom is about two meters. Alternate translation: “found 30 meters” (See: [Numbers](#))

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> So they took soundings and found twenty fathoms; but when they had gone a little further and they again took soundings. they found fifteen fathoms.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> So they lowered a rope to measure how deep the water was. When they pulled the rope up again, they measured it and saw that the water was forty meters deep. A little later, they measured again and found thirty meters.



**Acts 27:29****anchors (ULT)****anchors (UST)**

An anchor is a heavy object attached to a rope that is secured to the boat. The anchor is tossed into the water and sinks to the bottom of the sea, keeping the ship from drifting about. See how you translated this in [Acts 27:13](#).

**from the stern (ULT)****the ship might go...from the ship's stern. Then (UST)**

"from the back of the ship"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [they were afraid that](#)
- [and prayed for](#)
- [morning](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [They were afraid that](#)
- [they prayed that](#)
- [soon be dawn so that they could see where the ship was going](#)

**ULT**

<sup>29</sup> Since [they were afraid that](#) we might crash somewhere on the rocks, they lowered four anchors from the stern [and prayed for morning](#) to come.

**UST**

<sup>29</sup> [They were afraid that](#) the ship might go onto some rocks, so they threw out four anchors from the ship's stern. Then [they prayed that](#) it would [soon be dawn so that they could see where the ship was going](#).

## Acts 27:30

### General Information:

Here the word “you” is plural and refers to the centurion and the Roman soldiers. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### the lifeboat (ULT)

### the lifeboat (UST)

This is a smaller boat that is sometimes pulled behind the ship and sometime it was brought onto the ship and tied down. The smaller boat was used for various reasons, including escaping from a sinking ship. See how you translated this in [Acts 27:16](#).

### the...the bow (ULT)

### from...the ship's front (UST)

“from the front of the ship”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)
- [were trying](#)
- [as if](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sea](#)
- [were planning](#)
- [to do](#)

### ULT

**30** But the sailors [were trying](#) to abandon the ship and had lowered the lifeboat into the [sea](#), pretending [as if](#) they were going to throw down the anchors from the bow.

### UST

**30** Some of the sailors [were planning](#) to escape from the ship, so they lowered the lifeboat into the [sea](#). In order that no one would know what they planned [to do](#), they pretended that they wanted to lower some anchors from the ship's front.

**Acts 27:31**

**Unless these men stay in the ship, you cannot be saved (ULT)**

**If the sailors do not stay in the ship, you have no hope of surviving (UST)**

The negative words “Unless” and “cannot” can be stated in positive form. The passive phrase “be saved” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “These men must stay in the ship in order for you to survive” (See: [Double Negatives](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [be saved](#)
- [centurion](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [soldiers](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [of surviving](#)
- [the army captain](#)
- [But Paul](#)
- [soldiers](#)

**ULT**

<sup>31</sup> But [Paul](#) said to the [centurion](#) and to the [soldiers](#), “Unless these men stay in the ship, you cannot [be saved](#).”

**UST**

<sup>31</sup> [But Paul](#) said to [the army captain](#) and the [soldiers](#), “If the sailors do not stay in the ship, you have no hope [of surviving](#).”

## Acts 27:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [soldiers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [soldiers](#)

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Then the [soldiers](#) cut away the ropes of the lifeboat and let it drift away.

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> So the [soldiers](#) cut the ropes and let the lifeboat fall into the water.

## Acts 27:33

**When daylight was about to come (ULT)**  
**Just before dawn...to (UST)**

“When it was almost sunrise”

**Today is the fourteenth day (ULT)**  
**For the past fourteen days (UST)**

The ordinal number “fourteenth” can be stated as “fourteen.”  
 Alternate translation: “For 14 days” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [urged](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [waiting](#)
- [daylight](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [urged](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [you have been](#)
- [Just before dawn](#)
- [past...days](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> When [daylight](#) was about to come, [Paul urged](#) them all to take some food. He said, “Today is the fourteenth [day](#) that you have continued [waiting](#) without eating, and have eaten nothing.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> [Just before dawn](#), [Paul urged](#) everyone on the ship to eat some food. He said, “For the [past](#) fourteen [days you have been](#) waiting and watching and not eating anything.

## Acts 27:34

**not a single...hair from your head will perish (ULT)**

**Not even one...hair from your heads will perish (UST)**

This was a customary way of saying no harm would come upon them. Alternate translation: "every one of you will survive this disaster unharmed" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [your survival](#)
- [will perish](#)
- [I urge](#)
- [head](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [must...to live](#)
- [will perish](#)
- [I urge](#)
- [heads](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> So [I urge](#) you to take some food, for this is for [your survival](#). For not a single hair from your [head will perish](#)."

### UST

<sup>34</sup> So, now [I urge](#) you to eat some food. You [must](#) do this [to live](#). Not even one hair from your [heads will perish](#)."

## Acts 27:35

**he broke the bread (ULT)**

**he broke the bread and (UST)**

“tore the bread” or “tore off a piece from the loaf of bread”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God for it](#)
- [some bread](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> When he had said this, and had taken [bread](#), he thanked [God](#) before everyone. Then he broke the bread and began to eat.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> After Paul had said that, while everyone was watching, he took [some bread](#) and thanked [God for it](#). Then he broke the bread and began to eat some of it.

## Acts 27:36

### Then they were all encouraged (ULT)

### Then...were all cheered up (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This encouraged all of them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [encouraged](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [cheered up](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Then they were all [encouraged](#) and they also took food.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Then they were all [cheered up](#) and ate some food.



## Acts 27:37

### We were in all 276 souls in the ship (ULT)

“We were two hundred and seventy-six people in the ship.” This is background information. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Background Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [in all...souls](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [soul, self](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> We were [in all](#) 276 [souls](#) in the ship.

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> Altogether there were 276 of us on the ship.

## Acts 27:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sea
- by throwing out
- wheat

### Translation Words - UST

- sea
- by throwing
- wheat

#### ULT

<sup>38</sup> When they had eaten enough food, they made the ship lighter [by throwing out](#) the [wheat](#) into the [sea](#).

#### UST

<sup>38</sup> When everyone had eaten enough, they lightened the ship [by throwing](#) the rest of the [wheat](#) into the [sea](#).

## Acts 27:39

**a...bay (ULT)**

**a bay (UST)**

a large area of water partly surrounded by land

**they did not recognize the land (ULT)**

**we could see land...not know (UST)**

“saw land but could not recognize it as any place they knew”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [dawn](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> When it was [day](#), they did not recognize the land, but they saw a certain bay with a beach, onto which they discussed whether they could drive the ship.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> At [dawn](#) we could see land, but the sailors did not know where we were. However, they could see a bay and a wide area of sand at the water's edge. They decided to try to run the ship up onto the beach.

## Acts 27:40

**they cut loose the anchors and left them (ULT)**  
**they cast off the anchors and let them fall loose (UST)**

“cut the ropes and left the anchors behind”

**rudders (ULT)**  
**rudders (UST)**

large oars or pieces of wood at the back of the ship used for steering

**the foresail (ULT)**  
**the front sail so that the (UST)**

“the sail at the front of the ship.” The sail was a large piece of cloth that catches the wind to move the ship.

**in...the...they headed...beach (ULT)**  
**into...the...They they steered the ship...shore (UST)**

“they steered the ship toward the beach”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sea](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> So they cut loose the anchors and left them in the [sea](#). At the same time they loosed the ropes of the rudders and having raised the foresail to the wind, they headed to the beach.

### UST

<sup>40</sup> So they cast off the anchors and let them fall loose into the [sea](#). At the same time, they untied the ropes that fastened the rudders, and they raised the front sail so that the wind would blow into it. They they steered the ship toward the shore.

## Acts 27:41

**they came...to a place where two currents met (ULT)**  
**But...ran hard onto a sandbank that...But...ran hard onto a sandbank that (UST)**

A current is water flowing in one continuous direction. Sometimes more than one water current can flow across another. This may cause the sand under the water to pile up making the water more shallow.

**bow of the ship (ULT)**  
**front of the ship (UST)**

"The front of the ship"

**the...stern (ULT)**  
**The...big waves...back of the ship (UST)**

"the back of the ship"

### ULT

<sup>41</sup> But they came to a place where two currents met, and the ship ran into the ground. Then the bow of the ship indeed stuck there and remained unmovable, but the stern was being broken up by the violence of the waves.

### UST

<sup>41</sup> But the ship sailed into turbulent waters and ran hard onto a sandbank that was just under the waves. The front of the ship stuck there and could not move, and big waves beat against the back of the ship, so that it began to break apart.

## Acts 27:42

**the...soldiers' plan was (ULT)**

**The...soldiers had it in mind (UST)**

"The soldiers were planning"

### Translation Words - ULT

- prisoners
- soldiers

### Translation Words - UST

- all...prisoners
- soldiers

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Now the [soldiers](#)' plan was that they would kill the [prisoners](#) so none of them could swim away and escape.

### UST

<sup>42</sup> The [soldiers](#) had it in mind to kill [all](#) the [prisoners](#) so that none of them could swim away and escape.

## Acts 27:43

**so he stopped their plan (ULT)**

**so he stopped the soldiers from doing this (UST)**

“so he stopped them from doing what they planned to do”

**to jump overboard (ULT)**

**jump into the water (UST)**

“jump off the ship into the water”

### Translation Words - ULT

- to save
- he ordered
- centurion
- Paul

### Translation Words - UST

- to save
- Instead, he commanded
- army captain
- Paul

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> But the [centurion](#) wanted [to save Paul](#), so he stopped their plan; and [he ordered](#) those who could swim to jump overboard first and get to land.

### UST

<sup>43</sup> But [army captain](#) wanted [to save Paul](#), so he stopped the soldiers from doing this. [Instead, he commanded](#) that everyone who could swim should jump into the water and swim to shore.

## Acts 27:44

**some...on planks (ULT)**

**others to hold onto planks or other pieces...others to hold onto planks or other pieces (UST)**

“some on wooden boards”

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> Then the rest of the men should follow, some indeed on planks, and some on other things from the ship. In this way, it happened that all of us were brought safely to the land.

### UST

<sup>44</sup> Then he told the others to hold onto planks or other pieces from the ship and go toward the shore. We did what he said, and in that way all of us arrived safely on land.



## **Acts 28**

### **Acts 28 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

No one knows for sure why Luke ends his history without telling what happened to Paul after he had been in Rome for two years.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **“Letters” and “brothers”**

The Jewish leaders were surprised that Paul wanted to speak with them, because they had received no letters from the high priest in Jerusalem telling them that Paul was coming.

When the Jewish leaders spoke of “brothers,” they were referring to fellow Jews, not to Christians.

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

##### **“He was a god”**

The native people believed that Paul was a god, but they did not believe that he was the one true God. We do not know why Paul did not tell the native people that he was not a god.

## Acts 28:1

### General Information:

Here the word “we” refers to Paul, the writer, and those who traveled with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

After the shipwreck, people on the island of Malta helped Paul and everyone on the ship. They stay there for 3 months.

### When we were brought safely through (ULT) After we had arrived safely on (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When we arrived safely” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### we...learned (ULT) we learned (UST)

Paul and Luke learned the name of the island. Alternate translation: “we learned from the people” or “we found out from the residents” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### the island was called Malta (ULT) the shore...was an island called Malta (UST)

Malta is an island located south of the modern-day island of Sicily. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [When we were brought safely through](#)
- [was called](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [After we had arrived safely on](#)
- [was...called](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> [When we were brought safely through](#), we then learned that the island [was called](#) Malta.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> [After we had arrived safely on](#) the shore, we learned that it was an island [called](#) Malta.

## Acts 28:2

**The...native people (ULT)**

**The...gave...people who lived there (UST)**

“The local people”

**offered to us not just ordinary kindness (ULT)**  
**to us better than...usual hospitality...invited (UST)**

Being kind to someone is spoken of as if it were an object that someone offers. Alternate translation: “were not only very kind to us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**not just ordinary kindness (ULT)**  
**better than...usual hospitality (UST)**

This phrase is used to emphasize the opposite of what is said. Alternate translation: “a great deal of kindness” (See: [Litotes](#))

**they lit...a fire (ULT)**

**They lit...a fire (UST)**

“they put together twigs and branches and burned them”

**and welcomed us all (ULT)**  
**us...come and warm ourselves (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) “welcomed all of the people from the ship” or 2) “welcomed Paul and all his companions.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and welcomed](#)
- [a fire](#)
- [ordinary kindness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [come and warm ourselves](#)
- [a fire](#)
- [hospitality](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The native people offered to us not just [ordinary kindness](#), but they lit [a fire](#) [and welcomed](#) us all, because of the constant rain, and because of the cold.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> The people who lived there gave to us better than the usual [hospitality](#). They lit [a fire](#) and invited us to [come and warm ourselves](#), because it was raining and it was cold.

## Acts 28:3

**a viper came out because of the heat (ULT)**  
**a poisonous snake came out from the fire to escape from the heat (UST)**

“a poisonous snake came out of the bundle of sticks”

**the...and fastened...onto...his...hand (ULT)**  
**the...and it bit Paul...on...his...hand...and stayed there (UST)**

“bit Paul’s hand and did not let go”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Paul
- onto...hand
- fire
- a viper

### Translation Words - UST

- Paul
- on...hand
- fire
- a poisonous snake

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But when [Paul](#) had gathered a bundle of sticks and placed them on the [fire](#), [a viper](#) came out because of the heat, and fastened onto his [hand](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> When [Paul](#) collected some sticks of wood and put them on the [fire](#), [a poisonous snake](#) came out from the fire to escape from the heat, and it bit Paul on his [hand](#) and stayed there.

## Acts 28:4

**This man certainly is a murderer (ULT)**  
**they said...Probably this man has murdered someone...  
 has escaped...being drowned in...him (UST)**

“For sure, this man is a murderer” or “This man is truly a murderer”

**justice...yet...permit him (ULT)**  
**justice will cause...to die (UST)**

The word “justice” refers to the name of a god that they worshiped.  
 Alternate translation: “the god called Justice” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [escaped](#)
- [to live](#)
- [justice](#)
- [sea](#)
- [hand](#)
- [snake](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Probably this man has murdered someone...has escaped...being drowned in...him](#)
- [to die](#)
- [justice will cause](#)
- [sea, the god of](#)
- [hand](#)
- [creature](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> When the native people saw the [snake](#) hanging from his [hand](#), they said one to another, “This man certainly is a murderer who [escaped](#) from the [sea](#), yet [justice](#) does not permit him [to live](#).”

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The people from the island saw the [creature](#) dangling from Paul's [hand](#), they said to each other, “[Probably this man has murdered someone](#). Although he [has escaped](#) from [being drowned in the sea, the god of justice will cause him to die](#).”

## Acts 28:5

### shook the animal into the fire

“shook his hand so that the snake fell from his hand into the fire”

**and suffered no harm (ULT)**  
**nothing happened to him (UST)**

“Paul was not hurt at all”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)
- [snake](#)
- [and suffered](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fire, and](#)
- [snake](#)
- [nothing](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But then he shook off the [snake](#) into the [fire and suffered](#) no harm.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But Paul simply shook the [snake](#) off into the [fire, and nothing](#) happened to him.

## Acts 28:6

### to...become inflamed (ULT) swell up (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) his body would swell because of the snake venom or 2) he would become very hot with fever.

### nothing unusual happening to him (ULT) nothing was wrong with him. So the people...to one another (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "everything about him was as it should be" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### they changed their minds (ULT) changed what they were thinking (UST)

To think differently about a situation is spoken of as if a person is changing his mind. Alternate translation: "they thought again" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### and said that he was a god (ULT) said...This man is not a murderer! He is a god (UST)

This can be stated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "said, 'This man must be a god.'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### and said that he was a god (ULT) said...This man is not a murderer! He is a god (UST)

Perhaps there was a belief that someone who lived after a poisonous snake bite was divine or a god.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a god](#)
- [dead](#)
- [unusual](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a god](#)
- [die](#)
- [wrong with](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But they were expecting him to soon become inflamed or to suddenly drop [dead](#). But after they watched for a long time and saw nothing [unusual](#) happening to him, they changed their minds and said that he was [a god](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> The people were expecting that Paul's body would soon swell up with a fever or that he would suddenly fall down and [die](#). But after they had waited a long time, they saw that nothing was [wrong with](#) him. So the people changed what they were thinking and said to one another, "This man is not a murderer! He is [a god](#)!"

## Acts 28:7

### General Information:

Here the words “us” and “we” refer to Paul, Luke, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**Now in an area near that same place (ULT)**

**Now in a place near to where they were, there were some...the chief official (UST)**

“Now” is used to introduce a new person or event in the account.

**chief man of the island (ULT)**

**belonged to a man...on the island (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) the main leader of the people or 2) someone who was the most important person on the island, perhaps because of his wealth.

**a man named Publius (ULT)**

**whose name was Publius. He was (UST)**

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a man named](#)
- [welcomed](#)
- [were](#)
- [chief man](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [whose name](#)
- [He invited](#)
- [were some](#)
- [belonged to a man](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

7 Now in an area near that same place [were](#) lands belonging to the [chief man](#) of the island, [a man named](#) Publius. He [welcomed](#) us and kindly entertained us for three [days](#).

### UST

7 Now in a place near to where they were, there [were some](#) fields that [belonged to a man whose name](#) was Publius. He was the chief official on the island. [He invited](#) us to come and stay in his home. He took very good care of us for three [days](#).



## Acts 28:8

**It happened that the father of Publius was lying sick with a fever and dysentery (ULT)**

**At that time Publius' father had fever and dysentery, and...was lying in bed...Then Paul (UST)**

This is background information about Publius' father that is important to understanding the story. (See: [Background Information](#))

**was lying sick with (ULT)**

**dysentery...and...was lying in bed (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "was ill" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**was lying sick with a fever and dysentery (ULT)**  
**fever and dysentery, and...was lying in bed (UST)**

Dysentery is an infectious intestinal disease.

**placing his hands on him (ULT)**

**placed his hands on him and (UST)**

"touched him with his hands"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prayed](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [father](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [and healed](#)
- [sick with](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prayed](#)
- [So Paul](#)
- [father](#)
- [hands on him and](#)
- [healed](#)
- [dysentery](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> It happened that the [father](#) of Publius was lying [sick with](#) a fever and dysentery. [Paul](#) went to him and [prayed](#), placing [his hands](#) on him, [and healed](#) him.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> At that time Publius' [father](#) had fever and [dysentery](#), and he was lying in bed. [So Paul](#) visited him and [prayed](#) for him. Then Paul placed his [hands on him and](#) [healed](#) him.

## Acts 28:9

### were healed (ULT)

### he healed them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he healed them too" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [were healed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [he healed them](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> After this happened, the rest of the people on the island who were sick also came and [were healed](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> After Paul had done that, the other people on the island who were sick came to him, and [he healed them](#), too.

**Acts 28:10**

**honored us with many honors (ULT)**  
**brought us gifts...showed in other ways that they greatly respected us (UST)**

Probably they honored Paul and those with him by giving them gifts.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [honors](#)
- [honored](#)
- [honored...honors](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [gifts](#)
- [showed in other ways that they greatly respected us](#)
- [gifts...showed in other ways that they greatly respected us](#)

**ULT**

<sup>10</sup> The people also [honored](#) us with many [honors](#). When we were preparing to sail, they gave us what we needed.

**UST**

<sup>10</sup> They brought us [gifts](#) and [showed in other ways that they greatly respected us](#). When we were ready to leave three months later, they brought us food and other things that we would need on the ship.

## Acts 28:11

### General Information:

The Twin Brothers refers to Castor and Pollux, the twin sons of Zeus, a Greek god. They were thought to be protectors of ships. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Paul's journey to Rome continues.

**in...that had spent the winter...the island (ULT)**

**After we had stayed there three months, we got on a ship...On the front (UST)**

"that the crew left at the island for the cold season"

**a ship of Alexandria (ULT)**

**that was from Alexandria and (UST)**

Possible meanings are this refers to 1) a ship that came from Alexandria, or 2) a ship that was registered or licensed in Alexandria.

**the twin gods (ULT)**

**that was going to Italy and sailed away...Castor and Pollux (UST)**

On the bow of the ship, there was a carving of the two idols called "the twin gods." Their names were Castor and Pollux.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [months](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [After we had stayed there three months, we got on a ship](#)

### ULT

**11** So after three [months](#), we set sail in a ship that had spent the winter at the island, a ship of Alexandria, with "the twin gods" as its figurehead.

### UST

**11** [After we had stayed there three months, we got on a ship](#) that was from Alexandria and that was going to Italy and sailed away. On the front of the ship there were carved images of the twin gods whose names were Castor and Pollux.

## Acts 28:12

### the city of Syracuse (ULT)

### the city of Syracuse (UST)

Syracuse is a city on the southeast coast of the modern-day island of Sicily, just southwest of Italy. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> After we landed at the city of Syracuse, we stayed there three [days](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When we arrived at the city of Syracuse, we stayed there three [days](#).

## Acts 28:13

### General Information:

The Market of Appius and The Three Taverns was a popular market and inn on the main highway called the Appian Way, about 50 kilometers south of the city of Rome. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the city of Rhegium (ULT)**

**the city of Rhegium in Italy (UST)**

This is the port city located at the southwestern tip of Italy. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**a south wind sprang up (ULT)**

**the wind was blowing from the south (UST)**

“the wind began to blow from the south”

**the city of Puteoli (ULT)**

**the town of Puteoli. There we left the ship (UST)**

Puteoli is located in modern-day Naples on the west coast of Italy. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [day](#)

#### ULT

**13** From there we sailed and arrived at the city of Rhegium. After one [day](#) a south wind sprang up, and in two days we came to the city of Puteoli.

#### UST

**13** Then we sailed and arrived at the city of Rhegium in Italy. The next [day](#), the wind was blowing from the south, so in only two more days we reached the town of Puteoli. There we left the ship.

## Acts 28:14

**There we found (ULT)**

**In Puteoli we met some (UST)**

“There we met”

**some brothers (ULT)**

**fellow believers (UST)**

These were followers of Jesus, including both men and women.

Alternate translation: “fellow believers” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**and were invited (ULT)**

**who wanted us to stay (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they invited us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**In this way we came to Rome (ULT)**

**for...this, we finally arrived at Rome (UST)**

Once Paul reached Puteoli, the rest of the journey to Rome was on land. Alternate translation: “And after we stayed seven days with them, we went to Rome”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [some brothers](#)
- [Rome](#)
- [and were invited](#)
- [for...days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow believers](#)
- [Rome](#)
- [who wanted us to stay](#)
- [days. After](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> There we found [some brothers and were invited](#) to stay with them for seven [days](#). In this way we came to [Rome](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> In Puteoli we met some [fellow believers who wanted us to stay](#) with them for seven [days](#). [After](#) this, we finally arrived at [Rome](#).

## Acts 28:15

**after they heard the things about us (ULT)**  
**had heard about us...the (UST)**

“after they heard we were coming”

**he thanked God and took courage (ULT)**  
**he thanked God and was encouraged (UST)**

Taking courage is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could take. Alternate translation: “this encouraged him, and he thanked God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [God](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [courage](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [In Rome, some fellow believers](#)
- [God](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [and was encouraged](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> From there the [brothers](#), after they heard the things about us, came out to meet us as far as The Market of Appius and The Three Taverns. When [Paul](#) saw the brothers, he thanked [God](#) and took [courage](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> [In Rome, some fellow believers](#) had heard about us, so they came to meet us. Some of them met us at the town called The Market on Appian Road, and others met us at the town called The Three Inns. When [Paul](#) saw those believers, he thanked [God and was encouraged](#).



## Acts 28:16

### General Information:

Here the word “we” refers to the writer, Paul, and those traveling with them, but not to the reader. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Paul arrives in Rome as a prisoner but with the freedom to stay in his own place. He calls the local Jews together to explain what has happened to him.

### When we came to Rome (ULT)

### After we arrived in Rome...But there was always (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “After we had arrived in Rome, the Roman authorities gave Paul permission to” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Rome](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [soldier](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Rome](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [a soldier there](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> When we came to [Rome](#), [Paul](#) was allowed to live by himself with the [soldier](#) who was guarding him.

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> After we arrived in [Rome](#), [Paul](#) was permitted to live in a house by himself. But there was always [a soldier there](#) to guard him.

## Acts 28:17

**Then it came about that (ULT)**  
**Paul had...and talk (UST)**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

**the leaders among the Jews (ULT)**  
**Jewish...leaders (UST)**

These are the Jewish civil or religious leaders present in Rome.

**brothers (ULT)**  
**My dear brothers, although (UST)**

Here this means "Fellow Jews."

**against...the people (ULT)**  
**opposed...our people (UST)**

"against our people" or "against the Jews"

**I was delivered as a prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans (ULT)**  
**our leaders in Jerusalem seized me...and later sent me...city of Caesarea for Roman authorities to put me on trial (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "some of the Jews arrested me in Jerusalem and placed me in the custody of the Roman authorities" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**into the hands of the Romans (ULT)**  
**city of Caesarea...Roman authorities to put me on trial (UST)**

Here "hands" stands for power or control. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [called together](#)
- [among the Jews](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [Romans](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [of our fathers](#)
- [hands](#)
- [people](#)
- [had come together](#)
- [as a prisoner](#)
- [I was delivered](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Then it came about that after three [days](#) Paul [called together](#) those men who were the leaders [among the Jews](#). When they [had come together](#), he said to them, "Men, [brothers](#), although I have done nothing against the [people](#) or the customs [of our fathers](#), [I was delivered as a prisoner](#) from [Jerusalem](#) into the [hands](#) of the [Romans](#)."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> After Paul had been there three [days](#), he [sent a message to](#) the [Jewish](#) leaders [to come](#) and talk [with him](#). When they came to him, Paul said to them, "[My dear brothers, although](#) I have not opposed [our people](#) nor spoken against the customs [of our ancestors](#), [our leaders in Jerusalem seized me](#). But before they could kill me, a Roman commander rescued me [and later sent me](#) to the city of Caesarea for [Roman authorities](#) to [put me on trial](#)."

## Translation Words - UST

- sent a message to
- Jewish
- My dear brothers, although
- Roman authorities
- our leaders in Jerusalem
- of our ancestors
- put me on trial
- our people
- to come...with him
- seized me
- and later sent me
- days

## Acts 28:18

**there was no reason in me for a death penalty (ULT)**  
**I had not done any bad thing for which I should be executed (UST)**

"I had done nothing to cause them to execute me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- a death penalty

### Translation Words - UST

- executed

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> After they questioned me, they wished to set me free, because there was no reason in me for [a death penalty](#).

### UST

<sup>18</sup> The Roman authorities questioned me and wanted to release me, because I had not done any bad thing for which I should be [executed](#).

## Acts 28:19

### the Jews (ULT)

### Jewish leaders there (UST)

This does not mean all of the Jews. Alternate translation: “the Jewish leaders” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### when...objected (ULT)

### when the...spoke against the desire of the Romans to set me free (UST)

“complained about what the Roman authorities wanted to do”

### I was forced to appeal to Caesar (ULT)

### I had to request that the emperor judge me here in Rome (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I had to ask for Caesar to judge me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### although it is not as if I have any accusation to bring against my nation (ULT)

### But my reason for doing that was not that I wanted to accuse our leaders about anything (UST)

The abstract noun “accusation” can be stated as the verb “accuse.” Here “nation” stands for the people. Alternate translation: “but it was not because I wanted to accuse the people of my nation before Caesar” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- to Caesar
- nation
- to bring against
- as if

### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish leaders there
- that the emperor judge me here in Rome
- our leaders
- that I wanted to accuse
- that was

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But when the [Jews](#) objected, I was forced to appeal [to Caesar](#), although it is not [as if](#) I have any accusation [to bring against](#) my [nation](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> But when the [Jewish leaders there](#) spoke against the desire of the Romans to set me free, I had to request [that the emperor judge me here in Rome](#). But my reason for doing [that was](#) not [that I wanted to accuse our leaders](#) about anything.

## Acts 28:20

### the certain hope of Israel (ULT)

**I am a prisoner...I believe in what the people of Israel confidently expect God will do for us (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) the people of Israel confidently expect the Messiah to come or 2) the people of Israel confidently expect God to bring those who have died back to life.

### of Israel (ULT)

**I am a prisoner...I believe in what...people of Israel (UST)**

Here "Israel" stands for the people. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel" or "the Jews" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I am bound with this chain (ULT)

**I am a prisoner...I believe in what...people of Israel (UST)**

Here "bound with this chain" stands for being a prisoner. Alternate translation: "that I am a prisoner" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- I have called
- I am bound with
- of Israel
- certain hope

### Translation Words - UST

- So I have requested
- I am a prisoner...I believe in what...people of Israel
- I am a prisoner...I believe in what...people of Israel
- confidently expect God will do for us

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Therefore, for this reason, [I have called](#) you, to see you and to speak with you. For [I am bound with](#) this chain because of the [certain hope of Israel](#)."

### UST

<sup>20</sup> [So I have requested](#) you to come here so that I can tell you why [I am a prisoner](#). It is because [I believe in what the people of Israel confidently expect God will do for us](#)."

## Acts 28:21

### General Information:

Here the words "We," "we," and "us" refer to the Jewish leaders in Rome. (See: [Acts 28:17](#) and [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

### Connecting Statement:

The Jewish leaders respond to Paul.

**neither...did any of the brothers come (ULT)**  
**not...Also...of our fellow Jews who have arrived here (UST)**

Here "brothers" stands for fellow Jews. Alternate translation: "nor did any of our fellow Jews"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [bad](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [received](#)
- [and report](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow Jews](#)
- [bad](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [have...received](#)
- [has said](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then they said to him, "We neither [received](#) letters from [Judea](#) about you, nor did any of the [brothers](#) come [and report](#) or say anything [bad](#) about you.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> Then the Jewish leaders said, "We have not [received](#) any letters from our fellow Jews in [Judea](#) about you. Also, none of our [fellow Jews](#) who have arrived here from Judea [has said](#) anything [bad](#) about you.

## Acts 28:22

### you think about...this sect (ULT)

### think about...this group that you belong to (UST)

A sect is a smaller group within a larger group. Here it refers to those who believe in Jesus. Alternate translation: “you think about this group to which you belong”

### because it is known by us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “because we know” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### it is...spoken against everywhere (ULT)

### are...in many places people...speaking against it (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “many Jews all over the Roman Empire are saying bad things about it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we want](#)
- [it is known](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [But we want](#)
- [know](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> But [we want](#) to hear from you what you think about this sect, because indeed [it is known](#) by us that it is spoken against everywhere.”

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [But we want](#) to hear what you think about this group that you belong to, because we [know](#) that in many places people are speaking against it.”



## Acts 28:23

### General Information:

Here the word "they" refers to the Jewish leaders in Rome. The words "him," "his," and "He" and refer to Paul ([Acts 28:17](#)).

**when they had set...a day for him (ULT)**  
**they decided...would come back on another day...he (UST)**

"had chosen a time for him to speak to them"

**and testified about the kingdom of God (ULT)**  
**to...Paul told...about how God would rule everyone (UST)**

Here "kingdom of God" stands for God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "told them about God's rule as king" or "told them how God would show himself as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**from the prophets (ULT)**  
**the prophets (UST)**

Here "the prophets" refers to what they wrote. Alternate translation: "from what the prophets wrote" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [of God](#)
- [law of Moses](#)
- [and testified about](#)
- [when they had set](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)
- [of Moses](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [a day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [foretold Jesus](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [about how God](#)
- [law of Moses](#)
- [Paul told](#)
- [they decided](#)
- [to...about how God...would rule everyone](#)
- [of Moses](#)
- [would rule everyone](#)
- [would come back on another day](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So [when they had set a day](#) for him, more people came to him at his dwelling place. He presented the matter to them, [and testified about the kingdom of God](#). He also tried to persuade them about [Jesus](#), both from the [law of Moses](#) and from the [prophets](#), from morning until evening.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> So [they decided](#) that they [would come back on another day](#) to hear Paul speak to them. When that day arrived, even more people than before came to where Paul was staying. [Paul told](#) them [about how God would rule everyone](#); he talked about how the [law of Moses](#) and the [prophets foretold Jesus](#). Paul talked with all who would listen from morning until evening.

## Acts 28:24

### Some were convinced about the things which were said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Paul was able to convince some of them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [did not believe](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [did not believe that it was true](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Some indeed were convinced about the things which he was saying, but others [did not believe](#).

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Some of those Jews were persuaded to believe what Paul said about Jesus was true, but others [did not believe that it was true](#).

## Acts 28:25

### General Information:

Here the word “they” refers to the Jewish leaders in Rome ([Acts 28:17](#)). The word “your” refers to the people to whom Paul had been speaking. In verse 26, Paul begins to quote the prophet Isaiah.

### Connecting Statement:

As the Jewish leaders were ready to leave, Paul quotes the Old Testament scriptures that were appropriate for this time.

**after Paul had spoken this one statement (ULT)  
and when they were...about to leave, Paul had one  
more thing to say...when (UST)**

Here “word” stands for a message or statement. Alternate translation: “after Paul had said one more thing” or “after Paul had made this statement” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The Holy Spirit spoke...well...through Isaiah the prophet to your fathers (ULT)  
The Holy Spirit said the truth to your ancestors...he spoke these words to Isaiah the prophet (UST)**

This sentence contains quotations within quotations. (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [fathers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [Paul](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [ancestors](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> When they were in disagreement with one another, they left after [Paul](#) had spoken this one statement, “The [Holy Spirit](#) spoke well through [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#) to your [fathers](#).”

### UST

<sup>25</sup> When they began to disagree with each other, and when they were about to leave, [Paul](#) had one more thing to say: “The [Holy Spirit](#) said the truth to your [ancestors](#), when he spoke these words to [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#).”

**Acts 28:26**

**He said, 'Go to this people...say, "By hearing you will hear, but you will not understand; and by seeing you will see, but you will not perceive (ULT)**

**Go to your people...saying...say to them: 'You hear with your ears, but you never understand what God is...You see with your eyes but you never really see the things that God is doing (UST)**

This is the end of the sentence that begins with the words "The Holy Spirit spoke" in verse 25 and that contains quotations within quotations. You can translate one of the inner quotations as an indirect quotation, or you can translate two of the inner quotations as indirect quotations. "The Holy Spirit spoke well through Isaiah the prophet to your forefathers when the Spirit told Isaiah to go tell them that they will hear but will not understand and they will see but they will not perceive" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#))

**ULT**

<sup>26</sup> He said, 'Go to this [people](#) and say, "By hearing you will hear, but [you will](#) not [understand](#); and by seeing you will see, but [you will](#) not [perceive](#).

**UST**

<sup>26</sup> Go to [your people](#) and say to them: 'You hear with your ears, but you never [understand what God is](#) saying. You see with your eyes but you never really [see the things that God is doing](#).

**By hearing you will hear...and seeing you will see**

The words "hear" and "see" are repeated for emphasis. "You will listen carefully...and you will look intently"

**but you will not understand...but you will not perceive (ULT)**

**but you never understand what God is...but you never really see the things that God is doing (UST)**

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that the Jewish people will not understand God's plan. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [people](#)
- [you will...understand](#)
- [you will...perceive](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [your people](#)
- [understand what God is](#)
- [you...see the things that God is doing](#)

## Acts 28:27

### General Information:

Translate Paul's quotation of Isaiah as a direct quotation or indirect quotation according to how you translated it in [Acts 28:25-26](#).

### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes quoting Isaiah the prophet.

**For the heart of this people has become dull (ULT)**  
**These people do not...because they have become stubborn. their ears are almost deaf...to (UST)**

People who stubbornly refuse to understand what God is saying or doing are spoken of as if their heart is dull. Here "heart" is a metonym for the mind. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**with their ears they hardly hear, and they have shut their eyes (ULT)**  
**understand...their ears are almost deaf...and they have closed their eyes (UST)**

People who stubbornly refuse to understand what God is saying or doing are spoken of as if they are unable to hear and are shutting their eyes so that they will see. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**understand with their heart (ULT)**  
**understand with their hearts (UST)**

Here "heart" stands for the mind. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**turn again (ULT)**  
**they would come back...me (UST)**

To start obeying God is spoken of as though the person were physically turning toward God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I would heal them (ULT)**  
**I would heal them (UST)**

This does not mean God will only heal them physically. He will also heal them spiritually by forgiving their sins.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [I would heal](#)
- [of...people](#)
- [turn again](#)
- [understand](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For the [heart](#) of this [people](#) has become dull, and with their ears they hardly hear, and they have shut their eyes. Otherwise they might see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and [understand](#) with their [heart](#) and [turn again](#), and [I would heal](#) them."

### UST

<sup>27</sup> These [people do not](#) understand, [because they have become stubborn](#). their ears are almost deaf; and they have closed their eyes because they do not want to see. They do not want to hear with their ears or [understand](#) with their [hearts](#), for then [they would come back](#) to [me](#) and [I would heal](#) them.

## Translation Words - UST

- These...do not...because they have become stubborn
- hearts
- I would heal
- people
- they would come back...me
- understand

## Acts 28:28

### Connecting Statement:

Paul finishes speaking to the Jewish leaders in Rome.

**this salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles (ULT)**

**that...God...to save the non-Jews (UST)**

God's message about how he saves people is spoken of as if it were an object that is sent. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is sending his messengers to the Gentiles to tell them about how he will save them" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**they...will listen (ULT)**

**they...will listen (UST)**

"some of them will listen." This response of the Gentiles is in contrast to the way the Jews of that time responded.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [salvation](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [has been sent](#)
- [known](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to save](#)
- [God](#)
- [the non-Jews](#)
- [to save](#)
- [should know](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Therefore, let it be [known](#) to you that this [salvation of God has been sent](#) to the [Gentiles](#), and they will listen."

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Therefore, you [should know](#) that [God](#) is offering [to save the non-Jews](#), and they will listen."

## Acts 28:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>29[1]</sup> [When he had said these things, the Jews went away. They were having a great dispute among themselves.]

### UST

<sup>29[1]</sup> [When he had said these things, the Jews went away. They were having a great dispute among themselves.]



## Acts 28:30

### Connecting Statement:

Luke ends the story of Paul in the book of Acts. (See: [End of Story](#))

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Paul stayed for two whole years in his own rented house, and he welcomed all those who came to him.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> For two whole years Paul stayed there in a house that he rented. Many people came to see him, and he received them all gladly and talked with them.

## Acts 28:31

**He was proclaiming the kingdom of God (ULT)**  
**He preached and taught people about how God would show himself as king (UST)**

Here "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "He was preaching about God's rule as king" or "He was preaching about how God will show himself as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord Jesus Christ
- Lord
- of God
- kingdom of God
- Christ
- boldness
- was teaching
- He was proclaiming
- kingdom

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord Jesus the Messiah
- Lord
- God
- taught people about how God would show himself as king
- the Messiah
- boldness
- he taught them
- He preached
- taught people about how...would show himself as king

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> [He was proclaiming](#) the [kingdom of God](#) and [was teaching](#) the things about the [Lord](#) Jesus [Christ](#) with all [boldness](#). No one stopped him.

28:29 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 29.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> [He preached](#) and [taught people about how God would show himself as king](#), and [he taught them](#) about the [Lord](#) Jesus [the Messiah](#). He did that with great [boldness](#), and no one tried to stop him.

28:29 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include verse 29.



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 12**

# Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

## Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

## Examples from the Bible

...from **\*childhood\*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

**But** godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.  
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.  
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

**Today** salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...  
 Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

**The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider** slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

**He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the** purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: Acts 1:22; 2:23; 4:12; 4:13; 4:35; 5:17; 5:31; 9:1; 11:18; 12:18; 13:24; 13:26; 13:38; 13:47; 14:9; 15:2; 15:3; 15:31; 15:39; 19:4; 19:38; 20:19; 20:21; 21:38; 21:40; 22:4; 22:13; 22:28; 23:6; 23:10; 23:12; 23:29; 24:3; 24:15; 24:21; 25:15; 26:1; 26:2; 26:18; 26:20; 26:31; 27:3)

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** **My father** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

**A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

**It would be better for him if a millstone** were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

**A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: Acts 1:2; 1:5; 1:9; 1:16; 1:20; 1:22; 1:23; 1:26; 2:4; 2:6; 2:14; 2:16; 2:20; 2:21; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 2:29; 2:31; 2:33; 2:37; 2:38; 2:41; 2:43; 2:47; 3:2; 3:14; 3:19; 3:20; 3:23; 3:25; 4:8; 4:9; 4:10; 4:12; 4:14; 4:16; 4:21; 4:31; 4:34; 4:35; 5:4; 5:12; 5:13; 5:14; 5:16; 5:17; 5:34; 5:36; 5:38; 5:39; 5:41; 6:1; 7:13; 7:16; 7:20; 7:21; 7:22; 7:24; 8:4; 8:12; 8:13; 8:16; 8:18; 8:33; 9:6; 9:17; 9:18; 9:24; 9:31; 9:42; 10:10; 10:22; 10:31; 10:33; 10:42; 10:43; 10:45; 10:47; 10:48; 11:11; 11:16; 11:19; 11:26; 12:5; 12:9; 12:12; 12:23; 13:9; 13:11; 13:12; 13:26; 13:27; 13:31; 13:38; 13:39; 13:45; 13:46; 13:48; 13:49; 14:3; 14:9; 15:1; 15:3; 15:4; 15:11; 15:15; 15:17; 15:18; 15:21; 15:30; 15:33; 15:40; 16:2; 16:4; 16:5; 16:6; 16:14; 16:15; 16:18; 16:22; 16:26; 16:27; 16:30; 16:31; 16:33; 17:4; 17:16; 17:25; 17:29; 18:5; 18:8; 18:18; 18:25; 19:3; 19:5; 19:17; 19:27; 19:39; 19:40; 20:3; 20:9; 20:22; 21:13; 21:14; 21:21; 21:24; 21:25; 21:26; 21:30; 21:33; 21:34; 21:35; 21:37; 22:3; 22:5; 22:10; 22:11; 22:12; 22:16; 22:17; 22:20; 22:24; 23:3; 23:5; 23:6; 23:10; 23:27; 23:29; 23:30; 24:21; 25:6; 25:9; 25:10; 25:14; 25:17; 25:21; 25:23; 26:6; 26:10; 26:26; 26:32; 27:1; 27:11; 27:12; 27:15; 27:17; 27:18; 27:20; 27:25; 27:27; 27:31; 27:36; 28:1; 28:8; 28:9; 28:14; 28:16; 28:17; 28:19; 28:22; 28:24; 28:28)



## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever **a speaker assumes his audience knows** before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When **the speaker does give the audience information**, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

**it will be more tolerable for** Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.  
or:  
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

**Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For** they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

**Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

**it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:9](#); [1:12](#); [1:18](#); [1:23](#); [1:24](#); [2:15](#); [2:27](#); [2:31](#); [2:33](#); [2:40](#); [3:6](#); [4:2](#); [4:13](#); [4:17](#); [4:23](#); [4:25](#); [5:3](#); [5:15](#); [5:20](#); [5:21](#); [5:23](#); [5:25](#); [5:38](#); [5:42](#); [6:5](#); [6:8](#); [6:11](#); [Notes](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:23](#); [7:26](#); [7:29](#); [7:30](#); [7:31](#); [7:32](#); [7:33](#); [7:36](#); [7:41](#); [7:43](#); [7:55](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [8:27](#); [8:31](#); [9:2](#); [9:8](#); [9:14](#); [9:30](#); [9:37](#); [10:4](#); [10:12](#); [10:14](#); [10:17](#); [10:27](#); [10:48](#); [11:6](#); [11:20](#); [11:28](#); [12:1](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:10](#); [12:20](#); [12:25](#); [13:25](#); [13:29](#); [13:35](#); [13:40](#); [13:43](#); [13:44](#); [13:46](#); [14:1](#); [14:11](#); [14:13](#); [14:19](#); [15:1](#); [15:2](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:21](#); [15:22](#); [15:27](#); [15:29](#); [15:41](#); [16:3](#); [16:12](#); [16:19](#); [16:29](#); [16:37](#); [16:38](#); [17:2](#); [17:5](#); [18:9](#); [18:27](#); [19:22](#); [19:33](#); [21:21](#); [21:24](#); [21:25](#); [21:28](#); [21:30](#); [21:38](#); [21:40](#); [22:24](#); [23:5](#); [23:12](#); [24:5](#); [24:18](#); [24:24](#); [25:15](#); [26:3](#); [26:23](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [27:7](#); [27:8](#); [27:21](#); [27:22](#); [28:4](#); [28:11](#))

## Background Information

### Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called

**background information.** The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

**Example** - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.***

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

### A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
  - where the story takes place
  - when the story takes place
  - who is present when the story begins
  - what is happening when the story begins

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

## Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

**With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch** for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

**Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.**  
 Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

**"When Abram was eighty-six years old,** Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

**John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch** for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]  
[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: Acts 1:17; 2:5; 3:1; 4:21; 5:1; 5:34; 6:1; 6:8; 8:1; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:26; 9:1; 9:33; 9:36; 10:1; 11:27; 12:1; 13:1; 13:7; 13:13; 16:1; 16:16; 17:11; 18:1; 18:24; 19:7; 19:23; 21:9; 21:29; 22:1; 23:8; 27:37; 28:8)

## Biblical Money

### Description:

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

### Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

### Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

### Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

**The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"The one owed **five hundred denali**, and the other owed **fifty denali**."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

"The one owed **five hundred silver coins**, and the other owed **fifty silver coins**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

"The one owed **five hundred days' wages**, and the other owed **fifty days' wages**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** <sup>1</sup>, and the other owed **fifty denarii**. <sup>2</sup>"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] five hundred days's wages  
[2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** <sup>1</sup>, and the other owed **fifty denarii**."  
(Luke 7:41 ULT)

[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)  
[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 19:19](#))



## Copy or Borrow Words

### Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#).)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Examples from the Bible

He saw a **fig** tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

### Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

אֶפְרַיִם - A man's name in Hebrew letters.

“Zephaniah” - The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

**Zephaniah** - This is a man’s name.

“Zephaniah” - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

**Zephaniah** - If your language does not have the “z”, you could use “s”. If your writing system does not use “ph” you could use “f”. Depending on how you pronounce the “i” you could spell it with “i” or “ai” or “ay”.

“Sefania”

“Sefanaia”

“Sefanaya”

(Go back to: [Acts 1 General Notes; 27:14](#))

## Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

### Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

### Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...**"

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[Quotations and Quote Margins](#)

## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

**He instructed him to tell no one, but told him,** “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

**He instructed him,** to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](http://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 17:15](#); [21:11](#); [21:33](#); [23:34](#); [23:35](#); [25:4](#); [28:6](#))

## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “**un** happy,” “**im** possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is **not** that we do **not** have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)

And this better confidence did **not** happen **without** the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will **not** go **unpunished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples from the Bible

...in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

## Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

■ **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

■ “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

...**in order** not

to be unfruitful\*\*. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

■ “...so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

■ **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

■ “Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished...”

**All things were made through him and** without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

■ “All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 11:8](#); [25:27](#); [26:19](#); [26:25](#); [27:31](#); [28:6](#))

# Doublet

## Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

## Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [Acts 1:7](#); [1:25](#); [2:7](#); [2:12](#); [2:20](#); [2:40](#); [3:10](#); [4:13](#); [8:21](#); [18:9](#); [20:24](#))



# Ellipsis

## Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***  
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

## There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples from the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort...***  
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

## Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

**...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight**

**."** (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

**He makes Lebanon skip like a calf** and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: Acts 2:20; 3:25; 5:21; 5:39; 6:4; 7:8; 11:15; 12:10; 14:4; 16:1; 16:14; 19:3; 19:26; 20:20; 21:14; 21:34; 23:11; 23:26)

# End of Story

## Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Background Information](#)

## Different purposes for end of story information

- To summarize the story
- To give a comment about what happened in the story
- To connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

## Reasons this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know these things:

- That this information is ending the story
- What the purpose of the information is
- How the information is related to the story

## Principles of translation

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

## Examples from the Bible

1. To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. ***In this way it happened that all of us came safely to land.*** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

1. To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. When they counted the value of them, it was fifty thousand pieces of silver. ***So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways.*** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

1. To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

Mary said, "My soul praises the Lord, and my spirit has rejoiced in God my savior..." **Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

1. To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

1. To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you teachers of Jewish laws, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things, trying to trap him in his own words.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

(Go back to: [Acts 2:40](#); [9:40](#); [12:24](#); [16:40](#); [17:32](#); [18:11](#); [19:18](#); [28:30](#))

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”  
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**they found Saul and his sons** fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

"they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [Acts 1:25](#); [5:5](#); [5:10](#); [7:60](#); [13:36](#); [21:36](#))

# Exclamations

## Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

## Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

## Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah". The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

**Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why", even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

**How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".

**You worthless person!** (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

"You **are** such a worthless person!"

**Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!** (Romans 11:33 ULT)

"Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word "wow" below shows that they were astonished. The expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

**They were absolutely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak."** (Mark 7:36 ULT)

"They were absolutely astonished, saying, '**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"

**Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULT)

"**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"  
**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

**How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!** (Romans 11:33 ULT)

"His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

**Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah**

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

"Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

(Go back to: [Acts 2:7](#))

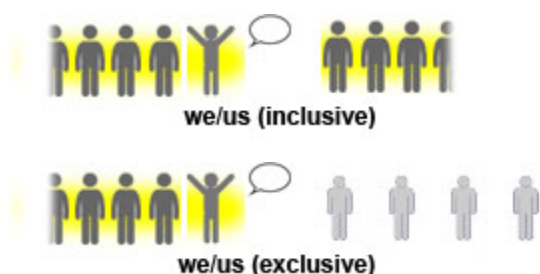


## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

**we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were **including** the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:17](#); [1:21](#); [2:32](#); [3:11](#); [3:15](#); [4:19](#); [5:29](#); [6:2](#); [6:10](#); [6:12](#); [7:26](#); [10:30](#); [10:39](#); [10:42](#); [11:11](#); [13:46](#); [15:24](#); [15:27](#); [16:27](#); [16:37](#); [17:19](#); [17:32](#); [20:4](#); [20:7](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [21:1](#); [21:3](#); [21:7](#); [21:10](#); [21:12](#); [21:15](#); [21:22](#); [21:25](#); [23:14](#); [24:1](#); [24:2](#); [24:4](#); [25:4](#); [27:1](#); [27:3](#); [27:9](#); [28:1](#); [28:7](#); [28:16](#); [28:21](#))

# First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

## Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

## Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

## Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

**So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if** each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 2:27](#); [10:15](#); [15:17](#); [23:26](#); [26:26](#))

# Forms of You

## Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual\]\]](#)

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](http://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

## Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](http://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [5:9](#); [5:24](#); [5:26](#); [6:2](#); [7:1](#); [7:4](#); [9:17](#); [10:27](#); [10:30](#); [15:7](#); [19:35](#); [23:14](#); [23:28](#); [24:1](#); [24:7](#); [25:25](#); [26:6](#); [27:30](#))

## Go and Come

### Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

### Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.  
Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land..."

Joseph and Mary **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue.  
Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to **come** to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **go** out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not **come** out in public.

### Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come**

to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

**Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go**

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **come** out in public for five months.

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

**When you have** come

to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it...”

**Yahweh said to Noah, “Come**

, you and all your household, into the ark... (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

“Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark...”

**Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go**

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **appear** in public for five months.

(Go back to: [Acts 16:1](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:11](#); [16:40](#); [17:1](#); [22:27](#); [24:17](#))

# How to Translate Names

## Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

## Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

## Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)



Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

**Saul** was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

**You went over the** Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

**Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

**She named him** Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

**...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called** Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**<sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

**a young man named** Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

**It came about in Iconium that** Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

**(Go back to:** [Acts 1:1; 1:23; 2:9; 2:10; 2:11; 8:27; 9:10; 9:36; 11:28; 12:20; 13:1; 13:6; 13:8; 14:6; 14:12; 15:22; 15:23; 16:7; 16:11; 16:14; 17:1; 17:5; 17:13; 17:18; 17:19; 17:21; 17:34; 18:2; 18:7; 18:8; 18:12; 18:17; 18:18; 18:24; 19:9; 19:14; 19:22; 19:23; 19:24; 19:29; 19:33; 20:4; 20:5; 20:9; 20:13; 20:14; 20:15; 20:16; 20:17; 21:1; 21:7; 21:10; 21:16; 22:12; 23:2; 23:25; 23:31; 24:1; 24:22; 24:24; 24:27; 25:13; 27:1; 27:5; 27:6; 27:7; 27:8; 27:12; 27:16; 27:17; 27:27; 28:1; 28:7; 28:12; 28:13\)](#)

# Hyperbole

## Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

**Hyperbole:** This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples from the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

**Can anything good come out of Nazareth?** (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways  
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

**The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops** as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

**And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

**The whole**

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”  
or:  
**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

**The whole**

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Acts 2:5](#); [4:16](#); [4:34](#); [6:2](#); [7:22](#); [8:1](#); [8:10](#); [9:21](#); [9:26](#); [9:32](#); [9:35](#); [10:2](#); [10:22](#); [10:37](#); [10:38](#); [11:28](#); [12:20](#); [15:21](#); [17:6](#); [17:21](#); [18:17](#); [19:10](#); [19:27](#); [20:31](#); [21:30](#); [21:31](#); [23:10](#); [24:5](#); [25:24](#); [26:4](#))

# Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...,” “What if the sun stopped shining...,” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...,” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

## Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

## Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

## Examples from the Bible

### Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! ***If the mighty deeds had been done*** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, ***they would have repented*** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”  
(Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that ***if*** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.



Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, ***if you had been here, my brother would not have died.***” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

### Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. ***If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.*** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, ***if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?***” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### Hypothetical situation in the future

***Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved;*** but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “***If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.*** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. ***I wish that you were either cold or hot!*** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

### Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](http://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

(Go back to: [Acts 23:9](#); [25:11](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

**I am not worthy that you should enter** under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Let these words** go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

**Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: Acts 1:8; 1:21; 2:13; 2:14; 2:17; 2:18; 2:24; 2:25; 2:30; 2:32; 2:33; 2:36; 2:37; 2:41; 3:4; 3:12; 3:13; 3:25; 4:10; 4:12; 4:24; 4:29; 4:35; 4:36; 4:37; 5:2; 5:17; 5:18; 5:30; 5:37; 6:10; 6:14; 6:15; 7:5; 7:9; 7:20; 7:23; 7:51; 7:54; 10:38; 10:40; 11:30; 12:1; 12:11; 13:10; 13:22; 13:30; 13:33; 13:37; 14:11; 17:6; 21:27; 22:13; 25:16; 25:20; 27:34)

# Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

## Description

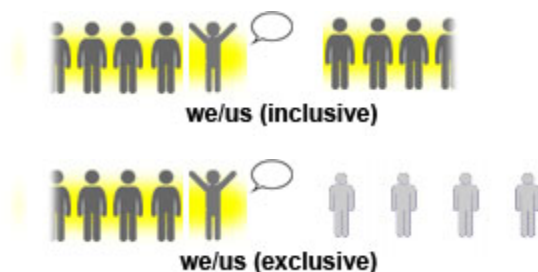
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive and exclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

## Examples from the Bible

### Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

### Exclusive

**we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 4:11](#); [7:17](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [13:16](#); [13:19](#); [13:26](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#); [15:7](#); [15:10](#); [15:19](#); [16:20](#); [17:26](#); [17:28](#); [20:17](#))

# Introduction of a New Event

## Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events\]\]](#)

## Examples from the Bible

***In the days of Herod***, king of Judea, ***there was a certain priest named Zechariah***, from the division of Abijah. ***His wife was*** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

***One day*** while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

***The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way***. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

***After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king***, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened ***after*** Jesus was born.

***In those days*** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

***Then*** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a ***Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council***. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

<sup>6</sup> Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. <sup>7</sup> Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.  
(Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

**Now there was a** Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council.** One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council,** came to Jesus and said...

**As he passed by,** he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

**Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.



**After that**, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

**Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

**Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.** (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Introduction of New and Old Participants](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:15](#); [6:1](#); [8:14](#); [8:26](#); [9:3](#); [9:32](#); [9:36](#); [9:43](#); [11:1](#); [11:19](#); [11:26](#); [12:1](#); [12:20](#))

## Introduction of New and Old Participants

### Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now ***there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus...This man*** came to Jesus at night time...  
Jesus replied to ***him*** (John 3:1)

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he is an old participant.

### Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

### Examples from the Bible

#### New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man” in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

***There was a man*** from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important one is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife”. This phrase shows her relationship to him.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. ***His wife*** was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

When King David was very old, they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

#### Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his”, and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she”.

***His*** wife was not able to become pregnant and so ***she*** had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to with the noun phrase "the woman".

The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the woman** and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh...(Judges 13:8 ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

## Translation Strategies

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

**Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).** (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) - Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).

There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

- (2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

**It happened when he**

finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples." (Luke 11:1 ULT) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who "he" refers to.

It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples."

- (3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's

master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20 ULT) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it unnatural or confusing to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.

Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns]]

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#); [5:1](#); [5:34](#); [6:8](#); [7:20](#); [8:9](#); [8:27](#); [9:10](#); [9:33](#); [10:1](#); [14:8](#); [16:14](#); [16:16](#); [18:2](#); [18:24](#); [19:24](#); [21:10](#); [25:13](#))

# Litotes

## Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

## Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

**For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was** not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

**Now when it became day, there was** no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [Acts 7:60](#); [12:18](#); [14:17](#); [15:38](#); [17:4](#); [17:27](#); [19:35](#); [20:27](#); [25:24](#); [26:26](#); [28:2](#))

# Merism

## Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

**Alpha and Omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

## Examples from the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

## Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything...**

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

■ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

■ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

■ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

**He will bless those who honor him, both** young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

■ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [Acts 8:10](#); [17:24](#); [26:7](#); [26:22](#))



# Metaphor

## Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table *leg*", "family *tree*", "book *leaf*" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

### Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

### Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

**Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet**

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, ***immediately bowed down in front of him.***

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

**It was because of your** hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your ***hard hearts*** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick against a pointed stick*.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock *under which I can hide from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick*.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

**I will make you become** fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: Acts 1:20; 2:20; 2:24; 2:35; 3:15; 3:19; 3:26; Notes; 4:11; 5:3; 5:28; 6:7; 7:39; 8:23; 9:31; 9:35; 10:38; 10:45; 11:21; 12:24; Notes; 13:8; 13:45; 13:46; 13:47; 14:2; 14:15; 14:16; 14:27; 15:3; 15:9; 15:10; 15:16; 15:17; 15:19; 15:28; 15:32; 15:33; 15:41; 16:5; 16:14; 16:17; 17:3; 17:5; 17:13; 17:18; 17:20; 17:21; 17:27; 17:29; 18:23; 18:26; 19:9; 19:26; 19:28; 19:29; 19:34; Notes; 20:3; 20:9; 20:16; 20:18; 20:19; 20:24; 20:28; 20:29; 20:30; 20:31; 20:32; 21:5; 21:13; 21:21; 21:24; 21:27; 22:16; Notes; 23:3; 23:14; 24:5; 24:12; 25:2; 25:7; 25:15; 25:16; 26:6; 26:7; 26:14; 26:18; 26:20; 26:23; 26:26; 27:12; 28:2; 28:6; 28:15; 28:27; 28:28)

# Metonymy

## Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: Acts 1:4; 1:16; 1:24; 2:14; 2:21; 2:23; 2:28; 2:30; 2:38; 2:45; 2:46; 3:6; 3:18; 3:20; 3:21; 4:7; 4:10; 4:12; 4:17; 4:19; 4:25; 4:26; 4:28; 4:29; 4:30; 4:32; 5:3; 5:4; 5:18; 5:20; 5:28; 5:30; 5:31; 5:40; 5:41; 6:2; 6:14; Notes; 7:7; 7:10; 7:18; 7:23; 7:25; 7:35; 7:38; 7:39; 7:42; 7:45; 7:51; 8:4; 8:5; 8:8; 8:16; 8:21; 8:22; 8:25; 8:28; 8:29; 8:30; 8:35; 9:2; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:21; 9:27; 9:28; 10:43; 10:48; 11:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:8; 11:9; 11:14; 11:21; 11:22; 11:23; 11:24; 12:2; 12:11; 13:10; 13:11; 13:17; 13:23; 13:27; 13:35; 13:36; 13:37; 13:42; 13:44; 13:48; 13:49; 14:4; 14:17; 14:25; 15:3; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:14; 15:15; 15:16; 15:17; 15:21; 15:22; 15:26; 15:35; 15:36; 15:41; 16:6; 16:14; 16:15; 16:18; 16:29; 16:31; 16:32; 16:35; 16:37; 17:5; 17:11; 17:19; 17:20; 17:29; 17:31; 18:6; 18:8; 18:12; 18:16; 18:22; 19:5; 19:8; 19:10; 19:13; 19:17; 19:27; 19:29; 20:19; 20:23; 20:25; 20:26; 20:28; 20:31; 20:32; 20:35; 21:2; 21:3; 21:11; 21:13; 21:21; 21:30; 21:31; 22:3; 22:4; 22:20; 22:30; 24:10; 24:16; 25:6; 25:10; 25:17; 26:7; 26:9; 26:14; 26:19; 26:29; 26:31; 27:2; 27:24; 28:17; 28:19; 28:20; 28:23; 28:25; 28:27; 28:31)



## Nominal Adjectives

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds...(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

**He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

**The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of** the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

█ The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *righteous people*.

**Blessed are** the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

█ Blessed are *people who are meek*...

(Go back to: [Acts 10:42](#); [19:12](#); [20:35](#); [23:6](#); [24:15](#); [24:21](#))

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Acts 1:15](#); [2:41](#); [7:6](#); [19:7](#); [19:19](#); [21:38](#); [23:13](#); [23:21](#); [23:23](#); [24:11](#); [27:27](#); [27:28](#); [27:33](#); [27:37](#))

# Ordinal Numbers

## Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

## Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

## Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

## Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

**The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.  
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

**A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four**

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

**The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Acts 7:13](#); [27:27](#); [27:33](#))

# Parallelism

## Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.  
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

## Examples from the Bible

### (1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

### (2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

### (3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]



I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

**Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

**For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

**you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 1:20](#); [4:26](#); [18:9](#); [28:26](#))

# Personification

## Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

## Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Acts 2:24](#); [3:21](#); [Notes](#); [20:32](#))

# Quotations and Quote Margins

## Description

This page answers the question: *What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the **quote margin**. What the person said is the **quotation**. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are underlined below.

- ***She said***, "The food is ready. Come and eat."
- "The food is ready. Come and eat," ***she said***.
- "The food is ready," ***she said***. "Come and eat."

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning "said".

But his mother ***answered*** and ***said***, "No, instead he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (" "). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning "said".
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

## Examples from the Bible

### Quote margin before the quote

***Zechariah said to the angel***, "How will I know this will happen? For I am an old man, and my wife also is very old." (Luke 1:18 ULT)

Then some tax collectors also came to be baptized, and ***they said to him***, "Teacher, what must we do?" (Luke 3:12 ULT)

***He said to them***, "Do not collect more money than you are supposed to." (Luke 3:13 ULT)

### Quote margin after the quote

Yahweh relented concerning this. "It will not happen," ***he said***. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

### Quote margin between two parts of the quote

"I will hide my face from them," ***he said***, "and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful." (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

"Therefore, those who can," ***he said***, "should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him." (Acts 25:5 ULT)

"For look, days are coming"—***this is Yahweh's declaration***—"when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel" (Jeremiah 30:3 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

1. Decide where to put the quote margin.
2. Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

“Therefore, those who can,” he said,

“should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)

**He said**, “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said”.

**But his mother** answered and said

, “No, instead he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

But his mother **replied**, “No, instead he will be called John.”

But his mother **said**, “No, instead he will be called John.”

But his mother **answered** like this, “No, instead he will be called John,” she **said**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 14:22](#); [25:5](#); [25:22](#))

## Quotes within Quotes

### Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I", the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

### Examples from the Bible

#### A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULT)

#### Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULT

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

#### A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, "...I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, ***"He is my brother."***' " (Genesis 20:10-13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

#### A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: ***'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'***" " " (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

## Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

**Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things**

. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar." (Acts 25:14-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'**

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

**Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, 'At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.' "** (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them **that** at twilight **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be filled with bread. Then **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

**They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"** (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"



Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]

(Go back to: [Acts 21:11](#); [28:25](#); [28:26](#))

## Reflexive Pronouns

### Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "itself", "ourselves", "yourselves", and "themselves". Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

### Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

### Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place **by itself**. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

■ **If I should testify about** myself

alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

■ “If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

**Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to** purify themselves

. (John 11:55)

■ “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

■ He himself

took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

■ “**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself

was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

■ “**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

■ **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he** himself

knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.

■ **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain** by himself

. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

**He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place** by itself

. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [Acts 8:13](#); [12:10](#); [16:37](#); [17:25](#); [19:22](#); [20:13](#); [20:18](#); [20:34](#); [22:19](#))

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

***Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

***What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?*** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

**Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

**Or** what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: Acts 2:7; 2:8; 3:12; 4:9; 4:16; 4:25; 5:3; 5:4; 5:9; 7:26; 7:27; 7:42; 7:49; 7:50; 7:52; 8:31; 8:33; 8:36; 9:4; 9:21; 10:47; 11:17; 13:10; 13:25; 14:15; 15:10; 16:37; 19:15; 19:35; 21:13; 21:37; 21:38; 22:16; 22:25; 22:26; 23:3; 23:4; 26:8; 26:14; 26:27; 26:28)

# Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

## Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.



## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

**For the word of God is living and active and sharper** than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

**If you have faith even as small** as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings  
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Acts 2:3](#); [6:15](#))

# Symbolic Action

## Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No". Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

## Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

## Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes".

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

## Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Acts 2:34](#); [5:31](#); [6:6](#); [7:33](#); [7:42](#); [7:54](#); [7:55](#); [7:57](#); [7:60](#); [8:17](#); [9:12](#); [9:17](#); [10:25](#); [13:3](#); [13:16](#); [16:29](#); [18:6](#); [18:18](#); [20:36](#); [21:5](#); [21:24](#); [22:23](#))

# Symbolic Language

## Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel." (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

## Purposes of symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

## Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

## Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

## Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man,...He had in his right hand **seven stars**, and coming out of his mouth was **a sharp two-edged sword**...As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

## Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.

(2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal

, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, <sup>1</sup> terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; <sup>2</sup> it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. <sup>3</sup>

The footnotes would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.

<sup>[2]</sup> The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.

<sup>[3]</sup> The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [Acts 13:51](#))

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

**My soul** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

**the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 2:25; 2:26; 2:41; 2:42; 2:43; 2:46; 4:5; 4:28; 5:9; 5:12; 7:48; 8:14; 8:25; 9:23; 10:13; 11:7; 12:11; 13:5; 13:15; 13:45; 13:46; 13:50; 14:2; 14:3; 14:22; 15:7; 15:24; 16:26; 17:16; 17:24; 17:25; 18:6; 18:11; 18:12; 18:25; 19:11; 19:20; 19:26; 20:3; 20:7; 20:11; 20:18; 20:19; 20:25; 20:34; 20:38; 21:11; 21:26; 21:27; 22:7; 22:9; 22:11; 22:14; 23:20; 23:27; 24:9; 24:27; 25:8; 25:9; 26:2; 26:7; 26:21; 28:19](#))



## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

<sup>53</sup> [Then every man went to his own house.... <sup>11</sup> She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] <sup>[2]</sup>

<sup>[2]</sup> The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand.  
<sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him.  
 It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup><sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>  
 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what  
 comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup><sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let  
 him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>  
 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what  
 comes out of the person that defiles him. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to Acts](#); [Acts 10:19](#); [10:30](#))

# Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

## Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

## Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

## Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

## Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

**Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves**

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

**We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

**your sins...will be white like** snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

**Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with** myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

**We have here only five loaves of** bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

■ We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

■ **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

■ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

**We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

■ **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

■ to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 19:38](#); [Notes](#))

# Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

## Biblical Witness

**“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and...a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth,...no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**” (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father **loves** the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I **love** the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

**...no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son.** (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you...I glorified you on the earth,...Now Father, glorify me...with the glory that **I had with you before the world was created.**” (John 17:1-5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory, **the very character of his essence.** He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’? (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod]]

## Human Relationships

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the** Father

and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

## Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

(Go back to: [Acts 9:20](#); [13:33](#))

# Verse Bridges

## Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

This page answers the question: *Why are some verse numbers combined in the UST, such as "3-5" or "17-18"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg\]\]](https://en.ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg)

<sup>29</sup> These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, <sup>30</sup> Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

<sup>29-30</sup> The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

## Examples from the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

<sup>4-5</sup> Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

<sup>4</sup> However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), <sup>5</sup> if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

<sup>16-17</sup> But Yahweh said to him, "You must not eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are evil to do as well as what actions are good to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on that day your relationship with me will end. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the garden." (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

<sup>16</sup> Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. <sup>17</sup> But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die." (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in [translationStudio](#).



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

**<sup>2</sup> you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. <sup>3</sup> You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there.** (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)

<sup>2-3</sup> you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Acts 8:1](#); [13:33](#))

## When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

### Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says **‘brothers’** when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes **his** father rejoice  
but a foolish child brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

### Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

### Examples from the Bible

We want you to know, **brothers**, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If a **man** dies, having no children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have a child for **his brother**.’ (Mark 22:24 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-genericnoun]]

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

**The wise man**

dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”  
 “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

**For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers**

, about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be ignorant, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

**If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”**  
 (Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: [Acts 15:17](#); [16:40](#); [17:10](#); [17:14](#); [17:30](#); [18:18](#); [18:27](#); [20:26](#); [21:17](#); [22:15](#); [28:14](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 14**

# Aaron

## Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

(Go back to: [Acts 7:40](#))

## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldea](#), Sarah, [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [3:25](#); [7:2](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:32](#); [13:26](#))

## accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

### Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 04:04
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3198, H6818, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

(Go back to: [Acts 19:38](#); [19:40](#); [22:30](#); [23:28](#); [23:29](#); [23:30](#); [23:35](#); [24:2](#); [24:8](#); [24:13](#); [24:19](#); [25:5](#); [25:11](#); [25:16](#); [25:18](#); [26:2](#); [26:7](#); [28:19](#))

## admonish, warned, aware

### Definition:

The term “admonish” means to firmly warn or advise someone.

- Usually “admonish” means to advise someone not to do something.
- In the body of Christ, believers are taught to admonish each other to avoid sin and to live holy lives.
- The word “admonish” could be translated as “encourage not to sin” or “urge someone to not sin.”

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 09:32-34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2094, H5749, G3560, G3867, G5537

(Go back to: [Acts 20:31](#))



## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [Acts 2:35](#); [13:10](#))

## advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

### Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(Go back to: [Acts 2:23](#); [4:28](#); [13:36](#); [20:27](#))

## age, aged

### Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G165, G1074

(Go back to: [Acts 3:21](#); [14:16](#))

## alien, foreign, foreigner

### Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

(Go back to: [Acts 7:6](#); [7:29](#); [26:11](#))

# alms

## Definition:

The term “alms” refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

- Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
- Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
- This term could be translated as “money” or “gifts to poor people” or “help for the poor.”

## Bible References:

- Acts 03:1-3
- Matthew 06:01
- Matthew 06:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G1654

(Go back to: [Acts 3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:10](#); [9:36](#); [10:2](#); [10:4](#); [10:31](#); [24:17](#))

# altar

## Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), grain offering, [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [Acts 17:23](#))

## amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [Acts 2:7](#); [2:12](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#); [2:43](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [4:13](#); [4:30](#); [5:12](#); [6:8](#); [7:31](#); [7:36](#); [8:9](#); [8:11](#); [8:13](#); [9:21](#); [10:45](#); [12:16](#); [13:12](#); [13:41](#); [14:3](#); [15:12](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [3:25](#); [4:25](#); [5:30](#); [7:2](#); [7:4](#); [7:8](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:19](#); [7:20](#); [7:29](#); [7:32](#); [7:38](#); [7:39](#); [7:44](#); [7:45](#); [7:51](#); [7:52](#); [13:17](#); [13:32](#); [13:36](#); [15:10](#); [16:1](#); [16:3](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#); [22:14](#); [24:14](#); [26:6](#); [28:8](#); [28:17](#); [28:25](#))



# Andrew

## Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

- Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
- Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
- Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 01:40
- Mark 01:17
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 10:2-4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G406

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), messenger, Michael, [ruler](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”

- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

(Go back to: [Acts 5:19](#); [6:15](#); [7:30](#); [7:35](#); [7:38](#); [7:53](#); [8:26](#); [10:3](#); [10:7](#); [10:22](#); [11:13](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:15](#); [12:23](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [27:23](#))

# Annas

## Facts:

Annas was the Jewish high priest in Jerusalem for 10 years, from approximately AD 6 to AD 15. Then he was removed from the high priesthood by the Roman government, although he continued to be an influential leader among the Jews.

- Annas was father-in-law to Caiaphas, the official high priest during the ministry of Jesus.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Annas's son-in-law Caiaphas was the official high priest. Annas is also mentioned as a high priest, however, because he was a former high priest who still had power and authority over the people.
- During his trial before the Jewish leaders, Jesus was first brought to Annas for questioning.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [high priest](#), [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:22-24
- Luke 03:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G452

(Go back to: [Acts 4:6](#))

## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), consecrate, [high priest](#), King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#) )

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

(Go back to: [Acts 4:27](#); [10:38](#))

# Antioch

## Facts:

Antioch was the name of two cities in the New Testament. One was in Syria, near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The other was in the Roman province of Pisidia, near the city of Colossae.

- The local church at Antioch of Syria was the first place where believers in Jesus were called “Christians.” The church there was also active in sending out missionaries to reach the Gentiles.
- The leaders of the church in Jerusalem sent a letter to the believers in the church at Antioch in Syria to help them know they didn’t have to keep the Jewish laws in order to be Christians.
- Paul, Barnabas and John Mark traveled to the Antioch in Pisidia to share the gospel. Some Jews from other cities came there to stir up trouble, and they tried to kill Paul. But many other people, both Jews and Gentiles, listened to the teaching and believed in Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [Colossae](#), [John Mark](#), [Paul](#), [province](#), [Rome](#), [Syria](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 11:26
- Galatians 02:11-12

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G491

(Go back to: [Acts 6:5](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [11:22](#); [11:26](#); [11:27](#); [13:1](#); [14:19](#); [14:21](#); [14:26](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [15:30](#); [15:35](#); [18:22](#))

# Apollos

## Facts:

Apollos was a Jew from the city of Alexandria in Egypt who had a special ability in teaching people about Jesus.

- Apollos was well educated in the Hebrew Scriptures and was a gifted speaker.
- He was instructed by two Christians in Ephesus named Aquila and Priscilla.
- Paul emphasized that he and Apollos, as well as other evangelists and teachers, were working toward the same goal of helping people to believe in Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aquila](#), [Ephesus](#), [Priscilla](#), [word of God](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:13
- 1 Corinthians 16:12
- Acts 18:25
- Titus 03:13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G625

(Go back to: [Acts 18:24](#); [19:1](#))

## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Paul](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

(Go back to: [Acts 1:2](#); [1:25](#); [1:26](#); [2:37](#); [2:42](#); [2:43](#); [4:33](#); [4:35](#); [4:36](#); [4:37](#); [5:2](#); [5:12](#); [5:18](#); [5:29](#); [5:40](#); [6:6](#); [8:1](#); [8:14](#); [8:18](#); [9:27](#); [11:1](#); [14:4](#); [14:14](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [16:4](#))



## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [Acts 1:7](#); [3:20](#); [6:3](#); [7:10](#); [7:27](#); [7:35](#); [13:47](#); [13:48](#); [15:2](#); [17:26](#); [17:31](#); [20:28](#); [22:10](#); [22:14](#); [26:16](#); [28:23](#))

# Aquila

## Facts:

Aquila was a Jewish Christian from the province of Pontus, a region along the southern coast of the Black Sea.

- Aquila and Priscilla lived in Rome, Italy, for a time, but then the Roman emperor, Claudius, forced all Jews to leave Rome.
- After that Aquila and Priscilla traveled to Corinth, where they met the apostle Paul.
- They worked as tentmakers with Paul and also helped him with his missionary work.
- Both Aquila and Priscilla taught believers the truth about Jesus; one of those believers was a gifted teacher named Apollos.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Apollos](#), [Corinth](#), [Rome](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 2 Timothy 04:19-22
- Acts 18:02
- Acts 18:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G207

(Go back to: [Acts 18:2](#); [18:18](#); [18:26](#))

## Arabia, Arabian

### Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term “Arabian” is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham’s son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esau, [Galatia](#), Ishmael, Shem, [Sinai](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:14-15
- Acts 02:11
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Jeremiah 25:24-26
- Nehemiah 02:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6152, H6153, H6163, G688, G690

(Go back to: [Acts 2:11](#))

## ash, ashes

### Facts:

The term “ash” (or “ashes”) refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned.

- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving. When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or put ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- Sometimes the word "dust" is used with the term "ashes" in the phrase, "dust and ashes." This phrase can be translated as "dust and ashes" or simply as "ashes."
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the target language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.

(See also: [fire](#), sackcloth)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Psalms 102:09
- Psalms 113:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H80, H665, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

(Go back to: [Acts 13:51](#); [22:23](#))

# Asia

## Facts:

In Bible times, "Asia" was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, "the ancient Roman province called Asia" or "Asia Province."
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Rome](#), [Paul](#), [Ephesus](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 1 Peter 01:1-2
- 2 Timothy 01:15-18
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 16:07
- Acts 27:1-2
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Romans 16:05

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G773

(Go back to: [Acts 2:9](#); [6:9](#); [16:6](#); [19:10](#); [19:22](#); [19:26](#); [19:27](#); [20:16](#); [20:18](#); [21:27](#); [24:19](#); [27:2](#))

## asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:14
- Acts 07:60
- Daniel 12:02
- Psalms 044:23
- Romans 13:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

(Go back to: [Acts 7:60](#); [13:36](#); [20:9](#))

## assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: [council](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [1:6](#); [2:6](#); [4:5](#); [4:26](#); [4:27](#); [4:31](#); [5:16](#); [5:21](#); [7:38](#); [10:27](#); [11:26](#); [12:12](#); [13:44](#); [14:27](#); [15:6](#); [15:30](#); [16:13](#); [19:32](#); [19:39](#); [19:41](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [22:30](#); [25:17](#); [28:17](#))

# authority

## Definition:

The term "authority" refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God's authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
- Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
- When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
- The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as, "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
- The expression, "under authority" could be translated as, "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [obey](#), [power](#), [ruler](#))

## Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

(Go back to: [Acts 1:7](#); [5:4](#); [8:19](#); [8:27](#); [9:14](#); [26:10](#); [26:12](#); [26:18](#))



## avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:47
- Romans 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

(Go back to: [Acts 7:24](#))

# Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

## Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, [Chaldea](#), Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:01
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:02
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 01:11
- Matthew 01:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

(Go back to: [Acts 7:43](#))

# baptize, baptized, baptism

## Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as, “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:07** John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead.”
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?”
- **46:05** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G907

(Go back to: [Acts 1 General Notes](#); [1:5](#); [1:22](#); [Notes](#); [2:38](#); [2:41](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [8:16](#); [8:36](#); [8:38](#); [9:18](#); [10:37](#); [10:47](#); [10:48](#); [11:16](#); [13:24](#); [16:15](#); [16:33](#); [18:8](#); [18:25](#); [19:3](#); [19:4](#); [19:5](#); [22:16](#))

## Barnabas

### Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

- Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
- When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
- Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
- His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christian](#), [Cyprus](#), [good news](#), [Levite](#), [Paul](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:36
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 13:03
- Acts 15:33
- Colossians 04:10-11
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Galatians 02:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:08** Then a believer named **Barnabas** took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.
- **46:09** **Barnabas** and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church. I
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me **Barnabas** and Saul to do the work I have called them to do." So the church in Antioch prayed for **Barnabas** and Saul and placed their hands on them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G921

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#); [9:27](#); [11:22](#); [11:30](#); [12:25](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:7](#); [13:43](#); [13:46](#); [13:50](#); [14:12](#); [14:14](#); [14:20](#); [15:2](#); [15:12](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#); [15:37](#); [15:39](#))

## Bartholomew

### Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
- He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
- A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [good news](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#), [Pentecost](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G918

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## basket, basketfuls

### Definition:

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be “floating container.”

(See also: ark, [Moses](#), Nile River, Noah)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:33
- Acts 09:25
- Amos 08:01
- John 06:13-15
- Judges 06:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

(Go back to: [Acts 9:25](#))

## bear, bearer, carry

### Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [burden](#), [Elisha](#), [endure](#), [fruit](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4160, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

(Go back to: [Acts 3:2](#); [9:15](#); [15:10](#); [18:14](#); [21:35](#))

## beast

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), Daniel, livestock, [nation](#), [power](#), [reveal](#), Beelzebul)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

(Go back to: [Acts 11:6](#); [23:24](#))



## beg, beggar, needy

### Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: plead)

### Bible References:

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 045:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:04** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **29:08** “The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **32:07** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **44:01** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H34, H7592, G154, G1871, G4319, G4434

(Go back to: [Acts 13:28](#); [16:9](#); [16:15](#); [16:39](#); [21:12](#); [24:4](#); [25:2](#); [25:24](#); [28:14](#))

## believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

### Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

#### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

#### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

#### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

#### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [Acts 2:44](#); [4:4](#); [4:32](#); [5:14](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [9:26](#); [9:42](#); [10:43](#); [11:17](#); [11:21](#); [13:12](#); [13:39](#); [13:41](#); [13:48](#); [Notes](#); [14:1](#); [14:23](#); [15:5](#); [15:7](#); [15:11](#); [16:1](#); [16:31](#); [16:34](#); [17:12](#); [17:34](#); [18:8](#); [18:27](#); [19:2](#); [19:4](#); [19:18](#); [21:20](#); [21:25](#); [22:19](#); [24:14](#); [26:27](#))

# beloved

## Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: [Acts 15:25](#))

## Benjamin, Benjamite

### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), Rachel, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: [Acts 13:21](#))

## Berea

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Berea (or Beroea) was a prosperous Greek city in southeast Macedonia, about 80 kilometers south of Thessalonica.

- Paul and Silas fled to the city of Berea after their fellow Christians helped them escape from certain Jews who had caused trouble for them in Thessalonica.
- When the people living in Berea heard Paul preach, they researched the Scriptures to confirm that what he was telling them was true.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), [Silas](#), [Thessalonica](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 17:11
- Acts 17:13-15
- Acts 20:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G960

(Go back to: [Acts 17:10](#); [17:13](#); [20:4](#))

## betray, betrayer

### Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), Jewish leaders, [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- John 06:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:04
- Matthew 26:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:06** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” ¶ Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **38:14** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **39:08** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7411, G3860, G4273

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [7:52](#))

## bind, bond, bound

### Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [Acts 8:23](#); [9:2](#); [9:14](#); [9:21](#); [12:6](#); [20:22](#); [20:23](#); [21:11](#); [21:13](#); [21:33](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:29](#); [23:14](#); [23:29](#); [26:29](#); [26:31](#); [28:20](#))



# blameless

## Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 2 Peter 03:14
- Colossians 01:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 02:15
- Philippians 03:06

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5352, H5355, H8535, G273, G274, G298, G299, G338, G410, G423

(Go back to: [Acts 24:16](#))

# blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, [slander](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 074:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

(Go back to: [Acts 6:11](#); [13:45](#); [19:37](#); [26:11](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [Acts 3:25](#); [3:26](#); [20:35](#); [26:2](#))

# blood

## Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [Acts 1:19](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [5:28](#); [15:20](#); [15:29](#); [18:6](#); [20:26](#); [20:28](#); [21:25](#); [22:20](#))

## body

### Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

(Go back to: [Acts 5:29](#); [9:40](#))

## **bold, boldness, emboldened**

### **Definition:**

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ’s redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: confidence, [good news](#), [redeem](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:28
- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
- Acts 04:13

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H982, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

(Go back to: [Acts 4:13](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [9:27](#); [9:28](#); [13:46](#); [14:3](#); [18:26](#); [19:8](#); [26:26](#); [28:31](#))

# bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

## Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [Acts 7:60](#); [9:40](#); [10:25](#); [16:29](#); [20:36](#); [21:5](#))



# bread

## Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), yeast)

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [Acts 2:42](#); [2:46](#); [20:7](#); [20:11](#); [27:35](#))

## breath, breathe

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: Adam, [Paul](#), [word of God](#), [life](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:17
- Ecclesiastes 08:08
- Job 04:09
- Revelation 11:11
- Revelation 13:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3307, H5301, H5396, H5397, H7307, G1720, G4157

(Go back to: [Acts 2:2](#); [17:25](#))

## brother

### Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [Acts 1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [2:29](#); [2:37](#); [3:17](#); [3:22](#); [6:3](#); [7:2](#); [7:13](#); [7:23](#); [7:25](#); [7:26](#); [7:37](#); [9:17](#); [9:30](#); [10:23](#); [11:1](#); [11:12](#); [11:29](#); [12:2](#); [12:17](#); [13:15](#); [13:26](#); [13:38](#); [14:2](#); [15:1](#); [15:3](#); [15:7](#); [15:13](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [15:32](#); [15:33](#); [15:36](#); [15:40](#); [16:2](#); [16:40](#); [17:6](#); [17:10](#); [17:14](#); [18:18](#); [18:27](#); [21:7](#); [21:17](#); [21:20](#); [22:1](#); [22:5](#); [22:13](#); [23:1](#); [23:5](#); [23:6](#); [28:14](#); [28:15](#); [28:17](#); [28:21](#))

# burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

## Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

## Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: [Acts 15:28](#))

## bury, buried, burial

### Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(Go back to: [Acts 2:29](#); [5:6](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [8:2](#))

# Caesar

## Facts:

The term “Caesar” was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was “Caesar Augustus,” who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title “Caesar.”
- When “Caesar” is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: “the Emperor” or “the Roman Ruler.”
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, “Caesar” can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#), [Paul](#), [Rome](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 25:06
- Luke 02:01
- Luke 20:23-24
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:17
- Philippians 04:22

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2541

(Go back to: [Acts 17:7](#); [25:8](#); [25:10](#); [25:11](#); [25:12](#); [25:21](#); [25:25](#); [26:32](#); [27:24](#); [28:19](#))

## Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi

### Facts:

Caesarea was an important city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 39 km south of Mount Carmel. Caesarea Philippi was a city located in the northeastern part of Israel, near Mount Hermon.

- These cities were named for the Caesars who ruled the Roman empire.
- The coastal Caesarea became the capital city of the Roman province of Judea around the time of the birth of Jesus.
- The apostle Peter first preached to the Gentiles in Caesarea.
- Paul sailed from Caesarea to Tarsus and also passed through this city on two of his missionary journeys.
- Jesus and his disciples traveled in the region surrounding Caesarea Philippi in Syria. Both cities were named after Herod Philip.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Caesar](#), [Gentile](#), [the sea](#), Carmel, Mount Hermon, [Rome](#), [Tarsus](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:30
- Acts 10:1-2
- Acts 25:01
- Acts 25:14
- Mark 08:27
- Matthew 16:13-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2542, G5376

(Go back to: [Acts 8:40](#); [9:30](#); [10:1](#); [10:24](#); [11:11](#); [12:19](#); [18:22](#); [21:8](#); [21:16](#); [23:23](#); [23:33](#); [25:1](#); [25:4](#); [25:6](#); [25:13](#))

# Caiaphas

## Facts:

Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

- Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
- The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
- Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Annas](#), [high priest](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:12
- Luke 03:02
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:57-58

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2533

(Go back to: [Acts 4:6](#))



## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [Acts 1:19](#); [1:23](#); [2:21](#); [2:39](#); [3:2](#); [3:11](#); [4:18](#); [4:36](#); [5:40](#); [6:2](#); [6:9](#); [7:59](#); [8:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:14](#); [9:21](#); [9:41](#); [10:1](#); [10:5](#); [10:7](#); [10:18](#); [10:24](#); [10:28](#); [10:32](#); [11:13](#); [11:26](#); [12:12](#); [12:25](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [14:12](#); [15:17](#); [15:22](#); [15:37](#); [16:10](#); [19:13](#); [20:17](#); [22:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:18](#); [23:23](#); [24:14](#); [25:3](#); [25:11](#); [25:12](#); [25:21](#); [25:25](#); [26:32](#); [27:8](#); [27:14](#); [27:16](#); [28:1](#); [28:17](#); [28:20](#))

## Canaan, Canaanite

### Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: [Acts 7:11](#); [13:19](#))

## cast out, driving out, throw out

### Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagog or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: [demon](#), demon-possessed, [lots](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:17-19
- Mark 03:13-16
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G1544

(Go back to: [Acts 7:58](#); [13:50](#); [16:37](#); [27:38](#))

## caught up

### Definition:

The term “caught up” often refers to God taking a person up to heaven in a sudden, miraculous way.

- The phrase “caught up with” refers to coming up to someone after hurrying to reach him. A term with a similar meaning is “overtake.”
- The apostle Paul talked about being “caught up” to the third heaven. This could also be translated as “taken up.”
- Paul said that when Christ comes back, Christians will be “caught up” together to meet him in the air.
- The figurative expression, “my sins have caught up with me” could be translated as, “I am receiving the consequences of my sin” or “because of my sin I am suffering” or “my sin is causing me trouble.”

(see: [miracle](#), overtake, [suffer](#), [trouble](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:1-2
- Acts 08:39-40

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1692, G726

(Go back to: [Acts 8:39](#))

## centurion

### Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

- This could also be translated with a term that means, “leader of a hundred men” or “army leader” or “officer in charge of a hundred.”
- One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
- The centurion in charge of Jesus’ crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
- God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 10:01
- Acts 27:01
- Acts 27:42-44
- Luke 07:04
- Luke 23:47
- Mark 15:39
- Matthew 08:07
- Matthew 27:54

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G1543, G2760

(Go back to: [Acts 10:1](#); [10:22](#); [21:32](#); [22:25](#); [22:26](#); [23:17](#); [23:23](#); [24:23](#); [27:1](#); [27:6](#); [27:11](#); [27:31](#); [27:43](#))

## Chaldea, Chaldean

### Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), Shinar, Ur)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:4-5
- Ezekiel 01:01
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

(Go back to: [Acts 7:4](#))

## chariot, charioteers

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29
- Acts 08:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

(Go back to: [Acts 8:28](#); [8:29](#); [8:38](#))



# chief

## Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), tax collector)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(Go back to: [Acts 25:2](#); [28:7](#))

## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(Go back to: [Acts 2:39](#); [7:5](#); [7:19](#); [13:23](#); [13:33](#); [17:28](#); [17:29](#); [21:5](#); [21:21](#))

## chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

### Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: [Acts 1:2](#); [1:24](#); [6:5](#); [9:15](#); [13:17](#); [14:23](#); [15:7](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:40](#))

# Christ, Messiah

## Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.’”

- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

(Go back to: [Acts 2:31](#); [2:36](#); [2:38](#); [3:6](#); [3:18](#); [3:20](#); [4:10](#); [4:26](#); [5:42](#); [8:5](#); [8:12](#); [9:22](#); [9:34](#); [10:36](#); [10:48](#); [11:17](#); [15:26](#); [16:18](#); [Notes](#); [17:3](#); [Notes](#); [18:5](#); [18:28](#); [24:24](#); [26:23](#); [28:31](#))

# Christian

## Definition:

Some time after Jesus went back to heaven, people made up the name “Christian” which means, “follower of Christ.”

- It was in the city of Antioch where Jesus’ followers were first called “Christians.”
- A Christian is a person who believes that Jesus is the Son of God, and who trusts Jesus to save him from his sins.
- In our modern times, often the term “Christian” is used for someone who identifies with the Christian religion, but who is not really following Jesus. This is not the meaning of “Christian” in the Bible.
- Because the term “Christian” in the Bible always refers to someone who truly believes in Jesus, a Christian is also called a “believer.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “Christ-follower” or “follower of Christ” or perhaps something like, “Christ-person.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is translated differently than terms used for disciple or apostle.
- Be careful to translate this term with a word that can refer to everyone who believes in Jesus, not just certain groups.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Antioch](#), [Christ](#), [church](#), [disciple](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:7-8
- 1 Peter 04:16
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 26:28

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **46:09** It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “**Christians.**”
- **47:14** Paul and other **Christian** leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **49:15** If you believe in Jesus and what he has done for you, you are a **Christian!**
- **49:16** If you are a **Christian**, God has forgiven your sins because of what Jesus did.
- **49:17** Even though you are a **Christian**, you will still be tempted to sin.
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told **Christians** to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it.
- **50:11** When Jesus returns, every **Christian** who has died will rise from the dead and meet him in the sky.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G5546

(Go back to: [Acts 11:26](#); [26:28](#))

## church, Church

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [believe](#), [Christian](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- 1 Timothy 03:05
- Acts 09:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 04:15
- Ephesians 05:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 04:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G1577

(Go back to: [Acts 5:11](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [9:31](#); [11:22](#); [11:26](#); [12:1](#); [12:5](#); [13:1](#); [14:23](#); [14:27](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [15:22](#); [15:41](#); [16:5](#); [18:22](#); [20:17](#); [20:28](#))

## Cilicia

### Facts:

Cilicia was a small Roman province located in the southeastern part of what is now the modern-day country of Turkey. It borders the Aegean Sea.

- The apostle Paul was a citizen from the city of Tarsus located in Cilicia.
- Paul spent several years in Cilicia after his encounter with Jesus on the road to Damascus.
- Some of the Jews from Cilicia were among those who confronted Stephen and influenced the people to stone him to death.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Paul](#), [Stephen](#), [Tarsus](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 27:3-6
- Galatians 01:21-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2791

(Go back to: [Acts 6:9](#); [15:41](#); [21:39](#); [22:3](#); [23:34](#); [27:5](#))

## circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This is a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Abraham, covenant](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03

- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 01:20
- Jeremiah 09:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:03
- Acts 15:01
- Acts 11:03
- Romans 02:27
- Galatians 05:03
- Ephesians 02:11
- Philippians 03:03
- Colossians 02:11
- Colossians 02:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

(Go back to: [Acts 7:8](#); [10:45](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [15:1](#); [15:5](#); [16:3](#); [21:21](#))

## **citizen, citizenship**

### **Definition:**

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

- Depending on the context, this could also be translated as “inhabitant” or “official resident.”
- A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called “citizens” of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God’s kingdom.

(See: [kingdom](#), [Paul](#), [province](#), [Rome](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 21:39-40
- Isaiah 03:03
- Luke 15:15
- Luke 19:14

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6440, G4175, G4177, G4847

(Go back to: [Acts 21:39](#); [22:28](#); [23:1](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [Acts 5:16](#); [8:7](#); [Notes](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:28](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [15:9](#); [18:6](#); [24:18](#))

## clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

### Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5509

(Go back to: [Acts 7:58](#); [9:39](#); [12:8](#); [12:21](#); [14:14](#); [16:22](#); [18:6](#); [22:20](#); [22:23](#))



# comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

## Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(Go back to: [Acts 9:31](#); [20:12](#))

## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, [law](#), Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [Acts 1:2](#); [1:4](#); [4:15](#); [4:18](#); [5:28](#); [5:34](#); [5:40](#); [7:44](#); [8:38](#); [10:33](#); [10:42](#); [10:48](#); [12:19](#); [13:47](#); [15:5](#); [16:18](#); [16:22](#); [16:23](#); [16:24](#); [17:15](#); [17:30](#); [18:2](#); [21:33](#); [21:34](#); [22:24](#); [22:30](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:10](#); [23:22](#); [23:30](#); [23:35](#); [24:23](#); [25:6](#); [25:17](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [27:43](#))

## commander

### Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
- The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), [centurion](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 02:14
- Mark 06:21-22
- Proverbs 06:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

(Go back to: [Acts 21:31](#); [21:32](#); [21:33](#); [21:37](#); [22:24](#); [22:26](#); [22:27](#); [22:28](#); [22:29](#); [23:10](#); [23:15](#); [23:17](#); [23:18](#); [23:19](#); [23:22](#); [24:22](#); [25:23](#))

## commit, committed, commitment

### Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: adultery, [faithful](#), [promise](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4160, G4203

(Go back to: [Acts 5:4](#); [14:23](#); [14:26](#); [15:40](#); [20:32](#))

# condemn, condemned, condemnation

## Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

(Go back to: [Acts 13:27](#))

## confess, confession

### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: [Acts 19:18](#); [23:8](#); [24:14](#))

## conscience

### Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:19
- 1 Timothy 03:09
- 2 Corinthians 05:11
- 2 Timothy 01:03
- Romans 09:01
- Titus 01:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4893

(Go back to: [Acts 23:1](#); [24:16](#))

## Corinth, Corinthians

### Facts:

Corinth was a city in the country of Greece, about 50 miles west of Athens. The Corinthians were the people who lived at Corinth.

- Corinth was the location of one of the early Christian churches.
- The New Testament books, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians were letters written by Paul to the Christians living in Corinth.
- On his first missionary journey, Paul stayed in Corinth for approximately 18 months.
- Paul met the believers Aquila and Priscilla while in Corinth.
- Other early church leaders associated with Corinth include Timothy, Titus, Apollos, and Silas.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Apollos](#), [Timothy](#), Titus)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:03
- 2 Corinthians 01:23-24
- 2 Timothy 04:19-22
- Acts 18:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2881, G2882

(Go back to: [Acts 18:1](#); [18:8](#); [19:1](#))



## Cornelius

### Facts:

Cornelius was a Gentile, or non-Jewish man, who was a military officer in the Roman army.

- He prayed regularly to God and was very generous in giving to the poor.
- When Cornelius and his family heard the apostle Peter explain the gospel, they became believers in Jesus.
- The people of Cornelius' household were the first non-Jewish people to become believers.
- This showed Jesus' followers that he had come to save all people, including Gentiles.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Greek](#), [centurion](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 10:01
- Acts 10:08
- Acts 10:18
- Acts 10:22
- Acts 10:24
- Acts 10:26
- Acts 10:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2883

(Go back to: [Acts 10:1](#); [10:3](#); [10:17](#); [10:22](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [10:30](#); [10:31](#))

## cornerstone

### Definition:

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building’s foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:11
- Ephesians 02:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

(Go back to: [Acts 4:11](#))

## corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness

### Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: [testimony](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:19
- Exodus 20:16
- Matthew 15:18-20
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Proverbs 14:5-6
- Psalms 027:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H6030, H7650, H8267, G1965, G3144, G5571, G5575, G5576, G5577

(Go back to: [Acts 6:13](#))

## council

### Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The “Jewish Council” in Jerusalem, also known as the “Sanhedrin,” had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word “council” could also be translated as “legal assembly” or “political assembly.”
- To be “in council” means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than “counsel,” which means, “wise advice.”

(See also: [assembly](#), [counsel](#), [Pharisee](#), [law](#), [priest](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 03:02
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:09
- Matthew 05:22
- Matthew 26:59

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, G1010, G4824, G4892

(Go back to: [Acts 4:15](#); [5:21](#); [5:27](#); [5:34](#); [5:41](#); [6:12](#); [6:15](#); [22:30](#); [23:1](#); [23:6](#); [23:15](#); [23:20](#); [23:28](#); [24:20](#); [25:12](#))

## **courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement**

### **Facts:**

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, [exhort](#), [fear](#), [strength](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#); [5:13](#); [14:22](#); [15:31](#); [18:27](#); [20:1](#); [23:11](#); [27:22](#); [27:25](#); [27:36](#); [28:15](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [Acts 3:25](#); [7:8](#))



## cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(Go back to: [Acts 7:41](#); [14:13](#))

## Crete, Cretan

### Facts:

Crete is an island that is located off the southern coast of Greece. A "Cretan" is someone who lives on this island.

- The apostle Paul traveled to the island of Crete during his missionary journeys.
- Paul left his co-worker Titus on Crete to teach the Christians and to help appoint leaders for the church there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:11
- Acts 27:08
- Amos 09:7-8
- Titus 01:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2912, G2914

(Go back to: [Acts 2:11](#); [27:7](#); [27:12](#); [27:13](#); [27:21](#))

## crime, criminal

### Definition:

The term "crime" usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term "criminal" refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone's property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: thief)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:09
- Hosea 06:8-9
- Job 31:26-28
- Luke 23:32
- Matthew 27:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2400, H4639, H5771, H7563, H7564, G2556, G2557, G4467

(Go back to: [Acts 18:14](#))

## crucify, crucified

### Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: cross, [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:23
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him (Jesus)!”
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:04** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!”
- **43:09** “You **crucified** this man, Jesus.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

(Go back to: [Acts 2:23](#); [2:36](#); [4:10](#))

## cry, cry out, outcry

### Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead)

### Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

(Go back to: [Acts 7:57](#); [7:60](#); [8:7](#); [9:39](#); [12:22](#); [14:14](#); [16:17](#); [16:28](#); [17:6](#); [19:28](#); [19:32](#); [19:34](#); [20:37](#); [21:13](#); [21:28](#); [21:34](#); [21:36](#); [22:24](#); [23:6](#); [24:21](#); [25:24](#))

## cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

### Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:02** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

(Go back to: [Acts 4:9](#); [4:14](#); [4:22](#); [4:30](#); [5:16](#); [8:7](#); [9:34](#); [10:38](#); [28:8](#); [28:9](#); [28:27](#))

# Cyprus

## Facts:

Cyprus is an island in the Mediterranean Sea, about 64 kilometers south of the modern-day country of Turkey.

- Barnabas was from Cyprus so it is probable that his cousin John Mark was also from there.
- Paul and Barnabas preached together on the island of Cyprus at the beginning of their first missionary journey. John Mark came along to help them on that trip.
- Later on, Barnabas and Mark visited Cyprus again.
- In the Old Testament, Cyprus is mentioned as being a rich source of cypress trees.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [John Mark](#), [the sea](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 04:36-37
- Acts 13:05
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 27:04
- Ezekiel 27:6-7
- Isaiah 23:10-12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2953, G2954

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [13:4](#); [15:39](#); [21:3](#); [21:16](#); [27:4](#))



# Cyrene

## Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

- In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
- Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Crete](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Matthew 27:32-34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2956, G2957

(Go back to: [Acts 2:10](#); [6:9](#); [11:20](#); [13:1](#))

# Damascus

## Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, Assyria, [believe](#), [Syria](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 09:1-2
- Acts 09:03
- Acts 26:12
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1834, G1154

(Go back to: [Acts 9:2](#); [9:3](#); [9:8](#); [9:10](#); [9:19](#); [9:22](#); [9:27](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [22:10](#); [22:11](#); [26:12](#); [26:20](#))

# darkness

## Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(Go back to: [Acts 2:20](#); [13:11](#); [26:18](#))

# David

## Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, [Saul \(OT\)](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: [Acts 1:16](#); [2:25](#); [2:29](#); [2:34](#); [4:25](#); [7:45](#); [13:22](#); [13:34](#); [13:36](#); [15:16](#))

# day

## Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, [last day](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

(Go back to: [Acts 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:5](#); [1:15](#); [1:22](#); [2:1](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [2:29](#); [2:41](#); [2:46](#); [2:47](#); [3:2](#); [3:24](#); [5:36](#); [5:37](#); [5:42](#); [6:1](#); [7:8](#); [7:26](#); [7:41](#); [7:45](#); [8:1](#); [9:9](#); [9:19](#); [9:23](#); [9:24](#); [9:37](#); [9:43](#); [10:3](#); [10:30](#); [10:40](#); [10:48](#); [11:27](#); [12:3](#); [12:18](#); [12:21](#); [13:14](#); [13:31](#); [13:41](#); [15:7](#); [15:36](#); [16:5](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [16:18](#); [16:35](#); [17:11](#); [17:17](#); [17:31](#); [18:18](#); [19:9](#); [20:6](#); [20:16](#); [20:18](#); [20:26](#); [20:31](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:7](#); [21:10](#); [21:15](#); [21:26](#); [21:27](#); [21:38](#); [23:1](#); [23:12](#); [24:1](#); [24:11](#); [24:24](#); [25:1](#); [25:6](#); [25:13](#); [25:14](#); [26:7](#); [26:13](#); [26:22](#); [27:7](#); [27:20](#); [27:29](#); [27:33](#); [27:39](#); [28:7](#); [28:12](#); [28:13](#); [28:14](#); [28:17](#); [28:23](#))

## day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

### Description:

The Old Testament term “day of Yahweh” is used to refer to a specific time(s) when God would punish people for their sin.

- The New Testament term “day of the Lord” usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the “last day.” This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word “day” in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a “time” or “occasion” that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a “pouring out of God’s wrath” upon those who do not believe.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “day of Yahweh” could include “time of Yahweh” or “time when Yahweh will punish his enemies” or “time of Yahweh’s wrath.”
- Other ways to translate “day of the Lord” could include “time of the Lord’s judgment” or “time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people.”

(See also: [day](#), judgment day, [Lord](#), [resurrection](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 Thessalonians 05:02
- 2 Peter 03:10
- 2 Thessalonians 02:02
- Acts 02:20-21
- Philippians 01:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3068, H3117, G2250, G2962

(Go back to: [Acts 2:20](#))

## deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

### Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(Go back to: [Acts 13:10](#))

## declare, proclaim, announce

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(Go back to: [Acts 10:42](#); [13:41](#); [14:27](#); [15:4](#); [19:18](#); [20:20](#); [20:27](#); [23:12](#); [24:9](#); [26:20](#))



## defile, defiled

### Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [clean](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:08
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:04
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435

(Go back to: [Acts 21:28](#))

# deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

## Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(Go back to: [Acts 7:10](#); [7:34](#); [12:11](#); [15:30](#); [16:4](#); [21:11](#); [23:27](#); [26:17](#); [27:1](#); [28:17](#))

# demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

## Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: demon-possessed, [Satan](#), [false god](#), [false god](#), [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

## Bible References:

- James 02:19
- James 03:15
- Luke 04:36
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 04:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:08** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:05** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

(Go back to: [Acts 5:16](#); [8:7](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [19:15](#); [19:16](#))

## descend, descendant

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** “The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

(Go back to: [Acts 4:6](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#))

## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(Go back to: [Acts 7:30](#); [7:36](#); [7:38](#); [7:42](#); [7:44](#); [8:26](#); [13:18](#); [21:38](#))

## desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

### Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), devastate, ruin, waste)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 01:20
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Lamentations 03:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H816, H910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

(Go back to: [Acts 1:20](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death,

## Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

### 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [Acts 2:24](#); [2:29](#); [3:15](#); [4:2](#); [4:10](#); [5:10](#); [7:4](#); [7:15](#); [9:37](#); [10:41](#); [10:42](#); [12:23](#); [13:28](#); [13:30](#); [13:34](#); [14:19](#); [17:3](#); [17:31](#); [17:32](#); [20:9](#); [21:13](#); [22:4](#); [23:6](#); [23:29](#); [24:21](#); [25:11](#); [25:19](#); [25:25](#); [26:8](#); [26:23](#); [26:31](#); [28:6](#); [28:18](#))



## discern, discernment, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
- “Discernment” could be translated as “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: [judge](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:7-9
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Proverbs 01:05
- Psalms 019:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H2940, H4209, H5234, H8085, G350, G1252, G1253, G2924

(Go back to: [Acts 4:9](#); [12:19](#); [17:11](#))

# disciple

## Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the 12.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 11:03
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **30:08** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

(Go back to: Acts 6:1; 6:2; 6:7; 9:1; 9:10; 9:19; 9:25; 9:26; 9:36; 9:38; 11:26; 11:29; 13:52; 14:20; 14:21; 14:22; 14:28; 15:10; 16:1; 18:23; 18:27; 19:1; 19:9; 19:30; 20:1; 20:30; 21:4; 21:16)

## discipline, self-discipline

### Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 06:4
- Hebrews 12:05
- Proverbs 19:18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4148, G1468

(Go back to: [Acts 20 General Notes](#))

## disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

### Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 03:07
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

(Go back to: [Acts 19:9](#); [26:19](#))

## divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

### Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: [apostle](#), [false god](#), [magic](#), [sorcery](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:1-2
- Acts 16:16
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:05
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G4436

(Go back to: [Acts 16:16](#))

# divine

## Definition:

The term "divine" refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include "divine authority," "divine judgment," "divine nature," "divine power," and "divine glory."
- In one passage in the Bible, the term "divine" is used to describe something about a false deity.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "divine" could include "God's" or "from God" or "pertaining to God" or "characterized by God."
- For example, "divine authority" could be translated as "God's authority" or "authority that comes from God."
- The phrase "divine glory" could be translated as "God's glory" or "the glory that God has" or "glory that comes from God."
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](#), [false god](#), [glory](#), [God](#), [judge](#), [power](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
- 2 Peter 01:04
- Romans 01:20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2304, G2999

(Go back to: [Acts 10:22](#); [17:29](#))

# dream

## Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:16-17
- Daniel 01:17-18
- Daniel 02:01
- Genesis 37:06
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 02:13
- Matthew 02:19-21

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **08:07** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:01** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

(Go back to: [Acts 2:17](#))



## drunk, drunkard

### Facts:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: wine)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 07:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

(Go back to: [Acts 2:15](#))

## earth, earthen, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [Acts 1:8](#); [2:19](#); [3:25](#); [4:24](#); [4:26](#); [7:49](#); [8:33](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [11:6](#); [13:47](#); [14:15](#); [17:26](#); [22:22](#))

# Egypt, Egyptian

## Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, [patriarchs](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [Acts 2:10](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:15](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:22](#); [7:24](#); [7:28](#); [7:34](#); [7:36](#); [7:39](#); [7:40](#); [13:17](#); [21:38](#))

## Elam, Elamites

### Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites,” and they lived in a region that was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Noah, Shem)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- Acts 02:09
- Ezra 08:4-7
- Isaiah 22:06

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5867, H5962, G1639

(Go back to: [Acts 2:9](#))

## elder, older, old

### Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: [Acts 2:17](#); [4:5](#); [4:8](#); [4:23](#); [6:12](#); [11:30](#); [14:23](#); [15:2](#); [15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [16:4](#); [20:17](#); [21:18](#); [22:5](#); [23:14](#); [24:1](#); [25:15](#))

## endure, endurance

### Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:03
- James 01:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

(Go back to: [Acts 13:18](#))

## enslave, slave, bondservant, bound

### Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants. Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [righteous](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:03
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Genesis 15:13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3533, H5647, G1398, G1402, G2615

(Go back to: [Acts 7:6](#))

## envy, covet

### Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

(Go back to: [Acts 13:45](#))



# Ephesus, Ephesian

## Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

- During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
- Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
- A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
- Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
- The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [Paul](#), [Timothy](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Timothy 01:03
- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 19:01
- Ephesians 01:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2179, G2180, G2181

(Go back to: [Acts 18:19](#); [18:21](#); [18:24](#); [19:1](#); [19:17](#); [19:26](#); [19:28](#); [19:34](#); [19:35](#); [20:16](#); [20:17](#); [21:29](#))

## epistle, letter

### Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include “written message” or “written down words” or “writing.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [exhort](#), [teach](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:27
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- Acts 09:1-2
- Acts 28:21-22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H104, H107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, G1121, G1992

(Go back to: [Acts 9:2](#); [15:30](#); [22:5](#); [23:25](#); [23:33](#))

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), reign, [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46

- Romans 05:21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:02
- 1 John 05:12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: [Acts 13:46](#); [13:48](#); [15:18](#))

# Ethiopia, Ethiopian

## Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
- The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cush](#), [Egypt](#), [eunuch](#), [Philip](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 08:27
- Acts 08:30
- Acts 08:32-33
- Acts 08:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 03:09
- Zephaniah 03:9-11

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G128

(Go back to: [Acts 8:27](#))

# eunuch

## Definition:

Usually the term “eunuch” refers to a man who has been castrated. The term later became a general term to refer to any government official, even those without the deformity.

- Jesus said that some eunuchs were born that way, perhaps because of damaged sex organs or because of not being able to function sexually. Others chose to live like eunuchs in a celibate lifestyle.
- In ancient times, eunuchs were often kings’ servants who were set as guards over the women’s quarters.
- Some eunuchs were important government officials, such as the Ethiopian eunuch who met the apostle Philip in the desert.

(See also: [Philip](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 08:27
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 08:39
- Isaiah 39:7-8
- Jeremiah 34:17-19
- Matthew 19:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5631, G2134, G2135

(Go back to: [Acts 8:27](#); [8:34](#); [8:36](#); [8:38](#); [8:39](#))

# evangelist

## Definition:

An “evangelist” is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

- The literal meaning of “evangelist” is “someone who preaches the good news.”
- Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God’s kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
- All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
- Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called “evangelists.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “evangelist” could be translated as “someone who preaches the good news” or “teacher of the good news” or “person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)” or “good news proclaimer.”

(See also: [good news](#), [spirit](#), [gift](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:05
- Ephesians 04:11-13

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2099

(Go back to: [Acts 21:8](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [Acts 3:26](#); [8:22](#); [9:13](#); [17:5](#); [18:14](#); [19:9](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [19:15](#); [19:16](#); [23:5](#); [25:18](#); [28:21](#))

## ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [Acts 8:32](#))

## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, proud)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: [Acts 2:33](#); [5:31](#); [13:17](#))

## exhort, exhortation

### Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 1 Timothy 05:02
- Luke 03:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3867, G3870, G3874, G4389

(Go back to: [Acts 2:40](#); [9:38](#); [11:23](#); [13:15](#); [13:42](#); [15:32](#); [16:40](#); [19:31](#); [20:2](#); [27:9](#); [27:22](#); [27:33](#); [27:34](#))

## exult, exultant

### Definition:

The terms “exult” and “exultant” refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To “exult” includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God’s goodness.
- The term “exultant” can also include being arrogant in one’s feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term “exult” could also be translated as “celebrate joyfully” or “praise with great joy.”
- Depending on the context, the term “exultant” could be translated as “praising triumphantly” or “celebrating with self praise” or “arrogant.”

(See also: arrogant, [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:1
- Isaiah 13:03
- Job 06:10
- Psalm 068:1-3
- Zephaniah 02:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5539, H5947, H5970

(Go back to: [Acts 2:26](#); [2:46](#); [16:34](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [Acts 2:28](#); [3:20](#); [5:41](#); [6:15](#); [7:45](#); [13:24](#); [17:26](#); [20:25](#); [20:38](#); [25:16](#))

# faith

## Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [Acts 3:16](#); [Notes](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [11:24](#); [13:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:22](#); [14:27](#); [15:9](#); [16:5](#); [20:21](#); [24:24](#); [26:18](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, [believe](#), [disobey](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05



### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [Acts 10:45](#); [16:15](#); [Notes](#))

## faithless, faithlessness

### Definition:

The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God. Their lack of belief is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [disobey](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezra 09:1-2
- Jeremiah 02:19
- Proverbs 02:22
- Revelation 21:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G571

(Go back to: [Acts 28:24](#))

# false prophet

## Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 Peter 02:01
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 06:26
- Matthew 07:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5578

(Go back to: [Acts 13:6](#))

## family, household

### Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, [ancestor](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(Go back to: [Acts 7:13](#))

# famine

## Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(Go back to: [Acts 7:11](#); [11:28](#))

## fast, fasting

### Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: [Acts 13:2](#); [13:3](#); [14:23](#); [27:9](#))

## favor, favorable, favoritism

### Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

(Go back to: [Acts 2:47](#); [7:10](#); [7:46](#); [24:27](#); [Notes](#); [25:3](#); [25:9](#))

## fear, afraid, dread

### Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: [marvel](#), awe, [Lord](#), [power](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [Acts 2:43](#); [5:5](#); [5:11](#); [5:26](#); [9:26](#); [9:31](#); [10:2](#); [10:4](#); [10:22](#); [10:35](#); [13:16](#); [13:26](#); [16:38](#); [18:9](#); [19:17](#); [22:29](#); [23:10](#); [27:17](#); [27:24](#); [27:29](#))



# fellowship

## Definition:

In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “fellowship” could include “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- Philippians 01:3-6
- Philippians 02:01
- Philippians 03:10
- Psalms 055:12-14

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2266, H8667, G2842, G2844, G3352, G4790

(Go back to: [Acts 2:42](#))

## filled with the Holy Spirit

### Definition:

The term “filled with the Holy Spirit” is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God’s will.

- The expression “filled with” is an expression that often means “controlled by.”
- People are “filled with the Holy Spirit” when they follow the Holy Spirit’s leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “empowered by the Holy Spirit” or “controlled by the Holy Spirit.” But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
- A sentence such as “he was filled with the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “he was living fully by the Spirit’s power” or “he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit” or “the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely.”
- This term is similar in meaning to the expression “live by the Spirit,” but “filled with the Holy Spirit” emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:31
- Acts 05:17
- Acts 06:8-9
- Luke 01:15
- Luke 01:39-41
- Luke 04:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G40, G4130, G4137, G4151

(Go back to: [Acts 2:4](#); [4:8](#); [4:31](#); [7:55](#); [9:17](#); [11:24](#); [13:9](#); [13:52](#))

## fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [Acts 2:3](#); [2:19](#); [7:30](#); [28:2](#); [28:3](#); [28:5](#))

# flesh

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [Acts 2:17](#); [2:26](#); [2:31](#))

## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only “flocks,” and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(Go back to: [Acts 20:28](#); [20:29](#))

## footstool

### Definition:

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God’s will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God’s “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

(Go back to: [Acts 2:35](#); [7:49](#))

## foreknew, foreknowledge

### Definition:

The terms “foreknew” and “foreknowledge” come from the verb “foreknow” which means to know something before it happens.

- God is not limited by time. He knows everything that happens in the past, present, and future.
- This word is often used in the context of God knowing already who will be saved through receiving Jesus as Savior.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “foreknew” could also be translated as, “knew before” or “knew ahead of time” or “knew beforehand” or “already knew.”
- The term “foreknowledge” could be translated as, “knowing before” or “knowing ahead of time” or “already knowing” or “knowing in advance.”

(See also: [know](#), [predestine](#))

### Bible References:

- Romans 08:29
- Romans 11:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4267, G4268

(Go back to: [Acts 2:23](#))

## forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

### Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.



- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

**Word Data:**

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [Acts 2:38](#); [5:31](#); [8:22](#); [10:43](#); [13:38](#); [26:18](#))

## found, founder, foundation

### Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), create)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: [Acts 16:26](#))

## free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

### Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

(Go back to: [Acts 2:29](#))

## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces--”that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: [Acts 2:30](#); [14:17](#))

# fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

## Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: [Acts 1:16](#); [3:18](#); [7:23](#); [12:25](#); [13:25](#); [13:27](#); [13:33](#); [14:26](#); [19:21](#); [21:26](#))

## Galatia, Galatians

### Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Celicia, and Pamphylia.
- The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called "Galatians."
- One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
- The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [believe](#), [Cilicia](#), [good news](#), [Paul](#), [works](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
- 1 Peter 01:1-2
- 2 Timothy 04:9-10
- Acts 16:6-8
- Galatians 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G1053, G1054

(Go back to: [Acts 16:6](#); [18:23](#))

## Galilee, Galilean

### Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A “Galilean” was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the “Sea of Galilee.”
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), [Samaria](#), Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 02:1-2
- John 04:03
- Luke 13:03
- Mark 03:07
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:13-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:10** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **39:06** Finally, the people said, “We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**.”
- **41:06** Then the angel told the women, “Go and tell the disciples, ‘Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1551, G1056, G1057

(Go back to: [Acts 1:11](#); [2:7](#); [5:37](#); [9:31](#); [10:37](#); [13:31](#))



## gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [Acts 3:2](#); [3:10](#); [9:24](#); [10:17](#); [12:10](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [14:13](#); [16:13](#))

## Gaza

### Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, [Philip](#), Philistines, [Ethiopia](#), Gath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:24-25
- Acts 08:26
- Genesis 10:19
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Judges 06:3-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G1048

(Go back to: [Acts 8:26](#))

# generation

## Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

## Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: [Acts 2:40](#); [8:33](#); [13:36](#); [15:21](#))

# Gentile

## Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:16
- Luke 02:32
- Matthew 05:47
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1471, G1482, G1484, G1672

(Go back to: [Acts 4:25](#); [4:27](#); [9:15](#); [10:28](#); [10:45](#); [11:1](#); [11:18](#); [13:46](#); [13:47](#); [13:48](#); [14:2](#); [14:5](#); [14:27](#); [15:3](#); [15:7](#); [15:12](#); [15:14](#); [15:17](#); [15:19](#); [15:23](#); [18:6](#); [21:11](#); [21:19](#); [21:21](#); [21:25](#); [22:21](#); [26:17](#); [26:20](#); [26:23](#); [28:28](#))

# gift

## Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:01
- 2 Samuel 11:08
- Acts 08:20
- Acts 10:04
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 01:17
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 08:4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

(Go back to: [Acts 2:38](#); [8:20](#); [10:45](#); [11:17](#))

## **gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around**

### **Definition:**

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: [loins](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

(Go back to: [Acts 12:8](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), [majesty](#), [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [4:21](#); [7:2](#); [7:55](#); [11:18](#); [12:23](#); [13:48](#); [21:20](#); [22:11](#))



# God

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: Acts 1:3; 2:11; 2:17; 2:22; 2:23; 2:24; 2:30; 2:32; 2:33; 2:36; 2:39; 2:47; 3:8; 3:9; 3:13; 3:15; 3:18; 3:21; 3:22; 3:25; 3:26; 4:10; 4:19; 4:21; 4:24; 4:31; 5:4; 5:29; 5:31; 5:32; 5:39; 6:2; 6:7; 6:11; 7:2; 7:6; 7:7; 7:9; 7:17; 7:20; 7:25; 7:32; 7:35; 7:37; 7:42; 7:43; 7:45; 7:46; 7:55; 7:56; 8:10; 8:12; 8:14; 8:20; 8:21; 9:20; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:15; 10:22; 10:28; 10:31; 10:33; 10:34; 10:38; 10:40; 10:41; 10:42; 10:46; 11:1; 11:9; 11:17; 11:18; 11:23; 12:5; 12:22; 12:23; 12:24; 13:5; 13:7; 13:16; 13:17; 13:21; 13:23; 13:26; 13:30; 13:33; 13:36; 13:37; 13:43; 13:46; 14:11; 14:15; 14:22; 14:26; 14:27; 15:4; 15:7; 15:8; 15:10; 15:12; 15:14; 15:19; 16:10; 16:14; 16:17; 16:25; 16:34; 17:13; 17:23; 17:24; 17:27; 17:29; 17:30; 18:7; 18:11; 18:13; 18:21; 18:26; 19:8; 19:11; 19:26; 19:37; 20:21; 20:24; 20:27; 20:28; 20:32; 21:19; 21:20; 22:3; 22:14; 23:1; 23:3; 23:4; 24:14; 24:15; 24:16; 26:6; 26:8; 26:18; 26:20; 26:22; 26:29; 27:23; 27:24; 27:25; 27:35; 28:6; 28:15; 28:23; 28:28; 28:31)

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [1:7](#); [2:33](#); [3:13](#); [5:30](#); [7:32](#))

## god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, [Molech](#), [demon](#), image, [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

(Go back to: [Acts 7:40](#); [7:41](#); [Notes](#); [15:20](#); [Notes](#); [19:27](#))

## godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

### Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [nominaladj](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:09
- Acts 03:12
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 1 Timothy 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 04:18
- Jude 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G516, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

(Go back to: [Acts 3:12](#))

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: [Acts 3:6](#); [17:29](#); [20:33](#))



## good news, gospel

### Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/ message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: [kingdom](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:23
- Galatians 01:06
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14
- Philippians 02:22
- Romans 01:03

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:06** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2097, G2098, G4283

(Go back to: [Acts 8:25](#); [8:40](#); [15:7](#); [20:24](#))

# good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

## Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [Acts 4:9](#); [6:3](#); [9:36](#); [10:38](#); [11:24](#); [14:17](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [15:29](#); [16:2](#); [23:1](#); [27:8](#))

## **govern, government, governor, proconsul**

### **Definition:**

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), [province](#), [Rome](#), [ruler](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

(Go back to: [Acts 7:10](#); [23:24](#); [23:26](#); [23:33](#); [24:1](#); [24:10](#); [26:30](#))

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: [Acts 4:33](#); [6:8](#); [11:23](#); [13:43](#); [Notes](#); [14:3](#); [14:26](#); [15:11](#); [15:40](#); [18:27](#); [20:24](#); [20:32](#))

## grain, grainfields

### Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

(Go back to: [Acts 7:12](#))

## grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

### Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(Go back to: [Acts 2:29](#); [7:16](#); [13:29](#))



## Greece, Grecian

### Facts:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called "Greeks" and their language is "Greek." People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term "Greek" is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Corinth](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Hebrew](#), [Philippi](#), [Thessalonica](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 08:21
- Daniel 10:20-21
- Daniel 11:1-2
- Zechariah 09:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3120, G1671

(Go back to: [Acts 20:2](#))

## Greek, Grecian

### Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Gentile](#), [Greece](#), [Hebrew](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

(Go back to: [Acts 6:1](#); [9:29](#); [11:20](#); [14:1](#); [16:1](#); [16:3](#); [17:4](#); [17:12](#); [18:4](#); [19:10](#); [19:17](#); [20:21](#); [21:28](#); [21:37](#))

## groan, groans, groanings

### Definition:

The term to “groan” refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate “groan” could include, “give a low cry of pain” or “grieve deeply.”
- As a noun, this could be translated as, “a low cry of distress” or “a deep murmur of pain.”

(See also: [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:02
- Hebrews 13:17
- Job 23:02
- Psalms 032:3-4
- Psalms 102:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H584, H585, H602, H603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G4726, G4727, G4959

(Go back to: [Acts 7:34](#))

## guilt, guilty

### Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

(Go back to: [Acts 13:28](#))

# Hades, Sheol

## Definition:

The terms "Hades" (in Greek) and "Sheol" (in Hebrew) are proper names for the "underworld," meaning an underground dwelling place where people from ancient cultures believed a dead person would go after he had died.

- In the Old Testament, the Hebrew term "Sheol" can be used either as a proper name or as a common noun meaning "underground."
- In the New Testament, the Greek term "Hades" is described as a place for dead people who have rejected Jesus. The New Testament describes people as "going down" to Hades.

## Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term "Sheol" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "place of the dead;" "place for dead spirits;" "the pit;" or "death."
- The New Testament term "Hades" can also be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "place for unbelieving dead souls;" "place of torment for the dead;" or "place for the souls of unbelieving dead people."
- Some translations keep the proper names "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), hell, [tomb](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:31
- Genesis 44:29
- Jonah 02:02
- Luke 10:15
- Luke 16:23
- Matthew 11:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Revelation 01:18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G86

(Go back to: [Acts 2:27](#); [2:31](#))

# hand

## Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

## Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: Acts 2:23; 3:7; 4:3; 4:28; 4:30; 5:12; 5:18; 6:6; 7:25; 7:35; 7:41; 7:50; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 9:8; 9:12; 9:17; 9:41; 11:21; 11:30; 12:1; 12:7; 12:11; 12:17; 13:3; 13:11; 13:16; 14:3; 15:23; 17:25; 19:6; 19:11; 19:26; 19:33; 20:34; 21:11; 21:27; 21:40; 23:19; 26:1; 28:3; 28:4; 28:8; 28:17)

# Haran

## Facts:

Haran was a younger brother of Abram and the father of Lot.

- Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
- A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Caleb, [Canaan](#), [Levite](#), Lot, Terah, Ur)

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:12
- Acts 07:1-3
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 27:43-45
- Genesis 28:10-11
- Genesis 29:4-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2039

(Go back to: [Acts 7:2](#); [7:4](#))



## hard, harden, hardness

### Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, [stiff-necked](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G917, G1419, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2532, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

(Go back to: [Acts 19:9](#); [26:14](#))

# head

## Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: [grain](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [Acts 4:11](#); [18:6](#); [18:18](#); [21:24](#); [27:34](#))

# heart

## Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

## Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [Acts 2:26](#); [2:37](#); [2:46](#); [4:32](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [7:23](#); [7:39](#); [7:51](#); [7:54](#); [8:21](#); [8:22](#); [11:23](#); [13:22](#); [14:17](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [16:14](#); [21:13](#); [28:27](#))

# heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

## Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

## Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [Acts 1 General Notes](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [2:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:19](#); [2:34](#); [3:21](#); [4:12](#); [4:24](#); [7:42](#); [7:49](#); [7:55](#); [7:56](#); [9:3](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [10:16](#); [11:5](#); [11:6](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [14:15](#); [14:17](#); [17:24](#); [22:6](#); [26:13](#); [26:19](#))

## Hebrew

### Facts:

The term "Hebrew" refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word "Hebrew" can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called "Hebrew." However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term "Hebrew" probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called "Israelites" or "Jews." When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 05:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Philippians 03:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G1444, G1445, G1446, G1447

(Go back to: [Acts 6:1](#); [21:40](#); [22:2](#); [26:14](#))

## Herod, Herod Antipas

### Facts:

During most of Jesus' lifetime, Herod Antipas was the ruler of the part of the Roman Empire that included Galilee province.

- Like his father Herod the Great, Antipas was sometimes referred to as "King Herod" even though he was not really a king.
- Herod Antipas ruled about one-fourth of the provinces of Israel, so he was also called "Herod the tetrarch." "Tetrarch" was a title for a person who ruled one-fourth of a country.
- Antipas is the "Herod" who gave the order for John the Baptist to be killed by beheading.
- It was also Herod Antipas who questioned Jesus before his crucifixion.
- The other Herods in the New Testament were Antipas' son (Agrippa) and grandson (Agrippa 2) who ruled during the time of the apostles.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), Herod the Great, [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [king](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 03:1-2
- Luke 03:20
- Luke 09:09
- Luke 13:32
- Luke 23:09
- Mark 06:20
- Matthew 14:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2264, G2265, G2267

(Go back to: [Acts 4:27](#); [12:1](#); [12:6](#); [12:11](#); [12:19](#); [12:21](#); [13:1](#); [23:35](#))

## high priest, chief priests

### Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: [Annas](#), [Caiaphas](#), [priest](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.



- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

(Go back to: [Acts 4:6](#); [4:23](#); [5:17](#); [5:21](#); [5:24](#); [5:27](#); [7:1](#); [9:1](#); [9:14](#); [9:21](#); [19:14](#); [22:5](#); [22:30](#); [23:2](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#); [23:14](#); [24:1](#); [25:2](#); [25:15](#); [26:10](#); [26:12](#))

# Holy One

## Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “the Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: [holy](#), [God](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 2 Kings 19:22
- Acts 02:27
- Acts 03:13-14
- Isaiah 05:15-17
- Isaiah 41:14
- Luke 04:33-34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H376, H6918, G40, G3741

(Go back to: [Acts 2:27](#); [13:35](#))

# holy place

## Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [bread](#), consecrate, courtyard, curtain, [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:16-18
- Acts 06:12-15
- Exodus 26:33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:01
- Ezra 09:8-9
- Hebrews 09:1-2
- Leviticus 16:18
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Revelation 15:05

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G39, G40, G3485, G5117

(Go back to: [Acts 6:13](#); [21:28](#))

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**.”
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: Acts 1:2; 1:5; 1:8; 1:16; 2:4; 2:17; 2:18; 2:33; 2:38; 4:8; 4:25; 4:31; 5:3; 5:9; 5:32; 6:3; 6:5; 6:10; 7:51; 7:55; 8:15; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:29; 8:39; 9:17; 9:31; 10:19; 10:38; 10:44; 10:45; 10:47; 11:12; 11:15; 11:16; 11:24; 11:28; 13:2; 13:4; 13:9; 13:52; 15:8; 15:28; 16:6; 16:7; 19:2; 19:6; 19:21; 20:23; 20:28; 21:4; 21:11; 28:25)

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [Acts 1:2](#); [1:5](#); [1:8](#); [1:16](#); [2:4](#); [2:33](#); [2:38](#); [3:14](#); [3:21](#); [4:8](#); [4:25](#); [4:27](#); [4:30](#); [4:31](#); [5:3](#); [5:32](#); [6:5](#); [6:13](#); [7:33](#); [7:51](#); [7:55](#); [8:15](#); [8:17](#); [8:19](#); [9:17](#); [9:31](#); [10:22](#); [10:38](#); [10:44](#); [10:45](#); [10:47](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:24](#); [13:2](#); [13:4](#); [13:9](#); [13:34](#); [13:52](#); [15:8](#); [15:28](#); [16:6](#); [19:2](#); [19:6](#); [20:23](#); [20:28](#); [Notes](#); [21:11](#); [21:28](#); [28:25](#))

# honor

## Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

(Go back to: [Acts 13:50](#); [28:10](#))



## hope, hoped

### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), confidence, [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G91, G560, G1679, G1680, G2070

(Go back to: [Acts 2:26](#); [16:19](#); [23:6](#); [24:15](#); [24:26](#); [26:6](#); [26:7](#); [27:20](#); [28:20](#))

# horseman

**Definition:**

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), horse)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 01:05
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G2460

(Go back to: [Acts 23:23](#); [23:32](#))

# hour

## Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen--the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

## Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: [hour](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5610

(Go back to: [Acts 16:18](#); [16:33](#); [22:13](#))

## hour, moment, immediately, for a while

### Definition:

The term “hour” is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean “time” or “moment.”

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 a.m.). For example, “the ninth hour” meant “around three in the afternoon.”
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 p.m.). For example, “the third hour of the night” meant “around nine in the evening” in our present-day system..
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as “around nine” or “about six o’clock” could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like “in the evening” or “in the morning” or “in the afternoon” to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, “in that hour” could be translated as, “at that time” or “in that moment.”
- Referring to Jesus, the expression “his hour had come” could be translated as, “the time had come for him to” or “the appointed time for him had come.”

### Bible References: ##

- Acts 02:15
- John 04:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:03

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8160, G5610

(Go back to: [Acts 2:15](#); [3:1](#); [5:7](#); [10:3](#); [10:9](#); [10:30](#); [19:34](#); [23:23](#))

# house

## Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), house of God, [household](#), kingdom of Israel, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [Acts 2:2](#); [2:36](#); [2:46](#); [4:34](#); [5:42](#); [7:20](#); [7:42](#); [7:46](#); [7:47](#); [7:49](#); [8:3](#); [9:11](#); [9:17](#); [10:6](#); [10:17](#); [10:22](#); [10:30](#); [10:32](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:13](#); [12:12](#); [16:15](#); [16:32](#); [16:34](#); [17:5](#); [18:7](#); [19:16](#); [20:20](#); [21:8](#))

# household

## Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

(Go back to: [Acts 7:10](#); [10:2](#); [11:14](#); [16:31](#); [18:8](#))

## humble, humbled, humility

### Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

### Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: [Acts 20:19](#))

# Iconium

## Facts:

Iconium was a city in the south central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- On Paul's first missionary journey, he and Barnabas went to Iconium after the Jews forced them to leave the city of Antioch.
- Then the unbelieving Jews and Gentiles in Iconium also planned to stone Paul and his coworkers, but they escaped to the nearby city of Lystra.
- After that the people from both Antioch and Iconium came to Lystra and stirred up the people there to stone Paul.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [Lystra](#), [stone](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Acts 14:01
- Acts 14:19-20
- Acts 16:1-3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2430

(Go back to: [Acts 13:51](#); [14:1](#); [14:19](#); [14:21](#); [16:2](#))



## in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

### Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
  - “who belong to Christ”
  - “because you believe in Christ”
  - “because Christ has saved us”
  - “in service to the Lord”
  - “relying on the Lord”
  - “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:05
- 2 Corinthians 02:17
- 2 Timothy 01:01
- Galatians 01:22
- Galatians 02:17
- Philemon 01:06
- Revelation 01:10
- Romans 09:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G1519, G2962, G5547

(Go back to: [Acts 10:43](#); [19:4](#); [24:24](#))

## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), Promised Land)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [Acts 7:5](#); [13:19](#); [20:32](#); [26:18](#))

# iniquity

## Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), transgress, trespass)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: [Acts 1:18](#); [8:23](#))

# innocent

## Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, "blood" can represent "killing," so "innocent blood" refers to "killing people who did not deserve to die."

## Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- "To shed innocent blood" can be translated as "to kill people who did not deserve to die."

(See also: [guilt](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(Go back to: [Acts 20:26](#))

## **instruct, instruction, instructors**

### **Facts:**

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [teach](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Exodus 14:04
- Genesis 26:05
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 11:01
- Proverbs 01:30

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H241, H376, H559, H631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822

(Go back to: [Acts 5:28](#); [7:22](#); [22:3](#))

## interpret, interpretation, interpreter

### Facts:

The terms “interpret” and “interpretation” refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The “interpretation” of the dream is the “explanation” of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term “interpret” can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term “interpret” could include, “figure out the meaning of” or “explain” or “give the meaning of.”
- The term “interpretation” could also be translated as “explanation” or “meaning.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Daniel](#), [dream](#), [prophet](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 07:15-16
- Luke 12:56

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#); [9:36](#); [13:8](#))

# Isaac

## Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G2464

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [7:8](#); [7:32](#))

# Isaiah

## Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaz, Assyria, [Christ](#), Hezekiah, Jotham, Judah, [prophet](#), Uzziah)

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 01:1
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 01:01
- Mark 07:06
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 04:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:02** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:08** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G2268

(Go back to: [Acts 8:28](#); [8:30](#); [28:25](#))



## Israel, Israelite, Jacob

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [deceive](#), Esau, [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), Rebekah, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [7:8](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:32](#); [7:46](#))

# Israel, Israelites

## Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshiping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Acts 1:6](#); [2:22](#); [2:36](#); [3:12](#); [4:10](#); [4:27](#); [5:21](#); [5:31](#); [5:35](#); [7:23](#); [7:37](#); [7:42](#); [9:15](#); [10:36](#); [12:11](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [13:23](#); [13:24](#); [21:28](#); [28:20](#))

## it is written

### Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:12
- Matthew 04:06
- Revelation 01:03

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G1125

(Go back to: [Acts 1:20](#); [7:42](#); [13:29](#); [13:33](#); [15:15](#); [23:5](#); [24:14](#))

## James (brother of Jesus)

### Facts:

James was a son of Mary and Joseph. He was one of Jesus' younger half-brothers.

- Jesus' other half-brothers were named Joseph, Judas, and Simon.
- During Jesus' lifetime, James and his brothers did not believe that Jesus was the Messiah.
- Later, after Jesus was raised from the dead, James believed in him and became a leader of the church in Jerusalem.
- The New Testament book of James is a letter that James wrote to Christians who had fled to other countries to escape persecution.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [church](#), [Judas the son of James](#), [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 01:18-20
- Galatians 02:9-10
- James 01:1-3
- Jude 01:1-2
- Mark 09:1-3
- Matthew 13:54-56

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: [Acts 12:17](#); [15:13](#); [21:18](#))

## James (son of Alphaeus)

### Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
- He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Mark 14:32-34
- Matthew 10:2-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## James (son of Zebedee)

### Facts:

James, a son of Zebedee, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He had a younger brother named John who was also one of Jesus' apostles.

- James and his brother John worked by fishing with their father Zebedee.
- James and John were nicknamed the "Sons of Thunder," perhaps because they got angry quickly.
- Peter, James, and John were Jesus' closest disciples and were with him for amazing events such as when Jesus was on a mountaintop with Elijah and Moses and when Jesus caused a dead little girl to come back to life.
- This is a different James than the one who wrote a book in the Bible. Some languages may have to write their names differently to make it clear that they were two different men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Elijah](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Alphaeus\)](#), [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 09:28-29
- Mark 01:19-20
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 17:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#); [12:2](#))

## jealous, jealousy

### Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 05:09
- Exodus 20:05
- Ezekiel 36:05
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 01:2-3
- Romans 13:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

(Go back to: [Acts 5:17](#); [7:9](#); [17:5](#))

# Jerusalem

## Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), Jebusites, [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419



(Go back to: Acts 1:4; 1:8; 1:12; 1:19; 2:5; 2:14; 4:5; 4:16; 5:16; 5:28; 6:7; 8:1; 8:14; 8:25; 8:26; 8:27; 9:2; 9:13; 9:21; 9:26; 9:28; 10:39; 11:2; 11:22; 11:27; 12:25; 13:13; 13:27; 13:31; 15:2; 15:4; 16:4; 19:21; 20:16; 20:22; 21:4; 21:11; 21:12; 21:13; 21:15; 21:17; 21:31; 22:5; 22:17; 22:18; 23:11; 24:11; 25:1; 25:3; 25:7; 25:9; 25:15; 25:20; 25:24; 26:4; 26:10; 26:20; 28:17)

# Jesse

## Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, [descendant](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 03:32
- Matthew 01:4-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G2421

(Go back to: [Acts 13:22](#))

# Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

## Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.

- **25:08 Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17 Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

(Go back to: Acts 1:1; 1:11; 1:14; 1:16; 1:21; 2:22; 2:32; 2:36; 2:38; 3:6; 3:13; 3:20; 4:2; 4:10; 4:13; 4:18; 4:27; 4:30; 4:33; 5:30; 5:40; 5:42; 6:14; 7:55; 7:59; 8:12; 8:16; 8:35; 9:5; 9:17; 9:20; 9:27; 9:34; 10:36; 10:38; 10:48; 11:17; 11:20; 13:23; 13:33; 15:11; 15:26; 16:7; 16:18; 16:31; 17:3; 17:7; 17:18; 18:5; 18:25; 18:28; 19:4; 19:5; 19:13; 19:15; 19:17; 20:21; 20:24; 20:35; 21:13; 22:8; 24:24; 25:19; 26:9; 26:15; 28:23; 28:31)

## Jew, Jewish

### Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

(Go back to: [Acts 2:5](#); [2:11](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [10:22](#); [10:28](#); [10:39](#); [11:19](#); [12:3](#); [12:11](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#); [13:43](#); [13:45](#); [13:50](#); [14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:19](#); [16:1](#); [16:3](#); [16:20](#); [17:1](#); [17:5](#); [17:10](#); [17:13](#); [17:17](#); [18:2](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:12](#); [18:14](#); [18:19](#); [18:24](#); [18:28](#); [19:10](#); [19:13](#); [19:14](#); [19:17](#); [19:33](#); [19:34](#); [20:3](#); [20:19](#); [20:21](#); [21:11](#); [21:20](#); [21:21](#); [21:27](#); [21:39](#); [22:3](#); [22:12](#); [22:30](#); [23:12](#); [23:20](#); [23:27](#); [24:5](#); [24:9](#); [24:19](#); [24:24](#); [24:27](#); [25:2](#); [25:7](#); [25:8](#); [25:9](#); [25:10](#); [25:15](#); [25:24](#); [26:2](#); [26:3](#); [26:4](#); [26:7](#); [26:21](#); [28:17](#); [28:19](#))

## John (the apostle)

### Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [reveal](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), Zebedee)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 02:9-10
- John 01:19-21
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Revelation 01:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.\
- **44:01** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.\
- **44:06** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.\
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"\
- **44:09** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2491

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:11](#); [4:13](#); [4:19](#); [8:14](#); [12:2](#))

## John (the Baptist)

### Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since “John” was a common name, he is often called “John the Baptist” to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called “John the Baptist” because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [baptize](#), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:11-13
- Luke 01:62-63
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 03:13
- Matthew 11:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:02** The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!”
- **22:07** After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the angel had commanded.
- **24:01 John**, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to **John**. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by **John**. When **John** saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G910 G2491

(Go back to: [Acts 1:5](#); [1:22](#); [10:37](#); [11:16](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [18:25](#); [19:3](#); [19:4](#))

# John Mark

## Facts:

John Mark, also known as “Mark,” was one of the men who traveled with Paul on his missionary journeys. He is most likely the author of the Gospel of Mark.

- John Mark accompanied his cousin Barnabas and Paul on their first missionary journey.
- When Peter was put in prison in Jerusalem, the believers there were praying for him at John Mark’s mother’s house.
- Mark was not an apostle, but was taught by both Paul and Peter and worked together with them in ministry.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Barnabas](#), [Paul](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 12:24-25
- Acts 13:05
- Acts 13:13
- Acts 15:36-38
- Acts 15:39-41
- Colossians 04:10-11

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2491, G3138

(Go back to: [Acts 12:12](#); [12:25](#); [13:5](#); [13:13](#); [15:37](#); [15:39](#))



# Joppa

## Facts:

In biblical times, the city of Joppa was an important commercial seaport located on the Mediterranean Sea, south of the Plain of Sharon.

- The ancient site of Joppa was located in the same place as the present-day city of Jaffa, which has now become incorporated into the city of Tel Aviv.
- In the Old Testament, Joppa was the city where Jonah got on a boat that was going to Tarshish.
- In the New Testament, a Christian woman named Tabitha died in Joppa, and Peter raised her back to life.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [the sea](#), [Jerusalem](#), Sharon, Tarshish)

## Bible References:

- Acts 09:37
- Acts 10:08
- Acts 11:4-6
- Acts 11:11
- Jonah 01:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3305, G2445

(Go back to: [Acts 9:36](#); [9:38](#); [9:42](#); [9:43](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [10:23](#); [10:32](#); [11:5](#); [11:13](#))

## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(Go back to: [Acts 7:9](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:18](#))

# Joshua

## Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Haggai, Jericho, [Moses](#), Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

(Go back to: [Acts 7:45](#))

## joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

### Definition:

#### joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [Acts 2:26](#); [2:28](#); [5:41](#); [7:41](#); [8:8](#); [8:39](#); [11:23](#); [12:14](#); [13:48](#); [13:52](#); [15:3](#); [15:23](#); [15:31](#))

## Judas Iscariot

### Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as "Jude."

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [betray](#), Jewish leaders, [Judas the son of James](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 06:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 03:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **38:02** One of Jesus' disciples was a man named **Judas**. ... After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, **Judas** went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid **Judas** thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **38:14** **Judas** came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were all carrying swords and clubs. **Judas** came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, teacher," and kissed him.
- **39:08** Meanwhile, **Judas**, the betrayer, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2455, G2469

(Go back to: [Acts 1:16](#); [1:25](#))

## Judas son of James

### Facts:

Judas son of James was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. Note that he was not the same man as Judas Iscariot.

- Often in the Bible, men with the same name were distinguished by mentioning whose son they were. Here, Judas was identified as the "son of James."
- Another man named Judas was Jesus' brother. He was also known as "Jude."
- The New Testament book called "Jude" was probably written by Jesus' brother Judas, since the author identified himself as the "brother of James." James was another brother of Jesus.
- It is also possible that the book of Jude was written by Jesus' disciple, Judas, the son of James.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [Judas Iscariot](#), [son](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2455

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

# Judea

## Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Galilee](#), Edom, Judah, Judah, [Samaria](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(Go back to: [Acts 1:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:14](#); [8:1](#); [9:31](#); [10:37](#); [11:1](#); [11:29](#); [12:19](#); [15:1](#); [21:10](#); [26:20](#); [28:21](#))



# judge

## Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [judge](#), [law](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:08
- Acts 07:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 05:25
- Ruth 01:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

(Go back to: [Acts 10:42](#); [13:20](#); [18:15](#); [24:10](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), [law](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [4:19](#); [7:7](#); [7:27](#); [7:35](#); [8:33](#); [13:46](#); [15:19](#); [16:4](#); [16:15](#); [17:31](#); [21:25](#); [23:3](#); [23:6](#); [24:21](#); [24:25](#); [25:9](#); [25:10](#); [25:15](#); [25:20](#); [26:6](#); [26:8](#))

# just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

## Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

(Go back to: [Acts 13:38](#); [13:39](#); [28:4](#))

## kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman

### Definition:

The term “kin” refers to a person’s blood relatives, considered as a group. The word “kinsman” refers specifically to a male relative.

- “Kin” can only refer to a person’s close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a “kinsman-redeemer.”
- This term “kin” could also be translated as, “relative” or “family member.”

### Bible References:

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:20
- Ruth 03:09

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H251, H1350, H4129, H4130, H7138, H7607, G4773

(Go back to: [Acts 7:3](#); [7:14](#); [10:24](#))

## kind [NOT kindness]

### Definition:

The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

### Bible References:

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

(Go back to: [Acts 28:2](#))

# king, kingdom, kingship

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [Acts 4:26](#); [7:10](#); [7:18](#); [9:15](#); [12:1](#); [12:20](#); [13:21](#); [13:22](#); [17:7](#); [25:13](#); [25:14](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#); [26:2](#); [26:7](#); [26:13](#); [26:19](#); [26:26](#); [26:27](#); [26:30](#))



# kingdom

## Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [Acts 1:3](#); [8:12](#); [14:22](#); [19:8](#); [28:23](#); [28:31](#))

## kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), King of the Jews, reign)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:06** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- **29:02** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:01** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”
- **34:03** Jesus told another story, “The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough.”

- **34:04** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:05** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:09** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:05** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

(Go back to: [Acts 1:3](#); [1:6](#); [8:12](#); [14:22](#); [19:8](#); [20:25](#); [28:23](#); [28:31](#))

# kiss

## Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

(Go back to: [Acts 20:37](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [Acts 1:7](#); [2:22](#); [2:28](#); [2:30](#); [2:36](#); [3:10](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [4:10](#); [5:7](#); [7:13](#); [7:18](#); [7:40](#); [9:24](#); [9:30](#); [9:42](#); [10:28](#); [10:37](#); [12:9](#); [12:11](#); [12:14](#); [13:27](#); [13:38](#); [15:7](#); [15:18](#); [16:3](#); [17:13](#); [17:19](#); [17:20](#); [17:23](#); [18:25](#); [19:15](#); [19:17](#); [19:25](#); [19:32](#); [19:35](#);

20:18; 20:22; 20:25; 20:29; 20:34; 21:24; 21:34; 21:37; 22:14; 22:19; 22:24; 22:30; 23:5; 23:6; 23:28; 24:10; 24:11;  
24:22; 25:10; 26:4; 26:5; 26:27; 28:22; 28:28)

## **labor, laborer, work, hard work**

### **Definition:**

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4866, G4904

(Go back to: [Acts 10:35](#); [13:41](#); [18:3](#); [19:25](#); [20:35](#))



## lamb, Lamb of God

### Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:08** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.
- **48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

(Go back to: [Acts 8:32](#))

## **lament, lamentation**

### **Definition:**

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to “lament” could be translated as to “deeply mourn” or to “wail in grief” or to “be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

### **Bible References:**

- Amos 08:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:18
- Job 27:15-17
- Lamentations 02:05
- Lamentations 02:08
- Micah 02:04
- Psalm 102:1-2
- Zechariah 11:02

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H56, H421, H578, H592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G2354, G2355, G2870, G2875

(Go back to: [Acts 8:2](#))

# lamp

## Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: lampstand, [life](#), [light](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15
- Matthew 06:22
- Matthew 25:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

(Go back to: [Acts 20:8](#))

## last day, latter days

### Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [judge](#), [turn](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 01:02
- Isaiah 02:02
- James 05:03
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 04:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

(Go back to: [Acts 2 General Notes; 2:17](#))

## law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: [instruct](#), [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, [lawful](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [Acts 6:13](#); [7:53](#); [Notes](#); [13:15](#); [13:38](#); [15:5](#); [18:13](#); [18:15](#); [21:20](#); [21:24](#); [21:28](#); [22:3](#); [22:12](#); [23:3](#); [23:29](#); [24:14](#); [25:8](#); [28:23](#))

## law, principle

### Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [decree](#), command, [declare](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

(Go back to: [Acts 15:5](#))



## lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

### Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term “unlawful” is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term “unlawful” should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God’s law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](#), [law](#), [Moses](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02

- Matthew 12:04
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 03:04
- Luke 06:02
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:03
- Titus 02:14
- 1 John 03:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

(Go back to: [Acts 2:23](#); [2:29](#); [16:21](#); [21:37](#); [22:25](#))

## Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(Go back to: [Acts 4:36](#))

# life, live, living, alive

## Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [Acts 1:3](#); [2:28](#); [3:15](#); [5:20](#); [7:38](#); [8:33](#); [9:41](#); [10:42](#); [11:18](#); [13:46](#); [13:48](#); [14:15](#); [17:25](#); [17:28](#); [20:10](#); [20:12](#); [20:24](#); [22:22](#); [25:19](#); [25:24](#); [26:5](#); [27:10](#); [27:22](#); [28:4](#))

# light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

## Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

## Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: [Acts 9:3](#); [12:7](#); [13:47](#); [16:29](#); [22:6](#); [22:9](#); [22:11](#); [26:13](#); [26:18](#); [26:23](#))

## like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), image of God, image, [perish](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

(Go back to: [Acts 2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:15](#); [2:22](#); [3:12](#); [3:17](#); [3:22](#); [5:24](#); [6:15](#); [7:37](#); [7:42](#); [7:44](#); [7:48](#); [7:51](#); [8:32](#); [9:18](#); [10:11](#); [10:17](#); [10:47](#); [11:5](#); [11:15](#); [11:17](#); [11:29](#); [13:25](#); [13:33](#); [14:11](#); [15:8](#); [15:15](#); [17:28](#); [17:29](#); [22:3](#); [23:15](#); [23:20](#); [25:10](#); [26:29](#); [27:30](#); [28:19](#))

## loins, waist

### Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](#), [gird](#), offspring)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- 2 Chronicles 06:09
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

(Go back to: [Acts 2:30](#))



## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: Acts 1:6; 1:21; 1:24; 2:20; 2:21; 2:25; 2:34; 2:36; 2:39; 2:47; 3:20; 3:22; 4:24; 4:26; 4:29; 4:33; 5:9; 5:14; 5:19; 7:31; 7:33; 7:49; 7:59; 7:60; 8:16; 8:22; 8:24; 8:25; 8:26; 8:39; 9:1; 9:5; 9:10; 9:11; 9:13; 9:15; 9:17; 9:27; 9:28; 9:31; 9:35; 9:42; 10:4; 10:14; 10:33; 10:36; 11:8; 11:16; 11:17; 11:20; 11:21; 11:23; 11:24; 12:7; 12:11; 12:17; 12:23; 13:2; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:44; 13:47; 13:48; 13:49; 14:3; 14:23; 15:11; 15:17; 15:26; 15:35; 15:36; 15:40; 16:14; 16:15; 16:16; 16:19; 16:30; 16:31; 16:32; 17:24; 18:8; 18:9; 18:25; 19:5; 19:10; 19:13; 19:17; 19:20; 20:19; 20:21; 20:24; 20:35; 21:13; 21:14; 22:8; 22:10; 22:19; 23:11; 25:26; 26:15; 28:31)

## lots, casting lots

### Definition:

In the Bible, a "lot" is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. "Casting lots" refers to the process of using "lots" to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the "lots") were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the "lots" actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "throwing lots" or "rolling lots." The translation of "cast" should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made "by lot," this could be translated as "by casting lots" or "by throwing lots," etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G2819, G2975

(Go back to: [Acts 1:26](#))

# lust, lustful, passions, desires

## Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."

(See also: adultery, [false god](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 Timothy 02:22
- Galatians 05:16
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:28

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H185, H310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G766, G1937, G1939, G2237, G3715, G3806

(Go back to: [Acts 20:33](#))

# Lystra

## Facts:

Lystra was a city in ancient Asia Minor that Paul visited on one of his missionary journeys. It was located in the region of Lycaonia, which is now in the modern-day country of Turkey.

- Paul and his companions escaped to Derbe and Lystra when they were threatened by the Jews in Iconium.
- In Lystra, Paul met Timothy, who became a fellow evangelist and church planter.
- After Paul healed a crippled man in Lystra, the people there tried to worship Paul and Barnabas as gods, but the apostles rebuked them and stopped them from doing that.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [evangelist](#), [Iconium](#), [Timothy](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Acts 14:06
- Acts 14:08
- Acts 14:21-22

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G3082

(Go back to: [Acts 14:6](#); [14:8](#); [14:21](#); [16:1](#); [16:2](#))

# Macedonia

## Facts:

In New Testament times, Macedonia was a Roman province located just north of ancient Greece.

- Some important Macedonian cities mentioned in the Bible were Berea, Philippi and Thessalonica.
- Through a vision, God told Paul to preach the gospel to the people in Macedonia.
- Paul and his coworkers went to Macedonia and taught the people there about Jesus and helped the new believers to grow in their faith.
- In the Bible there are letters that Paul wrote to the believers in the Macedonian cities of Philippi and Thessalonica.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), [Berea](#), [faith](#), [good news](#), [Greece](#), [Philippi](#), [Thessalonica](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- 1 Timothy 01:3-4
- Acts 16:10
- Acts 20:1-3
- Philippians 04:14-17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G3109, G3110

(Go back to: [Acts 16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:12](#); [18:5](#); [19:21](#); [19:22](#); [19:29](#); [20:1](#); [20:3](#); [27:2](#))

## magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits

### Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: [divination](#), [Egypt](#), [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), [sorcery](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 41:08
- Genesis 41:22-24
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Genesis 44:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2748, H2749, H3049, G3097

(Go back to: [Acts 13:6](#); [13:8](#))

# magistrate

## Definition:

A magistrate is an appointed official who acts as a judge and decides matters of law.

- In Bible times, a magistrate also settled disputes between people.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “ruling judge” or “legal officer” or “city leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [law](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 16:20
- Acts 16:35
- Daniel 03:1-2
- Luke 12:58

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8200, H8614, G758, G4755

(Go back to: [Acts 16:20](#); [16:22](#); [16:35](#); [16:36](#); [16:38](#))



# majesty

## Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- Daniel 04:36
- Isaiah 02:10
- Jude 01:25
- Micah 05:04

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G3168, G3172

(Go back to: [Acts 19:27](#))

## Mary, the mother of Jesus

### Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cana, [Egypt](#), Herod the Great, [Jesus](#), Joseph (NT), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

### Bible References:

- John 02:04
- John 02:12
- Luke 01:29
- Luke 01:35
- Mark 06:03
- Matthew 01:16
- Matthew 01:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel appeared to Elizabeth's relative, whose name was **Mary**. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah."
- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God." **Mary** believed and accepted what the angel said.
- **22:06** Soon after the angel spoke to **Mary**, she went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Elizabeth heard **Mary's** greeting, Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her.
- **23:02** The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take **Mary** as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit."
- **23:04** Joseph and **Mary** had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **49:01** An angel told a virgin named **Mary** that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3137

(Go back to: [Acts 1:14](#))

## Matthew, Levi

### Facts:

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi, son of Alphaeus.

- Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
- Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
- There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Levite](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- Luke 05:27
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 02:14
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 09:09
- Matthew 10:03

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3017, G3156

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## Mede, Medes, Media

### Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called "Medes."

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Assyria, [Babylon](#), Cyrus, Daniel, Darius, [Elam](#), Persia)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:06
- Acts 02:09
- Daniel 05:28
- Esther 01:3-4
- Ezra 06:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G3370

(Go back to: [Acts 2:9](#))

## memorial, memorial offering

### Definition:

The term “memorial” refers to an action or object that causes someone or something to be remembered.

- This word is also used as an adjective to describe something that is to remind them of something, as in a “memorial offering,” a “memorial portion” of a sacrifice or “memorial stones.”
- In the Old Testament memorial offerings were made so the Israelites would remember what God had done for them.
- God told the Israelite priests to wear special clothing that had memorial stones. These stones had the names of the twelve tribes of Israel engraved on them. These were perhaps to remind them of God’s faithfulness to them.
- In the New Testament, God honored a man named Cornelius because of his charitable deeds for the poor. These deeds were said to be a “memorial” before God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “lasting reminder.”
- A “memorial stone” could be translated as a “stone to remind them (of something).”

### Bible References:

- Acts 10:04
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Isaiah 66:3
- Joshua 04:6-7
- Leviticus 23:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2142, H2146, G3422

(Go back to: [Acts 10:4](#))

## Mesopotamia, Aram Naharaim

### Facts:

Mesopotamia is the area of land between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers. Its location is in the region of the modern day country of Iraq.

- In the Old Testament, this region was called "Aram Naharaim."
- The word "Mesopotamia" means "between rivers." The phrase "Aram Naharaim" means "Aram of two rivers."
- Abraham lived in the Mesopotamian cities of Ur and Haran before moving on to the land of Canaan.
- Babylon was another important city in Mesopotamia.
- The region called "Chaldea" was also part of Mesopotamia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Babylon](#), [Chaldea](#), Euphrates River)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:09
- Acts 07:1-3
- Genesis 24:10-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H763, G3318

(Go back to: [Acts 2:9](#); [7:2](#))

## Midian, Midianite

### Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called “Midianites.”

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also [Arabia](#), [Egypt](#), [flock](#), Gideon, Jethro, [Moses](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:16
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:28
- Judges 07:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **16:04** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **16:11** The man's friend said, “This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!”
- **16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

(Go back to: [Acts 7:29](#))

# might, mighty, mighty works

## Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [Acts 18:24](#); [19:20](#))



# miracle, wonder, sign

## Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [Acts 2:22](#); [8:13](#); [19:11](#))

## mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

### Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:04
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

(Go back to: [Acts 2:13](#); [17:32](#))

# Molech, Moloch

## Facts:

Molech was the name of one of the false gods that the Canaanites worshiped. Other spellings are “Moloch” and “Molek.”

- People who worshiped Molech sacrificed their children to him by means of fire.
- Some of the Israelites also worshiped Molech instead of the one true God, Yahweh. They followed the evil practices of Molech worshipers, including sacrificing their children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [evil](#), [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), [sacrifice](#), [true](#), [worship](#), Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:07
- 2 Kings 23:10
- Acts 07:43
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Leviticus 18:21

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4432, G3434

(Go back to: [Acts 7:43](#))

## month, monthly

### Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

(Go back to: [Acts 7:20](#); [18:11](#); [19:8](#); [20:3](#); [28:11](#))

# Moses

## Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05 Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [Acts 3:22](#); [6:11](#); [6:14](#); [7:20](#); [7:22](#); [7:29](#); [7:31](#); [7:32](#); [7:35](#); [7:37](#); [7:40](#); [7:44](#); [13:38](#); [15:1](#); [15:5](#); [15:21](#); [21:21](#); [26:22](#); [28:23](#))

# Most High

## Facts:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 04:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Hosea 07:16
- Lamentations 03:35
- Luke 01:32

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5945, G5310

(Go back to: [Acts 7:48](#); [16:17](#))

# Mount of Olives

## Definition:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

- In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as “the mountain that is east of Jerusalem.”
- The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
- Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
- This could also be translated as “Olive Hill” or “Olive Tree Mountain.”

(See also: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Gethsemane, [olive](#))

## Bible References:

- Luke 19:29
- Luke 19:37
- Mark 13:03
- Matthew 21:1-3
- Matthew 24:3-5
- Matthew 26:30

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H2132, G3735, G1636

(Go back to: [Acts 1:12](#))



## **multiply, multiplied, multiplication**

### **Definition:**

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 08:01
- Genesis 09:07
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 04:6-7

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

(Go back to: [Acts 6:1](#); [6:7](#); [7:17](#); [9:31](#); [12:24](#); [16:5](#))

## name

### Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [Acts 1:15](#); [2:21](#); [2:38](#); [3:6](#); [3:16](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [4:12](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:30](#); [5:1](#); [5:28](#); [5:34](#); [5:40](#); [5:41](#); [7:58](#); [8:9](#); [8:12](#); [8:16](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:12](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:21](#); [9:27](#); [9:28](#); [9:33](#); [9:36](#); [10:1](#); [10:43](#); [10:48](#); [11:28](#); [12:13](#); [13:6](#); [13:8](#); [15:14](#); [15:17](#); [15:26](#); [16:1](#); [16:14](#); [16:18](#); [17:34](#); [18:2](#); [18:7](#); [18:15](#); [18:24](#); [19:5](#); [19:13](#); [19:17](#); [19:24](#); [20:9](#); [21:10](#); [21:13](#); [22:16](#); [26:9](#); [27:1](#); [28:7](#))

# nation

## Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), Philistines, [Rome](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: [Acts 2:5](#); [7:7](#); [7:45](#); [8:9](#); [10:22](#); [10:35](#); [13:19](#); [14:16](#); [17:26](#); [24:2](#); [24:10](#); [24:17](#); [26:4](#); [28:19](#))

## Nazareth, Nazarene

### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it takes about three to five days to travel there on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as “the Nazarene.”
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus’ teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareth’s synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), Joseph (NT), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 02:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in **Nazareth** to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of **Nazareth** where he had lived during his childhood.
- **26:07** The people of **Nazareth** dragged Jesus out of the place of worship and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3478, G3479, G3480

(Go back to: [Acts 2:22](#); [3:6](#); [4:10](#); [6:14](#); [10:38](#); [22:8](#); [24:5](#); [26:9](#))

## neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

### Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), parable, [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

(Go back to: [Acts 7:27](#))

## noble, nobleman, royal official

### Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 016:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G937, G2104

(Go back to: [Acts 17:11](#))

## oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: [Acts 2:30](#); [23:12](#); [23:14](#); [23:21](#))

## obey, obedient

### Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in "do not steal." In this case, to "obey" means not to steal.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [disobey](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** "Because you (Abraham) have *\_obeyed\_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: [Acts 5:32](#); [6:7](#); [7:39](#); [12:20](#); [15:5](#); [16:4](#); [17:4](#))



# olive

## Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: [Acts 1:12](#))

## oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

### Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

(Go back to: [Acts 7:24](#); [7:34](#); [10:38](#); [28:8](#))

## ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

### Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to “ordain” could be translated as to “assign” or to “appoint” or to “command” or to “make a rule” or to “institute.”

(See also: [command](#), [covenant](#), decree, [law](#), [law](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 03:03
- Psalms 111:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G1299, G2525, G4270, G4282

(Go back to: [Acts 7:53](#))

## ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), [ordain](#), statute)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Acts 16:4](#); [17:7](#))

## oversee, overseer

### Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

### Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: [church](#), [elder](#), [pastor](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:02
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G1983, G1984, G1985

(Go back to: [Acts 20:28](#))

# palace

## Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, [high priest](#), [king](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 05:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 045:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G833, G933, G4232

(Go back to: [Acts 23:35](#))

## partial, partiality

### Definition:

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: [favor](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5234, H6440, G991, G1519, G2983, G4299, G4383

(Go back to: [Acts 10:34](#))

## Passover

### Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

(Go back to: [Acts 12:4](#))



# patriarch

## Definition:

The term “patriarch” in the Bible refers to someone who was a founding ancestor of the Jewish people, particularly Abraham, Isaac, or Jacob.

- It also can refer to the twelve sons of Jacob who became the twelve patriarchs of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The term “patriarch” has a similar meaning to “forefather,” but more specifically refers to the most well-known male ancestral leaders of a people group.

(See also: [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Acts 07:6-8
- Acts 07:09
- Ezra 03:12-13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H7218, G3966

(Go back to: [Acts 2:29](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#))

# Paul, Saul

## Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [christian](#), [jewish leaders](#), [rome](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 08:03
- Acts 09:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 01:01
- Philemon 01:08

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:06** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:01** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:02** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul! Saul!** Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:05** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:06** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:09** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:01** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul**."
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G3972, G4569

(Go back to: [Acts 7:58](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [9:1](#); [9:4](#); [9:8](#); [9:11](#); [9:17](#); [9:22](#); [9:24](#); [11:25](#); [11:30](#); [12:25](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:7](#); [13:9](#); [13:13](#); [13:16](#); [13:43](#); [13:45](#); [13:46](#); [13:50](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:14](#); [14:19](#); [15:2](#); [15:12](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#); [15:38](#);

15:40; 16:3; 16:9; 16:14; 16:17; 16:18; 16:19; 16:25; 16:28; 16:29; 16:36; 16:37; 17:2; 17:4; 17:10; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15;  
 17:16; 17:22; 17:33; 18:5; 18:9; 18:12; 18:14; 18:18; 19:1; 19:4; 19:6; 19:11; 19:13; 19:15; 19:21; 19:26; 19:29; 19:30;  
 20:1; 20:7; 20:9; 20:10; 20:13; 20:16; 20:37; 21:4; 21:11; 21:13; 21:18; 21:26; 21:29; 21:30; 21:32; 21:37; 21:39; 21:40;  
 22:7; 22:13; 22:25; 22:28; 22:30; 23:1; 23:3; 23:5; 23:6; 23:10; 23:12; 23:14; 23:16; 23:17; 23:18; 23:20; 23:24; 23:31;  
 23:33; 24:1; 24:10; 24:24; 24:26; 24:27; 25:2; 25:4; 25:6; 25:8; 25:9; 25:10; 25:14; 25:19; 25:21; 25:23; 26:1; 26:14;  
 26:24; 26:25; 26:28; 26:29; 27:1; 27:3; 27:9; 27:11; 27:21; 27:24; 27:31; 27:33; 27:43; 28:3; 28:8; 28:15; 28:16; 28:25)

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [Acts 7:26](#); [9:31](#); [10:36](#); [12:20](#); [15:33](#); [16:36](#); [24:2](#))

## Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

### Facts:

The “Festival of Weeks” was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as “Pentecost.”

- The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called “Pentecost” which has “fifty” as part of its meaning.
- The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
- In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: festival, firstfruits, harvest, [Holy Spirit](#), [raise](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 08:12-13
- Acts 02:01
- Acts 20:15-16
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Numbers 28:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2282, H7620, G4005

(Go back to: [Acts 2:1](#); [20:16](#))

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the "people of God" in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase "people of God" refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase "people of God" refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase "my people," he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God's people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people of God" could be translated as "God's people" or "the people who worship God" or "people who serve God" or "people who belong to God."
- When God says "my people" other ways to translate it could include "the people I have chosen" or "the people who worship me" or "the people who belong to me."
- Similarly, "your people" could be translated as "the people who belong to you" or "the people you chose to belong to you."
- Also "his people" could be translated as "the people who belong to him" or "the people God chose to belong to himself."

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: [Acts 7:34](#))

## people, people group,

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”

- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: Acts 2:47; 3:9; 3:11; 3:12; 3:23; 4:1; 4:2; 4:8; 4:10; 4:17; 4:21; 4:25; 4:27; 5:12; 5:13; 5:20; 5:25; 5:26; 5:34; 6:8; 6:12; 7:17; 7:34; 10:2; 10:41; 10:42; 12:4; 12:11; 13:15; 13:17; 13:24; 13:31; 15:14; 17:5; 19:4; 21:28; 21:30; 21:36; 21:39; 21:40; 23:5; 26:17; 26:23; 28:17; 28:26; 28:27)



## perfect, perfected, perfection, complete

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

(Go back to: [Acts 20:24](#))

# perish

## Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

## Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God's people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(Go back to: [Acts 5:37](#); [13:41](#); [27:34](#))

## persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: [Christian](#), [church](#), [oppress](#), [Rome](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:04** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: [Acts 7:52](#); [8:1](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [13:50](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [26:11](#); [26:14](#); [26:15](#))

## perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, dishonest, distortion

### Definition:

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshipping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: corrupt, [deceive](#), [disobey](#), [evil](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:47
- 1 Samuel 20:30
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:02
- Psalms 101:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1942, H2015, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G1294

(Go back to: [Acts 2:40](#); [13:8](#); [13:10](#); [20:30](#); [25:5](#))

## Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

### Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [apostle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8
- Galatians 02:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 03:16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:09 Peter** said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:01** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:05** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!"
- **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him.
- **38:09 Peter** replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to **Peter**, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."
- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11 Peter** answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **44:08 Peter** answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#); [1:15](#); [2:14](#); [2:37](#); [2:38](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:6](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [4:8](#); [4:13](#); [4:19](#); [5:3](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:15](#); [5:29](#); [8:14](#); [8:20](#); [9:32](#); [9:34](#); [9:38](#); [9:39](#); [9:40](#); [10:5](#); [10:9](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [10:17](#); [10:18](#); [10:19](#); [10:21](#); [10:25](#); [10:26](#); [10:32](#); [10:34](#); [10:44](#); [10:45](#); [10:46](#); [11:2](#); [11:4](#); [11:7](#); [11:13](#); [12:3](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:11](#); [12:14](#); [12:16](#); [12:18](#); [15:7](#); [15:14](#))

# Pharaoh, king of Egypt

## Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 07:13
- Acts 07:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:07
- Genesis 41:25

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** *that he is more powerful than* **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

(Go back to: [Acts 7:10](#); [7:13](#); [7:21](#))

# Pharisee

## Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](#), Jewish leaders, [law](#), [Sadducee](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 26:04
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 11:44
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 05:20
- Matthew 09:11
- Matthew 12:02
- Matthew 12:38
- Philippians 03:05

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5330

(Go back to: [Acts 5:34](#); [15:5](#); [23:6](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [26:5](#))

## Philip, the apostle

### Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

- Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
- Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
- At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
- Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Philip](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:14
- John 01:44
- John 06:06
- Luke 06:14
- Mark 03:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))



## Philip, the evangelist

### Facts:

In the early Christian church in Jerusalem, Philip was one of seven leaders chosen to care for the poor and needy Christians, especially the widows.

- God used Philip to share the gospel with people in many different towns in the provinces of Judea and Galilee, including an Ethiopian man he met on the desert road to Gaza from Jerusalem.
- Years later Philip was living in Caesarea when Paul and his companions stayed at his house on their way back to Jerusalem.
- Most Bible scholars think that Philip the evangelist was not the same man as Jesus' apostle by that name. Some languages may prefer to use slightly different spellings for the names of these two men to make it clear they are different men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Philip](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 08:06
- Acts 08:13
- Acts 08:31
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 08:40

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

(Go back to: [Acts 6:5](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [8:26](#); [8:29](#); [8:30](#); [8:31](#); [8:34](#); [8:35](#); [8:38](#); [8:39](#); [8:40](#); [21:8](#))

# Philippi, Philippians

## Facts:

Philippi was a major city and Roman colony located in Macedonia in the northern part of ancient Greece. People in Philippi were called Philippians.

- Paul and Silas traveled to Philippi to preach about Jesus to the people there.
- While in Philippi, Paul and Silas were arrested, but God miraculously freed them.
- The New Testament book of Philippians is a letter that the apostle Paul wrote to the Christians in the church at Philippi.
- Note that this is a different city from Caesarea Philippi which was located in northeastern Israel near Mount Hermon.

(See also: [Caesarea](#), [Christian](#), [church](#), [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), [Silas](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- Acts 16:11
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Philippians 01:01

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of **Philippi** to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and Silas from prison and asked them to leave **Philippi**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5374, G5375

(Go back to: [Acts 16:12](#); [20:6](#))

## Phoenicia, Syrophoenician

### Facts:

In ancient times, Phoenicia was a wealthy nation located in Canaan along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel.

- Phoenicia occupied an area of land that was in the western region of what is the present-day country of Lebanon.
- In New Testament times, the capital of Phoenicia was Tyre. Another important Phoenician city was Sidon. Phoenicia was near Syria, so people from that area were called "Syrophoenician."
- Phoenicians were well-known for their woodworking skills using their country's plentiful cedar trees, for their production of a costly purple dye, and for their ability to travel and trade by sea. They were also highly skilled boat builders.
- One of the earliest alphabets was created by the Phoenician people. Their alphabet was widely used because of their contact with many people groups through trading.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: cedar, [purple](#), [Sidon](#), [Tyre](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 15:3-4
- Acts 21:02
- Isaiah 23:10-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, G4949, G5403

(Go back to: [Acts 11:19](#); [15:3](#); [21:2](#))

## pierce, pierced

### Definition:

The term “pierce” means to stab something with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

- A soldier pierced Jesus’ side when he was hanging on the cross.
- In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
- Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.

(See also: cross, [Jesus](#), [servant](#), Simeon)

### Bible References:

- Job 16:13
- Job 20:23-25
- John 19:37
- Psalms 022:16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H935, H1856, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H4272, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G1330, G1338, G1574, G2660, G3572, G4044

(Go back to: [Acts 2:37](#))

# Pilate

## Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [governor](#), [guilt](#), [Judea](#), [Rome](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 04:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 15:02
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to **Pilate**, the Roman governor. They hoped that **Pilate** would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. **Pilate** asked Jesus, "Are you the King of the Jews?"
- **39:10** **Pilate** said, "What is truth?"
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, "I find no guilt in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" **Pilate** replied, "He is not guilty." But they shouted even louder. Then **Pilate** said a third time, "He is not guilty!"
- **39:12** **Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- **40:02** **Pilate** commanded that a sign be put above Jesus' head that read, "King of the Jews."
- **41:02** **Pilate** said, "Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G4091, G4194

(Go back to: [Acts 3:13](#); [4:27](#); [13:28](#))

## Pontus

### Facts:

Pontus was a Roman province during the time of the Roman Empire and the early Church. It was located along the southern coast of the Black Sea, in the northern part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- As recorded in the book of Acts, people from the province of Pontus were in Jerusalem when the Holy Spirit first came to the apostles on the Day of Pentecost.
- A believer named Aquila was from Pontus.
- When Peter was writing to Christians who were scattered into different regions, Pontus was one of the regions he mentioned.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aquila](#), [Pentecost](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:1-2
- Acts 02:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4193, G4195

(Go back to: [Acts 2:9](#); [18:2](#))

## possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

(Go back to: [Acts 2:45](#); [3:6](#); [4:32](#); [4:34](#); [4:37](#); [5:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:45](#); [17:24](#); [28:7](#))

## power, powerful, powerfully

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1754, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

(Go back to: [Acts 1:8](#); [3:12](#); [4:7](#); [4:33](#); [5:39](#); [6:8](#); [7:22](#); [8:10](#); [10:38](#); [20:32](#); [25:5](#))

## praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: [Acts 2:47](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [Acts 1:14](#); [1:24](#); [2:42](#); [3:1](#); [4:31](#); [6:4](#); [6:6](#); [8:15](#); [8:22](#); [8:24](#); [9:11](#); [9:40](#); [10:2](#); [10:4](#); [10:9](#); [10:30](#); [10:31](#); [11:5](#); [12:5](#); [12:12](#); [13:3](#); [14:23](#); [16:13](#); [16:16](#); [16:25](#); [20:36](#); [21:5](#); [22:17](#); [27:29](#); [28:8](#))

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Acts 3:24](#); [4:2](#); [5:42](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:12](#); [8:35](#); [9:20](#); [10:36](#); [10:37](#); [10:42](#); [11:20](#); [13:5](#); [13:24](#); [13:32](#); [13:38](#); [14:7](#); [14:15](#); [14:21](#); [15:21](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#); [16:10](#); [16:17](#); [16:21](#); [17:3](#); [17:13](#); [17:18](#); [17:23](#); [19:13](#); [20:25](#); [26:23](#); [28:31](#))

## precious, valuable, expensive, fine

### Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:01
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 01:7
- Luke 07:2-5
- Psalms 036:08

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H68, H1431, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H8443, G927, G1784, G2472, G4185, G4186, G5092, G5093

(Go back to: [Acts 20:24](#))

## predestine, predestined

### Definition:

The terms “predestine” and “predestined” refer to deciding or planning beforehand that something will happen.

- This term especially refers to God predestining people to receive eternal life.
- Sometimes the word “foreordain” is used, which also means to decide beforehand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “predestine” could also be translated as “decide before” or “decide ahead of time.”
- The term “predestined” could be translated as “decided long ago” or “planned ahead of time” or “decided beforehand.”
- A phrase such as “predestined us” could be translated as “decided long ago that we” or “already decided ahead of time that we.”
- Note that the translation of this term should be different from the translation of the term “foreknew.”

(See also: [foreknew](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4309

(Go back to: [Acts 4:28](#))

## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), chief priests, [high priest](#), mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was



sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [Acts 4:1](#); [6:7](#); [14:13](#))

# prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

## Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [demon](#), [lord](#), [power](#), [ruler](#), [Satan](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(Go back to: [Acts 3:15](#); [5:31](#))

## Priscilla

### Facts:

Priscilla and her husband Aquila were Jewish Christians who worked with the apostle Paul in his missionary work.

- Priscilla and Aquila had left Rome because the emperor had forced the Christians to leave there.
- Paul met Aquila and Priscilla in Corinth. They were tentmakers and Paul joined them in this work.
- When Paul left Corinth to go to Syria, Priscilla and Aquila went with him.
- From Syria, the three of them went to Ephesus. When Paul left Ephesus, Priscilla and Aquila stayed behind and continued the work of preaching the gospel there.
- They especially taught a man named Apollos in Ephesus who believed in Jesus and was a gifted speaker and teacher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [believe](#), [Christian](#), [Corinth](#), [Ephesus](#), [Paul](#), [Rome](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
- 2 Timothy 04:19-22
- Acts 18:01
- Acts 18:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4252, G4251

(Go back to: [Acts 18:2](#); [18:18](#); [18:26](#))

## prison, prisoner, imprison

### Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

(Go back to: [Acts 5:18](#); [5:19](#); [5:21](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#); [5:25](#); [8:3](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:17](#); [16:23](#); [16:24](#); [16:25](#); [16:26](#); [16:27](#); [16:37](#); [16:40](#); [22:4](#); [23:18](#); [24:27](#); [25:14](#); [25:27](#); [26:10](#); [27:1](#); [27:42](#); [28:17](#))

## profane, profaned

### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [holy](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:09
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:05
- Numbers 18:30-32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

(Go back to: [Acts 24:6](#))

## profit, profitable, unprofitable

### Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: [worthy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

### Bible References:

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G147, G255, G512, G888, G889, G890, G1281, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G4297, G4298, G4851, G5539, G5622, G5623, G5624

(Go back to: [Acts 16:16](#); [16:19](#); [20:20](#))

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:


- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." 
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [Acts 1:4](#); [2:33](#); [2:39](#); [7:5](#); [7:17](#); [13:23](#); [13:32](#); [23:21](#); [26:6](#))

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, [divination](#), [false god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.



- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [Acts 2 General Notes](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [2:30](#); [3:18](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [3:24](#); [3:25](#); [7:37](#); [7:42](#); [7:48](#); [7:52](#); [8:28](#); [8:30](#); [8:34](#); [10:43](#); [11:27](#); [13:1](#); [13:15](#); [13:20](#); [13:27](#); [13:40](#); [15:15](#); [15:32](#); [19:6](#); [21:9](#); [21:10](#); [24:14](#); [26:22](#); [26:27](#); [28:23](#); [28:25](#))

## prostrate, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [Acts 7:43](#); [8:27](#); [10:25](#); [13:43](#); [13:50](#); [16:14](#); [17:4](#); [17:17](#); [17:23](#); [18:7](#); [18:13](#); [19:27](#); [24:11](#))

## province, provincial

### Facts:

A province is a division or part of a nation or empire. The term “provincial” describes something that is related to a province, such as a provincial governor.

- For example, the ancient Persian Empire was divided up into provinces such as Media, Persia, Syria, and Egypt.
- During the time of the New Testament, the Roman Empire was divided up into provinces such as Macedonia, Asia, Syria, Judea, Samaria, Galilee, and Galatia.
- Each province had its own ruling authority, who was subject to the king or ruler of the empire. This ruler was sometimes called a “provincial official” or “provincial governor.”
- The terms “province” and “provincial” could also be translated as “region” and “regional.”

(See also: [Asia](#), [Egypt](#), Esther, [Galatia](#), [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), [Macedonia](#), [Medes](#), [Rome](#), [Samaria](#), [Syria](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 19:30
- Daniel 03:02
- Daniel 06:02
- Ecclesiastes 02:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4082, H4083, H5675, H5676, G1885

(Go back to: [Acts 23:34](#); [25:1](#))

## provoke, provoked, provocation

### Facts:

The term “provoke” means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to “cause to become angry” or to “anger.”
- When used in a phrase such as, “do not provoke him,” this could be translated as “do not anger him” or “do not cause him to be angry” or “do not make him angry with you.”

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G2042, G3863, G3947, G3949, G4292

(Go back to: [Acts 17:16](#))

## punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

### Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

(Go back to: [Acts 4:21](#); [22:5](#); [26:11](#))

## pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

(Go back to: [Acts 21:24](#); [21:26](#))

# purple

## Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: ephod, [Philippi](#), [royal](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
- Daniel 05:7
- Daniel 05:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

(Go back to: [Acts 16:14](#))

# queen

## Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, [king](#). Persia [ruler](#), Sheba)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 08:27
- Esther 01:17
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

(Go back to: [Acts 8:27](#))



# rage

## Facts:

The term "rage" refers to intense anger. Often, the term is used to describe an angry person who is out of control in some way.

- When used as a verb, the term "rage" can mean to move powerfully, such as in descriptions of a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."
- To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: [self-control](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 04:25
- Daniel 03:13
- Luke 04:28
- Numbers 25:11
- Proverbs 19:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H1348, H1984, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3491, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7283, H7857, G1693, G2830, G3710, G5433

(Go back to: [Acts 4:25](#))

## raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

### Definition:

#### raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.

- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

(Go back to: [Acts 1:15](#); [2:24](#); [2:32](#); [3:7](#); [3:15](#); [3:22](#); [3:26](#); [4:10](#); [5:6](#); [5:17](#); [5:30](#); [5:34](#); [5:36](#); [5:37](#); [6:9](#); [7:18](#); [7:37](#); [8:26](#); [8:27](#); [9:6](#); [9:8](#); [9:11](#); [9:18](#); [9:34](#); [9:39](#); [9:40](#); [9:41](#); [10:13](#); [10:20](#); [10:23](#); [10:26](#); [10:40](#); [10:41](#); [11:7](#); [11:28](#); [12:7](#); [13:16](#); [13:22](#); [13:30](#); [13:33](#); [13:34](#); [13:37](#); [14:10](#); [14:20](#); [15:7](#); [15:39](#); [17:3](#); [17:31](#); [19:23](#); [20:30](#); [22:10](#); [22:16](#); [Notes](#); [23:9](#); [23:10](#); [26:8](#); [26:16](#); [26:30](#))

## receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(Go back to: Acts 1:8; 2:33; 2:38; 2:41; 3:3; 3:5; 3:21; 7:38; 7:53; 7:59; 8:14; 8:15; 8:17; 8:19; 10:43; 10:47; 11:1; 16:21; 16:24; 17:7; 17:11; 17:15; 19:2; 20:24; 20:35; 21:17; 22:5; 22:18; 24:27; 25:16; 26:10; 26:18; 28:2; 28:7; 28:21)

# redeem, redeemer, redemption

## Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: [free](#), ransom)

## Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: [Acts 7:35](#))

## reed

### Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), Nile River)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 07:24
- Matthew 11:07
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 068:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

(Go back to: [Acts 7:36](#))

## reject, rejected, rejection

### Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [disobey](#), [obey](#), [stiff-necked](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H947, H959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G3868

(Go back to: [Acts 4:11](#); [7:27](#); [7:35](#); [7:39](#); [13:46](#))



## remnant

### Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 09:12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:07
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 04:6-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

(Go back to: [Acts 15:17](#))

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: [Acts 2:38](#); [Notes](#); [3:19](#); [5:31](#); [8:22](#); [11:18](#); [13:24](#); [17:30](#); [Notes](#); [19:4](#); [20:21](#); [26:20](#))

## report, reported, reputation

### Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 05:15
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3377

(Go back to: [Acts 4:23](#); [5:22](#); [5:25](#); [11:13](#); [11:22](#); [12:14](#); [12:17](#); [15:12](#); [15:27](#); [16:36](#); [16:38](#); [21:31](#); [22:26](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#); [23:22](#); [28:21](#))

## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [Acts 7:49](#); [24:23](#))

## restore, restoration

### Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

(Go back to: [Acts 3:21](#))

## resurrection

### Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 03:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 03:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G386, G1454, G1815

(Go back to: [Acts 1 General Notes](#); [1:22](#); [2:31](#); [4:2](#); [4:33](#); [17:18](#); [17:32](#); [23:6](#); [23:8](#); [24:15](#); [24:21](#); [26:23](#))

# return

## Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

## Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: [Acts 1:12](#); [5:22](#); [8:25](#); [8:28](#); [12:25](#); [13:13](#); [13:34](#); [14:21](#); [15:16](#); [20:3](#); [21:6](#); [22:17](#); [23:32](#))

## reveal, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: [Acts 4:16](#); [7:13](#); [23:30](#))



## reward, prize, deserve,

### Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

(Go back to: [Acts 1:18](#); [Notes](#))

## right hand

### Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:33
- Colossians 03:01
- Galatians 02:09
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 02:03
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 044:03
- Revelation 02:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

(Go back to: [Acts 2:25](#); [2:33](#); [2:34](#); [5:31](#); [7:55](#); [7:56](#))

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), [integrity](#), [just](#), [law](#), [law](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), [unlawful](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [Acts 3:14](#); [4:19](#); [7:52](#); [10:22](#); [10:35](#); [Notes](#); [13:10](#); [17:31](#); [22:14](#); [24:15](#); [24:25](#); [Notes](#))

## Rome, Roman

### Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

- The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
- The term “Roman” referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
- The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
- The New Testament book of “Romans” is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: [good news](#), [the sea](#), [Pilate](#), [Paul](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 01:15-18
- Acts 22:25
- Acts 28:14
- John 11:48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:04** When the time was near for Mary to give birth, the **Roman** government told everyone to go for a census to the town where their ancestors had lived.
- **32:06** Then Jesus asked the demon, “What is your name?” He replied, “My name is Legion, because we are many.” (A “legion” was a group of several thousand soldiers in the **Roman** army.)
- **39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to the **Roman** governor, Pilate, hoping to have Jesus killed.
- **39:12** The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G4514, G4516

(Go back to: [Acts 2:10](#); [16:21](#); [16:37](#); [16:38](#); [18:2](#); [19:21](#); [22:25](#); [22:26](#); [22:27](#); [22:29](#); [23:11](#); [23:27](#); [25:16](#); [28:14](#); [28:16](#); [28:17](#))

## royal, royalty, king's, queen's

### Definition:

The term "royal" describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called "royal" include a king's (or queen's) position, clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called "royal robes." Often a king's robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a "royal priesthood." Other ways to translate this could include "priests who serve God the King" or "called to be priests for God the King."
- The term "royal" could also be translated as "kingly" or "belonging to a king."

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), robe)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:13
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Amos 07:13
- Genesis 49:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H643, H1921, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, G933, G934, G937

(Go back to: [Acts 12:21](#))

## rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

### Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

(Go back to: [Acts 3:17](#); [4:5](#); [4:8](#); [4:26](#); [7:27](#); [7:35](#); [13:27](#); [14:5](#); [16:19](#); [23:5](#))

## run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

### Definition:

Literally the term “run” means “move very quickly on foot,” usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: \* To “run in such a way as to win the prize” – refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. \* To “run in the path of your commands” – means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands. \* To “run after other gods” means to persist in worshiping other gods. \* “I run to you to hide me” means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. \* Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as, “flow.” The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border “is next to” the river or other country or by saying that the country “borders” the river or other country.” \* Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.” \* The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”\*

(See also: [false god](#), persevere, refuge, [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:02
- Galatians 05:07
- Philippians 02:16
- Proverbs 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5295, G5343

(Go back to: [Acts 3:11](#); [7:29](#); [8:30](#); [12:14](#); [21:32](#); [27:16](#))



# Sabbath

## Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: [Acts 1:12](#); [13:14](#); [13:27](#); [13:42](#); [13:44](#); [15:21](#); [16:13](#); [17:2](#); [18:4](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), burnt offering, drink offering, [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [Acts 7:41](#); [7:42](#); [14:13](#); [14:18](#); [21:26](#); [24:17](#))

# Sadducee

## Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

- Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
- The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
- The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
- Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: chief priests, [council](#), [high priest](#), hypocrite, Jewish leaders, [Pharisee](#), [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 04:03
- Acts 05:17-18
- Luke 20:27
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 16:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G4523

(Go back to: [Acts 4:1](#); [5:17](#); [23:6](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#))

# saint

## Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:10
- 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
- Revelation 16:06
- Revelation 20:9-10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G40

(Go back to: [Acts 9:13](#); [9:32](#); [9:41](#); [26:10](#))

## Samaria, Samaritan

### Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 09:51-53
- Luke 10:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

(Go back to: [Acts 1:8](#); [8:1](#); [8:5](#); [8:9](#); [8:14](#); [8:25](#); [9:31](#); [15:3](#))

# Samuel

## Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hannah, [judge](#), [prophet](#), Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 01:19
- 1 Samuel 09:24
- 1 Samuel 12:17
- Acts 03:24
- Acts 13:20
- Hebrews 11:32-34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G4545

(Go back to: [Acts 3:24](#); [13:20](#))

## sanctify, sanctification

### Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, [holy](#), [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 06:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G37, G38

(Go back to: [Acts 20:32](#); [26:18](#))



# sandal

## Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 01:27
- Joshua 05:15
- Mark 06:7-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

(Go back to: [Acts 7:33](#); [12:8](#); [13:25](#))

## Satan, devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."

- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(Go back to: [Acts 5:3](#); [10:38](#); [13:10](#); [26:18](#))

## Saul (OT)

### Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 09:01
- 2 Samuel 01:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 018:1

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:01 Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **17:04 Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **17:05** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G4549

(Go back to: [Acts 13:21](#))

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), [Savior](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(Go back to: [Acts 2:21](#); [2:40](#); [2:47](#); [4:12](#); [7:25](#); [11:14](#); [13:26](#); [13:47](#); [14:9](#); [15:1](#); [15:11](#); [16:17](#); [16:30](#); [16:31](#); [27:20](#); [27:31](#); [27:34](#); [27:43](#); [28:1](#); [28:4](#); [28:28](#))

## Savior, savior

### Facts:

The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: [deliver](#), [Jesus](#), [save](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:10
- 2 Peter 02:20
- Acts 05:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 01:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3467, G4990

(Go back to: [Acts 5:31](#); [13:23](#))

## scribe

### Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), [Pharisee](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(Go back to: [Acts 4:5](#); [6:12](#); [19:35](#); [23:9](#))



## Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

### Facts:

The “Sea of Reeds” was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the “Red Sea.”

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as “Reed Sea.”

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 04:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:04** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh’s army and the **Red Sea**.
- **12:05** Then God told Moses, “Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**.”
- **13:01** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

(Go back to: [Acts 7:36](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), offspring)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [Acts 3:25](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [Acts 9:11](#); [9:29](#); [10:19](#); [10:21](#); [12:19](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [13:11](#); [15:17](#); [16:10](#); [17:5](#); [17:27](#); [19:39](#); [21:31](#); [27:30](#))

## seize, seizure

### Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: [euphemism](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 08:29
- Matthew 26:48

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G724, G1949, G2638, G2902, G2983, G4815, G4884

(Go back to: [Acts 3:7](#); [5:18](#); [6:12](#); [12:4](#); [16:19](#); [18:17](#); [19:29](#); [21:30](#); [21:33](#); [23:10](#); [23:27](#); [24:6](#); [26:21](#))

## self-control, self-controlled

### Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:8-9
- 2 Peter 01:5-7
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- Galatians 05:23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4623, H7307, G192, G193, G1466, G1467, G1468, G4997

(Go back to: [Acts 24:25](#))

## send, sent, send out

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

(Go back to: [Acts 3:20](#); [3:26](#); [5:21](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:34](#); [7:35](#); [8:14](#); [9:17](#); [9:30](#); [9:38](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [10:17](#); [10:20](#); [10:22](#); [10:32](#); [10:33](#); [10:36](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:22](#); [11:29](#); [11:30](#); [12:11](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:15](#); [13:26](#); [15:3](#); [15:22](#); [15:25](#); [15:27](#); [15:30](#); [15:33](#); [16:35](#); [16:36](#); [17:10](#); [17:14](#); [19:22](#); [19:31](#); [20:17](#); [21:25](#); [22:21](#); [23:30](#); [24:24](#); [24:25](#); [24:26](#); [25:25](#); [25:27](#); [26:17](#); [28:28](#))

## serpent, snake, viper

### Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: curse, [deceive](#), [disobey](#), Eden, [evil](#), offspring, prey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), tempt)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 03:03
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 23:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

(Go back to: [Acts 28:3](#); [28:4](#); [28:5](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [covenant](#), [law](#).)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8



- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

### Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: [Acts 2:18](#); [3:13](#); [3:26](#); [4:25](#); [4:27](#); [4:29](#); [4:30](#); [7:7](#); [7:42](#); [10:7](#); [12:13](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [20:19](#); [24:14](#); [26:7](#); [26:16](#); [27:23](#))

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

(Go back to: [Acts 13:2](#))

## sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), prostitute, [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:03
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

(Go back to: [Acts 15:20](#); [15:29](#); [21:25](#))

## shadow, overshadow, shade

### Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:09
- Genesis 19:08
- Isaiah 30:02
- Jeremiah 06:04
- Psalms 017:08

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

(Go back to: [Acts 5:15](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, [accuse](#), rebuke, [false god](#), [humble](#), [Isaiah](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [Acts 8:33](#))

# Shechem

## Facts:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: Hamor)

(See also: [Canaan](#), Esau, Hamor, Hivite, [Jacob](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:14-16
- Genesis 12:6-7
- Genesis 33:19
- Genesis 37:13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7928, H7930

(Go back to: [Acts 7:16](#))

## shepherd, chief shepherd

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to “shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression to “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:09
- Mark 06:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.



- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

(Go back to: [Acts 20:28](#))

## Sidon, Sidonians

### Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Noah, [Phoenicia](#), [the sea](#), [Tyre](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

(Go back to: [Acts 12:20](#); [27:3](#))

## sign, proof, reminder

### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
  - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

(Go back to: [Acts 2:19](#); [2:22](#); [2:43](#); [4:16](#); [4:22](#); [4:30](#); [5:12](#); [6:8](#); [7:36](#); [8:6](#); [8:13](#); [14:3](#); [15:12](#); [17:31](#))

## Silas, Silvanus

### Facts:

Silas was a leader among the believers in Jerusalem.

- The elders of the church in Jerusalem appointed Silas to go with Paul and Barnabas to take a letter to the city of Antioch.
- Silas later traveled with Paul to other cities to teach people about Jesus.
- Paul and Silas were put in jail in the city of Philippi. They sang praises to God while they were there and God released them from the jail. The jailer became a Christian as a result of their testimony.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Antioch](#), [Barnabas](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Paul](#), [Philippi](#), [prison](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 01:1
- 2 Thessalonians 01:01
- Acts 15:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend **Silas** went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:02** She (Lydia) invited Paul and **Silas** to stay at her house, so they stayed with her and her family.
- **47:03** Paul and **Silas** often met with people at the place of prayer.
- **47:07** So the owners of the slave girl took Paul and **Silas** to the Roman authorities, who beat them and threw them into jail.
- **47:08** They put Paul and **Silas** in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet.
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and **Silas** and asked, "What must I do to be saved?"
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and **Silas** from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and **Silas** visited Lydia and some other friends and then left the city.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4609, G4610

(Go back to: [Acts 15:22](#); [15:27](#); [15:32](#); [15:40](#); [16:19](#); [16:25](#); [16:29](#); [17:4](#); [17:10](#); [17:14](#); [17:15](#); [18:5](#))

# silver

## Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: [Acts 3:6](#); [7:16](#); [8:20](#); [17:29](#); [19:19](#); [19:24](#); [20:33](#))

## Simon the Zealot

### Facts:

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

- Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
- Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
- The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
- Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2208, G2581, G4613

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [Acts 2:38](#); [3:19](#); [5:31](#); [7:60](#); [10:43](#); [13:38](#); [22:16](#); [25:8](#); [26:18](#))



## Sinai, Mount Sinai

### Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as "Mount Horeb."

- Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
- The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
- God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: [desert](#), [Egypt](#), Horeb, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 04:24
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 01:17-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:01** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**.
- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H5514, G3735, G4614

(Go back to: [Acts 7:30](#); [7:38](#))

# sister

## Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother in Christ](#), [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 01:02
- Romans 16:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H269, H1323, G27, G79

(Go back to: [Acts 23:16](#))

## slander, slanders, slanderers, slanderous

### Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:13
- 1 Timothy 03:11
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Mark 07:20-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G987, G988, G1228, G1426, G2636, G2637, G3059, G3060

(Go back to: [Acts 18:6](#))

## slaughter, slaughtered

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), Ezekiel, [servant](#), [slay](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

(Go back to: [Acts 8:32](#))

## slay, slain, slaughter, kill, killed, murder, murdered

### Definition:

To “slay” a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has “slain” it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a “slaughter.”
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: [slaughter](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:23
- Isaiah 26:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2076, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G337, G615, G1315, G2380, G2695, G4968, G4969, G5407

(Go back to: [Acts 7:42](#))

## soldier, warrior

### Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: [courage](#), [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [tomb](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:05
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 03:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 08:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G4686, G4753, G4754, G4757, G4758, G4961

(Go back to: [Acts 10:7](#); [12:4](#); [12:6](#); [12:18](#); [21:32](#); [21:35](#); [23:10](#); [23:23](#); [23:27](#); [23:31](#); [27:31](#); [27:32](#); [27:42](#); [28:16](#))

# Solomon

## Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(Go back to: [Acts 3:11](#); [5:12](#); [7:47](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), firstborn, [Son of God](#), sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.



**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: [Acts 2:17](#); [3:25](#); [4:36](#); [5:21](#); [7:16](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [7:29](#); [7:37](#); [9:15](#); [10:36](#); [13:10](#); [13:21](#); [13:26](#); [16:1](#); [19:14](#); [23:6](#); [23:16](#))

## Son of God, the Son

### Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [ancestor](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:09** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:05** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

(Go back to: [Acts 9:20](#); [13:33](#))

## Son of Man, son of man

### Definition:

The title “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he said, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man” it could be translated as “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:56
- Daniel 07:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 03:12-13
- Luke 06:05
- Mark 02:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 080:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

(Go back to: [Acts 7:56](#))

## **sorcerer, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft, magician**

### **Definition:**

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
- Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
- Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, [demon](#), [divination](#), [false god](#), [magic](#), [sacrifice](#), [worship](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 08:9-11
- Exodus 07:11-13
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Revelation 09:20-21

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G3095, G3096, G3097, G5331, G5332, G5333

(Go back to: [Acts 8:9](#); [8:11](#); [19:19](#))

## soul, self

### Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

(Go back to: [Acts 2:27](#); [2:41](#); [2:43](#); [3:23](#); [4:32](#); [7:14](#); [14:2](#); [14:22](#); [15:24](#); [15:26](#); [27:37](#))

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [Acts 5:16](#); [7:59](#); [8:7](#); [16:16](#); [16:18](#); [17:16](#); [18:25](#); [20:22](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#))



# Stephen

## Facts:

Stephen is most remembered as the first Christian martyr, that is, the first person to be killed because of his faith in Jesus. The facts about his life and death are recorded in the book of Acts.

- Stephen was appointed by the early Church in Jerusalem to serve the Christians as a deacon by providing food for widows and other Christians in need.
- Certain Jews falsely accused Stephen of speaking against God and against the laws of Moses.
- Stephen boldly spoke the truth about Jesus the Messiah, beginning with the history of God's dealings with the people of Israel.
- The Jewish leaders were furious and executed Stephen by stoning him to death outside the city.
- His execution was witnessed by Saul of Tarsus, who later became the apostle Paul.
- Stephen is also well-known for his last words before he died, "Lord, please do not hold this sin against them," which showed the love he had for others.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [deacon](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Paul](#), [stone](#), [true](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 06:05
- Acts 06:09
- Acts 06:10-11
- Acts 06:12
- Acts 07:59
- Acts 11:19
- Acts 22:20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G4736

(Go back to: [Acts 6:5](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [7:59](#); [8:2](#); [11:19](#); [22:20](#))

## stiff-necked, stubborn, stubbornness

### Definition:

The term “stiff-necked” is an idiom used in the Bible to describe people who keep disobeying God and refuse to repent. Such people are very proud and will not submit to God’s authority.

- Similarly, the term “stubborn” describes a person who refuses to change his mind or actions even when urged to do so. Stubborn people will not listen to good advice or warnings that other people give them.
- The Old Testament described the Israelites as “stiff-necked” because they did not listen to the many messages from God’s prophets who urged them to repent and turn back to Yahweh.
- If a neck is “stiff” it does not bend easily. The project language may have a different idiom that communicates that a person is “unbending” in that he refuses to change his ways.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “pridefully stubborn” or “arrogant and unyielding” or “refusing to change.”

(See also: arrogant, proud, [repent](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:51
- Deuteronomy 09:13-14
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Jeremiah 03:17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H47, H3513, H5637, H6203, H6484, H7185, H7186, H7190, H8307, G483, G4644, G4645

(Go back to: [Acts 7:51](#))

## stone, stoning

### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, [commit](#), [crime](#), [death](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:05
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:06
- Matthew 23:37-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H69, H810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4074, G4348, G5586

(Go back to: [Acts 5:26](#); [7:58](#); [7:59](#); [14:5](#); [14:19](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, [right hand](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [Acts 3:7](#); [3:16](#); [6:10](#); [9:19](#); [9:22](#); [14:22](#); [15:10](#); [15:32](#); [15:41](#); [16:5](#); [18:23](#); [19:20](#))

## stronghold, fortifications, fortress, citadel

### Definition:

The terms "stronghold" and "fortress" both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. A "citadel" is a fortress inside a city. The term "fortified" describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- "Stronghold" or "fortress" could be translated as "securely strong place" or "strongly protected place."
- The term "fortified city" could be translated as "securely protected city" or "strongly built city."
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term "stronghold" referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as "false strongholds."
- This term should be translated differently from "refuge," which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [false god](#), refuge, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:04
- 2 Kings 08:10-12
- 2 Samuel 05:8-10
- Acts 21:35
- Habakkuk 01:10-11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H553, H759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6877, H7682, G3794, G3925

(Go back to: [Acts 21:34](#); [21:37](#); [22:24](#); [23:10](#); [23:16](#); [23:32](#))

## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:04** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

(Go back to: [Acts 1:3](#); [3:18](#); [5:41](#); [9:16](#); [17:3](#); [26:23](#); [28:5](#))



## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [Acts 12:2](#); [16:27](#))

# synagogue

## Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jew](#), [pray](#), [temple](#), [word of God](#), [worship](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 06:09
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 06:59
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G656, G752, G4864

(Go back to: [Acts 6:9](#); [9:2](#); [9:20](#); [13:5](#); [13:14](#); [13:43](#); [14:1](#); [15:21](#); [17:1](#); [17:10](#); [17:17](#); [18:4](#); [18:7](#); [18:19](#); [18:26](#); [19:8](#); [22:19](#); [24:12](#); [26:11](#))

## Syria, Ashur

### Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [commander](#), [Damascus](#), [descendant](#), Elisha, leprosy, Naaman, [persecute](#), [prophet](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:23
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 20:03
- Galatians 01:21-24
- Matthew 04:23-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H758, H804, G4947, G4948

(Go back to: [Acts 15:23](#); [15:41](#); [18:18](#); [20:3](#); [21:3](#))

# tabernacle

## Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [temple](#), tent of meeting)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 07:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636, G4638

(Go back to: [Acts 7:43](#); [7:44](#); [15:16](#))

# Tarsus

## Facts:

Tarsus was a prosperous city in the Roman province of Cilicia, in what is now south central Turkey.

- Tarsus was located along a major river and near the Mediterranean Sea, so it was part of an important trade route.
- At one time it was the capital of Cilicia.
- In the New Testament, Tarsus was best known as the hometown of Paul the apostle.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cilicia](#), [Paul](#), [province](#), [the sea](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 09:11
- Acts 09:30
- Acts 11:25

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5018, G5019

(Go back to: [Acts 9:11](#); [9:30](#); [11:25](#); [21:39](#); [22:3](#))

## teach, teaching, untaught

### Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

(Go back to: [Acts 1:1](#); [2:42](#); [4:2](#); [4:18](#); [5:21](#); [5:25](#); [5:28](#); [5:42](#); [11:26](#); [13:12](#); [15:1](#); [15:35](#); [17:19](#); [18:11](#); [18:25](#); [20:20](#); [21:21](#); [21:28](#); [28:31](#))

## teacher, Teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:01** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:02** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **49:03** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

(Go back to: [Acts 5:34](#); [13:1](#))

# temple

## Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485



(Go back to: Acts 2:46; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:8; 3:10; 4:1; 5:20; 5:21; 5:24; 5:25; 5:42; 17:24; 21:26; 21:27; 21:28; 21:29; 21:30; 22:17; 24:6; 24:12; 24:18; 25:8; 26:21)

## tent, tentmakers

### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), curtain, [Paul](#), [Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), tent of meeting)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H167, H168, H2583, H3407, H6898

(Go back to: [Acts 18:3](#))

## terror, terrorize, terrify, frightened, panic

### Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), plague, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 02:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:09
- Mark 06:48-50

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G1629, G1630, G2258, G4422, G4426, G5401

(Go back to: [Acts 24:25](#))

## test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: [Acts 5:9](#); [15:10](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [Acts 1:8](#); [1:22](#); [2:32](#); [2:40](#); [3:15](#); [4:33](#); [5:32](#); [6:13](#); [7:44](#); [7:58](#); [10:22](#); [10:39](#); [10:41](#); [10:42](#); [10:43](#); [13:22](#); [13:31](#); [14:3](#); [15:8](#); [18:5](#); [20:24](#); [20:26](#); [22:5](#); [22:12](#); [22:15](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#); [23:11](#); [26:5](#); [26:16](#); [26:22](#); [28:23](#))

## tetrarch

### Definition:

The term “tetrarch” refers to a governing official who ruled over part of the Roman Empire. Each tetrarch was under the authority of the Roman emperor.

- The title “tetrarch” means “one of four joint rulers.”
- Starting under the Emperor Diocletian, there were four major divisions of the Roman Empire and each tetrarch ruled one division.
- The kingdom of Herod “the Great,” who was king at the time of the birth of Jesus, was divided into four sections after his death, and ruled by his sons as “tetrarchs,” or “rulers of a fourth.”
- Each division had one or more smaller parts called “provinces,” such as Galilee or Samaria.
- “Herod the tetrarch” is mentioned several times in the New Testament. He is also known as “Herod Antipas.”
- The term “tetrarch” could also be translated as “regional governor” or “provincial ruler” or “ruler” or “governor.”

(See also: [governor](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [province](#), [Rome](#), [ruler](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 03:1-2
- Luke 09:07
- Matthew 14:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5075, G5076

(Go back to: [Acts 13:1](#))

## the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

### Facts:

In the Bible, the “Great Sea” or “western sea” refers to what is now called the “Mediterranean Sea,” which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the “western sea.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#), prosper)

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

(Go back to: [Acts 10:6](#); [10:32](#); [17:14](#); [27:30](#); [27:38](#); [27:40](#); [28:4](#))



## the twelve, the eleven

### Definition:

The term “the twelve” refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called “the eleven.”

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title “the twelve” distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, “the eleven” chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas’ place. Then they were called “the twelve” again.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, “the twelve apostles” or “Jesus’ twelve closest disciples.”
- “The eleven” could also be translated as “Jesus’ eleven remaining disciples.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in “the Twelve” and “the Eleven.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 06:02
- Luke 09:01
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:07

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G1427, G1733

(Go back to: [Acts 1:26](#); [2:14](#); [6:2](#))

# Thessalonica, Thessalonian

## Facts:

In New Testament times, Thessalonica was the capital city of Macedonia in the ancient Roman empire. The people living in that city were called the “Thessalonians.”

- The city of Thessalonica was an important seaport and was also located along a major road that connected Rome to the eastern part of the Roman empire.
- Paul, along with Silas and Timothy, visited Thessalonica on his second missionary journey and as a result, a church was established there. Later, Paul also visited this city on his third missionary journey.
- Paul wrote two letters to the Christians in Thessalonica. These letters (1 Thessalonians and 2 Thessalonians) are included in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Macedonia](#), [Paul](#), [Rome](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:1
- 2 Thessalonians 01:01
- 2 Timothy 04:9-10
- Acts 17:01
- Philippians 04:14-17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2331, G2332

(Go back to: [Acts 17:1](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [20:4](#); [27:2](#))

# Thomas

## Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

- Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
- After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [God the Father](#), [the twelve](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 11:15-16
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 10:2-4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2381

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#))

## throne, enthroned

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [king](#), reign)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(Go back to: [Acts 2:30](#); [7:49](#); [12:21](#); [25:6](#); [25:10](#); [25:17](#))

## time, untimely, date

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H116, H227, H310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G1909, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2235, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3956, G3999, G4178, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5119, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

(Go back to: [Acts 1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:21](#); [3:20](#); [3:21](#); [7:17](#); [7:20](#); [7:23](#); [8:11](#); [12:1](#); [13:11](#); [13:18](#); [14:3](#); [14:17](#); [14:28](#); [15:33](#); [17:21](#); [17:26](#); [17:30](#); [18:20](#); [18:23](#); [19:22](#); [19:23](#); [20:16](#); [20:18](#); [24:25](#); [27:9](#))

# Timothy

## Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (1 Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [believe](#), [church](#), [Greek](#), [minister](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:02
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- Acts 16:03
- Colossians 01:01
- Philemon 01:01
- Philippians 01:01
- Philippians 02:19

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5095

(Go back to: [Acts 16:1](#); [17:14](#); [17:15](#); [18:5](#); [19:22](#); [20:4](#))

## to minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: [Acts 1:17](#); [1:25](#); [6:1](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [11:29](#); [12:25](#); [13:2](#); [13:36](#); [19:22](#); [20:24](#); [20:34](#); [21:19](#); [24:23](#))

## tongue, language

### Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(Go back to: [Acts 2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:11](#); [2:26](#); [10:46](#); [19:6](#))



## tremble, stagger

### Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(Go back to: [Acts 7:32](#); [16:29](#))

## trial, proving

### Definition:

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is “a testing” or “a temptation” is one particular type of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: tempt, [test](#), [innocent](#), [guilt](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:34
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Lamentations 03:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H4941, H7378, G178, G1383, G2919, G3986

(Go back to: [Acts 20:19](#))

## tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: [Acts 13:21](#))

## tribulation, distresses, trouble

### Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- “The Great Tribulation” is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus’ second coming when God’s wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), wrath)

### Bible References:

- Mark 04:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:09
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6869, G2347, G4423

(Go back to: [Acts 7:10](#); [7:11](#); [11:19](#); [14:22](#); [20:23](#))

## Troas

### Facts:

The city of Troas was a seaport located on the northwest coast of the ancient Roman province of Asia.

- Paul visited Troas at least three times during his trips to different regions to preach the gospel.
- On one occasion in Troas, Paul preached long into the night and a young man named Eutychus fell asleep while he was listening. Because he had been sitting in an open window, Eutychus fell down a long way and died. Through God's power, Paul raised this young man back to life.
- When Paul was in Rome, he asked Timothy to bring him his scrolls and his cloak, which he had left behind in Troas.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [preach](#), [province](#), [raise](#), [Rome](#), [scroll](#), [Timothy](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 02:13
- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 16:08
- Acts 20:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5174

(Go back to: [Acts 16:8](#); [16:11](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#))

# trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

## Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

## Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, [persecute](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(Go back to: [Acts 15:19](#); [15:24](#); [16:20](#); [17:8](#); [17:13](#))

## true, truth

### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:09
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [Acts 4:27](#); [10:34](#); [12:9](#); [12:11](#); [26:25](#))



## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: [Acts 27 General Notes; 27:25](#))

# tunic

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See Also: robe)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 03:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 08:12-13
- Luke 03:11
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

(Go back to: [Acts 9:39](#))

## turn, turn away, turn back, return

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [false god](#), leprosy, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

(Go back to: [Acts 3:19](#); [3:26](#); [7:39](#); [7:42](#); [9:35](#); [9:40](#); [11:21](#); [13:46](#); [14:15](#); [15:19](#); [15:36](#); [16:18](#); [26:18](#); [26:20](#); [28:27](#))

## twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes

### Definition:

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [priest](#), [tribe](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:07
- Genesis 49:28
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 19:28

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

(Go back to: [Acts 26:7](#))

# Tychicus

## Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

- Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
- Paul described him as "beloved" and "faithful."
- Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [beloved](#), Colossae, [Ephesus](#), [faithful](#), [good news](#), [minister](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Colossians 04:09
- Titus 03:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5190

(Go back to: [Acts 20:4](#))

## Tyre, Tyrians

### Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), cedar, [Israel](#), [the sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

(Go back to: [Acts 12:20](#); [21:3](#); [21:7](#))

## understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [Acts 4:13](#); [7:25](#); [8:30](#); [10:34](#); [22:29](#); [24:8](#); [26:26](#); [28:26](#); [28:27](#))



## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), feast, [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), yeast)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

(Go back to: [Acts 12:3](#); [20:6](#))

## vain, vanity

### Definition:

The terms "vain" and "vanity" describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as "vain" things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done "in vain," it means that the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase "in vain" might be translated in various ways, including: "without result;" "with no result;" "for no reason;" "for no purpose," or "with no purpose."
- Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty," "useless," "hopeless," "worthless," "meaningless," etc.

(See also: [false god](#), [worthy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 02:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G945, G1500, G2756, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

(Go back to: [Acts 4:25](#); [14:15](#))

## virgin, virginity

### Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Mary](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(Go back to: [Acts 21:9](#))

## vision, envision

### Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

### Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 01:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

(Go back to: [Acts 2:17](#); [9:10](#); [9:12](#); [10:3](#); [10:17](#); [10:19](#); [11:5](#); [12:9](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [18:9](#); [26:19](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(Go back to: [Acts 2:6](#); [2:14](#); [4:24](#); [7:31](#); [7:57](#); [7:60](#); [8:7](#); [9:4](#); [9:7](#); [10:13](#); [10:15](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [12:14](#); [12:22](#); [13:27](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [16:28](#); [19:34](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#); [22:14](#); [22:22](#); [24:21](#); [26:14](#); [26:24](#))

## VOW

### Definition:

A "vow" is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term "vow" can be translated as "solemn promise" or "solemn oath" or "promise made to God."

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

(Go back to: [Acts 18:18](#); [21:23](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [Acts 3:6](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:12](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [14:16](#); [21:21](#); [21:24](#))

## watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [Acts 9:24](#); [12:6](#); [16:23](#); [20:31](#); [22:20](#); [27:33](#))



## water

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

(Go back to: [Acts 1:5](#); [8:36](#); [8:38](#); [8:39](#); [10:47](#); [11:16](#))

# wheat

## Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, [grain](#), [seed](#), thresh, winnow)

## Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

(Go back to: [Acts 27:38](#))

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: [Acts 13:22](#); [21:14](#); [22:14](#))

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(Go back to: [Acts 6:3](#); [6:10](#); [7:10](#); [7:22](#))

## wolf, wild dogs

### Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term “wolves” is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

### Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as “wild dog” or “wild animal.”
- Other names for wild dogs could be “jackal” or “coyote.”
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as “evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep.”

(See also: [evil](#), [false prophet](#), [sheep](#), [teach](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 20:29
- Isaiah 11:07
- John 10:11-13
- Luke 10:03
- Matthew 07:15
- Zephaniah 03:03

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G3074

(Go back to: [Acts 20:29](#))

## womb

### Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 02:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

(Go back to: [Acts 3:2](#); [14:8](#))

## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16

- James 01:18
- James 02:8-9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**."
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**."
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: [Acts 1:16](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [5:20](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [6:7](#); [8:4](#); [8:14](#); [8:25](#); [8:32](#); [8:35](#); [10:36](#); [11:1](#); [11:19](#); [Notes](#); [12:24](#); [13:5](#); [13:7](#); [13:44](#); [13:46](#); [13:48](#); [13:49](#); [14:3](#); [14:25](#); [15:7](#); [15:35](#); [15:36](#); [16:6](#); [16:32](#); [17:2](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [18:5](#); [18:11](#); [18:24](#); [18:28](#); [19:10](#); [19:20](#); [20:32](#))



## work, works, deeds

### Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God's “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Go back to: [Acts 5:38](#); [7:22](#); [7:41](#); [9:36](#); [13:2](#); [13:41](#); [14:26](#); [15:38](#); [26:20](#))

## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, [heaven](#), [Rome](#), [godly](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(Go back to: [Acts 11:28](#); [17:6](#); [17:24](#); [17:31](#); [19:27](#); [24:5](#))

## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G96, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

(Go back to: [Acts 5:41](#); [13:25](#); [13:46](#); [23:29](#); [25:11](#); [25:25](#); [26:20](#); [26:31](#); [28:22](#))

# wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

## Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or, “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G91, G92, G93, G95, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1626, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2558, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G5195, G5196

(Go back to: [Acts 7:24](#); [7:26](#); [7:27](#); [12:1](#); [14:5](#); [23:9](#); [25:10](#); [25:11](#); [28:6](#))

# year

## Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [month](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

(Go back to: [Acts 4:22](#); [7:6](#); [7:30](#); [7:36](#); [7:42](#); [9:33](#); [11:26](#); [13:20](#); [13:21](#); [18:11](#); [19:10](#); [24:10](#); [24:17](#))

## yoke, yoked, tied

### Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [persecute](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 05:01
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 09:04
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 04:03

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2218

(Go back to: [Acts 15:10](#))

## zeal, zealous

### Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:03
- Galatians 04:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:06
- Romans 10:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

(Go back to: [Acts 1:13](#); [21:20](#); [22:3](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs



Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
David Trombold  
Dean Ropp  
Gene Mullen  
James Vigen  
Leonard Smith  
Nicholas Alsop  
Michael Francis  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
David Trombold  
Dean Ropp  
Gene Mullen  
James Vigen  
Leonard Smith  
Nicholas Alsop  
Michael Francis  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton  
Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community